Sougata Jana
Subrata Jana *Editors*

Marine Biomaterials

Therapeutic Potential

Springer

Marine Biomaterials

Sougata Jana • Subrata Jana
Editors

Marine Biomaterials

Therapeutic Potential

Springer

Editors
Sougata Jana
Department of Health & Family
Welfare, Directorate of Health Services
Kolkata, West Bengal, India

Subrata Jana
Department of Chemistry
Indira Gandhi National Tribal University
Amarkantak, Madhya Pradesh, India

ISBN 978-981-16-5373-5 ISBN 978-981-16-5374-2 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-5374-2

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

Preface

This book focuses on marine biomaterials-based biomedical carriers for delivery of therapeutics. Marine biomaterials-based carriers showed wide applications in pharmaceutical as well as biomedical fields for delivery of small and large molecules. Biomaterials-based composites/scaffolds/matrix systems are promising for controlled/prolonged release of drug in target site and prevent/control the premature release of drug/bioactive compounds. The drug substance having short biological half-life often requires frequent dosing, which ultimately may lead to toxicity due to accumulation of excess drug dose. The marine biomaterials-based systems are widely used for tissue engineering and biomedical imaging. So, the marine-based biomedical carriers are promising in the area of drug targeting and biomedical engineering to the target site.

This volume (II) is specially focused on various marine biomaterials and their therapeutic potential. The different chapters of this book is highlighting the therapeutic potential of marine collagen, management of bone disorders, gene delivery, marine natural compounds in immunomodulation, theranostic applications, tissue engineering, and regeneration.

Chapter 1 contains basic information on marine biomaterials and its resources, categories, and applications.

Chapter 2 deals on the possibilities of crosslinking the polysaccharides from marine resources along with its organization and different types of crosslinking methods. Atanase et al. discussed about some important polysaccharides such as chitosan, chitin, k-carrageenan, hyaluronic acid, alginic acid/alginates, agar/agarose, and fucoidan.

Chitosan is a biocompatible and biodegradable marine biomaterials, and it has potential therapeutic application. Chapter 3 focuses on chitosan and chitooligosaccharides along with their preparation, characteristics, and potential application as therapeutic agents.

Among the different marine biomaterials, collagen is highly used as marine biomaterials for various applications, due to their biodegradability, biocompatibility, low antigenicity, confirmed structure, and biological properties. Chapter 4 in this book is dealt with marine collagen and the applicability for the delivery of therapeutics.

Gene therapy is a branch in medical science with therapeutic potential for treating a disorder at its genetic root. The gene therapy is generally depending on the carriers

or vehicle's ability to selectively and efficiently deliver gene to target site with minimal or no side effects. Chapter 5 focuses on delivery of gene using marine biopolymers as efficient carrier.

The polymeric hydrogels have received considerable attention as leading candidates for engineered tissue scaffolds due to their unique compositional and structural similarities to the natural extracellular matrix. Chapter 6 is highlighted on different hydrogel scaffolds based on alginate, gelatin, and 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate for tissue regeneration.

Now-a-days, tissue engineering is considered one of the most important therapeutic strategies for regenerative medicine. It is an important alternative approach by using of scaffold materials with combined engineering and biochemical/physicochemical methods for either replacing or improving of lost tissues or those are become nonviable due to disease or trauma. The applications of tissue engineering based on marine biomaterials are covered in Chap. 7.

Currently, theranostic approach is important for various functions ranging from diagnosis to treatment with accurate targeting of cancer-specific cells. The theranostic systems are attractive and useful for drug targeting and biomedical imaging are being carried out in a single platform. Chapter 8 emphasizes on the theranostic applications of marine biopolymers.

In Chap. 9, authors have highlighted on the marine biomaterials as carrier of drugs/biomolecules for managing the bone disorders. Different marine biomaterials are used as drug delivery vehicles for the treatment of various bone disorders. This chapter provides an overview of presently used marine materials as bone graft substitute vis-à-vis as carriers in local drug delivery systems.

Chapter 10 provides a detailed review on some important marine natural products discovered so far along with their immunomodulation activities against various infectious, chronic, and non-chronic diseases. The authors also highlighted the information about challenges and future perspectives of those natural products.

Recent development and biological properties of different peptides derived from a variety of living organisms, including microbes, plants, and marine animals are focused in Chap. 11. Besides these, authors also highlighted on in vivo, in vitro, and clinical trials along with their potential applications for the treatment of diseases.

This book is a collection of most updated recent progress in the field of marine biomaterials for therapeutic applications, which is written by the experts from their own field and will be very useful for the students, researcher scholars, and scientists in the area of pharmaceuticals, biomedical engineering, and materials science.

We express our sincere thanks to all authors for their contribution to this edited book. We also thank the publishers for their continuous support in completion of this reference book.

Kolkata, West Bengal, India — Sougata Jana
Amarkantak, Madhya Pradesh, India — Subrata Jana

Contents

About the Editors

Sougata Jana has completed his Ph.D. in pharmaceutical technology from Maulana Abul Kalam Azad University of Technology (MAKAUT), West Bengal (Formerly Known as WBUT), India. He is engaged for fourteen years in the field of pharmacy, including teaching, research, health services, etc. He has published 30 research and review articles in different national and international peer-reviewed journals. He has also edited 10 books and published more than 45 book chapters in different edited books from internationally renowned publishers. He is the reviewer for various peer-reviewed international journals. He is a life member of the Association of Pharmaceutical Teachers of India (APTI) and has an associateship with the Institution of Chemists (AIC), India. He successfully guided 17 postgraduate students for their research projects. He is working in the field of drug delivery science and technology, including modification of synthetic and natural biopolymers, microparticles, nanoparticles, semisolids, and interpenetrating network (IPN) system for controlled drug delivery.

Subrata Jana is presently working as an associate professor at the Department of Chemistry, Indira Gandhi National Tribal University (Central University), Amarkantak, Madhya Pradesh, India, and his current research focuses on design and synthesis of artificial receptors for the recognition of anions, cations, and biomolecules along with biodegradable polymeric-based carrier systems for the delivery of drug molecules. So far, he has published ~40 research papers in peer-reviewed international journals and contributed more than 20 book chapters in different edited books

published by internationally renowned publishers. He also served as reviewer for various international journals.

He has obtained his PhD in organic chemistry from Indian Institute of Engineering Science and Technology (IIEST), Shibpur, India. Then he worked with Professor (Dr.) Fraser Hof at the University of Victoria, Canada, and Dr. Kenneth J Woycechowsky at the University of Utah, USA, as a postdoc. Overall, he extensively studied on supramolecular behavior of the host–guest interaction and synthesis of different heterocyclic moieties.

Marine Biomaterials: Resources, Categories, and Applications

1

Hassan A. H. Ibrahim, Waleed M. M. El-Sayed, and Mostafa M. El-Sheekh

Abstract

The marine ecosystem is a unique and complicated system that is characterized primarily by the great biodiversity, representing the richness of diverse habitats and the variations of life forms. It involves various marine organisms with great chemical diversity, and they are rich sources of secondary metabolites relative to terrestrial organisms. The oceans thus always offer excellent opportunities for discovering valuable materials from various organisms. Such compounds contain a wide range of chemical structures and functions, which for more specific potentialities are wider. The produced compounds have a vital role in the human and animal life and are widely used as antimicrobial, antioxidants, antiviral, anticancer, and food and feed and in food and pharmaceuticals industry. However, in many fields such as food, cosmetics, dietary supplements, animal feed, bioactive packaging, and industrial products, as well as in high-tech biomedical sectors, applications of novel marine molecules are now found.

Keywords

Biodiversity · Marine ecosystem · Marine biomaterials · Biopolymers · Bioceramics · Sulfated polysaccharides

H. A. H. Ibrahim (✉) · W. M. M. El-Sayed
Marine Microbiology Department, National Institute of Oceanography and Fisheries (NIOF), Hurghada, Egypt

M. M. El-Sheekh
Botany Department, Faculty of Science, Tanta University, Tanta, Egypt

S. Jana, S. Jana (eds.), *Marine Biomaterials*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-5374-2_1

1.1 Introduction

Oceans cover the highest percentage of the surface of the world and abound in the biodiversity of both marine and coastal habitats and contain 97% of the Earth's water. Therefore, the oceans are critical to the life on Earth. They have a principal role in the global conservation of nutrients and the climate control and have a wide variety of benefits for people. Ultimately, life in oceans provides about 33% of the oxygen we breathe, and human fish consumption accounts for 16% of global supply of animal protein. Moreover, it is especially significant as a source of protein for populations in developing countries (IUCN, Europe).

On the other hand, marine organisms and microorganisms (such as bacteria, fungi, sponges, microalgae, seaweeds, crustaceans, mollusks, vertebrates, and fish) are made up of fundamental substances and secondary metabolites compared to terrestrial organisms with a vast array of unique properties. However, this reflects in the evolutionary process of natural self-selection and progression (Pandey 2019). Thus, oceans have a considerable interesting forum for developing novel biomaterials, with both economic and environmental benefits and can explain their possible applications in the biomedical industry, drug delivery, health care, food processing, and tissue engineering devices (Bhatnagar and Kim 2010).

Generally, marine raw materials are categorized as polysaccharides (such as agar, alginates, carrageenans, chitin, chitosan, etc.), proteins, glycosaminoglycans (e.g., collagen, chondroitin, heparin, and hyaluronic acid), and ceramics (such as calcium, phosphorus compounds, and biosilica) (Silva et al. 2012).

Many biomedical and industrial applications by biomaterials developed by marine organisms have been increasingly investigated (Rinaudo 2006). In addition, the study of several biomolecules has led to comprehensive preclinical investigations that justify clinical trials in many therapeutic fields, involving viral infection and tumor formation (Dembitsky et al. 2005).

1.2 Unique Characteristics of the Marine Ecosystem

Seawater occupies about 70% of the Earth, and despite occupying less than 10% of the Earth's surface, coastal waters and oceans provide around 30% of marine productivity and represent 90% of the marine fisheries. For 80% of organic matter, they are the burial site, and 90% of sedimentary mineralization and nutrient cycling takes place there. They also supply the sink with up to 90% of the suspended load in the world's rivers, along with many associated contaminants. On the other hand, the seas and oceans have an average depth in excess of 3500 m, and more than 60% of the Earth's surface lies below more above 200 m of the seawater (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment 2005).

The open ocean species, like microorganisms, crustaceans, billfish, seabirds, tunas, sharks, etc., are widely distributed and exist in the most areas of the ocean. So, the oceans are thought to be much more dynamic and complex than previously assumed. Scientists are only beginning to understand the organisms' life history and

various metabolic forms and how these habitats operate and interact with the above water column (UNEP 2006). The vast majority of marine biodiversity records come from shallow waters (< 200 m) or the seabed, and the pelagic ocean, which is the greatest source on Earth in which life can exist (> 109 km^3), is recognized as particularly underrepresented in global databases (Webb et al. 2010).

Where primary terrestrial producers tend to be large and sessile, primary marine producers tend to be small and mobile and thus subject to fluid transport and spatial mixing processes. Photosynthesis is limited to the upper sunlit parts of the ocean, which are much less productive over vast areas than the soil, since growing phytoplankton strips nutrients from the surface waters (Bar-On et al. 2018).

Development and use in the sea can be decoupled with fixed carbon being consumed several times before being completely remineralized, and while the available organic matter is increasingly scarce with depth, it supports numerous pelagic and benthic ecosystems. Consumers, grazers, and carnivores, who can be many times larger than their terrestrial counterparts, have a much greater variety of life-history features on the other end of the aquatic food web than terrestrial ones. Most marine predators have extremely high reproductive efficiency, producing millions of offspring, particularly among older and larger members of their populations. This may help them to survive overexploitation but also makes populations highly variable, difficult to predict, and vulnerable to threshold effects (Kallmeyer et al. 2012).

Predation encouraged the evolutionary advantage of defensive and reinforcing structures such as biomineralized skeletons with bristles and spines, fostering coevolution among predators and prey and, coincidentally, the possibility of fossilizing species. The practices of animal feeding and bioengineering encouraged and altered the biogeochemical cycles. For example, animals that feed on plankton converted slow-sinking cells into rapidly sinking fecal pellets, providing a source of organic-rich sediments and altering their biogeochemistry (Meysman et al. 2006).

It is precisely phytoplanktonic species that increased in size and formed biomineralized structures, allowing them to sink faster and thus shift the output of exports from the surface ocean. Concentrating biomass into fewer yet larger species increased the free oxygen supply. The evolution of filter feeding provided a mechanism for clearing microbial populations and providing a relatively non-turbid photic zone where primary production of the dominated algae could occur (Basu and Mackey 2018).

1.3 Marine Biodiversity and Ecosystem Functioning

Marine biodiversity is extremely ancient, and life is likely to have arisen in a marine environment between 4500 and 3500 Mya (million years ago), with 3000 Mya chemical autotrophic prokaryotes and photosynthetic cyanobacteria and around 2000 Mya eukaryotic cells (Cavalier-Smith 2006). Observably, cyanobacteria dominated life in the water column, the small size of which limited their sinking rate and maintained positive feedback maintaining cyanobacterial dominance,

turbidity, and anoxia (Butterfield 2010). However, life on the seafloor was characterized by microbial mats (Bottjer 2005). The capability of ecosystems to supply the human with the services they require to exist is frequently stated to be based on biodiversity. The significance of biodiversity in ecosystem functioning, as well as the relative responsibilities of various functional groupings, has proven to be incredibly difficult to comprehend (Hooper et al. 2005).

In the coastal and shelf seas, marine biodiversity is the highest supported by the presence of diverse sedimentary habitats, rocky and biogenic reefs, kelp forests, and seagrass beds. Some of these are highly specialized ecosystems. Specialized collection of species, for example, inhabits the intertidal zone ranging from rocky to sandy shores, and wave exposure is a key determinant of the population living on a specific shore (Lotze and Worm 2009).

The world's oceans provide human with critical ecosystem services. Worm et al. (2006) conducted a meta-analysis of published studies to see if the level of marine diversity had an impact on the services of certain ecosystem, like nutrient cycling, productivity, resource usage, and ecosystem stability, and thus whether marine degradation was affecting ecosystems' ability to provide services. Increased genetic or species variety was found to be beneficial in the study.

Since 2002, 18 global-scale studies of marine biodiversity hotspots have been published. Species richness peaked in Australia, Southeast Asia, Japan, South Asia, Southeast Africa, the Caribbean, and the United States' southeast region. Endemism hotspots have been discovered in South Africa, Australia's east and west coasts, and remote locations such as Hawaii, Easter Island, New Zealand, and Antarctica. In the western Caribbean, South Madagascar, Chagos Islands, Maldives, Lakshadweep, Sri Lanka, South Japan, the East China Sea including Taiwan, Coral Triangle, New Caledonia, Vanuatu, and North East and North West Australia, there exist hotspots of both high species richness and endemism (Jefferson and Costello 2020).

In particular, the most critical areas to biodiversity are the deep sea, open ocean hotspots, seamounts, hydrothermal vents, cold water corals, sponge fields, and others (UNEP 2006). Marine protected zones are critical for preserving ocean biodiversity and maintaining productivity, particularly for fish supplies (Owen 2005). However, the following text will refer to the biodiversity in these areas:

1. *Deep sea* – in which life is diverse and specialized with organisms living in constant darkness at high pressures and low temperatures. However, the number and variety of organisms per unit area or volume are generally low compared to shallow coastal systems, with diversity tending to decline with increasing depth. The proportion of deep-sea fauna is lower than for other marine systems and unlikely to exceed the number in shelf seas. Life in the deep sea is comparably young, as for most of Earth's history, the deep sea has been inhospitable to life (Widdicombe and Somerfield 2012).
2. Mid-water column – where beneath 200 m remains a tremendous enigma that scientists have just recently begun to investigate. Organic waste that floats down from surface waters like falling snow feeds the food chain. Many tiny animals with unique adaptations to use such trash, besides strange-looking fish that

dangle light lures to catch naive prey and the elusive octopus, live in the mid-water column (UNEP 2006).

3. *Deep seabed* – where the place was barren and remembered as the very cradle of life, with a great variety of thrilling geological and biological extremes. Challenger Deep in Marianas Trench, at 11,034 m, is the deepest location on Earth. This diversity of characteristics and habitats leads to that 98% of all marine species are thought to support the seabed and that more species live in deep seabed environments than in any other marine environments combined. The wide range of seabed ecosystems produces diverse organisms and life forms with remarkable adaptations to such harsh conditions, ranging from generalists digesting sediments to highly specialized species living primarily on whale bones and feeding on them. In this area, active communities of bacteria can be found hundreds of meters beneath the seabed, feasting on old sediments (Owen 2005).
4. *Volcanic vents* – in which the origin of life is believed to have originated, far from the rays of the sun, receiving its energy from the superheated minerals that escape from the molten center of the Earth. It is estimated that up to ten million creatures will survive within the sediments of the continental slope and abyssal plains. Mysteries of the farthest and deepest oceans revealed submarine canyons are common along the slopes of most continental borders and certain oceanic islands, yet each one is distinct due to its structural intricacy (Einarsson 2008).
5. *Canyons* – where the high habitats diversity within canyons results in a very high density and species diversity compared to the continental slopes. Species include many filter feeders like sponges, hydroids, corals, sea pens, sea cucumbers, brittle stars, tube worms, and anemones. Many significant species upon commercial level such as crab, shrimp, lobster, flounder, and tilefish are often found in canyons, because they often serve as important nurseries for them. Additionally, the high productivity of canyon makes them valuable feeding grounds for many pelagic animals (UNEP 2006).
6. *Seamounts* – under sea mountains of volcanic origin, vary often in the size and height. Some of them rise from the seafloor about 100 m, while others tower 3000 m or more. Amazingly, the world's oceans include more than 100,000 seamounts, but less than 200 have been studied in depth so far. Seamounts communicate with the surrounding seas, trapping plankton, and increasing the productivity, showing them as valuable hotspots for many open ocean and deep-sea species to feed, breed, and spawn (Owen 2005).
7. *Hydrothermal vents* – where temperature may reach to up to 400 °C and sulfur-rich emissions are converted into energy by bacteria and primitive microorganisms, which feed a unique ecosystem of worms, crabs, mollusks, shrimps, anemones, soft corals, and other species. Many species are unknown to scientists, and more than 75% occur at only one site. Nevertheless, giant tube worms have adapted to live near these vents, without mouths or digestive systems, growing nearly 2.5 cm in 10 days (UNEP 2006). *Prochlorococcus* has been identified in the photic zone as a tiny photosynthetic cyanobacterium,

which is likely the most abundant organism on Earth accounting for 20% of the Earth's atmosphere oxygen (Colín-García 2016).

8. *Cold filling* – where cold and chemical-rich water (or methane) flows from the seabed, or where undersea landslides or streams uncover chemical/gas-rich sediments. These chemicals and gases help special species and chemosynthetic habitats. There is some overlap but not much between the vent and cold seep cultures. Of the 211 cold vegetable species reported so far, 13 species occur in both vegetation and vents. Scientists have just realized that the populations of cold seep and gas hydrate ultimately rely upon sunlight (Owen 2005).
9. *Cold water corals* – from the poles to the deep waters of tropical islands (on seamounts and in fjords, submarine canyons, coastal cliffs, banks) and mid-ocean ridges; they have been widely distributed in all oceans. They live in seawater temperatures ranging from 4 to 13 °C and depths of 39–5630 m deep. Despite sunlight, these corals can survive by catching tiny particles of food suspended in the water column. Nonetheless, some corals, such as *Lophelia pertusa*, may develop huge and intricate reefs and resemble to their tropical shallow-water cousins; other corals can form lush thickets or forests on the seabed or seamounts, usually in locations with strong currents. However, these coral habitats, on the other hand, may support a wide range of related species as well as juveniles of many commercially important fish species (UNEP 2006).
10. *Sponge reefs* – can grow to immense size and age; they could be over 100 years old and weigh up to 80 kilograms. Many species, including commercially important species like redfish and cod, use sponge aggregations to create a three-dimensional structure on the seabed that provides protection, hunting grounds, and refuge. Near sponge fields in the North Atlantic as they did on the surrounding seabed, scientists have discovered roughly twice as many species. Moreover, deep-sea sponges are slow-growing, fragile, and highly vulnerable to damage by bottom fishing gear (Owen 2005).
11. *Coastal systems* – such as salt marshes, mangroves, and seagrass meadows which are capable of absorbing or sequestering carbon at up to 50 times that of the same tropical forest area. These systems may contain up to five times the total carbon deposits stored in the tropical forests (Jefferson and Costello 2020).

Finally, biodiversity loss is being driven by a multitude of anthropogenic stresses on multiple spatial and temporal scales. These stresses act simultaneously to reduce taxonomic and functional diversity (Widdicombe and Somerfield 2012). However, the major threats to marine biodiversity are numerous: habitat degradation, climate change, and ozone depletion; effects of fishing, nutrient runoff, marine pollution, and species invasions; watershed alteration; and the physical alteration of coasts; etc. All these threats need global legalizing volition to conserve marine biodiversity (Owen 2005).

1.4 Categories of Marine Biomaterials

Several marine origin materials, including biopolymers (such as polysaccharides and proteins), bioceramics, unsaturated fatty acids, natural pigments, toxins, and microbial bioactive substances (antibiotics, enzymes, nanoparticles, etc.), have been extracted and examined in the tissue engineering, food processing, drug delivery, and other vital applications based on their main superior properties (Shahidi and Alasalvar 2011). However, these polymers are playing predominant biological role in the producer habitat (Fig. 1.1).

1.4.1 Biopolymers

The organisms of the sea biosynthesize a large number of biopolymers, which are classified mainly into three classes: polysaccharides, proteins, and nucleic acids (Navarro et al. 2019). In general, polysaccharides are termed as biopolymers constituted from carbohydrate monomers (hexoses) connected together by glycosidic bonds. In particular, chitin, agar, alginate, and carrageenans are the most representative polysaccharides in the marine environment (Navarro et al. 2019). Other polysaccharides also have been obtained from marine animal or bacterial sources. For instance, ulvan and fucoidan are two sulfated polysaccharides that can be found in brown and green algae, respectively (Li et al. 2008). However, Fig. 1.2 represents a side of common marine polysaccharides.

1.4.1.1 Collagen

Collagen is the most abundant protein in the vertebrates, and it is essential to several organs such as bones, muscle, skin, and cartilage. Fundamentally, it acts as a structural matrix. Fish-derived collagen is also a major source of imitation of the

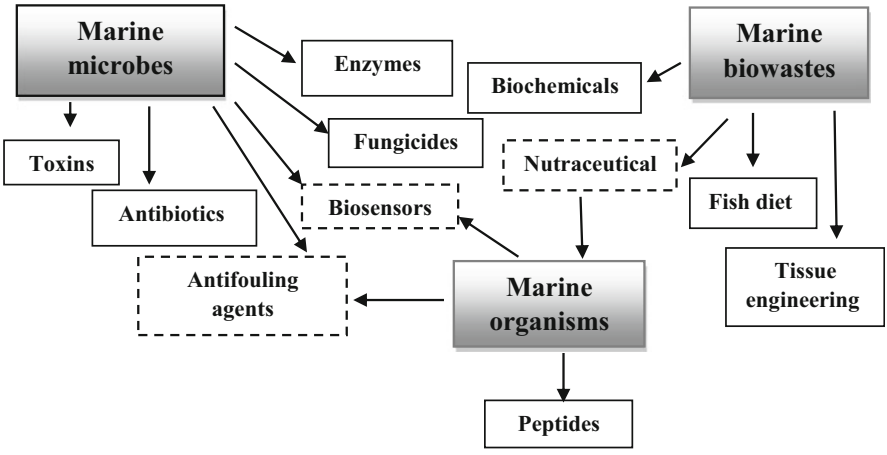
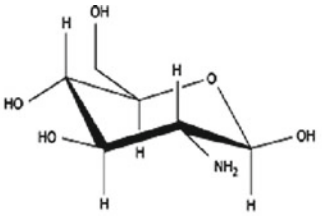
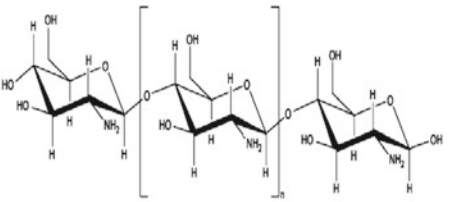


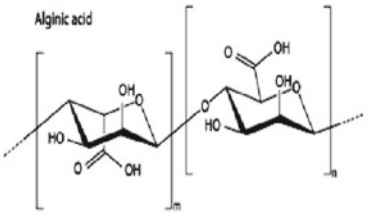
Fig. 1.1 A side of bioactive substances diversity from marine environment



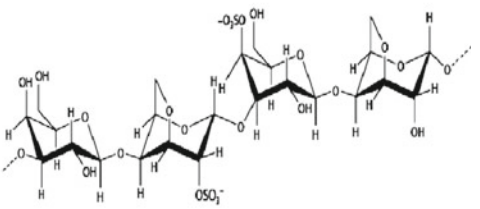
Glucosamine



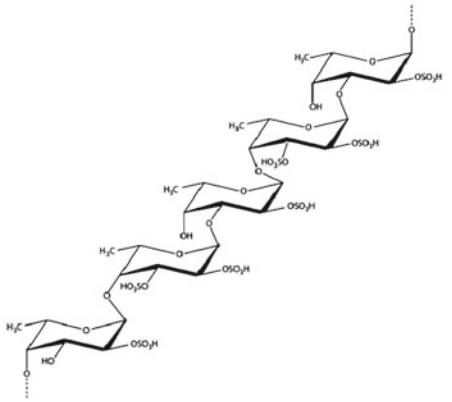
Chitosan



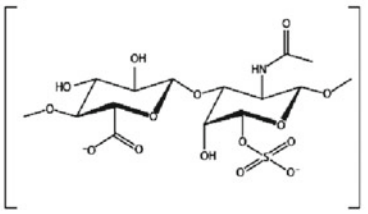
Alginic acid



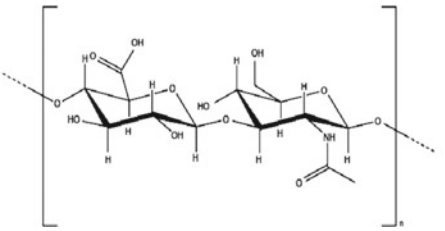
Carrageenan



Fucoidan



Chondroitin sulphate



Hyaluronan

Fig. 1.2 A side of famous structures of common polysaccharides

same quality obtained from other sources. Also, it is used in many applications as pharmaceuticals, nutraceuticals, cosmeceuticals, and foods. In addition, it is widely used in the biomedical applications, particularly in the bone diseases (Kim and Mendis 2006).

Typically, collagen has been obtained from a bovine source which carries a high risk of encephalopathy or spongiform transmissible encephalopathy. So, the marine source is very significant. It has been isolated from fish waste materials like bone, skin, and fins (Nagai and Suzuki 2000); muscles and skins of marine animals (Sikorski and Borderias 1994); the marine sponge (*Chondrosia reniformis*) (Swatschek et al. 2002a); jellyfish (Ehrlich et al. 2010); cuttlefish (Nagai et al. 2001); squid skins; and marine sponge (Swatschek et al. 2002b).

Structurally, collagen is formed from three chains of extended protein, which wrap themselves around each other as a triple helix. Heat denaturation makes collagen easy to convert into gelatin. Both collagen and gelatin are specific proteins, and their content of nonpolar amino acids such as glycine (30%), alanine (10%), and proline (10%), as well as the significant presence of hydroxyproline makes them unique with specific properties (Mendis et al. 2005).

A recombinant collagen is an effective form of processing collagen on a wide scale (Cregg et al. 2000). In spite of the expression system of *Escherichia coli* incorporating many benefits, its shortcomings in expressing eukaryotic proteins make it restricted to develop the small fragments and lack post-translation modifications to the proteins produced. So, various eukaryotic systems have been modified to accomplish this mission, such as *Pichia pastoris* yeast and insect cells of mammalian and tobacco (Cregg et al. 2000). Also, *P. pastoris* is an important development method for very large and complex proteins, such as collagens (Macauley-Patrick et al. 2005).

1.4.1.2 Chitin and Chitosan

After cellulose, chitin is the second most abundant natural polymer. It is a natural polysaccharide found in exoskeletons of arthropods (shrimp, crab, lobster, jellyfish, coral, butterfly, fungi, etc.), and endoskeleton of mollusks. For the chitosan production, the shells of the marine crustacean are widely used as basic resources (Shahidi and Abuzaytoun 2005). Commercially, the chemical hydrolysis and enzymatic methods are generally applied to isolate chitosan from shells of marine crustaceans, which are quite inexpensive, and chitin and chitosan are also used to produce glucosamine (Peniche et al. 2008). Structurally, chitin consisted of a linear chain from units of N-acetyl-D-glucosamine (Kumar et al. 2006), while chitosan is formed from D-glucosamine (70–90%) and units of N-acetyl-D-glucosamine (10–30%), connected by b (1R4) glycosidic linkage (Kumar 2000).

The degree of deacetylation determines the structural difference between chitin and chitosan, i.e., the polymer chain deacetylated unit ratio, since the structural structure is identical for both polymers. The deacetylation degree value for chitosan varies from 50 to 90% making it soluble in dilute acetic acid solutions, in which amine groups in glucosamine units are converted into the soluble protonated form (Pillai et al. 2009). Amazingly, chemical alterations on chitin/chitosan have proven

effective for constructing a large range of useful derivatives with potent mechanical, solubility, and biological features due to the presence of amino groups (Mourya and Inamdar 2008).

Chitosan is a commercially available product made from chitin separated from crab exoskeletons. Basically, the chitin is isolated from its resources via three important steps: demineralization to remove calcium carbonate by hydrochloric acid, deproteinization (using 2% NaOH solutions), and depigmentation (removal of pigments by acetone or other solvents) (Hayes et al. 2008).

1.4.1.3 Agar

Agar is a complex polysaccharide found in red algae's cell wall, namely, agarophytes, including *Gelidium* and *Gracilaria* species. Commercially, agar is derived primarily from the *Gelidium*, *Gracilaria*, *Acantkopeltis*, *Pterocladia*, and *Ceramium* species (Li et al. 2008). Structurally, agar is a polysaccharide consisting of neutral agarose and charged agaropectin. Moreover, it is a complex mixture of water-soluble galactan derivatives. Specific substituents, such as methoxyl, sulfate, and pyruvate groups, increase their strength. The existence of ester sulfate and ketal pyruvate in the backbone gives the polysaccharide an ionic character (Pereira-Pacheco et al. 2007).

The agar production starts with pre-treating the algae for bleaching off coloring matter and eliminating the lipidic matter, followed by extraction of agar, purification, dehydration, and then desiccation, which will impair final polysaccharide quality (Rinaudo 2008). Generally, agar is obtained when the alga is cooked in water, and the remarkable yield loss and decrease in the resulting agar's rheological properties are typically related to elevated extraction temperatures and prolonged extraction time (Kumar and Fotedar 2009). Yield can be improved by adding a small amount of phosphate, which is normally pyrophosphate (Rinaudo 2008). This gel is filtered by freezing and thawing to remove water, which contains salts, pigments, and polysaccharides. The final extract quality is defined by its rheological properties, i.e., a gel will be formed from a high-quality agar at 1.5% solution with strength greater than 700 g/cm^2 (Kumar and Fotedar 2009).

1.4.1.4 Fucoidan

Fucoidan is a sulfated polysaccharide present in a variety of brown seaweed species, for example, *Fucus vesiculosus*, *Macrocystis pyrifera*, *Ecklonia kurome*, *Chorda filum*, *Himanthalia lorea*, *Bifurcaria bifurcate*, *Ascophyllum nodosum*, and *Hizikia fusiformis* (Shiroma et al. 2003), besides sea cucumber species. Structurally, fucoidan is mostly generated from brown algae and contains significant amounts of L-fucose and sulfate ester groups (Li et al. 2008).

During the previous few years, many fucoidans' mechanisms have been detected, and a variety of biological behaviors has been discovered. Fucoidan is a dietary supplement ingredient that has been used for a variety of biological and medicinal purposes (Fitton 2011). The marine fucoidan from *Ascophyllum nodosum* was tested for antitumor, immunological, cosmeceutical (Fitton et al. 2007), and anticoagulant properties (Colliec et al. 1991).

1.4.1.5 Alginate

Alginate is found in the cell walls of the brown seaweeds, as part of a broad family of glycans that make up such community of species. Quantitatively, it represents as the largest polysaccharide in brown algae, adding up to 45% of these seaweeds' dry weight. It is important for its versatility, having both mechanical and structural functions, and ionic roles in brown algae (Nyvall et al. 2003). Mainly, the commercial alginates are isolated from the *Laminaria*, *Ascophyllum*, *Macrocystis*, *Ecklonia*, *Sargassum*, *Lessonia*, and *Durvillaea* species (Gomez et al. 2009).

Brown algae alginates differ chemically from one genus to the next, as well as between distinct algae tissues. Quantity, composition, and sequential structure of the alginates are influenced by various factors including organism taxa, tissue age, season, form, and environmental impacts (Rioux et al. 2007).

Although the algal alginate is well-documented for commercial reasons, certain bacteria can create polysaccharides that are similar to alginate (Rehm and Valla 1997), which are produced mainly by *Azotobacter* and *Pseudomonas*, to protect vegetative cells from desiccation and unfavorable conditions (Sabra et al. 2001).

Practically, the alginate extraction began with an acidification step to change the salts of alginate dissolved in the water into insoluble alginic acid form. In addition, this step removes contaminant glycans, such as fucan and laminaran. Afterward, this is followed by alkaline extraction, using NaOH to convert the insoluble alginic acid into soluble sodium alginate that is extracted by precipitating them from the solution and then dried well (Vauchel et al. 2009).

1.4.1.6 Carrageenan

Carrageenan is a class of linear sulfated polymers isolated from certain red algae species, mainly from the genera *Chondrus*, *Eucheuma*, *Gigartina*, and *Iridaea*. Carrageenan accounts for 60–80% of its dry weight in addition to protein (10–47%); there are florid starch and different metabolites and compounds like vitamins, phenols, and essential oils (Fleurence 1999).

Structurally, carrageenans are linear polymers consisted of a backbone derived from galactose units of alternating link 3, b-D-galactopyranose and 4, a-D-galactopyranose with regular but imprecise structures, depending upon their source and extraction conditions. The number of sulfate groups per basic disaccharide unit after alkaline modification (conversion of precursor molecules into their final commercial product) distinguishes three main types of carrageenan: k (kappa), i (iota), and l (lambda) are disaccharides with one, two, and three sulfate groups, respectively (Falshaw et al. 2001).

Kappaphycus and *Eucheuma* species are the main sources of iota and kappa carrageenan, while many marine algae belonging to the Gigantinaceae family are the main source of the lambda carrageenan. Chemically, kappa-2 carrageenan is a hybrid polysaccharide that contains both kappa and iota units in the same polymer chain (Falshaw et al. 2003).

Both kappa and iota carrageenan gels are hard and brittle, whereas iota carrageenan gels are flexible and soft (Yuguchi et al. 2003). Although all varieties of carrageenan are water-soluble, only the lambda form is soluble at low temperatures

and so rarely forms gels. Solubilization in hot, mild alkaline solutions is used to extract carrageenan from red algae (Hilliou et al. 2006). The process of carrageenan extraction starts up with water and/or mild alkali.

However, several purification strategies are already defined, including dialysis, previous extraction of other components, and reprecipitation among others. Nextly, the produced carrageenan has widely been applied in modern biotechnological methods, profiting from its high potential for chemical alteration, fascinating visco-elastic and biological properties (Silva et al. 2010).

1.4.1.7 Laminarin

Some brown algae species produce laminarin, a linear storage β-1,3-glucan that can be removed. In seasonally variable habitats, its chemical storage form of carbon allows perennial brown algae to decouple growth from photosynthesis. The majority of these plants develop in the winter as seasonal anticipators, reliant on laminarin remobilization, whereas growth has slowed as the storage pool has been filled. Due to this significant ecological importance, a good and precise method for determining and quantifying laminarin is necessary. As a result, a simple and successful cold water extraction process was created in conjunction with a new spectrometric quantitative liquid chromatography-mass spectrometry (LC-MS) (Graiff et al. 2016).

The laminarin content from brown algae on dry basis has been recorded to a level of 35% that differs according to species, harvesting season, environment, and extraction process. Laminarin has been investigated and conducted in various biofunctional activities, including antitumor, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, and anticoagulant. After appropriate chemical modifications and sulfation methods, laminarin's biofunctional activities can be enhanced (Kadam et al. 2015).

1.4.1.8 Ulvan

Ulvan is a polysaccharide cell wall and from 9 to 36% of its dry weight is primarily made up of sulfated rhamnose, uronic acids (glucuronic acid and iduronic acid), and xylose. The cell walls of *Ulva* species contain three additional polysaccharides (cellulose, xyloglucan, and glucuronan), which account for up to 45% of the dry weight biomass (Lahaye and Robic 2007). Ulvan is the only cell wall polysaccharide that contains both rhamnose and iduronic acid, out of the four polysaccharides found inside *Ulva*. Rhamnose is studied for its impact on dermal biosynthesis pathways and plant immunity (Adrien et al. 2017).

Since its uronic acid content is related to a sulfated neutral sugar, ulvan is considered a candidate for the regulation of processes and functions performed by mammalian polysaccharides. Ulvan could be used in biomaterials (wound dressings, tissue engineering, biofilm prevention, and excipients), nutraceuticals (antivirals, antioxidants, antihyperlipidemia, anticancer, and immunostimulants), foods, and agricultural field (Venkatesan et al. 2015; Cunha and Grenha 2016). The choice of extraction conditions usually depends on the physicochemical characteristics of the ulvan molecule and its particular interactions with other components of the plant cell wall (Robic et al. 2009). Co-extraction of contaminants can result in more intensive

downstream purification procedures, depending on the intended application of the ulvan extract (Kidgell et al. 2019).

1.4.1.9 Glycosaminoglycans

Glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) are natural polysaccharides that are linear, complex, and polydisperse. They are made up of a repeating disaccharide unit made up of a hexose and a hexosamine (Zierer and Mourao 2000). The existence of sulfated GAG in a numerous marine phyla-like sponges (Porifera) and various groups of fish, especially in commercially important species such as sharks, skateboard, codfish, salmon, and trout, is now well established (Im et al. 2009). Due to their unique chemistry, marine-derived GAGs are largely investigated due to their medicinal activities (antimicrobial, anticoagulant, and antitumor) and as novel biomaterials having various applications such as bioadhesive molecules, tissue engineering, and regenerative medicine (Medeiros et al. 2000).

Generally, GAGs are extracted from selected proteoglycan bearing tissues following quite general methods via the usage of appropriate solvent conditions for sufficient isolation from the tissue, with 4 M guanidine HCl concentrations. In addition, the employment of protease inhibitors is highly recommended to hinder early proteoglycan degradation. After removal from the protein core, various separation processes such as sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, membrane separation, and chromatographic separation may be used (e.g., size exclusion chromatography). Further purification can be accomplished with dialysis, gel filtration, and ultrafiltration (Yanagishita et al. 2009).

1.4.1.10 Chondroitin Sulfate

Chondroitin sulfate (CS) has been obtained from many marine organisms like whale, shark, squid, king crab, salmon, and sea cucumber. Also, it has been detected in marine invertebrates, such as Cnidaria, Polychaeta, and mollusks (Nandini et al. 2005). Among them, shark cartilage was the widely commercially approved source for nonmammalian CS, but its price has risen, and the ecological factors are the reasons why new innovations are anticipated in the years ahead (Im et al. 2009).

Structurally, CS decomposes from a basic disaccharide unit of hexosamine (D-galactosamine) and hexuronic acid (D-glucuronic acid) arranged in alternating unbranched sequences, which may bear sulfate ester substituents in a variety of positions. Variations in molecular weight, chain length, and sulfate substitution position vary per species, making the sequence diverse (Kinoshita et al. 2001). The CS chains have intriguing activities in central nervous system development, wound repair, infection, growth factor signaling, morphogenesis, and cell division, besides their traditional structural responsibilities (Sugahara et al. 2003). Practically, the CS may be removed by proteolytic digestion along with other GAGs and then separated from other GAG contaminants by organic solvent precipitation or enzymatic degradation of contaminant GAG species (Rocha et al. 2000).

1.4.1.11 Dermatan Sulfate

Marine dermatan sulfate (DS) has been isolated from ray skin, *Raja radula* (Ben Mansour et al. 2009); obtained from the clam, *Scapharca inaequivalvis* (Volpi and Maccari 2008); and found in the amphibian, *Bufo ictericus* (Pelli et al. 2007). Structurally, DS is composed of linear polysaccharides represented by a hexosamine, N-acetyl galactosamine (GalNAc), or glucuronic acid (GlcA) as disaccharide basic units. All DS components serve as potential biological response modifier since they act as (i) stabilizer, cofactor, and/or co-receptor for growth factors, cytokines, and chemokines; (ii) enzyme activity regulator; (iii) signaling molecules in response to cellular damage, like wounding and tumorigenesis; and (iv) target for microbial virulence factors for attaching, invasion, and immune system evasion (Trowbridge and Gallo 2002).

1.4.1.12 Heparan Sulfate

Heparan sulfate (HS) is a carbohydrate that belongs to the GAG family and is structurally similar to heparin. Several workers reported the isolation of HS from a numerous marine sources, such as mollusks, *Tapes philippinarum* (Cesaretti et al. 2004); crustacean, *Penaeus brasiliensis* (Saravanan and Shanmugam 2010); and invertebrates (Mourao and Pereira 1999) and algal heparinoids (de Azevedo et al. 2009). The HS is found on the cell surfaces or in the extracellular matrix of all mammalian organs and tissues in the form of proteoglycans, unlike heparin, which is just generated by connective tissue mast cells. Structurally, HS polysaccharide consists of continuing D-glucuronic acid or L-iduronic acid and D-glucosamine residues (Nagarajan et al. 2018).

Indeed, HS is excited in all mammalian tissues as a proteoglycan containing two or three HS chains that are tightly linked to cell surface or extracellular matrix proteins. Consequently, such poses HS for binding to a number of protein ligands and controls a wide range of biological activities, including developmental processes, angiogenesis, blood clotting, and tumor metastasis (Lindahl and Li 2009).

1.4.1.13 Keratan Sulfate

Keratan sulfate (KS) is present in some brachiopods, particularly in extracellular matrix of lophophores (Cole and Hall 2004). Also, it was detected in catfish, *Corydoras aeneus*, and loaches, *Acanthophthalmus semicinctus* and *Botia horae*. It is bounded to the protein core via an N-glycosyl linkage between N-acetyl-D-glucosamine and asparagines (Ito and Yamagata 1984; Ralphs and Benjamin 1992). Recently, a KS disaccharide [GlcNAc6S(β1–3)Galactose(β1-]-branched CS-E was identified from the clam *Mactra chinensis* (Higashi and Toida 2017). Structurally, the KS basic unit is a repeating N-acetylated lactosamine (Huckerby 2002). Commercially, the isolation of GAGs is carried out according to Maccari et al. (2015) via acetone defatting, proteolysis, collection of the GAGs, and fractionation of GAGs by anion-exchange chromatography and finally eliminating salts by desalting step.

1.4.1.14 Hyaluronic Acid

Hyaluronic acid (HA), also called hyaluronan, is a non-sulfated glycosaminoglycan with a major intercellular component of most connective tissues, such as cartilage, human eye vitreous, umbilical cord, and synovial fluid (Liao et al. 2005). It is also present in the umbilical cord and rooster comb (Pomin and Mulloy 2018). Mostly, HA is found in the marine cartilaginous fishes and in the vitreous humor of different fishes. Furthermore, the hyaluronan can be easily produced in large scales through microbial fermentation of streptococci. In addition to recombinant technology, commercial hyaluronan can be produced by extracting with water from the rooster comb, umbilical cord, synovial fluid, or vitreous humor and then precipitated with appropriate organic solvent (Liao et al. 2005).

Structurally, HA consisted of alternating disaccharide units of a-1,4-D-glucuronic acid and b-1,3-N-acetyl-D-glucosamine, linked by b (1R3) bonds (Pomin and Mulloy 2018). The polymers of HA possess extraordinarily wide-ranging biological functions depending on the size of the molecule (Tammi et al. 2002) as follows:

1. *In cartilage* – Aggregation centers for aggrecan, a big proteoglycan chondroitin sulfate, are formed by HA, which serves as an essential structural part of the matrix (Prehm 2002).
2. *In the skin* – HA functions as a scavenger of free radicals created by sunlight's UV radiation, which would otherwise cause oxidative stress in cells, potentially causing genetic damage (Juhlin 1997).
3. *In synovial fluid* – The high concentration of high molar weight HA provides necessary joint lubrication and acts as a shock absorber, reducing moving bone tension and reducing joint wear. However, as the viscosity of the HA decreases, its lubricant and shock-absorbing properties are compromised, resulting in impaired joint movement and pain (Soltes et al. 2006).

1.4.2 Bioceramics

Besides biopolymers, natural marine materials from sponges, corals, and nacres are an abundant source of inorganic materials significantly relevant for tissue replacement and regeneration. The context will focus on the marine calcium compounds (carbonates and phosphates) and silicates under this topic, while their relevance for biomedical applications will be explained below.

1.4.2.1 Hydroxyapatite

Hydroxyapatite (HAp) is typically prepared using a synthetic process with several benefits. However, many marine sources have also been used to extract HAp using different methods such as the conventional thermal calcination method, the alkaline hydrolysis process, and the polymer-assisted process (Venkatesan et al. 2010). The HAp has been detected to play an essential role in several bone-related applications, in particular, in the form of nanocrystals (Chesnutt et al. 2009). HAp has

considerable biocompatibility in bone tissue because of its chemical composition, which is similar to bone material (Sopyan et al. 2007).

1.4.2.2 Calcium Carbonates and Phosphates

Calcium-phosphorus compounds like HAp have a specific significance in the biomedical field since they are similar to the mineral elements of bones. The plentiful calcium carbonate may be the base material used to produce different calcium phosphates. While there are many sources of calcium carbonate, much focus has been drawn to coral skeletal carbonate, notably as substitute materials for orthopedics and dentistry. Corals have a unique architecture, namely, porosity, porous size, and interconnectivity of the pores. Calcium carbonate compounds (such as forms of aragonite or calcite) are found in numerous marine organisms (Laine et al 2008).

Actually, the characteristics of calcium-phosphorus compounds have been applied in the regeneration of bone tissue. In addition to microstructure, other characteristics, such as microstructural composition and mechanical properties, play a significant role in the in vivo activities of these biomaterials. Coral-derived materials have mostly been used in the form of granules and blocks for bone grafting, as well as scaffolding for bone tissue engineering (Kamenos et al. 2009). For instance, many routes to convert the calcium carbonate skeleton of red algae *Corallina officinalis* into calcium phosphates are described by Oliveira et al. (2007). By performing both thermal and chemical treatments, the possibility to obtain a calcium-phosphate material with HAp nanocrystallites rises up.

Furthermore, calcium phosphates, especially HAps, can be found in fish bones and seashells and can be obtained directly from marine resources. For example, Boutinguiza et al. (2011a) have described a laser-based approach for producing calcium-phosphate compounds in microparticulate form from fish bones. Using a continuous wave, HAp powder can be converted to nanoparticles, and various crystal forms can be created, with pulsed lasers promoting crystalline nanoparticle creation and continuous-wave lasers promoting amorphous nanoparticle development (Boutinguiza et al. 2011b).

1.4.2.3 Biosilica

Many aquatic species, including sponges, diatoms, radiolarians, and choanoflagellates, create biosilica, also known as biogenic silica, which is made of glassy amorphous silica. Demospongiae and Hexactinellida are the two kinds of sponges that have a silica skeleton, while Calcarea has a calcium carbonate skeleton (Schroder et al. 2008). One example of a silica skeleton of a sponge from Hexactinellida class is the impressive skeleton of *Euplectella aspergillum* species (Aizenberg et al. 2005). The silica skeleton, on the other hand, is made up of silica spicules, which are glassy spikes with an axial filament surrounded by hundreds of dense layers of hydrated silica (Venugopal 2009).

Silica can be extracted by soaking collected sponges in a 25% solution of sodium hypochlorite until all cellular material has been removed, then washing the residual material with water, and soaking it overnight in concentrated HNO3/H2SO4 (1:4).

The acid-insoluble substance that results is made up of silica spicules that have been cleansed with a silicate in filament (Brutchey and Morse 2008).

Sponge spicules have been shown to be highly flexible and durable, and they are used as electrical conductors, with the electrical charge presumably being transferred along collagen-formed channels, as deproteinized spicules have a lower electrical conductivity (Kubisz and Ehrlich 2007). Therefore, sponge spicules are fascinating structures that can be used to teach biomimetic design of a variety of devices, such as optical fibers, that can be manufactured at room temperature, demonstrating the advantages of biological synthesis (Woesz et al. 2006).

On the other hand, diatoms are a broad category of microalgae that are usually unicellular. The diatom's live component is contained within a silicon dioxide cage (Venugopal 2009). Frustules are exoskeletons comprised of silica nanoparticles that are formed into a highly structured structure with porous networks at various scales. Frustules are composite materials made up of silica nanoparticles packed with a matrix of carbohydrates and proteins. Their nanostructure is genetically determined and species-specific (Schroder et al. 2008).

Incredibly, the siliceous exoskeletons remain intact when cells die, giving morphological character to inorganic structures. In the seas, the inorganic elements sink to the ocean floor following cell death, reappearing to the surface as "diatomaceous earth" following millions of years of aging. Biosilica can be used as fresh diatomaceous silica, harvested from the field or prepared from cultivation to be low metal pollutants, suggesting that diatoms synthesize an almost pure silica matrix and are not needed for purification. Biosilica is thus considered for biomedical approaches, namely, bone substitution and regeneration strategies. For example, when human osteogenic sarcoma cells (SaOS-2) were grown on biosilica surfaces in the presence of b-glycerophosphate, they showed enhanced mineralization activity (Muller et al. 2009).

Moreover, Lopez-Alvarez et al. (2008) described the marine precursors for the biomorphic silicon carbide ceramics as a thin, tough, and high-strength material with predictable microstructure which is the resultant product. This material has been derived from the aquatic plant *Juncus maritimus*, since the morphology of the plant can be observed after pyrolysis and before and after silicone infiltration.

1.4.3 Marine Fatty Acids

Marine fish and shellfish contain good fatty acid composition and could bring many health benefits. The prevalence of daily marine fish consumption among rural and urban adults was 51% and 34%, respectively. As a result, it's critical to enhance understanding of the diverse nutrient contents of fish and shellfish species by providing full nutritional value information, particularly for fatty acid content linked to a variety of health impacts (Abd Aziz et al. 2013). Also, marine fish is a potent source for docosahexaenoic acids (DHA) and eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA). In addition, microalgae are used to make fatty acid or omega-3 fatty acid. Marine

fatty acids, especially EPA and DHA, have long been utilized to treat heart problems (Farzaneh-Far et al. 2010) and cancer (Patterson et al. 2011).

Commercially, the extraction of fatty acids is carried out according to Kinsella et al. (1977). However, the specimens of fish fillets are homogenized with a mixture of methanol and chloroform, which is filtered and then transferred to a separatory funnel to collect the lower phase and concentrated with a rotary evaporator. Lipid samples were converted to their corresponding methyl esters then concentrated to a fine volume for injection into the gas chromatograph. Quantitatively, the concentration of fatty acids is measured and expressed in mg/g of total lipids against tridecanoic acid methyl ester as an internal standard (Johnson and Saikia 2009).

1.4.4 Marine Pigments

Marine pigments are widely spread in marine algae and also in all living matters as fungi, invertebrates, and mammals. Not only do these pigments display the color, they are composed of various chemical components like terpenoids and melanins, which are found particularly in bacteria. The secondary metabolites of marine bacteria, especially colored species, show potential biological characteristics like antibiotics and anticancers. In such a manner, marine actinomycetes, *Pseudoalteromonas*, and cyanobacteria are widely investigated species (Delgado-Vargas et al. 2000).

Depending upon their pigment concentrations, the marine algae are divided as brown (Phaeophyceae), red (Rhodophyceae), and green algae (Chlorophyceae) (Khan et al. 2010). However, the main classes of algal pigments (chlorophylls, carotenoids, and phycobiliproteins) are as follows:

1. *Chlorophylls* – which are substituted tetrapyrrole with a centrally bound magnesium atom where the porphyrin tetrapyrrole is further esterified to a diterpene alcohol, phytol, to produce chlorophyll (Ferruzzi and Blakeslee 2007).
2. *Carotenoids* – which are linear polyenes that operate as light energy harvesters and antioxidants, inhibiting the formation of reactive oxygen species caused by light and air exposure (Ioannou and Roussis 2009). Moreover, carotenoids are divided into two kinds: carotenes, which are unsaturated hydrocarbons, and xanthophylls, which include one or more oxygen-containing functional groups (Sousa et al. 2006).
3. *Phycobiliproteins* – which are pigments that absorb energy in the visible range (450–650 nm) and are employed as an auxiliary or antenna pigment for photosynthetic light collection (Sousa et al. 2006). However, Table 1.1 shows some sources and bioactivities of these pigments.

Additionally, natural pigments have gotten a lot of interest among the useful compounds discovered in marine algae. Bioactivities like anticancer, antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, anti-obesity, antiangiogenic, etc. are among the many biological properties of these pigments (Pangestuti and Kim 2011).

Table 1.1 Marine-derived natural pigments and some of their potential bioactivity

Marine pigment	Main source	Bioactivity
Chlorophyll a	*Enteromorpha prolifra* *Fucus vesiculosus*	Antioxidant
β-Carotene	*Porphyra tenera*	Antimutagenic
Fucoxanthin	*Fucus serratus* *Undaria pinnatifida*	Antioxidant Anticancer
Phycoerythrin	*Aglaothamnion neglectum* *Gracilaria* sp.	Brightest fluorescent dye Labeling antibodies
Phycocyanin	*Aphanizomenon flos-aquae* *Spirulina* sp.	Anti-oxidation Anti-inflammation

1.4.5 Marine Toxins

Marine toxins usually consist of organic compounds that attract scientists to their inordinately high biological and biomedical activity. Depending on their categorization, marine toxins can be classified as alkaloids, steroids, peptides, or proteins, and their biological action can vary dramatically. Porifera, cnidarians, mollusks, echinoderms, vertebrates, sea snakes, and fish have all been identified as major marine toxin sources. Their production from marine animals is an important strategy. The use of marine creatures in their manufacturing is an essential approach (Gerssen et al. 2010).

Particularly, phycotoxins often accumulate in a variety of marine species, such as fish, crabs, and shellfish, such as mussels, oysters, scallops, and clams. Toxins accumulate in the digestive glands of shellfish, although they have no adverse impacts on the shellfish themselves. Clearly, consuming large amounts of infected shellfish by humans can result in severe consumer intoxication (Van Dolah and Ramsdell 2001).

In particular, different algal species produce marine toxins under certain conditions. These toxins may be then accumulated in the aforementioned species. A severe intoxication may occur when contaminated species of shellfish are consumed. The main detected toxins are amnesic shellfish poisoning (ASP), paralytic shellfish poisoning (PSP), diarrheal shellfish poisoning (DSP), azaspiracid shellfish poisoning (AZP), and neurological shellfish poisoning (NSP). These toxins are analyzed in mice or rats by way of bioassay. Subsequently, the recent methods for extracting many lipophilic marine toxins have been developed based on the functional tests such as the chemical assays and biochemical methods (Gerssen et al. 2010).

1.4.6 Microbially Marine Bioactive Substances

Certainly, the marine environment is a mostly untapped source for discovering novel microorganisms (bacteria, fungus, actinomycetes, cyanobacteria, microalgae, and diatoms) that are bioactive secondary metabolite makers. Significantly, Blunt et al. (2004) ordered the marine organisms in the environment descendingly as follows:

sponges (37%), coelenterates (21%), and microorganisms (18%), which are major sources of biomedical compounds, followed by algae (9%), echinoderms (6%), tunicates (6%), mollusks (2%), bryozoans (1%), etc. (Bhatnagar and Kim 2010).

Nonetheless, marine microorganisms have isolated a variety of biologically active substances of varying degrees of action, such as antimicrobial, antiviral, antitumor, anticancer, antiproliferative, cytotoxic, photoprotective, and antibiotic and antifouling properties. Some of these metabolites with high antibacterial and antifungal activities have been applied intensively as antibiotics and can be effective against infectious diseases such as HIV, multiple bacterial infection conditions (penicillin, cephalosporins, vancomycin, and streptomycin), or neuropsychiatric sequelae (Pandey 2019) (Fig. 1.3).

The general biophysical and biochemical properties and also the chemical structures of bioactive substances derived from marine microorganisms make them suitable for cosmeceutical and nutraceutical applications (Bhatnagar and Kim 2010). Indeed, many of these metabolites are widely used as antibiotics (e.g., penicillin, cephalosporins, streptomycin, and vancomycin) and may be effective against several infectious diseases like HIV-1, multiple bacterial infection conditions or neural tube defects, and neuropsychiatric sequelae (Berdy 2005).

Some others have also been used against several types of cancers (e.g., bleomycin, dactinomycin, doxorubicin, and staurosporine) and risk of coronary heart disease or may act as immunosuppressants (cyclosporin) to aid in organ transplantation (Ruiz et al. 2010). In addition to synthetic drugs, pharmaceutical companies now focus on natural products from marine microorganisms in most developed and developing countries (Bhatnagar and Kim 2010).

Moreover, polyhydroxyalkanoates, as biomedical materials, have the potential to replace the petrochemical plastics in surgical pins, sutures, staples, blood vessel replacements, bone replacements, and plates, medical implants, as well as drug delivery devices due to their highly effective biodegradability and biocompatibility. Microbes create a lot of PHA and ought to be researched more in this area (Khanna and Srivastava 2005).

Furthermore, it is known that many marine microorganisms create nanostructured particles with characteristics similar to chemically produced materials. The formation of magnetic nanoparticles by magnetotactic bacteria, the growth of silver nanoparticles inside the periplasmic space of *Pseudomonas stutzeri*, and the synthesis of palladium nanoparticles utilizing sulfate reduction bacteria are all examples of this (Pages et al. 2008). However, the periplasmic space and vesicles compartmentalization allow greater size control when nanoparticles are synthesized utilizing microorganisms. Controlling factors like pH, temperature, substrate concentration, and period of substrate exposure might help regulate the pace of intracellular particle production and hence the size of the nanoparticles to some extent (Gericke and Pinches 2006a, b).

Intracellular SNPs produced by *Idiomarina* sp. PR58–8, a marine bacterium, were shown to be extremely resistant to silver (Seshadri et al. 2012a, b). Microbes produced from mangrove *Escherichia coli*, *Aspergillus niger*, *Penicillium fellutanum*, and *Thraustochytrids* are capable of rapidly reducing silver ions in

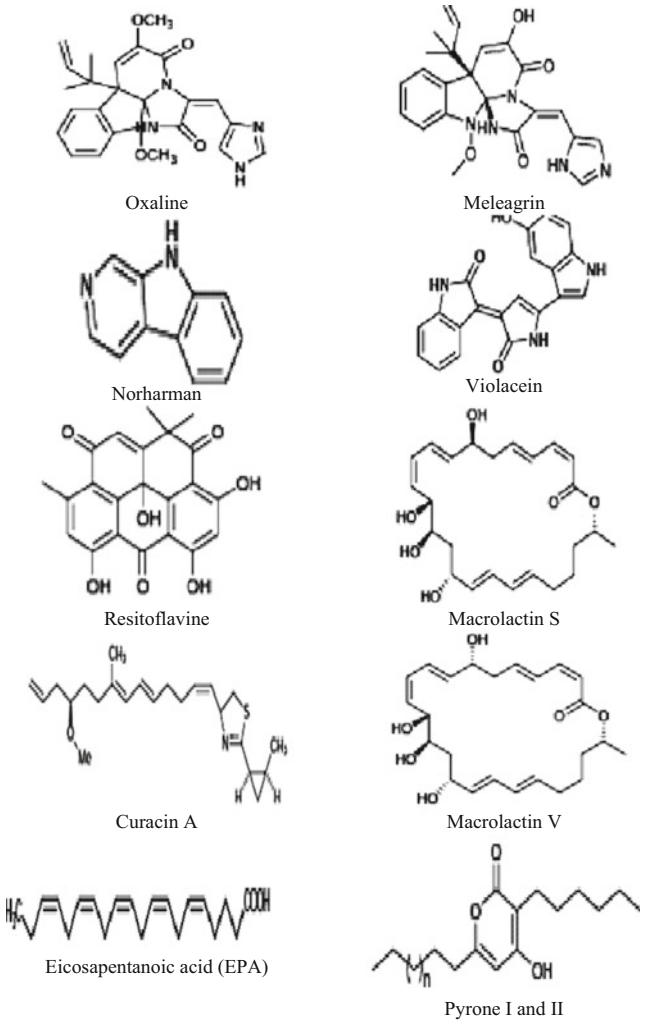


Fig. 1.3 A side of some potent marine microbial metabolites

antibacterial applications (Subramanian et al. 2010). Some mangrove-derived yeast species, such as *Pichia capsulata* and *Rhodosporidium diobovatum*, have been found to have the ability to synthesize nanoparticles, similar to these marine bacteria and fungi (Subramanian et al. 2010). The protein responsible for the reduction of silver ions and stability of silver nanoparticles is secreted by the marine cyanobacterium *Oscillatoria willei* (Ali et al. 2011). Afterward, Ali et al. (2012) used the marine cyanobacterium *Phormidium tenue* NTDM05 to synthesize cadmium sulfide nanoparticles.

1.5 Potential Applications of Marine Biomaterials

Due to unique properties and characteristics of marine organisms and their biomaterials, their numerous applications have been recently proposed for more than one field of life (Rahman 2016). Antiviral, antibacterial, antifungal, anticoagulant, antimalarial, antiprotozoal, antituberculosis, and agents have been identified from marine creatures, algae, fungus, and bacteria. Biomaterials are chemicals derived from marine creatures that have been discovered to be potential medicinal agents on several occasions (Schumacher et al. 2011).

Commercially, at least 14 biotechnology companies, mostly placed in North America and Europe, are known to be extensively engaged in product development and/or collaboration with research institutions in the search for new substances and compounds from deep-sea organisms and genetic resources both within and outside national jurisdiction. There are now six firms promoting products.

Despite the high costs of product development and commercialization, not more than 2% of candidates are clinically approved and produced, profits from a compound derived from a sponge to treat herpes have been estimated as US$50–100 million per year, and the estimated value of anticancer agents derived from marine organisms is up to US$1 billion per year (UNEP 2006).

1.5.1 Biological Applications

1.5.1.1 Production of Antibiotics

Antibiotics with novel structural classes must be discovered and developed for a variety of reasons. Resistance to existing antimicrobials is increasing, as is the toxicity of some of the currently available medicines, limiting their usage (Anand et al. 2019).

Just a small portion of the total number of living animals in marine habitats have been discovered and documented (Nweze et al. 2020). For instance, an antibacterial, coumarin-6-ol, 3,4-dihydro-4,4,5,7-tetramethyl, produced by *Streptomyces* VITAK1 showed inhibition to methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and other Gram-negative and Gram-positive pathogens (Abirami et al. 2015). A strain of *Streptomyces rochei* PM49 secretes sulfanyl cyslabdan-like product, which exhibits activity against MDR and ESBL-producing strains (Shanthi et al. 2015).

Recently, new compounds with anti-MRSA activity, paraphaeosphaeride D and berkleasmin F and A, were isolated from an artificial pond sediment fungus *Paraphaeosphaeria* sp. These compounds not only enhanced anti-MRSA activity (Suga et al. 2016). Furthermore, a fungus, *Pestalotia* sp., associated with the mangrove plant, *Heritiera fomes*, exhibited antimicrobial activities especially against MRSA strain (Nurunnabi et al. 2018).

1.5.1.2 Production of Antiviral Agents

The peak of antiviral pharmacology based on the natural products from seawater reached during 1999. Many marine polyketides, terpenes, compounds containing

nitrogen, and polysaccharides have demonstrated remarkable in vitro activity against pathogenic viruses (Uzair et al. 2011). Antiviral activity was screened against human immunodeficiency virus 1 (HIV-1), herpes simplex virus-2 (HSV-2), Junin virus (JV), poliovirus (PV), severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) virus, and measles virus and influenza virus. Antiviral chemicals, halichondrin B, homohalichondrin B, and isohomohalicondrin B, were obtained from the sponge *Lissodendoryx* sp. These chemicals have reduced tumor cell growth during in vivo and in vitro replication experiments. Viruses are the causatives of the most deadly diseases such as cancer, acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), and herpes simplex (Arshad et al. 2019). Polycitone A, an aromatic alkaloid identified from an ascidian *Polycitor* sp., functions as a superior inhibitor of HIV and retrovirus reverse transcriptase (Bailly 2015).

In a marine *Pseudomonas* sp., a glycosaminoglycan substance was discovered. This chemical has antiviral properties against influenza A and B viruses (Mayer and Hamann 2002). The topoisomerase enzyme of the poxvirus *Molluscum contagiosum* was inhibited by a sansalvamide antiviral chemical derived from a champignon, a fungus, *Fusarium* sp. (Hwang et al. 1999). In the influenza virus, calyceramides produced from the sea sponge *Discodermia calyx* inhibited neuraminidase (Nakao et al. 2001).

Other antiviral compounds are isolated from different marine fungi such as *Aspergillus* sp., *Penicillium* sp., *Stachybotrys* sp., *Cladosporium* sp., and *Neosartorya* sp. Among them, one compound revealed marked inhibitory activity against HSV, and others showed a powerful anti-influenza virus activity (Moghadamtousi et al. 2015).

1.5.1.3 Production of Antioxidant Agents

The toxicity of several synthetic antioxidants can exhibit many health problems in human. Therefore, several researchers have paid attention to many safe natural antioxidants to be used without any toxicity in human. Marine bacteria and microalgae, on the other hand, are the primary creators of important compounds such as antioxidant enzymes (e.g., catalase and superoxide dismutase) and antioxidant substances (e.g., exopolysaccharides, carotenoids, and bioactive peptides) with valuable biological applications (Nolan et al. 2015). In addition, using marine biomaterials including peptides, chitosan and chitosan derivatives, as well as sulfated polysaccharides like fucoidan and laminar, numerous researchers examined antioxidant properties (Kim and Venkatesan 2013).

1.5.1.4 Production of Anti-Inflammatory Agents

Currently, certain classes of drugs with anti-inflammatory activity like aspirin, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), and corticosteroids are applied in the clinic with the development of the synthetic drug formulation (Kim et al. 2016). All of the therapies, however, after long-term medication with high dose, can cause quite harmful side effects to human. Many new secondary metabolites produced from marine-derived fungus have been identified, all of which have significant anti-inflammatory properties. Marine fungal compounds have gotten a lot of interest

lately because of their unique mode of action, and they've become one of the most promising areas for anti-inflammatory medication research. However, over 50 of 133 substances belonging to 5 different chemical families, including alkaloids, terpenoids, polyketides, peptides, and other substantially anti-inflammatory properties, have been discovered in the previous 2 decades (Xu et al. 2019).

1.5.1.5 Production of Anticancer Agents

Drugs used to treat cancer are often very toxic, killing both cancerous and non-cancerous cells. By combining immunotherapy with cuttlefish, *Sepiella maindroni* and *S. rochebruns*, Liu et al. (2015) created a more powerful cancer treatment regimen.

Cuttlefish ink is largely made up of melanin and proteoglycan, and it is a byproduct of the processing of marine products. Because of its anticancer, immunomodulatory, and hemostatic properties, cuttlefish ink is frequently utilized in folklore Chinese medicine. Sulfated polysaccharides/glycoproteins have been shown to have anticancer properties (Kim and Venkatesan 2013). Over 200 polysaccharides/glycoconjugates have been isolated from the well-known traditional Chinese medicine, *Ganoderma lucidum* (Cor et al. 2018).

1.5.2 Biomedical Applications

1.5.2.1 In Process of Drug Delivery

Drug delivery systems in the future can be described as means for introducing therapeutic substances into the body to aid or improve tissue function in various organs. Natural polymers derived from marine resources have gained popularity in recent years due to their abundance and biological activity when compared to polymers derived from other sources (Rizvi and Saleh 2018).

To encapsulate or load the desired amount of protein, alginate microspheres are used in order to protect the protein's activities, transport it to the required locations, and control the protein's release kinetics. Layer-by-layer deposition methods were used to coat alginate microspheres with *Bombyx mori* silk fibroin, which produced a mechanically stable shell and a diffusion barrier for the encapsulated proteins (Kim 2015).

1.5.2.2 In Process of Gene Delivery

Gene therapy, which involves restoring missing genes, replacing faulty genes, or suppressing gene expression to treat inherited and acquired illnesses, is a revolutionary kind of molecular medicine that has a significant influence on human health in the next generation (Goncalves and Paiva 2017). In gene therapy, one of the big hurdles is the lack of a suitable gene carrier (Scheller and Krebsbach 2009).

The use of marine polymeric materials such as chitosan, alginate, and pullulan as gene delivery carriers has been considered. Because of their biocompatibility, low immunogenicity, and low toxicity, they are attractive nonviral vectors. Furthermore, they are simple to modify for the suggested applications while maintaining desired

physicochemical and physiological characteristics. With positive charges, they are also biodegradable, biocompatible, less toxic, and less immunogenic (Huh et al. 2017).

The transfection effectiveness of chitosan/DNA complexes or gene silencing of chitosan/siRNA complexes is affected by a number of factors including pH, molecular weight (MW), and degree of deacetylation of chitosan, N/P ratio, serum, and cell type. Also, DNA or siRNA complexation and cellular uptake of the polyplexes at the extracellular environment, release of DNA or siRNA from endosomes in the cytoplasm, release of DNA or siRNA from the chitosan carrier, and DNA transfer into the nucleus at the intracellular environment are also steps in gene transfection or gene silencing. Particularly, the delayed release of DNA from chitosan/DNA complexes from endosomes into the cytoplasm is one of the major problems with poor DNA transfection efficiency or siRNA gene silencing by chitosan (Cao et al. 2019).

1.5.2.3 In Engineering of Tissue Repairing

Tissue engineering's major objective is to use a sensible mix of cells, biomimetic matrices, biological signals, and biophysical cues to replace or repair the normal biological activities of tissues or organs. By providing particular cell recognition sites and signaling molecules in a structure, polymeric scaffolds are meant to actively regulate cell activities and promote tissue growth in a temporal and spatial manner (Chen and Liu 2016).

Due to its strong similarity to glucosaminoglycans, a component of the extracellular matrix that interacts with collagen fibers and therefore promotes cell adhesion, chitosan is a suitable material for bone tissue creation. Chitosan may be converted into various structural geometries for regenerative applications, just as textiles, films, and sponges (Dey et al. 2016). To improve its osteoinductive capabilities, it can be transformed into lyophilized tridimensional scaffolds and mixed with ceramic materials (Rinaudo 2006). Chitosan may produce high porosity networks, which provide a perfect internal architecture for cell adhesion and proliferation, in addition to its outstanding biocompatibility (Rashid et al. 2014).

Because of its antibacterial characteristics, the use of chitosan for guided bone regeneration has gotten a lot of interest (Aguilar et al. 2019). For example, Lee et al. (2009) synthesize a guided bone regeneration membrane by combining hybridized chitosan with silica xerogel via sol-gel. The resulting membrane has the normal features of any membrane, including flexibility and bioactive capabilities that make it appropriate for other molecules. The hybrid's apatite nucleation ability, cellular response, and mechanical characteristics were all substantially linked with the membrane's bone regeneration capabilities. The utilization of marine structures/species as a template for developing synthetic skin tissue is proposed as a potential method (Lim et al. 2019).

In terms of biological, physical, and mechanical characteristics, the ideal synthetic skin substitute should be quite comparable to real skin. Marine organism-derived collagen scaffolds have been found to be extremely absorbent, elastic, and resistant to high temperature and bacterial assault in studies, indicating that they

have a lot of potential in therapeutic applications. When implanted in Sprague Dawley rats, biomimetic tilapia collagen nanofibers also encouraged fast skin regeneration (Halim et al. 2010). Furthermore, research has focused on different gelatin-based composites scaffolds and microspheres to increase hepatic cell activities, such as chitosan/gelatin and silk fibroin/gelatin. By using 3D bioprinting microtechnology tools and biomaterials, to investigate hepatic cell activities and inquire to mimic human illnesses, it is now possible to manufacture 2D and 3D hepatic microenvironments (Nikolova and Chavali 2019).

1.5.3 Pharmaceutical Applications

More innovative pharmaceutical and cosmetic goods using chemicals derived from natural resources have been developed as a result of a global trend for products that are deemed healthful, environmentally sustainable, and ecologically friendly (Amberg and Fogarassy 2019). So, many marine compounds have a great potential as cosmeceuticals or nutricosmetics due to their antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, anti-allergic, antiaging, anti-wrinkle, anti-tyrosinase, and MMP inhibitory activities as well as UV protection. Alkaloids, peptides, proteins, lipids, mycosporines, MAAs, glycosides, and isoprenoids are just a few of the chemicals produced from marine bacteria that have photoprotective, antiaging, antibacterial, antioxidant, and moisturizing properties (Alves et al. 2020).

Among the bioactive substances with the antiaging activity of the marine origin, exopolysaccharides (EPSs) are one of the most widely used cosmeceutical products (Guillerme et al. 2017). Deepsane, an exopolysaccharide derived from the marine bacterium *Alteromonas macleodii*, is commercially available under the name Abyssine® for soothing and reducing the irritation of sensitive skin against chemical, mechanical, and UVB aggression (Le Costaouëc et al. 2012). Antiaging products contain a combination of EPSs from *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. isolated from Antarctic waters, which boost collagen I production and improve skin structural characteristics (Martins et al. 2014). A deep-sea hydrothermal vent marine bacterium, *Vibrio diabolicus*, produces an EPS-HE 800 (Shindo et al. 2007).

Astaxanthin pigment is also produced by some marine-derived bacteria as *Paracoccus* sp. (Lee et al. 2004) and *Agrobacterium* sp. (Yokoyama and Miki 1995). Methylene chloride, produced by new marine *Pseudomonas* sp., can reduce the pigmentation of human melanocytes and cultured skin cells by inhibiting the expression of tyrosinase (Kang et al. 2011). The anti-tyrosinase activity of N-acyldehydrotyrosine analogues, thalassotalic acids derived from the marine bacteria *Thalassotalea* sp., has been detected (Bownik and Stpniewska 2016). Ectoine was discovered in *Ectothiorhodospira halochloris* and Actinobacteridae when they were exposed to high salt concentrations. This compound improves the hydration of the cell surface (Kunte et al. 2014).

Interestingly, some biosurfactants derived from marine microorganisms, such as mannosylerythritol, rhamnolipids, and sophorolipids, have been used in the cosmetic industry because of their emulsifying, solubilizing, wetting, foaming, and dispersing

properties, which can not only improve the solubilization of hydrophobic ingredients in products but also facilitate their delivery through the skin barrier (Fenibo et al. 2019), and they have low irritancy to the skin. Thus, it is ideal for the anti-wrinkle formulations (Varvaresou and Iakovou 2015).

In addition, algal alginate's traditional uses in pharmaceutics include thickening, gel-forming, and stabilizing agents. Alginate hydrogels containing poly (caprolactone), carbon nanotubes, and chitosan have been used to integrate a variety of medicines (Martău et al. 2019). Furthermore, significant findings have verified the antioxidant activity of fucoidan's sulfate contents (Wang et al. 2019), and there is good evidence for its function in wound healing by boosting fibroblast repopulation and angiogenesis (Savari et al. 2019).

Furthermore, microalgae such as *Chlorella*, *Spirulina*, *Dunaliella*, and *Odontella* species are rich sources of several bioactive compounds with potential applications as nutraceuticals and cosmeceuticals (Cotas et al. 2020). Microalgal cosmeceuticals are of great interest as some of them synthesize substances that absorb UV radiation, which can prevent dermal ECM deterioration, wrinkles, laxity, coarseness, and mottled pigmentation of the skin. For example, the cyanobacterial sunscreen pigment scytonemin absorbs UVA/UVB radiation more efficiently than a commercial formulation (Alves et al. 2020). Several cyanobacteria, including *Nostoc* sp., *Calothrix crustacean*, and *Chlorogloeopsis* sp., generate scytonemin (Singh et al. 2017). The halotolerant microalga *Dunaliella salina* may produce more than 10% of its dry weight from carotene, which is considered as another UV protection pigment (Fu et al. 2013). Astaxanthin can help skin health by affecting several stages of the oxidative damage cascade and reducing inflammatory mediators (Novoveská et al. 2019).

1.5.4 Food and Nutritional Applications

Bioactive substances (proteins, peptides, polysaccharides, fatty acids, polyphenols, probiotics, enzymes, vitamins, and minerals) with nutraceutical uses in the food and supplement sectors are found in and derived from marine environments. In the marine bioprocessing sector, there is also a lot of potential to convert and use most marine food items and byproducts as important functional products. Also, several nutrient-derived compounds such as chitooligosaccharides, flavonoids, polyphenols, and fatty acids are able to inhibit the activation and expression of matrix metalloproteinases (Suleria et al. 2015). So, these compounds could have a strong potential for the development of nutricosmetic products. However, enzymatic hydrolysis of marine foods permits the production of functional components such bioactive peptides and chitooligosaccharides (Zhang et al. 2012).

Lipase, chitinolytic enzymes, polyphenol oxidase (catecholase, tyrosinase, cresolase, polyphenols, catechol oxidase, etc.), and transglutaminase are enzymes originating from marine sources, and red algal enzymes have been implicated in the starch breakdown pathway (e.g., α-1,4-glucanase). Proteolytic enzymes from

microorganisms, plants, and animals may also be utilized in the production of marine food hydrol. In addition, proteolytic enzymes from microorganisms, plants, and animals may be utilized in the hydrolysis of marine foods to produce bioactive peptides and chitooligosaccharide derivatives (Razzaq et al. 2019).

Marine proteins of fish, crabs, mollusks, extremophiles like *Dunaliella*, and algae all have unique biochemical and biological characteristics. Collagen, gelatin, and albumin, for instance, are typical marine proteins that are enzymatically digested to produce bioactive peptides that can be utilized as nutraceuticals. Also, marine protein protamine is used in the food industry as a natural antibacterial preservative (Suleria et al. 2015).

Marine polysaccharides, primarily carrageenans, fucoidans, and alginates, offer a variety of biological activities that enhance their biological characteristics, allowing them to be used in nutraceuticals, especially in the dairy sector (Tanna and Mishra 2019). Seaweeds have extra health advantages since they are high in vitamins and minerals such as iron, iodine, manganese, and zinc. Some types of seaweed could be used as natural sources of iodine (Wells et al. 2017).

Many marine fish and algae species have also been discovered as rich sources of polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs), particularly ω-3 and ω-6 fatty acids. The high amount of PUFAs in marine-derived foods makes them more useful as nutraceuticals in the food business, giving a variety of health advantages such as improved vision and neurodevelopment, relief from hypertension and arthritis, and weight loss (Ashraf et al. 2020).

1.5.5 Valuable Industrial Applications

Among biomaterials produced from the sea, polysaccharides are widely employed in a variety of sectors, including agriculture, wastewater treatment, paper manufacturing, etc. (Kim and Venkatesa 2013). Marine enzymes with novel and exciting catalytic activity have recently been brought to biocatalysis applications (Birolli et al. 2019). Proteases, a very significant industrial-type enzyme, are employed in the processing of leather, food, and detergents, to name a few examples (Kim 2015).

1.6 Remarkable Conclusions

The current chapter is an attempt to review and focus on the latest investigations and critical points in this research. Also, it showcases the tremendous efficiency of marine biomaterials and various bioactive byproducts. Also, it deals with some effective and new methods for producing marine biomaterials from different resources. Effort should be made for more comprehensive approach to investigate if the marine organisms, especially microbes, have opportunities in the field of biomaterials technology. Moreover, the present chapter illustrates the unique

features and properties of biomaterials, which qualify them for many future applications in several fields of life.

References

Abd Aziz N, Azlan A, Ismail A, Alinafiah SM, Razman MR (2013) Quantitative determination of fatty acids in marine fish and shellfish from warm water of straits of malacca for nutraceutical purposes. Biol Activ Biotechnol Dev Nat Prod:Article ID 284329

Abirami M, Gopal J, Kannabiran K (2015) Extraction and identification of antibacterial compound from marine Streptomyces sp. VITAK1 isolated from the coast of Andaman and Nicobar Islands, India. Appl Biochem Microbiol 51(4):406–410

Adrien A, Bonnet A, Dufour D, Baudouin S, Maugard T, Bridiau N (2017) Pilot production of ulvans from ***Ulva*** sp. and their effects on hyaluronan and collagen production in cultured dermal fibroblasts. Carbohydr Polym 157:1306–1314

Aguilar A, Zein N, Harmouch E, Hafdi B, Bornert F, Offner D et al (2019) Application of chitosan in bone and dental engineering. Molecules 24(16):3009

Aizenberg J, Weaver JC, Thanawala MS, Sundar VC, Morse DE, Fratzl P (2005) Skeleton of Euplectella sp.: structural hierarchy from the nanoscale to the macroscale. Science 309 (5732):275–278

Ali DM, Sasikala M, Gunasekaran M, Thajuddin N (2011) Biosynthesis and characterization of silver nanoparticles using marine cyanobacterium, *Oscillatoria willei* NTDM01. Dig J Nanomater Biostruct 6(2):385–390

Ali DM, Gopinath V, Rameshbabu N, Thajuddin N (2012) Synthesis and characterization of CdS nanoparticles using C-phycoerythrin from the marine cyanobacteria. Mater Lett 1:72–74

Alves A, Sousa E, Kijjoa A, Pinto M (2020) Marine-derived compounds with potential use as cosmeceuticals and nutricosmetics. Molecules 25(11):2536

Amberg N, Fogarassy C (2019) Green consumer behavior in the cosmetics market. Resources 8 (3):137–142

Anand U, Jacobo-Herrera N, Altemimi A, Lakhssassi N (2019) A comprehensive review on medicinal plants as antimicrobial therapeutics: potential avenues of biocompatible drug discovery. Meta 9(11):258–263

Arshad MS, Khan U, Imran A, Suleria HAR (2019) Bioflavonoids: sources, types, and nutraceutical maneuvers. In: Suleria HAR, Goyal MR, Butt MS (eds) Phytochemicals from medicinal plants: scope, applications, and potential health claims. Taylor & Francis Group, London, p 113

Ashraf SA, Adnan M, Patel M, Siddiqui AJ, Sachidanandan M, Snoussi M et al (2020) Fish-based bioactives as potent nutraceuticals: exploring the therapeutic perspective of sustainable food from the sea. Mar Drugs 18(5):265–272

Bailly C (2015) Anticancer properties of lamellarins. Mar Drugs 13(3):1105–1123

Bar-On YM, Phillips R, Milo R (2018) The biomass distribution on Earth. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 115(25):6506–6511

Basu S, Mackey KRM (2018) Phytoplankton as key mediators of the biological carbon pump: their responses to a changing climate. Sustainability 10(869):2–18

Ben Mansour M, Dhahri M, Bertholon I, Ollivier V, Bataille I, Ajzenberg N, Jandrot-Perrus M, Chaubet F, Maaroufi RM et al (2009) Characterization of a novel dermatan sulfate with high antithrombin activity from ray skin (Raja radula). Thromb Res 123(6):887–894

Berdy J (2005) Bioactive microbial metabolites. A personal view. J Antibiot 58:1–26

Bhatnagar I, Kim S-K (2010) Immense essence of excellence: marine microbial bioactive compounds. Mar Drugs 8:2673–2701

Blunt JW, Copp BR, Munro MHG, Northcote PT, Prinsep MR (2004) Marine natural products. Nat Prod Rep 21:1–49

Bottjer DJ (2005) Geobiology and the fossil record: eukaryotes, microbes, and their interactions. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 219:5–21
Boutinguiza M, Pou J, Lusquinos F, Comesana R, Riveiro A (2011a) Laser-assisted production of tricalcium phosphate nanoparticles from biological and synthetic hydroxyapatite in aqueous medium. Appl Surf Sci 257(12):5195–5199
Boutinguiza M, Comesana R, Lusquinos F, Riveiro A, Pou J (2011b) Production of nanoparticles from natural hydroxylapatite by laser ablation. Nanoscale Res Lett 6:255–259
Bownik A, Stępniewska Z (2016) Ectoine as a promising protective agent in humans and animals. Arch Ind Hyg Toxicol 67(4):260–265
Birolli WG, Lima RN, André LM (2019) porto applications of marine-derived microorganisms and their enzymes in biocatalysis and biotransformation, the underexplored potentials. Front Microbiol
Brutchey RL, Morse DE (2008) Silicatein and the translation of its molecular mechanism of biosilicification into low temperature nanomaterial synthesis. Chem Rev 108(11):4915–4934
Butterfield NJ (2010) Animals and the invention of the Phanerozoic earth system. Trends Ecol Evol 26:81–87
Cao Y, Tan YF, Wong YS, Liew MWJ, Venkatraman S (2019) Recent advances in chitosan-based carriers for gene delivery. Mar Drugs 17(6):381–387
Cavalier-Smith T (2006) Cell evolution and earth history: stasis and revolution. Philos Trans R Soc B 361:969–1006
Cesaretti M, Luppi E, MacCari M, Volpi N (2004) Isolation and characterization of a heparine with anticoagulant activity from the clam Tapes philippinarum. Evidence for the presence of high content of antithrombin III-binding site. Glycobiology 14:1275–1284
Chen F-M, Liu X (2016) Advancing biomaterials of human origin for tissue engineering. Prog Polym Sci 53:86–168
Chesnutt BM, Viano AM, Yuan Y, Yang Y, Guda T, Appleford MR, Ong JL, Haggard WO, Bumgardner JD (2009) Design and characterization of a novel chitosan/nanocrystal-line calcium phosphate composite scaffold for bone regeneration. J Biomed Mater Res 88A(2):491–502
Cole AG, Hall BK (2004) The nature and significance of invertebrate cartilages revisited: distribution and histology of cartilage and cartilage-like tissues within the Metazoa. Zoology 107 (4):261–273
Colín-García M (2016) Hydrothermal vents and prebiotic chemistry. Bol Soc Geol Mex 68 (3):599–620
Colliec S, Fischer A, Tapon-Bretaudiere J, Boisson C, Durand P, Jozefonvicz J (1991) Anticoagulant properties of a fucoidan fraction. Thromb Res 64(2):143–154
Cör D, Knez Ž, Knez Hrnčič M (2018) Antitumour, antimicrobial, antioxidant and antiacetylcholinesterase effect of *Ganoderma lucidum* terpenoids and polysaccharides. Molecules 23(3):649–655
Cotas J, Leandro A, Pacheco D, Gonçalves AM, Pereira L (2020) A comprehensive review of the nutraceutical and therapeutic applications of red seaweeds (Rhodophyta). Life 10(3):19–23
Cregg JM, Cereghino JL, Shi JY, Higgins DR (2000) Recombinant protein expression in Pichia pastoris. Mol Biotechnol 16(1):23–52
Cunha I, Grenha A (2016) Sulfated seaweed polysaccharides as multifunctional materials in drug delivery applications. Mar Drugs 14
de Azevedo TCG, Bezerra MEB, Santos MDD, Souza LA, Marques CT, Benevides NMB et al (2009) Heparinoids algal and their anticoagulant, hemorrhagic activities and platelet aggregation. Biomed Pharmacother 63(7):477–483
Delgado-Vargas F, Jimenez A, Paredes-Lopez O (2000) Natural pigments: carotenoids, anthocyanins, and betalains-characteristics, biosynthesis, processing, and stability. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 40:173–289
Dembitsky VM, Gloriozova TA, Poroikov VV (2005) Novel antitumor agents: marine sponge alkaloids, their synthetic analogs and derivatives. Med Chem 5(3):319–336

Dey S, Al-Amin M, Rashid T, Ashaduzzaman M, Shamsuddin S (2016) pH induced fabrication of kaolinite-chitosan biocomposite. Int Lett Chem Phys Astron 68:1–9

Ehrlich H, Simon P, Carrillo-Cabrera W, Bazhenov VV, Botting JP, Ilan M et al (2010) Insights into chemistry of biological materials: newly discovered silica–aragonite-chitin biocomposites in demosponges. Chem Mater 22(4):1462–1471

Einarsson P (2008) Plate boundaries, rifts and transforms in Iceland. Jökull 58(12):35–58

Falshaw R, Bixler HJ, Johndro K (2001) Structure and performance of commercial kappa-2-carrageenan extracts: I. structure analysis. Food Hydrocoll 15(4–6):441–452

Falshaw R, Bixler HJ, Johndro K (2003) Structure and performance of commercial kappa-2-carrageenan extracts. Part III structure analysis and performance in two dairy applications of extracts from the New Zealand red seaweed, Gigartina atropurpurea. Food Hydrocoll 17 (2):129–139

Farzaneh-Far R, Lin J, Epel ES, Harris WS, Blackburn EH, Whooley MA (2010) Association of marine omega-3 fatty acid levels with telomeric aging in patients with coronary heart disease. JAMA 303(3):250–257

Fenibo EO, Ijoma GN, Ramganesh S, Chikere CB (2019) Microbial surfactants: the next generation multifunctional biomolecules for diverse applications. Microorganisms 7:581

Ferruzzi MG, Blakeslee J (2007) Digestion, absorption, and cancer preventative activity of dietary chlorophyll derivatives. Nutr Res 27:1–12

Fitton JH (2011) Therapies from fucoidan; multifunctional marine polymers. Mar Drugs 9 (10):1731–1760

Fitton JH, Irhimeh M, Falk N (2007) Macroalgal fucoidan extracts: a new opportunity for marine cosmetics. Cosmet Toilet 122(8):55–60

Fleurence J (1999) Seaweed proteins: biochemical, nutritional aspects and potential uses. Trends Food Sci Technol 10(1):25–28

Fu W, Guðmundsson Ó, Paglia G, Herjólfsson G, Andrésson ÓS, Palsson BØ et al (2013) Enhancement of carotenoid biosynthesis in the green microalga *Dunaliella salina* with light-emitting diodes and adaptive laboratory evolution. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97 (6):2395–2403

Gericke M, Pinches A (2006a) Microbial production of gold nanoparticles. Gold Bull 39:22–28

Gericke M, Pinches A (2006b) Biological synthesis of metal nanoparticles. Hydrometallurgy 83 (1–4):132–140

Gerssen A, Irene E, Poelman P-HM, Mulder PPJ, van den Top HJ, de Boer J (2010) Marine toxins: chemistry, toxicity, occurrence and detection, with special reference to the Dutch situation. Toxins 2:878–904

Gomez CG, Lambrecht MVP, Lozano JE, Rinaudo M, Villar MA (2009) Influence of the extraction–purification conditions on final properties of alginates obtained from brown algae (*Macrocystis pyrifera*). Int J Biol Macromol 44(4):365–371

Gonçalves GAR, Paiva RDMA (2017) Gene therapy: advances, challenges and perspectives. Einstein (Sao Paulo) 15(3):369–375

Graiff A, Ruth W, Kragl U, Karsten U (2016) Chemical characterization and quantification of the brown algal storage compound laminarin-a new methodological approach. J Appl Phycol 28:533–543

Guillerme J-B, Couteau C, Coiffard L (2017) Applications for marine resources in cosmetics. Cosmetics 4(3):35–38

Halim AS, Khoo TL, Yussof SJM (2010) Biologic and synthetic skin substitutes: an overview. Indian J Plastic Surg 43(Suppl):S23

Hayes M, Carney B, Slater J, Bruck W (2008) Mining marine shellfish wastes for bioactive molecules: chitin and chitosan-part a extraction methods. J Biotechnol 3:871–877

Higashi K, Toida T (2017) Isolation of keratan sulfate disaccharide-branched chondroitin sulfate E from *Mactra chinensis*. Bio Protoc 7(15):e2441

Hilliou L, Larotonda FDS, Abreu P, Ramos AM, Sereno AM, Goncalves MP (2006) Effect of extraction parameters on the chemical structure and gel properties of kappa/iota-hybrid carrageenans obtained from *Mastocarpus stellatus*. Biomol Eng 23(4):201–208

Hooper DU, Chapin FS III, Ewel JJ, Hector A, Inchausti P, Lavorel S et al (2005) Effects of biodiversity on ecosystem processes: a consensus of current knowledge. Ecol Monogr 75 (1):3–35

Huckerby TN (2002) The keratan sulphates: structural investigations using NMR spectroscopy. Prog Nucl Magn Reson Spectrosc 40(1):35–110

Huh MS, Lee EJ, Koo H, Yhee JY, Oh KS, Son S et al (2017) Polysaccharide-based nanoparticles for gene delivery. Top Curr Chem (Cham) 375(2): 31

Hwang Y, Park M, Fischer WH, Bushman F (1999) Domain structure of the type-1B topoisomerase encoded by Molluscum contagiosum virus. Virology 262:479–491

Im AR, Sim JS, Park Y, Hahn BS, Toida T, Kim YS (2009) Isolation and characterization of chondroitin sulfates from the by-products of marine organisms. Food Scie Biotechnol 18 (4):872–877

Ioannou E, Roussis V (2009) Natural products from seaweeds. In: Plant-derived natural products. Springer-Verlag New York Inc, New York, pp 51–81

Ito M, Yamagata T (1984) The linkage of teleost skin keratan sulfate to protein. Biochem Biophys Acta 801(3):381–387

Jefferson T, Costello MJ (2020) Hotspots of marine biodiversity. In: Encyclopedia of the World's Biomes, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 586–596. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-409548-9.11952-9

Johnson S, Saikia N (2009) Fatty acids profile of edible oils and fats in India. Centre for Science and Environment, New Delhi

Juhlin L (1997) Hyaluronan in skin. J Intern Med 242(1):61–66

Kadam SU, Tiwari BK, O'Donnell CP (2015) Extraction, structure and biofunctional activities of laminarin from brown algae. Int J Food Sci Technol 50:24–30

Kallmeyer J, Pockalny R, Adhikari RR, Smith DC, D'Hondt S (2012) Global distribution of microbial abundance and biomass in subsea floor sediment. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109 (40):16213–16216

Kamenos NA, Cusack M, Huthwelker T, Lagarde P, Scheibling RE (2009) Mg-lattice associations in red coralline algae. Geochim Cosmochim Acta 73(7):1901–1907

Kang HY, Yoon T-J, Lee GJ (2011) Whitening effects of marine pseudomonas extract. Ann Dermatol 23(2):144–149

Khanna S, Srivastava AK (2005) Recent advances in microbial polyhydroxyalkanoates. Process Biochem 40(2):607–619

Khan S, Kong C, Kim J, Kim S (2010) Protective effect of Amphiroa dilatata on ROS induced oxidative damage and MMP expressions in HT1080 cells. Biotechnol Bioprocess Eng 15:191–198

Kidgell JT, Magnusson M, de Nys R, Glasson CRK (2019) Ulvan: a systematic review of extraction, composition and function. Algal Res 39:1014–1022

Kim S-K (2015) Springer handbook of marine biotechnology. Springer, Cham

Kim SK, Mendis E (2006) Bioactive compounds from marine processing byproducts. Food Res Int 39(4):383–393

Kim SK, Venkatesa J (2013) Introduction to marine biomaterials. In: Marine biomaterials: characterization, isolation and applications. Taylor & Francis, London, pp 3–16. ISBN; 978-1-4665-0564-3

Kim SJ, Patel SN, Sternberg P (2016) Routine use of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs with corticosteroids in cataract surgery: beneficial or redundant? Ophthalmology 123(3):444–446

Kinoshita A, Yamada S, Haslam SM, Morris HR, Dell A, Sugahara K (2001) Isolation and structural determination of novel sulfated hexasaccharides from squid cartilage chondroitin sulfate that exhibits neuroregulatory activities. Biochemistry 40(42):12654–12665

Kinsella JE, Shimp JL, Mai J, Weihrauch J (1977) Fatty acid content and composition of freshwater finfish. J Am Oil Chem Soc 54(10):424–429

Kubisz L, Ehrlich H (2007) Temperature dependence of electric conductivity of bamboo coral skeleton and glass sponge spicules, the marine origin biomaterials. J Non Cryst Solids 353 (47):4497–4500

Kumar MN (2000) A review of chitin and chitosan applications. React Funct Polym 46(1):1–27

Kumar V, Fotedar R (2009) Agar extraction process for *Gracilaria cliftonii* (Withell, Millar, & Kraft, 1994). Carbohydr Polym 78(4):813–819

Kumar P, Sahu NP, Saharan N, Reddy AK, Kumar S (2006) Effect of dietary source and level of chitin on growth and survival of post-larvae Macrobrachium rosenbergii. J Appl Ichthyol 22 (5):363–368

Kunte HJ, Lentzen G, Galinski E (2014) Industrial production of the cell protectant ectoine: protection mechanisms, processes, and products. Layek, B., Singh, J. 2013. Amino acid grafted chitosan for high performance gene delivery: comparison of amino acid hydrophobicity on vector and polyplex characteristics. Biomacromolecules 14(2):485–494

Lahaye M, Robic A (2007) Structure and functional properties of ulvan, a polysaccharide from green seaweeds. Biomacromolecules 8:1765–1774

Laine J, Labady M, Albornoz A, Yunes S (2008) Porosities and pore sizes in coralline calcium carbonate. Mater Charact 59(10):1522–1525

Le Costaouëc T, Cérantola S, Ropartz D, Ratiskol J, Sinquin C, Colliec-Jouault S et al (2012) Structural data on a bacterial exopolysaccharide produced by a deep-sea *Alteromonas macleodii* strain. Carbohydr Polym 90(1):49–59

Lee JH, Kim YS, Choi T-J, Lee WJ, Kim YT (2004) Paracoccus haeundaensis sp. nov., a gram-negative, halophilic, astaxanthin-producing bacterium. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 54 (5):1699–1702

Lee E-J, Shin D-S, Kim H-E, Kim H-W, Koh Y-H, Jang J-H (2009) Membrane of hybrid chitosan–silica xerogel for guided bone regeneration. Biomaterials 30(5):743–750

Li B, Lu F, Wei XJ, Zhao RX (2008) Fucoidan: structure and bioactivity. Molecules 13 (8):1671–1695

Liao YH, Jones SA, Forbes B, Martin GP, Brown MB (2005) Hyaluronan: pharmaceutical characterization and drug delivery. Drug Deliv 12(6):327–342

Lim Y-S, Ok Y-J, Hwang S-Y, Kwak J-Y, Yoon S (2019) Marine collagen as a promising biomaterial for biomedical applications. Mar Drugs 17(8):467

Lindahl U, Li J-P (2009) Chapter 3 – interactions between heparan sulfate and proteins-design and functional implications. Int Rev Cell Mol Biol 276:105–159

Liu B, Ezeogu L, Zellmer L, Yu B, Xu N, Joshua Liao D (2015) Protecting the normal in order to better kill the cancer. Cancer Med 4(9):1394–1403

Lopez-Alvarez M, Rial I, Borrajo JP, Gonzalez P, Serra J, Solla E et al (2008) Marine precursors-based biomorphic SiC ceramics. Adv Mater Forum IV 587-588:67–71

Lotze HK, Worm B (2009) Historical baselines for large marine animals. Trends Ecol Evol 24:254–562

Macauley-Patrick S, Fazenda ML, McNeil B, Harvey LM (2005) Heterologous protein production using the *Pichia pastoris* expression system. Yeast 22(4):249–270

Maccari F, Galeotti F, Volpi N (2015) Isolation and structural characterization of chondroitin sulfate from bony fishes. Carbohydr Polym 129:143–147

Martău GA, Mihai M, Vodnar DC (2019) The use of chitosan, alginate, and pectin in the biomedical and food sector-biocompatibility, bioadhesiveness, and biodegradability. Polymers 11(11):1837

Martins A, Vieira H, Gaspar H, Santos S (2014) Marketed marine natural products in the pharmaceutical and cosmeceutical industries: tips for success. Mar Drugs 12(2):1066–1101

Mayer AM, Hamann MT (2002) Marine pharmacology in 1999: compounds with antibacterial, anticoagulant, antifungal, anthelmintic, anti-inflammatory, antiplatelet, antiprotozoal and antiviral activities affecting the cardiovascular, endocrine, immune and nervous systems, and other miscellaneous mechanisms of action. Comp Biochem Physiol, Part C: Toxicol Pharmacol 132(3):315–339

Medeiros GF, Mendes A, Castro RAB, Bau C, Nader HB, Dietrich CP (2000) Distribution of sulfated glycosaminoglycans in the animal kingdom: widespread occurrence of heparin-like compounds in invertebrates. Biochem Biophys Acta 1475(3):287–294

Mendis E, Rajapakse N, Byun H-G, Kim S-K (2005) Investigation of jumbo squid (*Dosidicus gigas*) skin gelatin peptides for their in vitro antioxidant effects. Life Sci 77(17):2166–2178

Meysman FJR, Middleburn JJ, Heip CHR (2006) Bioturbation: a fresh look at Darwin's last idea. Trends Ecol Evol 21:688–695

Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005) Ecosystems and human Well-being: current state and trends, vol 1. Island Press, Washington, DC

Moghadamtousi SZ, Nikzad S, Kadir HA, Abubakar S, Zandi K (2015) Potential antiviral agents from marine fungi: an overview. Mar Drugs 13(7):4520–4538

Mourao PAS, Pereira MS (1999) Searching for alternatives to heparin: sulfated fucans from marine invertebrates. Trends Cardiovasc Med 9(8):225–232

Mourya VK, Inamdar NN (2008) Chitosan-modifications and applications: opportunities galore. React Funct Polym 68(6):1013–1051

Muller WEG, Wang XH, Cui FZ, Jochum KP, Tremel W, Bill J et al (2009) Sponge spicules as blueprints for the biofabrication of inorganic–organic composites and biomaterials. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 83(3):397–413

Nagai T, Suzuki N (2000) Isolation of collagen from fish waste material-skin, bone and fins. Food Chem 68(3):277–281

Nagai T, Yamashita E, Taniguchi K, Kanamori N, Suzuki N (2001) Isolation and characterisation of collagen from the outer skin waste material of cuttlefish (*Sepia lycidas*). Food Chem 72 (4):425–429

Nagarajan A, Malvi P, Wajapeyee N (2018) Heparan sulfate and heparan sulfate proteoglycans in cancer initiation and progression. Front Endocrinol 9:483

Nakao Y, Takada K, Matsunaga S, Fusetani N (2001) Calyceramides A–C: neuraminidase inhibitory sulfated ceramides from the marine sponge *Discodermia calyx*. Tetrahedron 57 (15):3013–3017

Nandini CD, Itoh N, Sugahara K (2005) Novel 70-kDa chondroitin sulfate/dermatan sulfate hybrid chains with a unique heterogenous sulfation pattern from shark skin, which exhibit neuritogenic activity and binding activities for growth factors and neurotrophic factors. J Biol Chem 280 (6):4058–4069

Navarro DMDL, Abelilla JJ, Stein HH (2019) Structures and characteristics of carbohydrates in diets fed to pigs. J Anim Sci Biotechnol 10:39–44

Nikolova MP, Chavali MS (2019) Recent advances in biomaterials for 3D scaffolds: a review. Bioactive Mater 4:271–292

Nolan CJ, Ruderman NB, Kahn SE, Pedersen O, Prentki M (2015) Insulin resistance as a physiological defense against metabolic stress: implications for the management of subsets of type 2 diabetes. Diabetes 64(3):673–686

Novoveská L, Ross ME, Stanley MS, Pradelles R, Wasiolek V, Sassi J-F (2019) Microalgal carotenoids: a review of production, current markets, regulations, and future direction. Mar Drugs 17(11):640

Nurunnabi TR, Nahar L, Al-Majmaie S, Rahman SM, Sohrab MH, Billah MM et al (2018) Anti-MRSA activity of oxysporone and xylitol from the endophytic fungus Pestalotia sp. growing on the Sundarbans mangrove plant *Heritiera fomes*. Phytother Res 32(2):348–354

Nweze JA, Mbaoji FN, Huang G, Li Y, Yang L, Zhang Y et al (2020) Antibiotics development and the potentials of marine-derived compounds to stem the tide of multidrug-resistant pathogenic bacteria, fungi, and protozoa. Mar Drugs 18(3):145

Nyvall P, Corre E, Boisset C, Barbeyron T, Rousvoal S, Scornet D et al (2003) Characterization of mannuronan C-5-epimerase genes from the brown alga *Laminaria digitata*. Plant Physiol 133 (2):726–735

Oliveira JM, Grech JMR, Leonor IB, Mano JF, Reis RL (2007) Calcium-phosphate derived from mineralized algae for bone tissue engineering applications. Mater Lett 61(16):3495–3499

Owen AW (2005) Biodiversity. In: Encyclopedia of geology. Reference module in earth systems and environmental sciences, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 259–265
Pages JM, James CE, Winterhalter M (2008) The porin and the permeating antibiotic: a selective diffusion barrier in gram-negative bacteria. Nat Rev Microbiol 6:893–903
Pandey A (2019) Pharmacological significance of marine microbial bioactive compounds. Environ Chemi Lett:17, 1741–1751
Pangestuti R, Kim S-K (2011) Biological activities and health benefit effects of natural pigments derived from marine algae. J Funct Food 3:255–266
Patterson RE, Flatt SW, Newman VA, Natarajan L, Rock CL, Thomson CA et al (2011) Marine fatty acid intake is associated with breast cancer prognosis. J Nutr 141(2):201–206
Pelli AA, Azevedo RA, Cinelli LP, Mourao PAS, de Brito-Gitirana L (2007) Dermatan sulfate is the major metachromatic glycosaminoglycan in the integument of the anuran Bufo ictericus. Comp Biochem Physiol B Biochem Mol Biol 146B(2):160–165
Peniche C, Arguelles-Monal W, Goycoolea F (2008) Chitin and chitosan: major sources, properties and applications. In: Belgacem M et al (eds) Monomers, polymers and composites from renewable resources. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 517–542
Pereira-Pacheco F, Robledo D, Rodriguez-Carvajal L, Freile-Pelegrin L (2007) Optimization of native agar extraction from *Hydropuntia cornea* from Yucatan. Mex Bioresour Technol 98 (6):1278–1284
Pillai CKS, Paul W, Sharma CP (2009) Chitin and chitosan polymers: chemistry, solubility and fiber formation. Prog Polym Sci 34(7):641–678
Pomin VH, Mulloy M (2018) Glycosaminoglycans and proteoglycans. Pharmaceuticals 11 (1):27–33
Prehm P (2002) Hyaluronan, biopolymers 5. In: Erick Vandamme J et al (eds) Polysaccharides I. Polysaccharides from prokaryotes. Wiley-VCH, Weinheim, pp 379–404
Rahman MA (2016) An overview of the medical applications of marine skeletal matrix proteins. Mar Drugs 14(167):2–9
Ralphs JR, Benjamin M (1992) Chondroitin and keratan sulphate in the epidermal club cells of teleosts. J Fish Biol 40(3):473–475
Rashid TU, Shamsuddin SM, Khan MA, Rahman MM (2014) Evaluation of fat binding capacity of gamma irradiated chitosan extracted from prawn shell. Soft Mater 12(3):262–267
Razzaq A, Shamsi S, Ali A, Ali Q, Sajjad M, Malik A, Ashraf M (2019) Microbial proteases applications. Front Bioeng Biotechnol 7:110–114
Rehm BHA, Valla S (1997) Bacterial alginates: biosynthesis and applications. J Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 48(3):281–288
Rinaudo M (2006) Chitin and chitosan: properties and applications. Prog Polym Sci 31(7):603–632
Rinaudo M (2008) Main properties and current applications of some polysaccharides as biomaterials. Polym Int 57(3):397–430
Rioux LE, Turgeon SL, Beaulieu M (2007) Rheological characterisation of polysaccharides extracted from brown sea-weeds. J Food Sci Agric 87(9):1630–1638
Rizvi SA, Saleh AM (2018) Applications of nanoparticle systems in drug delivery technology. Saudi Pharmac J 26(1):64–70
Robic A, Rondeau-Mouro C, Sassi JF, Lerat Y, Lahaye M (2009) Structure and interactions of ulvan in the cell wall of the marine green algae Ulva rotundata (Ulvales, Chlorophyceae). Carbohydr Polym 77:206–216
Rocha LAG, Martins RCL, Werneck CC, FeresFilho EJ, Silva LF (2000) Human gingival glycosaminoglycans in cyclosporin-induced overgrowth. J Periodontal Res 35(3):158–164
Ruiz B, Chávez A, Forero A, García-Huante Y, Romero A, Sánchez M et al (2010) Production of microbial secondary metabolites: regulation by the carbon source. Crit Rev Microbiol 36:146–167
Sabra W, Zeng AP, Deckwer WD (2001) Bacterial alginate: physiology, product quality and process aspects. J Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 56(3–4):315–325

Saravanan R, Shanmugam A (2010) Isolation and characterization of low molecular weight glycosaminoglycans from marine mollusc *Amussium pleuronectus* (Linne.) using chromatography. J Appl Biomater Biomech 160(3):791–799

Scheller E, Krebsbach P (2009) Gene therapy: design and prospects for craniofacial regeneration. J Dent Res 88(7):585–596

Schroder HC, Wang XH, Tremel W, Ushijima H, Muller WEG (2008) Biofabrication of biosilica-glass by living organisms. Nat Prod Rep 25(3):455–474

Schumacher M, Kelkel M, Dicato M, Diederich M (2011) Gold from the sea: marine compounds as inhibitors of the hallmarks of cancer. Biotechnol Adv 29(5):531–547

Seshadri S, Oakeshott P, Nelson-Piercy C, Chappell L (2012a) Prepregnancy care. BMJ (Clinical research ed) 344:e3467. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.e3467

Seshadri S, Prakash A, Kowshik M (2012b) Biosynthesis of silver nanoparticles by marine bacterium, *Idiomarina* sp. PR58-8. Bull Mater Sci 35(7):1201–1205

Savari R, Shafiei M, Galehdari H, Kesmati M (2019) Expression of VEGF and TGF-β genes in skin wound healing process induced using phenytoin in male rats. Jundishapur J Health Sci 11(1): e86041

Shahidi F, Abuzaytoun R (2005) Chitin, chitosan, and co-products: chemistry, production, applications, and health effects. Adv Food Nutr Res 49:93–135

Shahidi F, Alasalvar C (2011) Marine oils and other marine nutraceuticals. In: Handbook of seafood quality, safety and health applications. Wiley Online Library, pp 444–454

Shanthi J, Senthil A, Gopikrishnan V, Balagurunathan R (2015) Characterization of a potential β-lactamase inhibitory metabolite from a marine *Streptomyces* sp. Pm49 active against multidrug-resistant pathogens. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 175(8):3696–3708

Shindo K, Kikuta K, Suzuki A, Katsuta A, Kasai H, Yasumoto-Hirose M (2007) Rare carotenoids, (3R)-saproxanthin and (3R,2′S)-myxol, isolated from novel marine bacteria (Flavobacteriaceae) and their antioxidative activities. Appl J Microbiol Biotechnol 74(6):1350

Shiroma R, Uechi S, Taira T, Ishihara M, Tawata S, Tako M et al (2003) Isolation and characterization of fucoidan from *Hizikia fusiformis* (Hijiki). J Appl Glycosci 50(3):361–366

Sikorski ZE, Borderias JA (1994) Collagen in the muscles and skins of marine animals. Chapman and Hall, New York, pp 58–70

Silva FRF, Dore CMPG, Marques CT, Nascimento MS, Benevides NMB, Rocha HAO et al (2010) Anticoagulant activity, paw edema and pleurisy induced carrageenan: action of major types of commercial carrageenans. Carbohydr Polym 79(1):26–33

Silva TH, Alves A, Ferreira BM, Oliveira JM, RAeys LL, Ferreira RJF et al (2012) Materials of marine origin: a review on polymers and ceramics of biomedical interest. Int Mater Rev 57 (5):276–306

Singh R, Parihar P, Singh M, Bajguz A, Kumar J, Singh S (2017) Uncovering potential applications of cyanobacteria and algal metabolites in biology, agriculture and medicine: current status and future prospects. Front Microbiol 8:515–520

Soltes L, Mendichi R, Kogan G, Schiller J, Stankovska M, Arnhold J (2006) Degradative action of reactive oxygen species on hyaluronan. Biomacromolecules 7(3):659–668

Sopyan I, Mel M, Ramesh S, Khalid K (2007) Porous hydroxyapatite for artificial bone applications. Sci Technol Adv Mater 8(1–2):116–123

Sousa I, Batista AP, Raymundo A, Empis J (2006) Rheological characterization of colored oil-in-water food emulsions with lutein and phycocyanin added to the oil and aqueous phases. Food Hydrocoll 20:44–52

Subramanian M, Alikunhi N, Kandasamy K (2010) In vitro synthesis of silver nanoparticles by marine yeasts from coastal mangrove sediment. J Comput Theor Nanosci 3:428–433

Suga T, Shiina M, Asami Y, Iwatsuki M, Yamamoto T, Nonaka K (2016) Paraphaeosphaeride D and berkleasmin F, new circumventors of arbekacin resistance in MRSA, produced by Paraphaeosphaeria sp. TR-022. J Antibiot 69(8):605–610

Sugahara K, Mikami T, Uyama T, Mizuguchi S, Nomura K, Kitagawa H (2003) Recent advances in the structural biology of chondroitin sulfate and dermatan sulfate. Curr Opin Struct Biol 13 (5):612–620

Suleria HAR, Osborne S, Masci P, Gobe G (2015) Marine-based nutraceuticals: an innovative trend in the food and supplement industries. Mar Drugs 2015 13(10):6336–6351

Swatschek D, Schatton W, Kellermann J, Müller WEG, Kreuter J (2002a) Marine sponge collagen: isolation, characterization and effects on the skin parameters surface-pH, moisture and sebum. Eur J Pharm Biopharm 53(1):107–113

Swatschek D, Schatton W, Müller WEG, Kreuter J (2002b) Microparticles derived from marine sponge collagen (SCMPs): preparation, characterization and suitability for dermal delivery of all-trans retinol. Eur J Pharm Biopharm 54(2):125–133

Tammi MI, Day AJ, Turley EA (2002) Hyaluronan and homeostasis: a balancing act. J Biol Chem 277(7):4581–4584

Tanna B, Mishra A (2019) Nutraceutical potential of seaweed polysaccharides: structure, bioactivity, safety, and toxicity. Compr Rev Food Sci Food Saf 18(3):817–831

Trowbridge JM, Gallo RL (2002) Dermatan sulfate: new functions from an old glycosaminoglycan. Glycobiology 12(9):117R–125R

UNEP (2006) Regional seas report and studies ecosystems and biodiversity in deep waters and high seas. No. 178. pp. 1–21. ISBN: 92-807-2734-6. Job Number: DEP/0850/CA

Uzair B, Mahmood Z, Tabassum S (2011) Antiviral activity of natural products extracted from marine organisms. Bioimpacts 1(4):203–207

Van Dolah FM, Ramsdell JS (2001) Review and assessment of in vitro detection methods for algal toxins. J AOAC Int:84, 1617–1625

Varvaresou A, Iakovou K (2015) Biosurfactants in cosmetics and biopharmaceuticals. Lett Appl Microbiol 61(3):214–223

Vauchel P, Le Roux K, Kaas R, Arhaliass A, Baron R, Legrand J (2009) Kinetics modeling of alginate alkaline extraction from *Laminaria digitata*. Bioresour Technol 100(20):4918–4918

Venkatesan J, Kim SK (2010) Effect of temperature on isolation and characterization of hydroxyapatite from tuna (*Thunnus obesus*) bone. Materials 3(10):4761–4772

Venkatesan J, Lowe B, Anil S, Manivasagan P, Kheraif AAA, Kang K-H et al (2015) Seaweed polysaccharides and their potential biomedical applications. Starch-Stärke 67:381–390

Venugopal V (2009) Marine products for healthcare: functional and bioactive nutraceutical compounds from the ocean. CRC Press, New York, pp 382–387

Volpi N, Maccari F (2008) Structural characterization and antithrombin activity of dermatan sulfate purified from marine clam *Scapharca inaequivalvis*. Glycobiology 19:356–367

Wang Y, Xing M, Cao Q, Ji A, Liang H, Song S (2019) Biological activities of fucoidan and the factors mediating its therapeutic effects: a review of recent studies. Mar Drugs 17(3):183–192

Webb TJ, Vanden Berghe E, O'Dor R (2010) Biodiversity's big wet secret: the global distribution of marine biological records reveals chronic under-exploration of the deep pelagic ocean. PLoS One 5(8):e10223

Wells ML, Potin P, Craigie JS, Raven JA, Merchant SS, Helliwell KE (2017) Algae as nutritional and functional food sources: revisiting our understanding. J Appl Phycol 29(2):949–982

Widdicombe S, Somerfield P (2012) Marine biodiversity: its past development, present status, and future threats. In: Solan M, Aspden RL, Paterson DM (eds) Marine biodiversity and ecosystem functioning: frameworks, methodologies, and integration, chapter: 1. Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp 1–15

Woesz A, Weaver JC, Kazanci M, Dauphin Y, Aizenberg J, Morse E (2006) Micromechanical properties of biological silica in skeletons of deep-sea sponges. Journal of Material Research 2068-2078:21(8)

Worm B, Barbier EB, Beaumont N et al (2006) Impacts of biodiversity loss on ocean ecosystem services. Science 314:787–790

Xu J, Yi M, Ding L, He S (2019) Anti-inflammatory compounds from marine fungi, 2000–2018. Mar Drugs 17(11):636–644

Yanagishita M, Podyma-Inoue K, Yokoyama M (2009) Extraction and separation of proteoglycans. Glycoconj J 26(8):953–959

Yokoyama A, Miki W (1995) Composition and presumed biosynthetic pathway of carotenoids in the astaxanthin-producing bacterium *agrobacterium aurantiacum*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 128 (2):139–144

Yuguchi Y, Urakawa H, Kajiwara K (2003) Structural characteristics of carrageenan gels: Various types of counter ions. Food Hydrocoll 17(4):481–485

Zhang C, Li X, Kim S (2012) Application of marine biomaterials for nutraceuticals and functional foods. Food Sci Biotechnol 21(3):625–631

Zierer MS, Mourão PA (2000) A wide diversity of sulfated polysaccharides are synthesized by different species of marine sponges. Carbohydr Res 328(2):209–216

Hassan A. H. Ibrahim is a professor of marine microbiology at the National Institute of Oceanography and Fisheries (NIOF), Egypt. He has nearly 25 years of experience in the research and teaching in the field of microbiology, biotechnology, and marine environmental science besides its applications. He is interested in marine microbiology; environmental microbiology; applied microbiology; and marine biotechnology. He has published 75 research articles and 2 review articles in peer-reviewed journals. The majority of them are in Scopus and others are impacted. In addition there are nine manuscripts under preparation. Moreover, he has shared in writing four books. On the other side, he has already written 12 books in Arabic, besides 14 Arabic review articles in Egyptian and Kuwaiti magazines. He has completely supervised on 12 MSc theses and 12 PhD theses around 7 Egyptian universities besides 1 in UAS and others in Canada. Also, he shared in eight theses for publications only. He has revised many articles for international journals and also he judged several master theses. He has shared in 23 projects between 2002 and 2021. There three projects were internationally funded from European Union (FP7). He has shared in 6 national and 20 international specific conferences from 2008 to 2017.

Waleed M. M. El-Sayed is a researcher of marine microbiology at the National Institute of Oceanography and Fisheries (NIOF), Egypt. He has nearly 11 years of experience in the research in the field of microbiology and its applications. He is interested in marine microbiology; environmental microbiology; and biofuel production. He has published 14 research articles and 1 review article in peer-reviewed journals. Moreover, he has already shared in writing three book chapters for international publishers. He has studies for his PhD degree at Georgia Institute of Technology Civil and Environmental Engineering School, Florida, USA. He has shared in six projects between 2009 and 2020. There two projects were internationally funded from European Union (FP7). He has shared in six international specific conferences from 2009 to 2020.

Mostafa M. El-Sheekh is a professor of phycology. He has nearly 35 years of experience in the research and teaching in the field of algae, microbiology, and its applications. He served as the Dean Faculty of Science, Tanta University, Egypt, and Cultural Counselor in Egyptian Embassy in Yemen and Uzbekistan. He holds a PhD in Phycology from Tanta University and Göttingen University, Germany, as Chanel system fellowship. He got several postdoc fellowships in Hungary, India, Sweden, Czech Republic, and Japan. Notably, He has authored more than 200 papers, 9 book chapters, and 3 books. He also serves as editorial member and reviewer for more than 80 peer-reviewed journals. He listed one among World's Top 2% scientists reported by Stanford University (Ref: JPA, Boyack KW, Baas J, 2020; PLoS Biol 18(10): e3000918).

Crosslinked Marine Polysaccharides for Delivery of Therapeutics

2

C. E. Iurciuc-Tincu, L. Ochiuz, M. Popa, and L. I. Atanase

Abstract

Marine biomaterials can be grouped into three broad categories: polysaccharides, proteins, and lipids. Among these, polysaccharides from both plants and marine animals are of the greatest interest. This is explainable—despite the fact that the basic structural unit is the glycosidic cycle—by the presence of various functional groups, with high chemical reactivity even in moderate conditions, which allow relatively easy chemical modifications, through biological properties such as biocompatibility, biodegradability, and anti-inflammatory activity as well as adhesive and, in some cases, antimicrobial activity. This chapter aims to present the different possibilities of crosslinking the polysaccharides of marine origin, its organization being made on the basis of the type of crosslinking method. Although, over time, numerous polysaccharides have been isolated from marine plant and animal organisms, at least so far some of them have not found their use

C. E. Iurciuc-Tincu
Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Faculty of Pharmacy, "Grigore T. Popa" University of Medicine and Pharmacy, Iaşi, Romania

Department of Natural and Synthetic Polymers, Faculty of Chemical Engineering and Protection of the Environment, "Gheorghe Asachi" Technical University, Iaşi, Romania

L. Ochiuz
Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Faculty of Pharmacy, "Grigore T. Popa" University of Medicine and Pharmacy, Iaşi, Romania

M. Popa
Department of Natural and Synthetic Polymers, Faculty of Chemical Engineering and Protection of the Environment, "Gheorghe Asachi" Technical University, Iaşi, Romania

Academy of Romanian Scientists, Bucharest, Romania

L. I. Atanase (✉)
Faculty of Dental Medicine, "Apollonia" University of Iaşi, Iaşi, Romania

S. Jana, S. Jana (eds.), *Marine Biomaterials*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-5374-2_2

in obtaining hydrogels. Therefore, all types of hydrogel formulations as drug delivery systems, studied in literature in the last decade and based on polysaccharides, such as chitosan, chitin, k-carrageenan, hyaluronic acid, alginic acid/alginates, agar/agarose, and fucoidan, will be discussed in this chapter.

Keywords

Marine polysaccharides · Drug delivery systems · Chitosan · K-carrageenan · Alginate · Agar

2.1 Introduction

Life appeared in the marine environment billions of years ago. Changes over time—temperature, radiation, pressure, pH, etc.—imposed the continuous evolution of marine species to adapt to those conditions, creating an extraordinary biodiversity. Blue technology, which refers to the exploration and exploitation of existing resources in various marine organisms, is constantly expanding and contributes significantly to the use of marine biological resources in many areas of daily life. Starting from this practically inexhaustible source of raw materials, scientists have developed materials with numerous applications in human health, agriculture energy, aquaculture, fine chemicals, pharmaceuticals, food, cosmetics, and environmental sectors including biosensing and bioremediation.

Marine biomaterials can be grouped into three broad categories: polysaccharides, proteins, and lipids. Among these, polysaccharides from both plants and marine animals are of the greatest interest. This is explainable—despite the fact that the basic structural unit is the glycosidic cycle—by the presence of various functional groups, with high chemical reactivity even in moderate conditions, which allow relatively easy chemical modifications, through biological properties such as biocompatibility, biodegradability, and anti-inflammatory activity as well as adhesive and, in some cases, antimicrobial activity.

Polysaccharides are defined as polymeric carbohydrate structures formed by repeated monosaccharide units that are attached to each other by glycosidic bonds. Despite their large bioavailability, polysaccharides are still underexploited in bio-applications. Among these biomedical applications, drug delivery systems and tissue engineering are important. The formulation of the polysaccharides is varied, including films, foams, inserts, implants, micro-/nanoparticles, micro-/nanocapsules, etc. From a structural point of view, regardless of their formulation, all these systems are made up of three-dimensional networks, in which the connection of macromolecular chains is made by chemical, physical, or combined bonds. Given the strong hydrophilic character of the constituent polysaccharides, the materials have an obvious hydrogel character.

This chapter aims to present the different possibilities of crosslinking the polysaccharides of marine origin, its organization being made on the basis of the type of crosslinking method. Although, over time, numerous polysaccharides have

been isolated from marine plant and animal organisms, at least so far some of them have not found their use in obtaining hydrogels. Therefore, all types of hydrogel formulations as drug delivery systems, studied in literature in the last decade and based on polysaccharides, such as chitosan, chitin, k-carrageenan, hyaluronic acid, alginic acid/alginates, agar/agarose, and fucoidan, will be discussed in this chapter.

2.2 Chemically Crosslinked Hydrogels

The realization of transverse bridges between the linear chains of a polymer can be done by chemical bonds, which in turn can be, in principle, covalent, ionic, coordinative, and also their combinations.

2.2.1 Crosslinking by Covalent Chemical Bondings

The covalent chemical bonds that ensure the formation of the network starting from linear polymers can be created by several processes: the use of *bifunctional crosslinking agents* with groups complementary to those of linear polymers; *grafting/crosslinking by polymerization* of previously obtained polysaccharide macromers; and *grafting/crosslinking by creating macroradicals* on the polymer chain.

2.2.1.1 Crosslinking by Functional Groups Reaction

It is well demonstrated that hydrogels prepared by chemical crosslinking are characterized by a greater stability, longer durability, and higher mechanical properties (tensile, shear, bending, etc.), compared with physically crosslinked hydrogels. These crosslinked hydrogels are generally obtained by a chemical reaction between two functional groups of the polymers, such as -COOH, -OH, $-NH_2$, etc., with crosslinking agents, such as aldehydes [glutaraldehyde (GA), adipic acid dihydrazide, etc.], *N*-ethyl-*N*′-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide (EDC), or N-hydroxysuccinimide (NHS). In this section, the literature data from the last decade concerning the preparation, characterization, and potential applications of different types of covalent crosslinked hydrogels (films, beads, and micro-/nanoparticles) will be discussed.

Crosslinked sodium alginate (SA) films were prepared in the presence of GA and glycerol and loaded with diclofenac diethylamine, as model drug (Kulkarni and Wagh 2010). As expected, both the water uptake and drug release rate were dependent on the crosslinking density and films thickness. These flexible films were suitable and safe for transdermal drug delivery. The same research group prepared also interpenetrated polymer networks (IPN) matrices based on SA and carrageenan for the loading and release of a drug-resin complex based on propranolol HCl and Indion 254 (Kulkarni et al. 2011). The authors have demonstrated that the drug release was controlled by both the ion exchange resin and by the crosslinking degree. More recently, the same research group loaded the previous

drug-resin complex in IPN hydrogels tablets based on SA and tamarind seed polysaccharide (Kulkarni et al. 2013). A dual pH and thermo-responsive porous hydrogel was prepared from SA, poly(N-acryloylglycine methyl ester), and poly (acryloylglycine ethyl ester) in the presence of N,N'-methylenebisacrylamide (MBA) (Ma et al. 2013). Moreover, $CaCO_3$ particles were added and reacted with dilute HCl in order to produce CO_2 and $CaCl_2$, which acted further as an ionic crosslinking agent for SA. Caffeine was loaded as a model drug, and a higher cumulative release was observed at pH 7.4 and 37 °C than at room temperature and pH 1.2. Another interesting type of hydrogel films was obtained by an in situ crosslinking between oxidized SA and N-maleoyl-CS. These hydrogels were loaded with metronidazole and the highest drug entrapment efficiency was 99.2% (Pasaribu et al. 2019). No significant difference was observed between the cumulative drug releases, after 12 h, at pH 1.2 and 7.4. Very recently, magnetic hydrogels based on alginate, gelatin, and Fe_3O_4 NPs were loaded with doxorubicin (Dox) (Jahanban-Esfahlan et al. 2020). Drug encapsulation and drug loading efficiencies were determined to be 59 and 47%, respectively. The loading of Dox led to a decrease of the ZP values from −17.2 to −8.1 mV. This hybrid hydrogel exhibited a pH-sensitive behavior with a higher drug release rate at pH 4 than at pH 7.4 and 37 °C.

pH and temperature-responsive beads, based on alginate-graft-PNIPAM and crosslinked with GA, were loaded with indomethacin (IM) (Işiklan and Kücükbalci 2012). The obtained beads were spherical in shape with a porous surface. The release rate of IM was faster at pH 7.4 than at 1.2. Moreover, the drug release was influenced by the grafting density, drug/polymer ratio, and crosslinking density. In another study, insulin-loaded alginate/chitosan (CS) gel beads, crosslinked with GA, were obtained and studied for oral administration (Tahtat et al. 2013). The increase of the CS amount led to a decrease of the cumulative drug release during 6 h. Beads based on SA-graft-poly(N-isopropylacrylamide) (PNIPAM) and poly(acrylic acid) (PAA) were also prepared in the presence of GA and studied for the loading and release of IM (Işiklan and Kücükbalci 2016). Due to the presence of synthetic polymers, these beads were sensitive to both pH and temperature. The cumulative drug release at pH 7.4 and 37 °C was higher than at pH 1.2 and 25 °C. The drug release mechanism followed non-Fickian or Case II transport, depending on the bead structure.

Microcapsules based on alginate or pectin and gelatin, crosslinked with GA in the presence of sodium carboxymethyl cellulose, were loaded with three drugs, such as metronidazole hydrochloride, diclofenac sodium, and IM (Saravanan and Rao 2010). The highest encapsulation efficiency was obtained for IM. The microparticles formed by the system alginate/gelatin were characterized by a smaller average size than those of pectin/gelatin. Moreover, a lesser aggregation and easy dispersion was also noticed for the alginate-based system. Microspheres based on alginate and hyaluronate were prepared by crosslinking with GA and loaded with exenatide, at a loading efficiency of 71.4% (Zhang et al. 2014). The size of these microspheres was increased with the crosslinking duration. The drug release was complete after 7 h at both pH 1.2 and 7.4. Very recently, He et al. (2020) obtained reduction-responsive alginate-based microcapsules via a sonochemical method. Both oleic acid modified Fe_3O_4 NPs and coumarin 6 were simultaneously loaded in these

microparticles which had an optimum size of 1.5 μm and were obtained under 400 W ultrasonication for 8 min in the presence of 0.8% thiolated alginate. The cumulative release increased from around 10% after 48 h at 37 °C to 80% in the presence of 10 mM GSH. In order to obtain a controlled and sustained drug release, a hybrid hydrogel was prepared with tetracycline HCl-loaded gelatin microspheres dispersed in oxidized alginate and carboxymethyl chitosan (CMCS) hydrogel matrix (Chen et al. 2017). By increasing the amount of loaded microspheres, the swelling degree decreased but the mechanical properties increased. The optimal formulation had a concentration of 30 mg/ml gelatin-based microspheres. A sustained drug release was noticed owing to the double microspheres/hydrogel obstacle. The possible application of this formulation is wound healing as this hybrid hydrogel had an excellent antibacterial effect.

Nanoparticles (NPs) based on alginate and gelatin crosslinked with GA were used for the loading and release of Dox (Lee et al. 2014). An average size of 489.5 nm was determined by DLS and the drug release was controlled for over 2 weeks. In another study, Dox was conjugated on pegylated oxidized alginate NPs, crosslinked with fluorescent carbon dots in order to prepare tumor theranostic platforms (Jia et al. 2016). The obtained NPs had an average size of 26 nm and a Dox amount of 0.2532 mg/mg. The pH trigged the release of Dox in the tumor environment without a burst release. Moreover, the fluorescence was an asset for imaging-guided cellular drug delivery. Alginate-cysteine conjugate was used for the preparation of tamoxifen (TMX)-loaded nanoparticles (NPs) (Martinez et al. 2012). The size of these NPs was smaller than 500 nm and the zeta potential (ZP) values were in the range of −7 to −37 mV. During 24 h only 50% of the TMX was released in PBS at pH 7.4 and 37 °C, in the presence of an anionic surfactant (sodium dodecyl sulfate). The unloaded NPs were not cytotoxic, whereas the TMX-loaded NPs led to an effective elimination of the carcinoma cells. The same research group had also studied the TMX-loaded NPs based on thiolated alginate and disulfide bond reduced albumin (Martinez et al. 2011). SA nanospheres, obtained by self-assembly and crosslinking with disulfide bonds, were loaded with 5-aminosalicylic acid (5-ASA) for colon-specific drug delivery (Chang et al. 2012). The size decreased from 203 to 137 nm as the concentration of the SH groups, and thus the crosslinking density, increased. A similar trend was noticed for the ZP values which ranged from −25.7 to −20.3 mV. In the presence of 10 mM glutathione (GSH), the sizes also increased. A cumulative drug release of around 25% was noticed after 15 h, whereas in the presence of GSH, this value increased up to 85%. More recently, SA-based NPs were crosslinked with GA and loaded with zidovudine, an antiviral drug (Joshy et al. 2017). The obtained NPs, stabilized with Pluronic 68, had an average size of 432 nm. The drug release was studied at pH 7.4 and a cumulative drug release of around 55% was noticed during 24 h.

Paclitaxel (PCX) was loaded in a series of self-assembled cysteamine-based disulfide crosslinked SA nanospheres in order to control the delivery to colonic cancer cells (Ayub et al. 2019). A pH-sensitive swelling behavior was noticed in the pH range of 1 to 7. The average sizes of different drug-free samples ranged between 113.0 and 291.9 nm, whereas the drug loading led to an increase of these sizes. The

stability of these nanospheres was assured by the high values of the ZP, in the range of −30 to −52 mV. Moreover, the size increased by 33% after 7 days of incubation with GSH. Furthermore, the drug release in simulated gastrointestinal media was also affected by the presence of GSH. Fluorescent microscopy demonstrated that more than 70% of the nanospheres were internalized into HT-29 cells. The disulfide bonds procedure was also used for the preparation of crosslinked SA NPs by air oxidation starting from thiolated SA (Chiu et al. 2020). Fluorescein-labelled wheat germ agglutinin was conjugated to the surface of these docetaxel (DTX)-loaded NPs. A mean diameter of 289 nm and a ZP value of −2.2 mV were determined. A cumulative drug release of 48.6% at 37 °C, in the presence of GSH, was observed in simulated gastrointestinal media, and it was demonstrated that the drug release fits the Higuchi model which means that DTX is released by a diffusion and dissolution mechanism. Moreover, a cellular uptake efficiency of 29.9% was noticed by fluorescence microscopy after 24 h of incubation.

Chitosan (CS)-based hydrogel films were obtained by a basic method of crosslinking in the presence of GA (Cojocariu et al. 2011). Different active principles were loaded in these hydrogels and the drug release was investigated at pH 2.2. As expected, it appeared that both the characteristics of the matrix and drug's properties have an important influence on release rate. Genipin was used as crosslinking agent for the preparation of lidocaine-loaded catechol-functionalized CS hydrogels (Xu et al. 2015). The presence of catechol groups significantly increased the mucoadhesion both in vitro and in vivo. In another study, the same crosslinking agent was used for the preparation of semi-IPN based on CS and bacterial cellulose (BC) (Arikibe et al. 2019). These hydrogels were loaded with quetiapine fumarate (QF), which is an antipsychotic drug, and it appeared to be pH-sensitive. The swelling degree increased at high CS ratio and low pH value. On the contrary, at high pH value, swelling degree increased by rising the BC ratio. A controlled release of QF, following the Higuchi model, at different pH values (1; 4.5 and 6.8) was noticed. 3-Aminopropyltriethoxysilane was used as crosslinking agent for the preparation of CS/poly(vinylpyrrolidone)-based hydrogels for the controlled release of cefixime in gastric pH medium (Ata et al. 2020). Swelling degree was studied as a function of pH and the maximal value was noticed at pH 2. The drug release in simulated gastric fluid followed the Higuchi model. Bovine serum albumin (BSA) was loaded in a pH-sensitive hydrogel based on carboxymethyl CS sodium salt and sodium alginate which were crosslinked with N-ethyl-N′-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide (EDC) and N-hydroxysuccinimide (NHS) (Xie et al. 2019). The swelling degree was studied at different pH values and the drug release was higher than 90% at pH 7.4. N-Succinyl-CS and oxidized alginate were crosslinked via the Schiff base reaction (Xing et al. 2019). In this hydrogel matrix were incorporated BSA-loaded microspheres based on sodium alginate ionically crosslinked with Ca^{2+}. As expected, the BSA release rate was slower from the hybrid hydrogels films than from microspheres. More recently, a dual UV and pH-responsive CS-based hydrogel was prepared, using a photo-cleavable crosslinking agent 4-formylphenyl 4-((4-formylphenoxy)methyl)-3-nitrobenzoate,

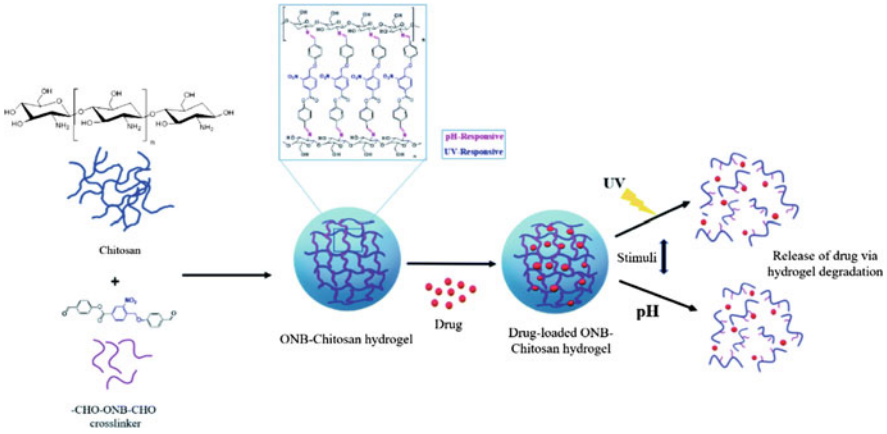


Fig. 2.1 Schematic representation of photo-cleavable and pH-responsive hydrogel proposed for drug delivery applications (Nisar et al. 2020; Reproduced by permission of The Royal Society of Chemistry)

for the loading of Dox HCl (Nisar et al. 2020). The schematic representation is provided in Fig. 2.1.

The highest swelling degree and therefore the highest drug release rate were noticed at pH 5.7 which is similar to the environment of cancerous tissues.

CS was combined with starch and crosslinked with both GA and sodium hexametaphosphate (SHMP) in order to obtain beads for the encapsulation of chlorpheniramine maleate (Kumari et al. 2016). The optimum conditions in order to achieve a maximum drug release were 60% CS, 40% starch, 10% SHMP, 15% GA, and 6.24 h drug release time at both pH 2.2 and 7.4.

Simple CS microspheres, crosslinked with GA, were loaded with famotidine by the classical emulsification technique (Ramachandran et al. 2011). The highest encapsulation efficiency was 73%, whereas the maximum cumulative drug release was 85.6% at 37 °C after 2 h at pH 2 followed by a release duration of 20 h at pH 6.8. Non-coated and pectin-coated curcumin-loaded CS microparticles were obtained by crosslinking with GA (Hwang and Shin 2018). Pectin was ionically crosslinked in the presence of Mg^{2+} or Ca^{2+} ions. The drug release was investigated at both pH 1.2 and 6.8. A slow curcumin release was noticed for the pectin-coated microparticles in the presence of Mg^{2+}. However, the presence of 1% pectinase led to an important increase of the drug release from the microparticles where the pectin was crosslinked with Ca^{2+} ions.

K-carrageenan/PVA hydrogel films, as wound dressings, were obtained by crosslinking with GA and used for the loading and release of gentamycin sulfate under physiological conditions (Bajpai et al. 2015). A diffusion-controlled release mechanism was noticed at 37 °C. In another study, k-carrageenan and hyaluronic acid (HA) were crosslinked with epichlorohydrin, and the obtained hydrogel films were loaded with L-carnosine, as a model drug (El-Aassar et al. 2015). The increase

of the HA content led to an increase of the porosity and thus to the increase of the water uptake. Moreover, the drug release was also affected by the HA content. Ciprofloxacin was loaded in β(1 → 3)(1 → 6)glucan/carrageenan (CG/car) hydrogels chemically crosslinked with GA (Nair et al. 2016). It was demonstrated that the presence of CBG enhanced the porosity, cell attachment, proliferation, drug loading, antibacterial activity, and wound healing ability of these hydrogels. The same drug was also encapsulated in hydrogels based on iota-carrageenan and gelatin, crosslinked also with GA (Padhi et al. 2016). The drug release was studied at pH 1.2 (gastric), 7.4 (physiological), and 9.4 (colonic). The faster drug release rate was noticed at pH 1.2. Moreover, the antimicrobial activity of these hydrogels was assessed. Pellets formulations were prepared based on k-carrageenan and starch hydrogels, crosslinked with glyoxal, and loaded with zaltoprofen (Sonawane and Patil 2018). The optimized formulation, with a 4:2 ratio of starch-carrageenan, displayed almost complete (99.15%) drug release after 12 h. In another study, k-carrageenan and β-cyclodextrin hydrogels were crosslinked with the same crosslinking agent and used for the loading of honey bee propolis extract (Sharaf and El-Naggar 2019). This hydrogel was further used for the impregnation of cationized cotton fabrics, and it appeared that this complex material has a high potential as wound healing system. Very recently, carrageenan, sodium alginate, and PEG, of different molecular weights, were used for the preparation of hydrogels by crosslinking with (3-aminopropyl)triethoxysilane for the encapsulation and release of lidocaine (Rasool et al. 2020). A cumulative release of around 85% was noticed after 6.5 h in PBS at 37 °C. Several theoretical mathematic models were applied in order to have a deeper insight of the drug release mechanism, and it was noticed that the drug release follows a quasi-Fickian diffusion model. At this point it is also of interest to mention the work of Akalin and Pulat (2020) in which k-carrageenan hydrogels were prepared by crosslinkinged with GA in order to be loaded with cooper and manganese micronutrients. Gel content increased from 72.3 to 93.4% as the amount of GA increased from 0.25 to 1.5 ml. As expected, both the swelling degree and drug release decreased with increasing the crosslinking agent amount.

Genipin was also used as crosslinking agent for the preparation of k-carrageenan/carboxymethyl cellulose (CMC) beads (Muhamad et al. 2011). Beta-carotene was loaded in these beads, and the swelling and the drug release were carried out under simulated gastrointestinal tract condition (pH 1.2 and 7.4). Moreover, the release rate was correlated with the crosslinking degree. A similar study was also performed by Hezaveh et al. (2012). In another study, these researchers have also loaded beta-carotene in k-carrageenan/hydroxyethyl cellulose and k-carrageenan/PVA hydrogels always crosslinked with genipin (Hezaveh and Muhamad 2013a, b). Using the same crosslinking agent, ranitidine HCl-loaded k-carrageenan/NaCMC hydrogels were prepared by another team of researchers (Selvakumaran and Muhamad 2015). These authors have studied the effect of the crosslinking degree, and it appeared that it had an influence on the gel strength, porosity, swelling, and drug release.

Isoniazid, as a model drug, was loaded in microspheres prepared from k-carrageenan and gelatin crosslinked with genipin (Devi and Maji 2010). A higher release rate was noticed at basic pH than at low pH values. Hydrogel microparticles

were also prepared from k-carrageenan using divinyl sulfone, as a crosslinking agent, in a sodium bis(2-ethylhexyl)sulfosuccinate reverse micellar system (Sagbas et al. 2012). Moreover, by loading Fe_3O_4 nanoparticles, hybrid hydrogel microparticles were obtained. The release studies were carried out in the presence of phenylephrine HCl, as a model drug, and a quaternization reaction of the chemical groups from the surface of these microparticles improved to a great extent the drug release in PBS.

Hydrogels based on hyaluronic acid (HA) were crosslinked with Gantrez S97 which is the acid form of a methyl vinyl ether and maleic anhydride copolymer (Larraneta et al. 2018). Methylene blue was used as a model hydrophobic principle and a sustained release was noticed during 2 days. In another study, ketoprofen-loaded HA was crosslinked in the presence of 2,2′-(ethylenedioxy)bis(ethylamine) (EDEA) and EDC (Csapo et al. 2018). Moreover, a cationic surfactant was used for the preparation of a hydrophobized HA by a partial neutralization with positively charged amines. The drug release kinetics was different for these two colloidal drug delivery systems. More recently, HA hydrogels, crosslinked with 8% adipic acid dihydrazide (ADH), were loaded with an anti-oxidative polyphenol (epigallocatechin gallate) used for the treatment of tendinopathy (Hsiao et al. 2019). A cumulative drug release of around 90% was noticed after 10 days and the therapeutic effect was assessed both in vitro and in vivo. Two drugs, such as curcumin and simvastatin, were loaded in nanogels based on thiolated HA and crosslinked with 1,4-bis(3-[2-pyridyldithio]propionamido)butane (Pedrosa et al. 2014). A mean diameter around 100 nm was observed by DLS, whereas the ZP value was −19.3 mV. Drug encapsulation, with the maximum efficiency of 52.1%, led to an increase of the mean diameter.

Agarose and Carbopol 974P were used for the preparation of resveratrol-loaded semi-IPN hydrogels (Tunesi et al. 2015). After 7 days, around 80% of drug was released indicating a controlled and sustained release.

Fucoidan-shelled CS beads were obtained using genipin as crosslinking agent and loaded with berberine for oral administration (Yu et al. 2015). The drug release rate was higher at pH 1.2 than at pH 7.4. Moreover, the drug-loaded beads inhibited the growth of both *S. aureus* and *E. coli*. In another study, fucoidan/CS-n-arginine nanogels were prepared by crosslinking with genipin and loaded with amoxicillin for preventing *Helicobacter* infections (Lin et al. 2017). The average sizes of these particles were in the range of 173 to 228 nm. The drug release was pH dependent, and it appeared that amoxicillin-loaded nanogels significantly inhibit *Helicobacter pylori* growth.

Chitin nanocrystals scaffolds were crosslinked with GA and encapsulated with curcumin-loaded Tween 20 micelles (Ou et al. 2018). Drug release rate was faster at pH 5.3 than at pH 7.4. Moreover, the cytotoxicity tests revealed the inhibitor effect of curcumin against the proliferation of MCF-7 cells.

2.2.1.2 Crosslinking by Grafting-Copolymerization

Synthesis of hydrogels based on polysaccharide modified with chemical, thermal, or photo-crosslinkable groups may provide an alternative method for hydrogel

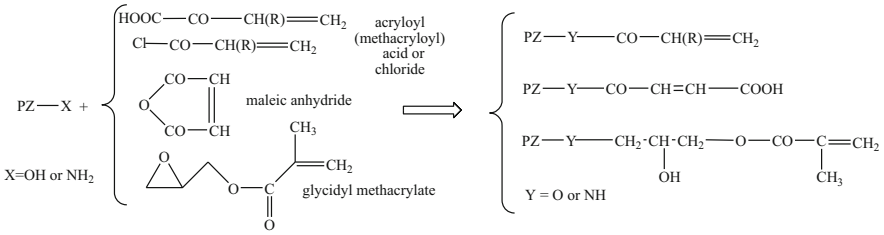


Fig. 2.2 Schematic representation of obtaining macromers by functionalizing the polysaccharide with polymerizable substituents

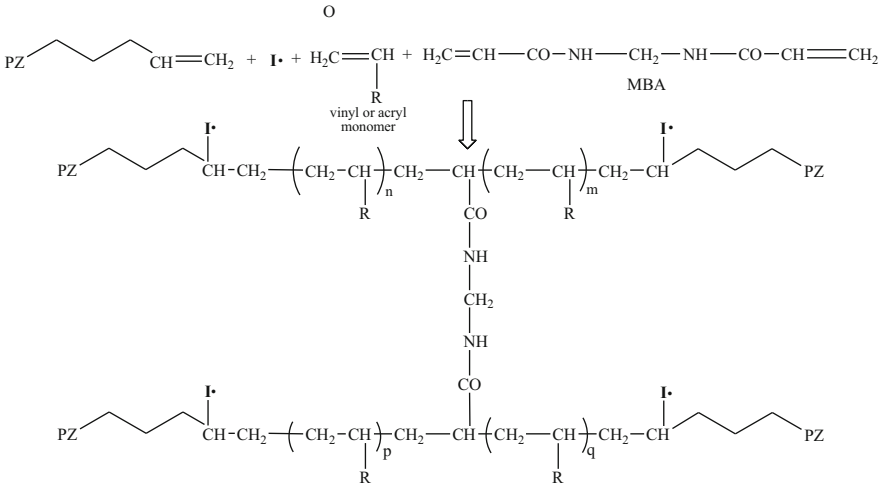


Fig. 2.3 Scheme of the polysaccharide macromer crosslinking (*PZ* polysaccharide chain)

formation; these hydrogels allow macromers containing maleic, itaconic, acrylic, or methacrylic groups as substituents, therefore being able to polymerize radicals and to gelate in situ. The introduction of the polymerizable groups to the polysaccharide base chain is done by analogous polymer transformation reactions to the OH or amine groups of the polysaccharide. Schematically, the functionalization of the polysaccharide, resulting in obtaining macromers, is presented in Fig. 2.2**.**

The copolymerization of the macromer with vinyl or acrylic monomers and with difunctional monomers that allow to obtain crosslinked structures (e.g., MBA), initiated chemically, thermally, or photochemically (with UV radiation or visible spectrum), subsequently leads to crosslinked structures which, given the general strong hydrophilic character of polysaccharides, have the character of a hydrogel (Fig. 2.3).

However, UV light initiation of polymerization has some drawbacks in tissue engineering applications such as DNA damage, immunosuppression, cell death, accelerating tissue aging, and cancer induction. Visible light initiation is preferred

because it could penetrate in the depth of tissues with lower energy than UV light and, consequently, it could reduce the DNA damages and increase cell viability chance. Therefore, visible light crosslinkable hydrogels are appropriate choices to develop injectable hydrogels.

Obtaining the crosslinked structures can also be done directly from the macromer by chemically or physically initiated copolymerization only with the difunctional monomer as crosslinker. Another way of obtaining hydrogels is the direct grafting/crosslinking of the polysaccharide, without being previously functionalized as macromer, in the presence or absence of vinyl monomers without requiring a difunctional monomer as crosslinker. The reaction is initiated chemically or physically by creating the polysaccharide macroradical, usually by extraction of a hydrogen atom from the -CH_2 group (C6 in the glucoside ring); in this case semi- or interpenetrated polymer networks (IPN) are obtained, the crosslinking occurring by recombining the macroradicals.

Among the first polysaccharides modified by the introduction of polymerizable groups as substituent on the base chain are gelatin and xanthan (which, however, have a nonmarine origin), transformed into maleate or acrylate macromers and subsequently polymerized/copolymerized with N-isopropyl acrylamide (NIPAM) and MBA in order to obtain thermosensitive hydrogels (Hamcerencu et al. 2007; Hamcerencu et al. 2012).

In a first stage, Wang et al. (2017) obtained an amide derivative of chitosan by the reaction of maleic anhydride to the NH_2 group of the polysaccharide. The synthesized macromer (CSMAH) is subsequently radically copolymerized with acrylic acid (AA) in the presence of ammonium persulfate (APS) as initiator. The obtained hydrogels are pH-sensitive, their degree of swelling in water increasing with the pH value and the amount of AA relative to CSMAH, ranging between 10 and 40 (w/w), depending on the value of the mentioned parameters. These are macrogel-type hydrogels, the size of the polymers decreasing with the increase of the AA weight in their composition, as a result of the increase of the crosslinking degree. The authors encapsulated amoxicillin and meloxicam in hydrogels and found that the drug release rates increase with pH increment and decrease with increasing the crosslinking degree. The kinetics of drug release are controlled to varying extents by a combination of diffusion and hydrogel relaxation.

pH-responsive hydrogel for controlled drug delivery was prepared from chitosan (CS), acrylic acid (AA), and (2-dimethylamino)ethyl methacrylate (DMAEMA) via in situ free radical polymerization (Che et al. 2016). In this case, it was not necessary to obtain a prior CS macromer, the crosslinking occurring by direct copolymerization of the two vinyl comonomers to the radicals created on the CS backbone under the action of the redox reaction initiation system (potassium persulfate and sodium thiosulfate). In fact, an IPN structure is obtained, the two networks being, on one hand, crosslinked CS and, on the other, a copolymer generated by the copolymerization of the two vinyl monomers. The obtained hydrogel has a pH-sensitive character, conferred by the coexistence in its structure of both basic groups (-NH_2 from CS) and acid (-COOH from AA). With these excellent features, this CS-based

pH-responsive hydrogel holds great promise to be utilized as vehicle for anticancer drug delivery.

Chitin is used mainly to obtain chitosan by deacetylation. Functionalization of chitin with photo-crosslinkable groups inserted in the base chain through the reaction with methacrylic acid is well known, and among the first published works was that of Tanodekaew et al. (2004). A UV photo-crosslinkable water-soluble chitin derivative was prepared recently by the action of methacrylic acid (MAA) on low molecular weight chitin under mild conditions in the presence of EDC and 4-dimethylaminopyridine as activators (Khor et al. 2011). Chitin methacrylate derivative (CM) was exposed to UV irradiation in the presence of a photo-initiator, resulting in a transparent hydrogel in about 10–15 min as indicated by a clear separation of a gel from the liquid. The CM-hydrogel is enzymatically degradable (lysozyme), after 24 h being obtained totally water-soluble compounds. In vitro tests for cytotoxicity against three cell lines, NCTC clone 929, IMR-90, and MG-63, indicated that the hydrogel was noncytotoxic, promoting the adhesion and proliferation of cells to its surface and suggesting the possibility of being used as support and for the inclusion of drugs.

Functionalization of alginic acid (AgA) or alginates with photo- or thermo-polymerizable groups is possible by using GMA which react by opening of the epoxy group with the -OH groups preferably from positions 2 and 3 of the glucoside ring. Thermally polymerizable AA-GMA macromers were thus synthesized under alkaline conditions (Wang et al. 2015). The AgA-GMA aqueous solution can be polymerized at physiological temperature (37 °C) in the presence of APS and N,N, N′,N′-tetramethyl ethylenediamine (TEMED) as initiator. After 5–20 min, in function of the concentration of initiator system, AgA-GMA hydrogels are obtained, exhibiting a porous structure with average pore sizes ranging from 50 to 200 μm, directly depending on the macromonomer concentration. The realization of hydrogels in these conditions makes it possible to obtain them by in situ polymerization after the intramuscular injection of the reaction system in experimental animals, finding at the same time only a mild inflammatory effect, which proves that the hydrogels are biocompatible. The biocompatibility of the hydrogels was also evaluated by human umbilical vein endothelial cell (HUVEC) encapsulation. It was noticed that both the cell viability and proliferation were unaffected by macromonomer concentrations, which suggests that AA-GMA has a potential application in the field of tissue engineering, as well as support for drugs immobilization.

Biocompatible hydrogel nanocomposites containing mesoporous silica were obtained starting from AA-GMA macromer, by copolymerization-crosslinking with 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate (HEMA) and N,N-dimethylacrylamide (DMAAm) initiated by sodium persulfate. The hydrogels are biocompatible with human immortalized RWPE-1 prostatic epithelial cells (Hugo de Lima et al. 2018). The hydrogels showed higher drug (prednisolone) loading efficiency influenced by the increase in the amount of alginate and silica. The in vitro kinetic studies proved that delivery is produced with reduced burst effect (up to 90%) providing a steady release into the solution.

Agarose (AG) is a marine polysaccharide, generally used as a cell immobilization matrix, drug delivery vehicle, or dental impression material because of its gelling ability and biocompatibility. Few chemical modifications on AG have been done and thus a small number of AG derivatives were synthesized up to now. Acrylated AG-based hydrogels were reported by Pourjavadi et al. (2011), the potential application being that of systems for immobilization and sustained release of some fertilizers. Macromer (ACAG) was synthesized by esterification of AG with acryloyl chloride; three different substitution degrees (DS) macromers were obtained. Hydrogels were obtained by radicalic graft copolymerization of hydroxyethyl acrylate (HEA) and AA, initiated by APS. The properties of the obtained hydrogels depend on the DS value, which in fact determines the degree of crosslinking of the network. The morphology highlighted by MEB shows that these hydrogels have a highly porous structure, the pore size being smaller for the hydrogel obtained from the macromer with the highest DS. The results revealed that at high DS, water absorbency is decreased, an absolutely normal effect caused by increasing the crosslinking degree. Hydrosoluble compounds such as potassium nitrate can be loaded in these hydrogels; the loading efficiency and the release kinetics correlated well with the swelling results. The characteristics of the hydrogel and the ability to include and release water-soluble compounds in a sustained manner also recommend it as materials for obtaining sustained release polymer/drug systems.

Recently, Date et al. (2020a, b, c) report the synthesis of full-IPN hydrogels based on AG and poly(vinyl alcohol) (PVA) obtained by direct chemical crosslinking of the polymer mixture, without requiring the intermediate step of obtaining a macromer. Crosslinking is provided by MBA, being initiated by APS. Prepared hydrogels showed excellent swelling, high efficiency in loading inclusion complex of ibuprofen in β-cyclodextrin, and pH-dependent drug release. The biodegradation and cytotoxicity assay studies confirmed the degradable and nontoxic nature of hydrogels and prove that they are potential candidates for drug delivery.

The possibility of obtaining carbon dots-incorporated (CDs) hydrogel nanocomposites based on AG and PVA, as matrix for drug loading and release, was recently reported Date et al. 2020a, b, c. The presence of hydroxyl and carboxyl groups on surface of CDs makes it more hydrophilic, so that their incorporation in hydrogel matrices makes the obtained biocomposite to show excellent pH-responsive swelling and qualify them as excellent biomaterial for drug delivery applications. The biocomposite synthesis is achieved by crosslinking in solution the mixture of AG and PVA in which CDs were dispersed, using MBA as crosslinker and APS as initiator, in the presence or absence of norfloxacin (NFC) used as a water-soluble model drug.

The obtained biocomposite is pH-sensitive, and the degree of swelling in aqueous media increases with the amount of PVA in the network, respectively with the concentration of CDs. Hydrogels are biodegradable and noncytotoxic, capable of continuously releasing NFC for a long time (release efficiency of at least 30% after 12 h). It can be assumed these hydrogel nanocomposites, which act as double drug carrier system, are well suitable for controlled drug delivery.

In order to obtain superabsorbent materials with potential applications in agriculture, but also in the biomedical field, Chaudhary et al. (2020) synthesize a semi-IPN hydrogel, based on AG and gelatin. The semi-IPN structure is achieved by grafting/crosslinking of the mixture of two polymers (different ratios), microwave assisted, in the presence of methyl acrylate (MA) and (MBA). This hydrogel can be applied as a promising absorbent of water in agricultural applications, but its biodegradable and biocompatible character also recommends it for biomedical applications (drug release systems).

Hyaluronic acid (HA) is an attractive starting material for the preparation of hydrogels with desired morphology, bioactivity, and capacity to be associated with a variety of biological active compounds. The presence of the -OH and -COOH groups along the polysaccharide chain allows the realization of numerous functionalization reactions, including the introduction of unsaturated substituents. It can be crosslinked through a wide range of procedures, a review of which is published by Xu et al. (2012).

Macromers containing methacrylate groups were obtained by reacting HA with an excess of GMA or methacrylic anhydride (MeA) in aqueous media (Leach et al. 2003). Because the ester bond is susceptible to hydrolysis while the ether bond is not, the reaction conditions in this phase determine the degradability of the hydrogels obtained from these precursors. GMA-HA hydrogels were obtained by exposing the macromer for 1 min to UV light in the presence of the photo-initiator Irgacure 2959 and N-vinyl pyrrolidinone as comonomer. The properties of the network can be shaped by modification of the HA molecular weight, degree of methacrylation, and the concentration of the macromer.

Chemically modified HA with polymerizable groups provides a more efficient means to produce micro-/nanoparticles. For example, radical polymerization of HA-GMA in an inverse emulsion of water in hexanes containing Span 80 and Tween resulted in nanogels of ~30 nm in size with an estimated swelling ratio of ~10 g/g (Prata et al. 2010). Microgels were obtained from precursor solution of methacrylated HA and a photo-initiator in water which was deposited onto PDMS pattern; the photo-crosslinking occurred by the exposure to the UV light. When cells are included in the precursor liquid, cell-laden microgels are prepared (Yeh et al. 2006).

Fucoidan (Fu) photo-crosslinked structures for biomedical applications were obtained by Reys et al. (2016) starting from a methacrylated fucoidan (MFu) macromer. MFu was synthesized by reacting Fu with methacrylic anhydride, in aqueous solution at pH 8, for 6 h at 50 °C. To obtain MFu particles, a technology based on superhydrophobic surfaces was used. Drops of 1 to 5 μl of MFu and photo-initiator solution were dispersed onto the superhydrophobic surface, forming spherical particles with different sizes. The surfaces drop-loaded were exposed to visible light for 15 min to promote photo-crosslinking. The diameter of the obtained particles, which present a spherical shape, varies between 2 and 20 mm (wet state), respectively 0.9 and 1.3 mm after lyophilization, the smallest average diameter being obtained when using higher concentrations of MFu.

The cytocompatibility of the developed structures was evaluated by culturing L929 cells in direct contact with the MFu and photo-crosslinked particles and evaluating cell metabolic activity (MTS assay), proliferation (DNA quantification), adhesion, and morphology (CLSM). The particles proved to be not cytotoxic and could be good candidates as cell culture matrices or drug delivery vehicles for biomedical applications.

Injectable hydrogels are promising materials for achieving hemostasis in case of internal injuries and bleeding, as these biomaterials can be introduced into a wound site using minimally invasive approaches. An ideal injectable hydrogel precursor should solidify after injection in the wound area and promote the natural clotting cascade.

Carrageenan is a polysaccharide that, by introducing unsaturated groups into the base chain, can generate injectable macromers, which can polymerize once introduced into the body. Injectable hydrogel based on visible-light crosslinked methacrylate-kappa-carrageenan (KaMA) was recently reported by Tavakoli et al. (2019). The macromer KaMA with two different degrees of methacrylation (6 and 12%) was primarily synthesized by esterification of polysaccharide with methacrylic anhydride, in solution, at pH 8. To synthesize visible-light crosslinked KaMA hydrogel, different amounts of KaMA were dissolved in water; photo-initiator (eosin Y), the co-initiator (triethanol amine), and comonomer N-vinylcaprolactam were added. The final solution was injected on a glass coverslip and exposed under white LED light (100 Mw. cm^{-2}) for 180 s. The chemical crosslinked gel thus obtained was gently sprayed with a solution of KCl physical crosslinking. From a morphological point of view, the hydrogels are macroporous, the pore size decreasing with the increase of the methacrylation degree. The cytocompatibility of these hydrogels was investigated via in vitro viability, metabolic activity, and proliferation of cells, via surface seeding. For investigating degradation behavior of KaMA in vitro, the samples were incubated in PBS at 37 °C for different time periods (3, 7, and 14 days). Evidently, the degradation rate of all samples enhanced with increasing incubation time. Higher methacrylation degree led to denser and packed hydrogel networks and resulted in reduced hydrogel degradation in PBS. The results proved the potential of visible-light crosslinked KaMA hydrogels to be used in tissue engineering applications without any harmful side effects and suggest the possibility of using them as carriers of drugs in the treatment of skin conditions (burns, incisions, excisions).

pH-sensitive and superabsorbent k-carrageenan (kC) hydrogels were synthesized by grafting/crosslinking of polysaccharide with different vinylic monomers (or mixtures) initiated by classical initiators or redox systems. Sadeghi and Soleimani obtained pH-responsive and low salt-sensitive superabsorbent hydrogels by crosslinking/graft copolymerization of acrylamide (AAm), AA, or MAA onto kC backbone in solution (water), in the presence of crosslinker (MBA) by using APS as initiator (Sadeghi and Soleimani 2011). In the case of AA and MAA, some carboxylic groups can be converted to carboxylate anions which contribute to the amplification of the superabsorbent character of the hydrogel. In the case of AAm, the network may be hydrolyzed under alkaline conditions. Hydrogels have a high

swelling capacity in aqueous solutions of LiCl, NaCl, and KCl, due to anti-salt characteristics of the sulfate groups from kC part of the network. The pH-sensitive character and the swelling-deswelling behavior of the hydrogels make them suitable biomaterials to design new systems for controlled drug delivery. The same group obtained superabsorbent hydrogels by grafting/crosslinking of AAm and itaconic acid (IA) onto kC backbone, followed by alkaline hydrolysis (Sadeghi et al. 2012). The swelling capacity in water was proved to be dependent on the crosslinker (MBA) and of the monomer mixture concentration. Higher swelling capacities were obtained from employing higher initial ratios of IA/AAm. Although the authors did not study this aspect, the high degree of swelling in the water and the pH-sensitive character recommend the hydrogels obtained for the realization of sustained release systems of water-soluble drugs.

A pH-responsive hydrogel was obtained, too, by grafting/crosslinking of kC with AA, in the presence of MBA as crosslinker and using APS as initiator (Hosseinzadeh 2010). Diclofenac sodium salt was loaded by diffusion in these hydrogels, the loading efficiency depending on drug concentration, loading time, and crosslinking degree of the network. The release of diclofenac from the hydrogels decreases as the pH of the dissolution medium was lower. At low pH values, electrostatic repulsion between the carboxylic acid groups of backbone is low, thus decreases gel swelling and minimizes release of drug by diffusion. In alkaline media the electrostatic repulsion between carboxylate groups increases, thus increasing the gel swelling degree, and so the release of drug increased.

Synthesis of k-carrageenan-based superabsorbent hydrogels with improved properties was reported by Salimi et al. (2010). They are obtained by homogenous solution polymerization process, starting from kC, AA, sodium acrylate (NaA), 2-hydroxyethyl acrylate (HEA), and MBA, by using APS as initiator. The hydrogels showed interesting properties when the swelling medium was alternatively changed between solutions with different salt concentrations and between various water-methanol mixtures with altered compositions. This smart behavior may be exploited for obtaining biomedical applications, such as systems for drug delivery.

A biopolymer-based superabsorbent hydrogel composite based on k-carrageenan (kC) has been prepared via graft copolymerization of AA in the presence of bentonite powder using MBA as a crosslinking agent and APS as an initiator (Hosseinzadeh et al. 2011). The swelling properties of biocomposites proved to be a function of the monomer, initiator, crosslinker, and bentonite concentration. Generally, swelling ability of these "anionic" hydrogels in salt solutions is appreciably decreased compared to the swelling values in distilled water. The authors studied the swelling of kC/bentonite-based biocomposites in saline solutions of NaCl, $CaCl_2$, and $AlCl_3$. The decrease of water absorbency in multivalent cationic solutions could be related to the complexing ability of the carboxylate groups to form polymeric matrix with the formation of intramolecular and intermolecular complexes which resulted in an increase of the crosslinking degree. Another superabsorbent hydrogel biocomposites were obtained by using montmorillonite (MMT) particles as mineral filler. For example, Sadeghi et al. (2012) reported a hydrogel composite based on kC grafted-crosslinked with AAm, IA, and MBA, in the

presence of montmorillonite. The biocomposite possesses high biocompatibility and biodegradability (due to the kC part) and higher swollen gel strength (due to the inorganic parts).

Highly swollen *iota*-carrageenan (iC) and MMT-based hydrogels were prepared by free radical crosslinking copolymerization of the polysaccharide with AAm and an anionic comonomer such as sodium methacrylate (SMA); poly(ethylene glycol) diacrylate (PEGDA) was used as a crosslinker and APS as initiator. The hydrogels, of semi-IPN type, and the hybrid composite systems thus obtained, have the ability to absorb water in high amounts and could serve as a potential device for water or dye sorbents with potential applications in agriculture, environment, separation processes, and water purification. Evidently, they can include hydrosoluble drugs and could also be used as supports for the inclusion/release of drugs (Karadağ et al. 2014).

Recently, agar/kC and agar/kC/MMT hydrogels were prepared by the free radical crosslinking reaction of AG and kC in the presence of triethylene glycol divinyl ether (TEGDE), APS, and (TEMED) used as initiator-accelerator system (Gürkan Polat et al. 2020). Hydrogels with various swelling degrees were obtained by adjusting the parameters of reaction (free radical initiator and crosslinking agent concentrations, reaction temperature, kC/AG ratio, and MMT concentration). They could be potentially used as eco-friendly and nontoxic materials for biomedical applications (tissue engineering, drug release).

2.2.2 Ionic Crosslinking

Marine polysaccharides contain in their native structure ionizable groups, or they can be created at a later stage of processing, as is the case of chitosan obtained by deacetylation of chitin. The presence of these ionic or ionizable groups makes it possible to crosslink by interposing di- and polyfunctional ions between the linear polymer chains. The great advantage of the process is that it does not use toxic crosslinking agents; the disadvantage is the low chemical and mechanical stability of the obtained hydrogels. By ionic crosslinking various drug delivery systems can be obtained in the form of micro-/nanoparticles, capsules, and films for controlled and sustained release of active therapeutic principles.

The literature abounds with examples of hydrogels obtained by ionic crosslinking, sometimes combined with other types of crosslinking. The majority of marine polysaccharides are anionic, so the crosslinking agents used are di- and polyvalent cations: Ca^{+2}, Mg^{+2}, Fe^{2+}, Fe^{3+}, Zn^{2+}, and Cu^{2+}. An example of a cationic polysaccharide is chitosan (CS), so its crosslinking is done with di- and polyanions (sulfate anion, tripolyphosphate). A selection of works published in the last 10 years, highlighting the type of ionic crosslinker, the formulation of the hydrogel, and the encapsulated drug, is presented in Table 2.1.

Numerous hydrogels have been reported by crosslinking alginate with $CaCl_2$ (Zhang et al. 2019a, b; Patel et al. 2016; Abdellatif et al. 2020; Uyen et al. 2020), mixtures of it with CS (Feng et al. 2014), chondroitin sulfate (Fajardo et al. 2012),

Table 2.1 Drug-loaded ionic crosslinked hydrogels

System	Crosslinking agent	Loaded drug	Type of formulation	References
SA	$CaCl_2$	– Insulin – Doxorubicin – Ibuprofen – Ketoprofen, quercetin – Ceftriaxone sodium – Metformin – Indometacin – Metformin HCl – Hydrocortisone – Acetaminophen – Ibuprofen – Retinoic acid – Dexamethasone	– Microparticles – Nanogel – Beads – Hydrogel – Microparticles/ beads – Microparticles – Beads – Microparticles – Microparticles – Hydrogel – Aerogel beads – Microparticles – Hydrogel	Ahmed and El-Say (2014) Xue et al. (2015) Dalaty et al. (2016) Gonçalves et al. (2016) Patel et al. (2016) Nayak et al. (2016) Cerciello et al. (2017) Samak et al. (2017) Yin et al. (2018) Szekalska et al. (2018) Veres et al. (2018) Wang et al. (2018) Zhang et al. (2019a, b)
	$Zn(CH_3COO)_2$ $FeCl_3$ $CaCO_3$	– Curcumin – Cetuximab/ octreotide – Prednisolone	– Microparticles – Beads – Beads	Uyen et al. (2020) Abdellatif et al. (2020) Russo et al. (2020)
Sodium hyaluronate	$CaCl_2$	– Tocopherol	– Nanoemulsion	Kong and Park (2011)
Kappa-carrageenan	NaCl, KCl, $CaCl_2$, $MgCl_2$, KCl, KSCN KCl, CaCl2	– Ibuprofen – Curcumin – Tetracycline	– Aerogels – Hydrogel film – Aerogels	Obaidat et al. (2018) Kadota et al. (2020) Agostinho et al. (2020)
CS	TPP	– Clobazam – Docetaxel – Acetaminophen	– Microspheres – Nanoparticles – Tablets with NPs	Kumar et al. (2012) Mahmood et al. (2019) Pinto et al. (2018), Pan et al. (2020)
Chitin	TPP	– Paclitaxel – Ethionamide, methacycline, rifampicin	– Nanoparticles – Nanoparticles	Smitha et al. (2013) Gayathri et al. (2017)

(continued)

Table 2.1 (continued)

System	Crosslinking agent	Loaded drug	Type of formulation	References
	$CaCl_2$	– Methotrexate	– Nanogels	Panonnummal and Sabitha (2018)
SA/CS	TPP + $CaCl_2$ TPP + $CaCl_2$ $CaCl_2$ TPP	– Doxorubicin – Rabeprazole – L-ascorbic acid – Vancomycin HCl	– Beads – Nanoparticles – Membranes – Microparticles beads	Feng et al. (2014) Ahmed and El-Say (2014) Gierszewska et al. (2018) Unagolla and Jayasuriya (2018)
SA/CS micelles	$CaCl_2$	– Emodin	– Microparticles	Conga et al. (2018)
SA/locust bean gum	$AlCl_3$	– Capecitabine	– IPN microbeads	Upadhyay et al. (2018)
SA/chondroitin sulfate	$CaCl_2$	– Indomethacin	– Hydrogel	Fajardo et al. (2012)
SA/sterculia gum	$BaCl_2$	– Pantoprazole	– Microparticles beads	Singh and Chauhan (2011)
SA/starch	$CaCl_2$	– Diclofenac sodium	– Microparticles	Khlibsuwan et al. (2018)
SA/ carboxymethyl cashew gum	$ZnSO_4$	– Isoxsuprine HCl	– Hydrogels microparticles	Das et al. (2014)
SA/CMC	$FeCl_3$	– Metformin	– Hydrogel beads	Swamy and Yun (2015)
SA/guar gum	$BaCl_2$	– Ibuprofen	– Hydrogel beads	Seeli et al. (2016)
SA/gelatin/ hydroxyapatite	$CaCO_3$	– Tetracycline HCl	– Hydrogels	Yan et al. (2016)
SA/ montmorillonite	$CaCl_2$	– Acetaminophen	– Hydrogels	Eral et al. (2014)
SA/CS/k-carrageenan	$CaCl_2$, KCl	– 5-Fluorouracil	– Microbeads	Sun et al. (2019)
SA/κ-carrageenan	$CaCl_2$	– Insulin	– Hydrogel beads	Lim et al. (2017)
CS/k-carrageenan	TPP	– Hydrophilic drugs	– Nanoparticles	Rodrigues et al. (2012)
CS/fucoidan	TPP	– Gentamicin – Ciprofloxacin	– Nanoparticles – Nanoparticles	Huang et al. (2016) Elbi et al. (2017)
HA/CS	TPP	– Curcumin, resveratrol	– Nanoparticles	Hussain et al. (2020)
SA/carbon dots	TPP	– Tetracycline HCl	– Microparticles	Gogoi and Chowdhury (2014)

starch (Khlibsuwan et al. 2018), locust beam gum (Upadhyay et al. 2018), k-carrageenan (Lim et al. 2017; Sun et al. 2019), or powdered inorganic substances such as hydroxyapatite (Yan et al. 2016) and montmorillonite (Eral et al. 2014). Obviously, such combinations were made in order to regulate some properties of the hydrogel, such as hydrophilicity, the ability to include and release the drug. The use of metal cations such as Zn^{2+}, Cu^{2+}, and Fe^{2+}/Fe^{3+} can result in obtaining more stable hydrogels, as a consequence of the additional coordination bonds formed by these cations. Using metal cations can also crosslink fucoidan, chondroitin sulfate, HA (Kong and Park 2011), or alginate (Ghosal et al. 2020), but the lower stability of the gels they form makes these polysaccharides to be used mainly in combination with the aforementioned or in the form of derivatives. CS/fucoidan-based NPs, for example, loaded with gentamicin, have been evaluated physicochemically and biologically for pulmonary drug release, with increased antibiotic efficacy and elimination of side effects (Huang et al. 2016).

Chitosan is practically the only cationic polysaccharide, although sporadically chitin also appears in some works. The crosslinking should be done with the SO_4^{2-} anion or with phosphate polyanions (Kumar et al. 2012, Pinto et al. 2018, Szymańska et al. 2020); thus the obtained drug-loaded systems (films, micro-/nanoparticles) have the advantage of bioactivity (antimicrobial) of the polysaccharide. Anion-crosslinked chitin-based hydrogels are less present in the literature (Smitha et al. 2013; Gayathri et al. 2017).

The drug-loaded ionically crosslinked hydrogels based on marine polysaccharides have numerous biomedical applications, such as drug delivery systems for oral (Samak et al. 2017), vaginal (Pavelkova et al. 2017), subcutaneous (Zhang et al. 2019a, b), and parenteral injection route administration (Uyen et al. 2020); systems for targeting colorectal cancer (Sun et al. 2019), for pulmonary sustained and controlled delivery (Huang et al. 2016), and for the treatment of proliferative vitreoretinopathy; gastro-retentive floating drug delivery system (Nayak et al. 2010); systems with systemic antidiabetic action (Lim et al. 2017); system with antibacterial properties (Gayathri et al. 2017); system for psoriasis treatment (Panonnummal and Sabitha 2018); and system for the treatment of intracellular and biofilm infections of *Salmonella* (Elbi et al. 2017).

2.3 Physically Crosslinked Hydrogels

Another way to obtain hydrogels, including those based on marine polysaccharides, is the physical crosslinking, respectively obtaining non-covalent, nonionic, and non-coordinative interactions between macromolecules. Such hydrogels are of great interest due to the absence of chemical crosslinking agents and reagents that are usually toxic and which must be detached or isolated frequently from prepared gels before application. Presence even in small quantities of these compounds can affect the nature of the substances when entrapped (drugs, proteins, enzymes, cells). Because the physical crosslinked hydrogels depend on temperature, pH, or ionic strength changes, they are considered "smart materials." However, the great

disadvantages for this type of hydrogels are their instability (uncontrolled dissolution may occur), low mechanical resistance, difficult control of pore size, and network faults due to the free chain ends or chain loops (Hamedi et al. 2018). The formation of physical hydrogels is based on the reversible interactions that can occur between polymer chains, mainly hydrophobic interactions, hydrogen bonds, presence of crystallites for some polymers, and interactions dependent of parameters such as pH, concentration, temperature, etc. Obviously, the properties of these hydrogels may be adjusted according to the intensity and number of these interactions.

Polymers containing hydrophilic and hydrophobic domains, so having an amphiphilic character, can crosslink in aqueous media by reverse thermal gelation, the so-called sol-gel chemistry. The amphiphilic polymers are generally water soluble at low temperature, but, when temperature increases, gelation occurs. The temperature at which gelation occurs depends on the polymer solution concentration, length of the hydrophobic block, and, of course, the polymer chemical structure (Hoare and Kohane 2008). In the case of hydrophilic polymers, specific to polysaccharides, hydrophobic domains can be created by introducing long alkyl chains as substitutes to the backbone. For example, by *N*-acylation of CS with fatty acyl chlorides, hydrophobic interactions appear, enhancing the stability of substituted polysaccharide via hydrophobic self-assembly (LeTien et al. 2003). By adjusting the density and length of alkyl substituents, the degree of swelling and diffusion of the drug can be controlled. A potential application is the local and controlled release of growth factors in tissue repair. It should be noted that CS is able to form a gel by itself, without the need of any additive. This effect is possible by neutralizing the amino groups, determining the drastic reduction of the rejections between the macromolecules, increasing the approach of the chains, resulting in the formation of the hydrogel via hydrogen bonds, hydrophobic interactions, and CS crystallites (Croisier and Jérôme 2013).

Agarose can easily form a hydrogel without the presences of toxic crosslinking agents and catalysts. At high temperature, agarose chains in solution have a statistically coiled conformation (random coil), but by heating they form single or double helical structures which subsequently aggregate, forming a bundle and then a gel called "thermoreversible hydrogel." Depending on the concentration, the helical chains can aggregate and form clusters, which, at high concentration, become interconnected and generate a hydrogel-type network. The presence of hydroxyl (−OH) groups on the agarose structure facilitates self-gelling via hydrogen bonding (Le Goff et al. 2015, Zarrintaj et al. 2018, Manouchehri et al. 2018). The typical physically crosslinked agarose hydrogels were investigated for biomedical applications, such as tissue engineering (Singh et al. 2016) and drug release (Date et al. 2020a, b, c).

kC has also thermoreversible gelling capacity, the gelling process being due to the conformational change from coil to helix conformation, transition succeeded by helix aggregation (Chronakis et al. 2000). The realization of these conformational changes is done by ionic interactions and hydrogen bonds as result of the cooling of the polymer solution in the presence of some salts. This property of the polysaccharide to physically crosslink, as well as its biocompatible character, has been

exploited in biomedical applications such as tissue engineering and drug delivery systems. However, for achieving viable systems with the possibility of application in these fields, it is necessary to increase the thermal stability, mechanical properties, and efficiency of the drug release process. One option is the realization of nanocomposites with kC matrix, nature of filling material being diverse (Salgueiro et al. 2013).

kC/halloysite nanotube (HNT) nanocomposite hydrogels were synthesized via physical crosslinking for the gastrointestinal tract release. The incorporation of HNT enhanced the thermal stability, swelling degree, as well as drug loading and release behavior, compared to the pure kC hydrogel. In vitro cytotoxicity test revealed that the obtained hydrogels are biocompatible, so they may have great potential for applications, for example, in oral drug delivery systems (Sharifzadeh et al. 2016).

Among synthetic polymers, PVA has been widely used in biomedical applications because it has excellent chemical and physical properties, as well as biodegradability. It can form physical crosslinked hydrogels by freeze-thaw processing. During the freezing stage, a phase separation occurs: one of the phases is poorer in polymers, when ice crystals are produced, while in the polymer-richer phase, the formation of hydrogen bonding and PVA crystallites takes place. The thawing stage facilitates the interactions and formation of crystalline regions between the remaining polymers, resulting in formation of hydrogel networks. Many polysaccharides have been added to the PVA aqueous solution to form hydrogels (cryogels) which combine the properties of both materials.

Sodium alginate (SA) has also been introduced into PVA solution to fabricate composite cryogels using freeze-thawing method. The hydrogels were loaded with nitrofurazone, a topical anti-infective drug, and could have applications as wound dressing systems (Kim et al. 2008).

Starting from mixtures in PVA and carrageenan solution, subjected to five consecutive frosting cycles (24 h, −20 °C)/thaw (room temperature, 6 h), there were obtained composite hydrogels possessing a larger pore size and highly interconnected porous structures while maintaining their original shape. They can significantly promote cell attachment and proliferation (ATDC5 cells cultured). It is evident that these composite hydrogels could serve as an excellent scaffold for tissue engineering, as well as for drug loading and release (Zhang et al. 2015a, b). New PVA/*iota*-carrageenan hydrogels obtained by consecutive freeze-thaw cycles were reported recently by Croitoru et al. (2020). The formation of the hydrogel polymer matrix is due to interactions through hydrogen bonding and forming of mixed interpolymer crystalline domains. These hydrogels have the ability to be loaded with antibiotics (amoxicillin, tetracycline hydrochloride, and gentamicin sulfate), and their release being strongly dependent on the drug chemistry, mesh size of the hydrogels, swelling mechanism, and pH of the release medium. Moreover, the drugs release is decreasing with the increase in carrageenan content. Similarly, agar and PVA-based physical hydrogels were obtained after a single freeze-thaw cycle applied to the solution of the two polymers. The hydrogel shows excellent self-healing properties without adding other healing agent, enhanced thermal and mechanical properties (Shao et al. 2019).

Hyaluronic acid (HA) can form cryogels through repeated freeze-thaw cycles, without being associated with PVA. The main procedures of their preparation include acidifying HA solution and then freeze-thaw of the acid HA solution at proper subzero temperature by once or repeating freeze-thaw (Luan et al. 2012).

The physical-chemical and morphological characterization of hydrogels demonstrates that they belong to the category of physically crosslinked gels whose three-dimensional structure is stabilized mainly by multiple interchain hydrogen bonds in the junction zones of the polymeric network.

2.4 Double Crosslinking

Double crosslinking has become a process for obtaining hydrogels due to the need to improve some of their properties, especially mechanical ones. The process involves the combination, usually of covalent bonds and ionic bonds, with complexing or physical crosslinking. Covalent crosslinking combined with ionic one is used for polymers with ionizable groups, or for mixtures of polymers of which at least one has an ionic character. It is well known that covalent crosslinking with difunctional agents such as epichlorohydrin, glutaraldehyde, etc. imprints cytotoxicity and reduces biocompatibility on the hydrogels thus obtained, so it is recommended to avoid them. On the other hand, covalently crosslinking hydrogels show superior mechanical properties compared to the ionic ones, but both their swelling properties and the loading/release capacities are inferior. Ionic crosslinking itself does not involve the use of toxic crosslinkers, but it is difficult to obtain uniform hydrogels, stable in time and with good mechanical properties. As a result, double ionic and covalent crosslinking was required to obtain stable but also biocompatible, respectively, nontoxic hydrogels, usable for biomedical purposes.

In situ forming chitosan (CS) hydrogels have been prepared via double ionic crosslinking (with glycerolphosphate complex as crosslinker) and covalent (genipin as crosslinker) (Moura et al. 2011). Different amounts of genipin were used to form the crosslinking structure and performance. The hydrogels are highly porous with interconnecting pores, degradable in the presence of lysozyme and nontoxic. By injecting the in vivo formulation, the hydrogel forms rapidly and remains stable at the injection site for at least 1 week.

Some papers report the execution of hydrogels (films, micro-/nanoparticles) by double crosslinking, after the previous chemical modification of chitosan by new functional groups or by its grafting.

Chitosan NPs suitable for drug delivery applications were recently reported by Dmour and Taha (2017). The polysaccharide was first grafted to phthalic, succinic, glutaric, and phenylsuccinic acids, which allowed the insertion of -COOH groups to polymer backbone. Subsequently, the chitosan carboxylated derivative was first crosslinked by ionotropic gelation using tripolyphosphate (TPP) anion and, further, covalently, in the presence of EDC, which activates the condensation reaction of the amino groups of CS with the newly inserted carboxylic ones. The cytotoxicity of Dox was enhanced upon loading in ionotropic or covalent NPs compared to free

drug. In another study, the carboxylated CS was firstly ionically crosslinked with polyphosphoric acid (PPA), hexametaphosphate (HMP), or TPP and further, covalently, in the presence of EDC, thus creating amide bonds between backbones of polysaccharide (Saeed et al. 2020). The mean diameters of the spherical particles range between 120 and 320 nm. The characterization methods applied suggest that HMP resides within NPs cores, while TPP and PPA act mainly as NPs surface crosslinkers. The NPs showed high loading capacity of Dox and higher cytotoxic properties against MCF-7 cancer cells as compared to free drug. Further studies are necessary on biodegradability and elimination before moving on to clinical trials.

A hydrogel film was prepared from carboxymethyl chitosan (CMCS) and carboxymethyl cellulose (CMC) by ionical and covalent crosslinking with $CaSO_4$ and genipin, respectively. (Bao et al. 2014). The tests indicated that the prepared hydrogels possess the swelling-deswelling properties in a wide pH range. The gels are biocompatible and nontoxic, as suggested by the cells comparatively cultured on the crosslinked hydrogels and the negative and positive controls. Considering the useful properties, this kind of hydrogel films have potential application in drug delivery vehicles and skin tissue engineering. However, the use of unmodified chitosan for obtaining hydrogels is limited by its insolubility in water but only in acidic environment; obviously, this requires an advanced purification of the obtained products. Therefore, a possibility to increase the solubility in water is determined by the chemical modification of the polysaccharide, one possibility in this sense being its grafting. Chitosan-graft-poly(ethylene glycol) methacrylate with high solubility in water was obtained via Michael addition, in order to prepare potentially nontoxic micro-/nanoparticles (Savin et al. 2019). The technique selected for the preparation of the NPs was a double crosslinking (ionic and covalent) process in reverse emulsion which provides the mechanical stability of the polymeric nanocarrier. NPs' potential as drug delivery system for the treatment of posterior segment of the eyeball was analyzed by loading bevacizumab (BEV), a full-length monoclonal antibody. The NPs proved to be noncytotoxic and biocompatible, and released BEV in a controlled manner for several days (which may extend up to 14–30 days), so they could be a potential carrier for controlled release of BEV as an ophthalmic drug delivery system to the retina. Another CS derivative synthesized by polysaccharide functionalization with folic acid was utilized to obtain NPs with potential applications in cancer therapy. The NPs, loaded with an antitumoral drug, are able to target the tumor cells that present in membrane a receptor capable to recognize the folic acid (Alupei et al. 2017).

Some papers published in recent years report the production of double crosslinked hydrogels, starting from mixtures of CS with other polymers (proteins, polysaccharides), most often natural or even synthetic. One paper reports the preparation of micro- and nanoparticles of interpenetrated/interconnected network type, having a hydrogel character, based on CS and gelatin (G) suitable for application in ocular drug administration, by a two-step crosslinking process performed in reverse emulsion separation system. To reduce the amount of covalent crosslinker, more often toxic, without substantially changing the mechanical stability and at the same time maintaining a high swelling capacity in aqueous media that will further

induce the possibility of high hydrosoluble drug loading, the research group of Prof. Popa proposed an original method for the preparation of CS-based double crosslinked hydrogels (Peptu et al. 2010). In a first stage, the ionic crosslinking is achieved by using sodium sulfate; in a second one, the covalent crosslinking is achieved by using a low amount of GA in order to stabilize the shape, dimensions, and the stability of the obtained particles. The microparticles manifested pH-sensitive interactions in aqueous environments, high swelling capacity, high capacity to load, and release hydrophilic drugs (adrenaline) which can be controlled by modulating the initial ratio of the two polymers. The in vivo biocompatibility tests showed that microparticles promoted fibrillogenesis. Clinical tests showed that the microparticles were easy to administer and well tolerated with no visible side effects. The same group obtained new G- and CS-based hydrogels, by a double crosslinking method which is partially different as compared to the previous one: (i) the first stage of the synthesis was the covalent crosslinking, followed by the ionic one; (ii) the ionic crosslinker used was the TPP (Jătariu et al. 2011). The authors use hydrogel as support for inclusion, respectively the release of caffeine, chosen as a model drug. The higher amount of CS in the initial mixture increases the maximum swelling degree and the maximum amount of loaded/released caffeine. Starting from CS and G, another hydrogel was obtained, using sulfate anions as ionic crosslinker. The covalent crosslinking consists in the reaction between carbonyl groups of GA with free amine groups from the two polymers (the amount of GA is reduced and assures the crosslinking of 20% from amino groups); the ionic crosslinking is based on sulfate anions interaction with protonated amine groups of the polymers solubilized in acetic acid. Rheological tests were performed to study the mechanical stability of the hydrogels, and, generally, the results show elastic and stable crosslinking. The loading/release properties of caffeine from the hydrogels could be easily controlled by adjusting the studied parameters: ratio between polymers (G/CS), amount of ionic crosslinker, and crosslinking time (Jătariu et al. 2013).

The previously obtained results were extremely useful for the subsequent preparation of NPs as potential drug carriers. CS- and G-based NPs were prepared by double crosslinking in the droplets formed by reverse W/O emulsion method. The ionic crosslinking using SO_4^{2-} ions polymers gelation was followed by a covalent crosslinking with GA (Jătariu et al. 2012). The particles have a high capacity to swell in water and to include water-soluble drugs, for example, chloramphenicol (CFN). In vivo biodistribution studies proved the fluorescein-marked NPs capacity to penetrate various organs when they are administered via intraperitoneal and intravenous routes to Wistar male rats. CS-/G-based submicronic capsules were prepared by double crosslinking (ionic and covalent) in an O/W/O double emulsion by the same group. The variation of polymer/ionic crosslinker molar ratio had an influence on particle size, morphology, swelling degree, as well as their capacity to incorporate and release active principles (Moise et al. 2012). New active principles with potential antitumoral activity, derived from L-phenylalanine, were synthesized and encapsulated in these NPs. Antitumoral potential of the drugs, in free form or when incorporated into polymer NPs, against the development of Guerin's carcinoma has been proven to enhance their biological activity.

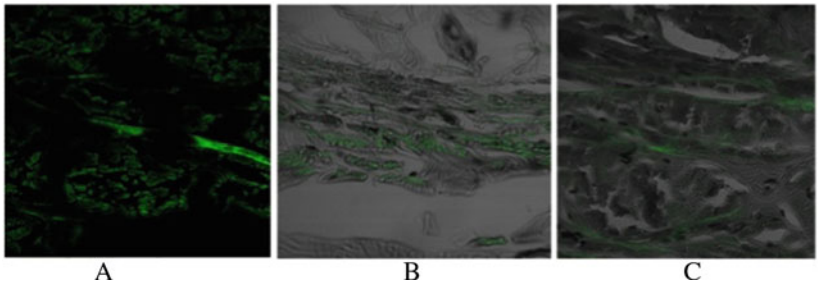


Fig. 2.4 Biodistribution of fluorescently tagged CS- and G-based covalent and ionically crosslinked NPs for the eyeball. (**a**) Retina, (**b**) sclera and extrinsic muscles, (**c**) optic nerve

Another study aimed to develop and characterize a new ophthalmic formulation of cefuroxime, using CS- and G-based NPs synthesized by ionic and covalent double crosslinking, by a double emulsion technique. The particles considered optimal have been analyzed, based on the enzymatic degradation properties along with in vivo ocular investigations (ocular biodistribution, in vivo drug release) (Andrei et al. 2015). The biodistribution test of the fluorescent-labeled NPs intravitreally injected demonstrated their preferential location in the retina (Fig. 2.4) and to a lesser extent in the sclera and extrinsic muscles of the eyeball (**b**) and in the optic nerve (**c**).

Small NP's diameter, biodegradability and non-toxicity, ability to locate especially in the retina, in vivo testing in guinea pigs of NPs loaded with cefuroxime that demonstrated their ability to deliver the drug in a sustained manner for at least 100 h at a therapeutic level, all these advantages recommend this system as an alternative to the classic treatment for diseases of the posterior side of the eyeball (retinitis, uveitis, macular degeneration).

An in situ forming and thermosensitive CS/G hydrogel was developed by Song et al. with the aim to increase the ocular drug resistance time and improve efficacy (Song et al. 2018). The gelation was performed first ionically, by using β-glycerophosphate disodium salt hydrate (β-GD) as crosslinker, followed by covalent crosslinking with genipin; a fast gel formation at 37 °C was observed. The feasibility of using this hydrogel as a topical eye-drop formulation for sustained release of timolol maleate was evaluated. In vitro performed test proved that the hydrogel was nontoxic to Chinese hamster fibroblast V79 cells and reduces the release rate of timolol maleate entrapped. The fast gel formation was observed after instilling the polymer solution into the lower conjunctival sac of the rabbit eyes, and the in situ formed hydrogels released the drugs in a sustained manner, suggesting that β-GD and genipin double crosslinking CS/G hydrogels could be a useful ocular drug delivery platform with enhanced therapeutic effects and reduced side effects.

Ionic and covalent crosslinked IPN-type microparticles based on CS and PVA were prepared in a simple water-in-oil emulsion by Cadinoiu et al. (2015). The presence of PVA influences the particle size and swelling capacity in different pH media. The ability to include and release pilocarpine is directly correlated with the swelling capacity, PVA content, and pH of the environment. The particles proved to

be biocompatible (nontoxic and hemocompatible), demonstrating their potential as ophthalmic drug delivery systems for pilocarpine.

Polymeric magnetic microparticles based on maghemite NPs dispersed in the same polymeric matrix (CS and PVA) were obtained by double crosslinking in reverse emulsion procedure, by using SO_4^{2-} as ionic crosslinker and GA as a covalent one (Balaita et al. 2015). The evaluation of their cytotoxicity and hemocompatibility has shown that they exhibit a prerequisite behavior for use in biomedical field, for drug targeting (i.e., 5-fluorouracil). Another type of magnetic NPs to target tumors was obtained from a maltose derivative of CS, by using the same method and same crosslinkers (Alupei et al. 2016).

Obtaining double crosslinked hydrogels from mixtures of CS and other polysaccharides, either for tissue engineering purposes or for drug inclusion, is reported in several recent papers. Each of the polysaccharides in the composition of the final hydrogel imprints several properties to the resulted hydrogel. Particles with relatively spherical morphology, macroporous, with an average diameter of about 2 mm, based on CS and alginate for the realization of inclusion and release systems of Dox were reported by Wu et al. (2020). In a first stage, the mixture of polymers is ionically crosslinked, by gelling with $CaCl_2$ of the caroxylate groups of alginate, after which the obtained particles (beads) are covalently crosslinked with GA (by participating in the reaction of the amino groups of CS). The cytotoxicity test and in vivo toxicity study showed that the hydrogel beads are relatively biocompatible. The swelling degree in water, porosity, and loading capacity with Dox increase with the increasing amount of the alginate in the composition of the particles. The obtained results recommend these hydrogel beads as a potential carrier for improving the colon targeting.

Alginate/CS microspheres were formed by an ionically double crosslinking technique, by an ionogelation mechanism followed by crosslinking. Firstly, alginate was crosslinked with Ca^{2+} ions, and further the CS was crosslinked with Na-TPP (Zhang et al. 2015a, b). Verapamil hydrochloride was loaded in the microspheres, and it appeared that this complex might be used as an effective carrier for sustaining the drug release.

Based on a mixture of poly(acrylamide) grafted carrageenan and sodium alginate, full-IPN type crosslinking hydrogel spherical beads were prepared by simple ionotropic gelation/covalent crosslinking method (Kulkarni et al. 2012). The beads exhibit pH-responsive behavior, evidently due to the polyanionic character of the polysaccharides. The ketoprofen (KTP) was loaded in the beads to obtain a system able to release the drug in the intestine, trans-passing the stomach barrier. Stomach histopathology of albino rats indicated that the gastric side effects like ulceration, hemorrhage, and erosion of gastric mucosa were reduced when the drug was loaded into these pH-responsive hydrogel beads.

kC-based particles mixed with another anionic polysaccharide, respectively gellan gum, were obtained by Kulkarni et al. firstly by ionic crosslinking with the SO_4^{2-} anion and then covalently with GA (Kulkarni et al. 2013a, b). Simvastatin (SMT) (a lipid-lowering drug used in the treatment of hypercholesterolemia, which decreases cholesterol levels by inhibiting the HMG-CoA reductase) was loaded in

these beads. It has been found that the drug is released faster only from ionically crosslinked particles whereas the covalent crosslinking prolonged the release. The in vivo tests performed on Wistar rats indicated that this system reduced the total cholesterol and triglycerides in the blood plasma effectively as compared to pure SMT.

Controlled release repaglinide loaded beads using sodium alginate and pectin, with double crosslinking for effective control of drug release, were recently reported (Awasthi et al. 2017). The presence of carboxylic groups in both polysaccharides makes it possible for their ionic crosslinking in a first stage, using $CaCl_2$ for this purpose. Their dimensional stabilization is subsequently done by chemical crosslinking with epichlorohydrin which results in the -OH groups on the backbone of the two polymers. The beads have an exceptionally good loading efficacy of repaglinide (up to 82.29%), being able to release the drug up to 61% in 12 h. The system is a good candidate for loading and release of drugs that are absorbed throughout the gastrointestinal tract, improving their bioavailability and enhancing the solubility.

Polymer crosslinking combined with ionic one is a double crosslinking coating possibility applicable to ionic polysaccharides, their derivatives, or mixtures with other polymers (natural or synthetic). It is applied to improve especially the mechanical properties of the gels or the stability of the particles. Some papers published in recent years report hydrogels obtained in this way, based on alginate. Dual-crosslinked particles based on methacrylated alginate obtained by W/O emulsion method were developed as intracellular delivery vehicles for the internalization and release of Dox (Fenn et al. 2016). Crosslinking was performed using light exposure in combination with ionic crosslinking by Ca^{2+} ions. While non-loaded microspheres were noncytotoxic to human lung epithelial carcinoma cells (A549s), Dox-loaded sub-microspheres significantly reduced mitochondrial activity after 5 days of culture. These photo-crosslinked particles may be a potential chemotherapeutic delivery system for cancer treatment. Also, alginate-MA was used to create hydrogels with different levels of crosslinking and subsequently different material properties by ionic and ultraviolet light crosslinking mechanisms (Samorezov et al. 2015). MC3T3 cells showed significantly enhanced proliferation on the surface of dual-crosslinked hydrogels compared with only calcium-crosslinked hydrogels. The alternation of the crosslinking mechanism permitted local regulation of the hydrogel physical properties and alignment of cells seeded on their surface, leading to spatial control over cell attachment and proliferation.

Methacrylated k-carrageenan can form hydrogels by double crosslinking. The methacrylate group introduced into the kC backbone enables the formation of chemically crosslinked gels via UV exposure; ionic crosslinking is performed later in the presence of KCl (Mihaila et al. 2013). The macrogel-type hydrogels can be applied in tissue engineering applications, having proper mechanical properties and ability to be loaded with cells (NIH-3T3 fibroblasts as model), and the swelling properties in aqueous environments are also recommended as potential supports for the inclusion/release of drugs. The same type of hydrogel has recently been reported

by Lim et al. (2020). The hydrogel shows a great potential as a bioink candidate that can be usefully applied to bioprinting-based tissue engineering applications.

Hydrogels based on marine polysaccharides can also be obtained by combining other crosslinking methods. One possibility is the association of *polymer crosslinking* with complexation using polyvalent metal ions. Recently, it has been reported to obtain a full-IPN hydrogel consisting of two CS derivatives, catechol-modified methacryloyl chitosan (CMC) and methacryloyl chitosan (MC), with high crosslinking-network density, with high compressive modulus and high ductility (Wang et al. 2019). The hydrogel can be made in situ after injection, the crosslinking being ensured by the photochemically initiated polymerization, as well as by the catechol-Fe^{3+} chelation which can covalently link with amino, thiol, and imidazole groups. The adhesive property of the hydrogels and hemostatic activity of CS led to a synergistic hemostatic performance in vivo. Biomedical applications of these hydrogels include wound areas, granulation tissue formation, angiogenesis, and collagen deposition, but there are also uses for drug release.

By combining physical and chemical crosslinking, hydrogels with superior mechanical properties, but also with high water absorption capacity, can be obtained, important properties for drug release applications. An interesting route to synthesize double crosslinked chitin hydrogels through a sequential chemical and physical crosslinking strategy was reported by Xu et al. (2016). The chemical crosslinking was realized by using ECH; subsequently, the hydrogels were immersed into a solution of aqueous ethanol (different concentrations) to form physically crosslinked domains through hydrogen bonding, hydrophobic interactions. These chitin hydrogels are expected to be promising candidate applications, such as in contact lenses, tissue engineering, and extracellular matrices requiring large-scale fabrication. Double covalent crosslinking is also a way to obtain hydrogels with various biomedical applications. A series of injectable in situ dual crosslinking of hyaluronic acid thiolated derivative (HA-SH) and oxidized alginate-based hydrogels were recently prepared by Zhang et al., through the covalent crosslinking between HA-SH and oxidized alginates via hydrazone and disulfide bonds (Zhang et al. 2019a, b). BSA was used as a drug model and incorporated into the hydrogels to evaluate the drug-controlled release property. The obtained results prove that these dual-crosslinking hydrogels could be used for drug delivery system, tissue engineering, and regenerative medicine.

2.5 Conclusions

The literature data presented in this chapter focused on progress concerning the preparation of new drug delivery systems based on marine polysaccharides. The tremendous amount of articles already published in this field clearly indicates that marine polysaccharides have an important practical interest in biomedical applications. They have been used especially as drug-loaded excipients in hydrogel formulations like films, beads, and micro-/nanoparticles, which were prepared by a wide range of crosslinking methods. However, their intrinsic characteristics, such as

biocompatibility, biodegradability, non-toxicity, stimuli responsiveness, etc., allow them to evolve considerably in the future. In addition, their facile chemical modifications are a considerable asset in developing new biomaterials which can be used in innovative applications. An important drawback is represented by the large use of potentially toxic crosslinking agents, such as glutaraldehyde. Therefore, further multidisciplinary investigations are necessary in order to develop novel polysaccharide derivatives which can be crosslinked in situ or without the use of toxic crosslinking agents.

References

Abdellatif AAH, Ibrahim MA, Amin MA et al (2020) Cetuximab conjugated with octreotide and entrapped calcium alginate-beads for targeting somatostatin receptors. Sci Rep 10(1):1–4. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-020-61605-y

Agostinho DAS, Paninho AI, Cordeiro T et al (2020) Properties of κ-carrageenan aerogels prepared by using different dissolution media and its application as drug delivery systems. Mater Chem Phys 253:123290. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.matchemphys.2020.123290

Ahmed TA, El-Say KM (2014) Development of alginate-reinforced chitosan nanoparticles utilizing W/O nanoemulsification/internal crosslinking technique for transdermal delivery of rabeprazole. Life Sci 110:35–43

Akalin GO, Pulat M (2020) Preparation and characterization of κ-carrageenan hydrogel for controlled release of copper and manganese micronutrients. Polym Bull 77:1359–1375

Alupei L, Lungan AM, Desbrieres J et al (2016) New hybrid magnetic nanoparticles based on chitosan maltose derivative for antitumor drug delivery. Int J Biol Macromol 92:561–572

Alupei L, Lisa G, Butnariu A et al (2017) New folic acid-chitosan derivatives based nanoparticles – potential applications in cancer therapy. Cell Chem Technol 51:631–648

Andrei G, Peptu AC, Popa M et al (2015) Formulation and evaluation of cefuroxim loaded submicron particles for ophthalmic delivery. Int J Pharm 493:16–29

Arikibe JE, Lata R, Kuboyama K et al (2019) pH-responsive studies of bacterial cellulose/chitosan hydrogels crosslinked with genipin: swelling and drug release behavior. Chem Select 4:9915–9926

Ata S, Rasool A, Islam A et al (2020) Loading of Cefixime to pH sensitive chitosan based hydrogel and investigation of controlled release kinetics. Int J Biol Macromol 155:1236–1244

Awasthi R, Kulkarni G, Ramana MV et al (2017) Dual crosslinked pectin-alginate network as sustained release hydrophilic matrix for repaglinide. Int J Biol Macromol 97:721–732

Ayub AD, Chiu HI, Yusuf SNAM et al (2019) Biocompatible disulphide cross-linked sodium alginate derivative nanoparticles for oral colon-targeted drug delivery. Artif Cells Nanomed Biotechnol 47:353–369

Bajpai SK, Dehariya P, Saggu SPS (2015) Investigation of moisture sorption, permeability, cytotoxicity and drug release behavior of carrageenan/poly vinyl alcohol films. J Macromol Sci A 52:243–251

Balaita L, Cadinoiu AN, Safarikova M et al (2015) Magnetic polymer particles prepared by double crosslinking in reverse emulsion with potential biomedical applications. J Optoelectron Adv Mater 17:1198–1209

Bao D, Chen M, Wang H et al (2014) Preparation and characterization of double crosslinked hydrogel films from carboxymethylchitosan and carboxymethylcellulose. Carbohydr Polym 110:113–120

Cadinoiu AN, Peptu CA, Fache B et al (2015) Microparticulated systems based on chitosan and poly(vinyl alcohol) with potential ophthalmic applications. J Microencapsul 32:381–389

Cerciello A, Del Gaudio P, Granata V et al (2017) Synergistic effect of divalent cations in improving technological properties of cross-linked alginate beads. Int J Biol Macromol 101:100–106

Chang D, Lei J, Cui H et al (2012) Disulfide cross-linked nanospheres from sodium alginate derivative for inflammatory bowel disease: preparation, characterization, and in vitro drug release behavior. Carbohydr Polym 88:663–669

Chaudhary J, Thakur S, Sharma M et al (2020) Development of biodegradable agar-agar/gelatin-based superabsorbent hydrogel as an efficient moisture-retaining agent. Biomol Ther 10(6):939

Che Y, Li D, Liu Y et al (2016) Physically cross-linked pH-responsive chitosan-based hydrogels with enhanced mechanical performance for controlled drug delivery. RSC Adv 6:106035–106045

Chen H, Xing X, Tan H et al (2017) Covalently antibacterial alginate-chitosan hydrogel dressing integrated gelatin microspheres containing tetracycline hydrochloride for wound healing. Mat Sci Eng C 70:287–295

Chiu HI, Ayub AD, Yusuf SNAM et al (2020) Docetaxel-loaded disulfide cross-linked nanoparticles derived from thiolated sodium alginate for colon cancer drug delivery. Pharmaceutics 12:38. https://doi.org/10.3390/pharmaceutics12010038

Chronakis IS, Doublier JL, Piculell L (2000) Viscoelastic properties for kappa- and iota-carrageenan in aqueous NaI from the liquid-like to the solid-like behaviour. Int J Biol Macromol 28:1–14

Cojocariu A, Profire L, Cheaburu C et al (2011) Evaluation of crosslinked chitosan hydrogels as carriers for prolonged delivery of some novel nitric oxide donor compounds based on theophylline and paracetamol. E-polymers. https://doi.org/10.1515/epoly.2011.11.1.334

Conga Z, Shi Y, Wang Y et al (2018) A novel controlled drug delivery system based on alginate hydrogel/chitosan micelle composites. Int J Biol Macromol 107:855–864

Croisier F, Jérôme C (2013) Chitosan-based biomaterials for tissue engineering. Eur Polym J 49:780–792

Croitoru C, Roata IC, Pascu A et al (2020) Diffusion and controlled release in physically crosslinked poly (vinyl alcohol)/iota-carrageenan hydrogel blends. Polymers 12:1544. https://doi.org/10.3390/polym12071544

Csapo E, Szokolai H, Juhasz A et al (2018) Cross-linked and hydrophobized hyaluronic acid-based controlled drug release systems. Carbohydr Polym 195:99–106

Dalaty AA, Karam A, Najlah M et al (2016) Effect of non-cross-linked calcium on characteristics, swelling behaviour, drug release and mucoadhesiveness of calcium alginate beads. Carbohydr Polym 140:163–170

Das B, Dutta S, Nayak AK et al (2014) Zinc alginate-carboxymethyl cashew gum microbeads for prolonged drug release: development and optimization. Int J Biol Macromol 70:506–515

Date P, Tanwar A, Ladage P et al (2020a) Biodegradable and biocompatible agarose–poly (vinyl alcohol) hydrogel for the in vitro investigation of ibuprofen release. Chem Zvesti 74:1965–1978

Date P, Tanwar A, Ladage P et al (2020b) Carbon dots-incorporated pH-responsive agarose-PVA hydrogel nanocomposites for the controlled release of norfloxacin drug. Polym Bull 77:5323–5344

Date P, Tanwar A, Ladage P et al (2020c) Biodegradable and biocompatible agarose-poly(vinyl alcohol) hydrogel for the in vitro investigation of ibuprofen release. Chem Pap 74:1965–1978

Devi N, Maji TK (2010) Microencapsulation of isoniazid in genipin-crosslinked gelatin-A–*k*-carrageenan polyelectrolyte complex. Drug Dev Ind Pharm 36:56–63

Dmour I, Taha MO (2017) Novel nanoparticles based on chitosan-dicarboxylate conjugates via tandem ionotropic/covalent crosslinking with tripolyphosphate and subsequent evaluation as drug delivery vehicles. Int J Pharm 529:15–31

El-Aassar MR, El Fawal GF, Kamoun EA et al (2015) Controlled drug release from cross-linked k-carrageenan/hyaluronic acid membranes. Int J Biol Macromol 77:322–329

Elbi S, Nimal TR, Rajan VK et al (2017) Fucoidan coated ciprofloxacin loaded chitosan nanoparticles for the treatment of intracellular and biofilm infections of Salmonella. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 160:40–47

Eral HB, Lopez-Mejías V, O'Mahony M et al (2014) Biocompatible alginate microgel particles as heteronucleants and encapsulating vehicles for hydrophilic and hydrophobic drugs. Cryst Growth Des 14:2073–2082

Fajardo AR, Silva MB, Lopes LC et al (2012) Hydrogel based on an alginate–Ca^{2+}/chondroitin sulfate matrix as a potential colon-specific drug delivery system. RSC Adv 2:11095–11103

Feng C, Song R, Sun G et al (2014) Immobilization of coacervate microcapsules in multilayer sodium alginate beads for efficient oral anticancer drug delivery. Biomacromolecules 15:985–996

Fenn SL, Miao T, Scherrer RM et al (2016) Dual-crosslinked methacrylated alginate sub-microspheres for intracellular chemotherapeutic delivery. ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 8:17775–17783

Gayathri NK, Aparna V, Maya S et al (2017) Preparation, characterization, drug release and computational modelling studies of antibiotics loaded amorphous chitin nanoparticles. Carbohydr Polym 177:67–76

Ghosal K, Adak S, Agatemor C, Nandakumar Kalarikkal PG, Thomas S (2020) Novel interpenetrating polymeric network based microbeads for delivery of poorly water soluble drug. J Polym Res 27:98

Gierszewska M, Ostrowska-Czubenko J, Chrzanowska E (2018) pH-responsive chitosan/alginate polyelectrolyte complex membranes reinforced by tripolyphosphate. Eur Polym J 101:282–290

Gogoi N, Chowdhury D (2014) Novel carbon dot coated alginate beads with superior stability, swelling and pH responsive drug delivery. J Mater Chem B 2:4089–4099

Gonçalves VSS, Gurikov P, Poejo J et al (2016) Alginate-based hybrid aerogel microparticles for mucosal drug delivery. Eur J Pharm Biopharm 107:160–170

Gürkan Polat T, Duman O, Tunç S (2020) Preparation and characterization of environmentally friendly agar/k-carrageenan/montmorillonite nanocomposite hydrogels. Colloids Surf A 602:124987

Hamcerencu M, Desbrieres J, Popa M et al (2007) New unsaturated derivatives of xanthan gum: synthesis and characterization. Polymer 48:1921–1929

Hamcerencu M, Desbrieres J, Popa M et al (2012) Original stimuli-sensitive polysaccharide derivatives/N-isopropylacrylamide hydrogels. Role of polysaccharide backbone. Carbohydr Polym 89:438–447

Hamedi H, Moradi S, Hudson SM et al (2018) Chitosan based hydrogels and their applications for drug delivery in wound dressings: a review. Carbohydr Polym 199:445–460

He S, Zhong S, Xu L et al (2020) Sonochemical fabrication of magnetic reduction-responsive alginate based microcapsules for drug delivery. Int J Biol Macromol 155:42–49

Hezaveh H, Muhamad II (2013a) Modification and swelling kinetic study of kappa-carrageenan-based hydrogel for controlled release study. J Taiwan Inst Chem Eng 44:182–191

Hezaveh H, Muhamad II (2013b) Controlled drug release via minimization of burst release in pH-response kappa-carrageenan/polyvinyl alcohol hydrogels. Chem Eng Res Des 91:508–519

Hezaveh H, Muhamad II, Noshadi I et al (2012) Swelling behaviour and controlled drug release from cross-linked k-carrageenan/NaCMC hydrogel by diffusion mechanism. J Microencapsul 29:368–379

Hoare TR, Kohane DS (2008) Hydrogels in drug delivery: Progress and challenges. Polymer 49:1993–2007

Hosseinzadeh H (2010) Controlled release of diclofenac sodium from pH-responsive carrageenan-*g*-poly(acrylic acid) superabsorbent hydrogel. J Chem Sci 122:651–659

Hosseinzadeh H, Sadeghzadeh M, Babazadeh M (2011) Preparation and properties of carrageenan-g-poly(acrylic acid)/bentonite superabsorbent composite. J Biomat Nanobiotechnol 2:311–317

Hsiao MY, Lin A, Liao WH et al (2019) Drug-loaded hyaluronic acid hydrogel as a sustained-release regimen with dual effects in early intervention of tendinopathy. Sci Rep 9:4784. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-019-41410-y

Huang YC, Li RY, Chen JY (2016) Biphasic release of gentamicin from chitosan/fucoidan nanoparticles for pulmonary delivery. Carbohydr Polym 138:114–122

Hugo de Lima HC, Kupfer VL, Moisés MP et al (2018) Bionanocomposites based on mesoporous silica and alginate for enhanced drug delivery. Carbohydr Polym 196:126–134

Hussain Z, Pandey K, Choudhury H et al (2020) Hyaluronic acid-functionalized nanoparticles for simultaneous delivery of curcumin and resveratrol for management of chronic diabetic wounds: fabrication, characterization, stability and in vitro release kinetics. J Drug Deliv Sci Technol. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jddst.2020.101747

Hwang SW, Shin JS (2018) Pectin-coated curcumin-chitosan microparticles crosslinked with Mg^{2+} for delayed drug release in the digestive system. Int J Polym Sci:Article ID 2071071. https://doi.org/10.1155/2018/2071071

Işiklan N, Kücükbalci G (2012) Microwave-induced synthesis of alginate–graft-poly (N isopropylacrylamide) and drug release properties of dual pH- and temperature-responsive beads. Eur J Pharm Biopharm 82:316–331

Işiklan N, Kücükbalci G (2016) Synthesis and characterization of pH- and temperature-sensitive materials based on alginate and poly(N-isopropylacrylamide/acrylic acid) for drug delivery. Polym Bull 73:4321–1342

Jahanban-Esfahlan R, Derakhshankhah H, Haghshenas B et al (2020) A bio-inspired magnetic natural hydrogel containing gelatin and alginate as a drug delivery system for cancer chemotherapy. Int J Biol Macromol 156:438–445

Jătariu AN, Popa M, Curteanu S et al (2011) Covalent and ionic co-crosslinking – an original way to prepare chitosan – gelatin hydrogels for biomedical applications. J Biomed Mater Res A 98A:342–350

Jătariu AN, Holban MN, Peptu CA et al (2012) Double crosslinked interpenetrated network in nanoparticulated form for drug targeting – preparation, characterization and biodistribution studies. Int J Pharm 436:66–74

Jătariu AN, Danu M, Peptu CA et al (2013) Ionically and covalently crosslinked hydrogels based on gelatin and chitosan. Soft Mater 11:1–10

Jia X, Pei M, Zhao X et al (2016) PEGylated oxidized alginate-DOX prodrug conjugate nanoparticles crosslinked with fluorescent carbon dots for tumor theranostics. ACS Biomater Sci Eng 2:1641–1648

Joshy KS, Susan MA, Snigdha S et al (2017) Encapsulation of zidovudine in PF-68 coated alginate conjugate nanoparticles for anti-HIV drug delivery. Int J Biol Macromol 107A:929–937

Kadota K, Nogami S, Uchiyama H et al (2020) Controlled release behavior of curcumin from kappa-carrageenan gels with flexible texture by the addition of metal chlorides. Food Hydrocoll. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodhyd.2019.105564

Karadağ E, Hasgül B, Kundakci S et al (2014) A study of polymer/clay hybrid composite sorbent-based AAm/SMA hydrogels and semi-IPNs composed of ι-carrageenan and montmorillonite for water and dye sorption. Adv Polym Technol 33:1–11

Khlibsuwan R, Tansena W, Pongjanyakul T (2018) Modification of alginate beads using gelatinized and ungelatinized arrowroot (Tacca leontopetaloides L. Kuntze) starch for drug delivery. Int J Biol Macromol 118:683–692

Khor E, Wu H, Lim LY et al (2011) Chitin-methacrylate: preparation, characterization and hydrogel formation. Materials 4:1728–1746

Kim JO, Park JK, Kim JH et al (2008) Development of polyvinyl alcohol-sodium alginate gel-matrix-based wound dressing system containing nitrofurazone. Int J Pharm 359:79–86

Kong M, Park HJ (2011) Stability investigation of hyaluronic acid based nanoemulsion and its potential as transdermal carrier. Carbohydr Polym 83:1303–1310

Kulkarni RV, Wagh YJ (2010) Crosslinked alginate films as rate controlling membranes for transdermal drug delivery application. J Macromol Sci A 47:732–737

Kulkarni RV, Basaskar VV, Setty CM et al (2011) Interpenetrating polymer network matrices of sodium alginate and carrageenan for controlled drug delivery application. Fibers Polym 12:352–358
Kulkarni RV, Boppana R, Mohan GK et al (2012) pH-responsive interpenetrating network hydrogel beads of poly(acrylamide)-g-carrageenan and sodium alginate for intestinal targeted drug delivery: synthesis, in vitro and in vivo evaluation. J Colloid Interface Sci 367:509–517
Kulkarni RV, Basaskar VV, Alange VV et al (2013a) Controlled release of an antihypertensive drug through interpenetrating polymer network hydrogel tablets of tamarind seed polysaccharide and sodium alginate. J Macromol Sci B 52:1636–1650
Kulkarni RV, Nagathan VV, Biradar PR et al (2013b) Simvastatin loaded composite polyspheres of gellan gum and carrageenan: in vitro and in vivo evaluation. Int J Biol Macromol 57:238–244
Kumar SS, Saha AK, Kavitha K et al (2012) Evaluation of clobazam loaded ionically cross-linked microspheres using chitosan. Der Pharmac Sin 3:616–623
Kumari K, Singh B, Singh V (2016) Optimization of drug release from chitosan-starch crosslinked beads by response surface methodology. Cellulose Chem Technol 50:925–936
Larraneta E, Henry M, Irwin NJ et al (2018) Synthesis and characterization of hyaluronic acid hydrogels crosslinked using a solvent-free process for potential biomedical applications. Carbohydr Polym 181:1194–1205
Le Goff KJ, Gaillard C, Helbert W et al (2015) Rheological study of reinforcement of agarose hydrogels by cellulose nanowhiskers. Carbohydr Polyme 116:117–123
Leach JB, Bivens KA, Patrick CW Jr et al (2003) Photo-crosslinked hyaluronic acid hydrogels: natural, biodegradable tissue engineering scaffolds. Biotechnol Bioeng 82:578–589
Lee EM, Singh D, Singh D et al (2014) Novel alginate-gelatin hybrid nanoparticle for drug delivery and tissue engineering applications. J Nanomat:124236. https://doi.org/10.1155/2014/124236
LeTien C, Lacroix M, Ispas-Szabo P (2003) N-acylated chitosan: hydrophobic matrices for controlled drug release. J Control Release 18:1–13
Lim HP, Ooi CW, Tey BT (2017) Controlled delivery of oral insulin aspart using pH-responsive alginate/κ-carrageenan composite hydrogel beads. React Funct Polym 120:20–29
Lim W, Kim GJ, Kim HW et al (2020) Kappa-carrageenan-based dual crosslinkable bioink for extrusion type bioprinting. Polymers 12:2377
Lin YH, Lu KY, Tseng CL et al (2017) Development of genipin-crosslinked fucoidan/chitosan-*N*-arginine nanogels for preventing *Helicobacter* infection. Nanomedicine. https://doi.org/10.2217/nnm-2017-0055
Luan T, Wu L, Zhang H et al (2012) A study on the nature of intermolecular links in the cryotropic weak gels of hyaluronan. Carbohydr Polym 87:2076–2085
Ma X, Dong L, Ji X et al (2013) Drug release behaviors of a pH/thermo-responsive porous hydrogel from poly(N-acryloylglycinate) and sodium alginate. J Sol-Gel Sci Technol 68:356–362
Mahmood MA, Madni A, Rehman M et al (2019) Ionically cross-linked chitosan nanoparticles for sustained delivery of docetaxel: fabrication, post-formulation and acute oral toxicity evaluation. Int J Nanomed 14:10035–10046
Martinez A, Iglesias I, Lozano R et al (2011) Synthesis and characterization of thiolated alginate-albumin nanoparticles stabilized by disulfide bonds. Evaluation as drug delivery systems. Carbohydr Polym 83:1311–1321
Martinez A, Benito-Miguel M, Iglesias I et al (2012) Tamoxifen-loaded thiolated alginate-albumin nanoparticles as antitumoral drug delivery systems. J Biomed Mater Res Part A 100A:1467–1476
Mihaila SM, Gaharwar AK, Reis RL et al (2013) Photocrosslinkable kappa-carrageenan, hydrogels for tissue engineering applications. Adv Healthc Mater 2:895–907
Moise M, Sunel V, Holban M et al (2012) Double crosslinked chitosan and gelatin submicronic capsules entrapping aminoacid derivatives with potential antitumoral activity. J Mater Sci 47:8223–8233
Moura MH, Faneca H, Pedroso Lima M et al (2011) In situ forming chitosan hydrogels prepared via ionic/covalent co-cross-linking. Biomacromolecules 12:3275–3284

Muhamad II, Fen LS, Hui NH et al (2011) Genipin-cross-linked kappa-carrageenan/carboxymethyl cellulose beads and effects on beta-carotene release. Carbohydr Polym 83:1207–1212
Nair AV, Raman M, Doble M (2016) Cyclic β-(1→3) (1→6) glucan/carrageenan hydrogels for wound healing applications. RSC Adv 6:98545–98553
Nayak AK, Pal D, Santra K (2016) Swelling and drug release behavior of metformin HCl-loaded tamarind seed polysaccharide-alginate beads. Int J Biol Macromol 82:1023–1027
Nayak AM, Maji R, Das B (2010) Gastroretentive drug delivery systems: a review. Asian J Pharm Clin Res 3(1):2–10
Nisar S, Pandit AH, Wang LF et al (2020) Strategy to design a smart photocleavable and pH sensitive chitosan based hydrogel through a novel crosslinker: a potential vehicle for controlled drug delivery. RSC Adv 10:14694–14704
Obaidat RM, Alnaief M, Mashaqbeh H (2018) Investigation of carrageenan aerogel microparticles as a potential drug carrier. AAPS PharmSciTech 19:2226–2236
Ou X, Zheng J, Zhao X et al (2018) Chemically cross-linked chitin nanocrystal scaffolds for drug delivery. ACS Appl Nano Mat 1:6790–6799
Padhi JR, Nayak D, Nanda A et al (2016) Development of highly biocompatible gelatin & i-carrageenan based composite hydrogels: in depth physiochemical analysis for biomedical applications. Carbohydr Polym 153:292–301
Pan C, Qian J, Zhao C et al (2020) Study on the relationship between crosslinking degree and properties of TPP crosslinked chitosan nanoparticles. Carbohydr Polym. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carbpol.2020.116349
Panonnummal R, Sabitha M (2018) Anti-psoriatic and toxicity evaluation of methotrexate loaded chitin nanogel in imiquimod induced mice model. Int J Biol Macromol 110:245–258
Pasaribu SP, Kaban J, Ginting M et al (2019) Preparation of in situ cross-linked n-maleoyl chitosan-oxidized sodium alginate hydrogels for drug delivery applications. Maced J Med Sci 7:3546–3553
Patel N, Lalwani D, Gollmer S et al (2016) Development and evaluation of a calcium alginate based oral ceftriaxone sodium formulation. Prog Biomater 5:117–133
Pavelkova M, Kubova K, Vyslouzil J, Kejdusova M, Vetchy D, Celer V, Molinkova D, Lobova D, Pechova A, Vyslouzil J, Kulich P (2017) Biological effects of drug-free alginate beads cross-linked by cooper ions prepared using external ionotropic gelation. AAPS PharmSciTech 18 (4):1343–1354
Pedrosa SS, Goncalves C, David L et al (2014) A novel crosslinked hyaluronic acid nanogel for drug delivery. Macromol Biosci 14:1556–1568
Peptu CA, Buhus G, Popa M et al (2010) Double crosslinked chitosan-gelatin particulate systems for ophthalmic applications. J Bioact Compat Polym 25:98–116
Pinto CA, Saripella KK, Loka NC et al (2018) Development and characterization of chitosan cross-linked with tripolyphosphate as a sustained release agent in tablets, part i: design of experiments and optimization. J Pharm Sci 107:1063–1075
Pourjavadi A, Sadat Afjeh S, Seidi F et al (2011) Preparation of acrylated agarose-based hydrogels and investigation of their application as fertilizing systems. J Appl Polym Sci 122:2424–2432
Prata JE, Barth TA, Bencherif SA et al (2010) Complex fluids based on methacrylated hyaluronic acid. Biomacromolecules 11:769–775
Ramachandran S, Nandhakumar S, Dhanaraju MD (2011) Formulation and characterization of glutaraldehyde cross-linked chitosan biodegradable microspheres loaded with famotidine. Trop J Pharm Res 10:309–316
Rasool A, Ata S, Islam A et al (2020) Kinetics and controlled release of lidocaine from novel carrageenan and alginate-based blend hydrogels. Int J Biol Macromol 147:67–78
Reys LL, Silva SS, Soares da Costa D et al (2016) Fucoidan hydrogels photo-crosslinked with visible radiation as matrices for cell culture. ACS Biomater Sci Eng 2:1151–1161
Rodrigues S, da Costa AMR, Grenha A (2012) Chitosan/carrageenan nanoparticles: effect of cross-linking with tripolyphosphate and charge ratios. Carbohydr Polym 89:282–289

Russo P, Morello S, Pinto A et al (2020) Zinc and calcium cations combination in the production of floating alginate beads as prednisolone delivery systems. Molecules. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules25051140

Sadeghi M, Soleimani F (2011) Synthesis of novel polysaccharide-based superabsorbent hydrogels via graft copolymerization of vinylic monomers onto kappa-carrageenan. Int J Chem Eng Appl 2:304–306

Sadeghi M, Ghasemi N, Kazemi M et al (2012) Synthesis, swelling behavior, salt- and pH-sensitivity of cross linked carrageenan-graft-poly (acrylamide-co-itaconic acid) superabsorbent hydrogel. Middle-East J Sci Res 11:311–317

Saeed RM, Dmour I, Taha MO (2020) Stable chitosan-based nanoparticles using polyphosphoric acid or hexametaphosphate for tandem ionotropic/covalent crosslinking and subsequent investigation as novel vehicles for drug delivery. Front Bioeng Biotechnol 8:Article 4. https://doi.org/10.3389/fbioe.2020.00004

Sagbas S, Butun S, Sahiner N (2012) Modifiable chemically crosslinked poli(k-carrageenan) particles. Carbohydr Polym 87:2718–2724

Salgueiro AM, Daniel-da-Silva AL, Fateixa S et al (2013) κ-Carrageenan hydrogel nanocomposites with release behavior mediated by morphological distinct Au nanofillers. Carbohydr Polym 91:100–109

Salimi H, Pourjavadi A, Seidi F et al (2010) New smart carrageenan-based superabsorbent hydrogel hybrid: investigation of swelling rate and environmental responsiveness. J App Polym Sci 117:3228–3238

Samak YO, Massik ME, Coombes AGA (2017) A comparison of Aerosolization and homogenization techniques for production of alginate microparticles for delivery of corticosteroids to the Colon. J Pharm Sci 106:208–216

Samorezov JE, Morlock CM, Alsberg E (2015) Dual ionic and photocrosslinked alginate hydrogels for micropatterned spatial control of material properties and cell behavior. Bioconjug Chem 26:1339–1347

Saravanan M, Rao KP (2010) Pectin–gelatin and alginate–gelatin complex coacervation for controlled drug delivery: influence of anionic polysaccharides and drugs being encapsulated on physicochemical properties of microcapsules. Carbohydr Polym 80:808–816

Savin CL, Popa M, Delaite C et al (2019) Chitosan grafted-poly(ethylene glycol) methacrylate nanoparticles as carrier for controlled release of bevacizumab. Mater Sci Eng C 98:843–860

Seeli DS, Dhivya S, Selvamurugan N et al (2016) Guar gum succinate-sodium alginate beads as a pH-sensitive carrier for colon-specific drug delivery. Int J Biol Macromol 91:45–50

Selvakumaran S, Muhamad II (2015) Evaluation of kappa carrageenan as potential carrier for floating drug delivery system: effect of cross linker. Int J Pharm 496:323–331

Shao J, Zhang Z, Zhao S et al (2019) Self-healing hydrogel of poly (vinyl alcohol)/agarose with robust mechanical property. Starch 71:1800281

Sharaf S, El-Naggar ME (2019) Wound dressing properties of cationized cotton fabric treated with carrageenan/cyclodextrin hydrogel loaded with honey bee propolis extract. Int J Biol Macromol 133:583–591

Sharifzadeh G, Wahit MU, Soheilmoghaddam M et al (2016) Kappa-carrageenan/halloysite nanocomposite hydrogels as potential drug delivery systems. J Taiwan Inst Chem Eng 67:426–434

Singh B, Chauhan D (2011) Barium ions crosslinked alginate and sterculia gum-based gastroretentive floating drug delivery system for use in peptic ulcers. Int J Polym Mater 60:684–705

Singh YP, Bhardwaj N, Mandal BB (2016) Potential of agarose/silk fibroin blended hydrogel for in vitro cartilage tissue engineering. ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 8:21236–21249

Smitha KT, Anitha A, Furuike T et al (2013) In vitro evaluation of paclitaxel loaded amorphous chitin nanoparticles for colon cancer drug delivery. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 104:245–253

Sonawane RO, Patil SD (2018) Fabrication and statistical optimization of starch-κ-carrageenan cross-linked hydrogel composite for extended release pellets of zaltoprofen. Int J Biol Macromol 120:2324–2334

Song Y, Nagai N, Saijo S et al (2018) In situ formation of injectable chitosan-gelatin hydrogels through double crosslinking for sustained intraocular drug delivery. Mater Sci Eng C 88:1–12

Sun X, Liu C, Omer AM et al (2019) Dual-layered pH-sensitive alginate/chitosan/kappa-carrageenan microbeads for colon-targeted release of 5-fluorouracil. Int J Biol Macromol 132:487–494

Swamy BY, Yun Y-S (2015) In vitro release of metformin from iron (III) cross-linked alginate–carboxymethyl cellulose hydrogel beads. Int J Biol Macromol 77:114–119

Szekalska M, Sosnowska K, Czajkowska-Kosnik A et al (2018) Calcium chloride modified alginate microparticles formulated by the spray drying process: a strategy to prolong the release of freely soluble drugs. Materials. https://doi.org/10.3390/ma11091522

Szymańska E, Woś-Latosi K, Jacyna I, Dąbrowska M, Potaś J, Markuszewski MJ, Winnicka K (2020) The correlation between physical crosslinking and water-soluble drug release from chitosan-based microparticles. Pharmaceutics 12(5):455

Tahtat D, Mahlous M, Benamer S et al (2013) Oral delivery of insulin from alginate/chitosan crosslinked by glutaraldehyde. Int J Biol Macromol 58:160–168

Tanodekaew S, Prasitsilp M, Swasdison S et al (2004) Preparation of acrylic grafted chitin for wound dressing application. Biomaterials 25:1453–1460

Tavakoli S, Kharaziha M, Kermanpur A et al (2019) Sprayable and injectable visible-light kappa-carrageenan hydrogel for in-situ soft tissue engineering. Inter J Biol Macromol 138:590–601

Tunesi M, Prina E, Munarin F et al (2015) Cross-linked poly(acrylic acids) microgels and agarose as semi-interpenetrating networks for resveratrol release. J Mater Sci Mater Med 26:5. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10856-014-5328-8

Unagolla JM, Jayasuriya AC (2018) Drug transport mechanisms and in vitro release kinetics of vancomycin encapsulated chitosan-alginate polyelectrolyte microparticles as a controlled drug delivery system. Eur J Pharm Sci 114:199–209

Upadhyay M, Adena SKR, Vardhan H et al (2018) Development of biopolymers based interpenetrating polymeric network of capecitabine: a drug delivery vehicle to extend the release of the model drug. Int J Biol Macromol 115:907–919

Uyen NTT, Hamid ZAA, Le Thi LA et al (2020) Synthesis and characterization of curcumin loaded alginate microspheres for drug delivery. J Drug Deliv Sci Technol 58:101796. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jddst.2020.101796

Veres P, Sebők D, Dékány I et al (2018) A redox strategy to tailor the release properties of Fe(III)-alginate aerogels, for oral drug delivery. Carbohydr Polym 188:159–167

Wang X, Hao T, Qu J et al (2015) Synthesis of thermal polymerizable alginate-GMA hydrogel for cell encapsulation. J Nanomater:970619

Wang Y, Wang J, Yuan Z et al (2017) Chitosan cross-linked poly(acrylic acid) hydrogels: drug release control and mechanism. Colloids Surfaces B 152:252–259

Wang F, He S, Chen B (2018) Retinoic acid-loaded alginate microspheres as a slow release drug delivery carrier for intravitreal treatment. Biomed Pharmacother 97:722–728

Wang L, Zhang X, Yang K et al (2019) A novel double-crosslinking-double-network design for injectable hydrogels with enhanced tissue adhesion and antibacterial capability for wound treatment. Adv Funct Mater 30(1):1904156. https://doi.org/10.1002/adfm.201904156

Wu T, Yu S, Lin D et al (2020) Preparation, characterization, and release behavior of doxorubicin hydrochloride from dual cross-linked chitosan/alginate hydrogel beads. ACS Appl Bio Mater 3:3057–3065

Xie CX, Tian TC, Yu ST et al (2019) pH-sensitive hydrogel based on carboxymethyl chitosan/sodium alginate and its application for drug delivery. J Appl Polym Sci 136:46911

Xing L, Sun J, Tan H et al (2019) Covalently polysaccharide-based alginate/chitosan hydrogel embedded alginate microspheres for BSA encapsulation and soft tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 127:340–348

Xu X, Jha AK, Harrington DA et al (2012) Hyaluronic acid-based hydrogels: from a natural polysaccharide to complex networks. Soft Matter 8:3280–3294
Xu J, Strandman S, Zhu JXX et al (2015) Genipin-crosslinked catechol-chitosan mucoadhesive hydrogels for buccal drug delivery. Biomaterials 37:395–404
Xu D, Huang J, Zhao D et al (2016) High-flexibility, high-toughness double-cross-linked chitin hydrogels by sequential chemical and physical cross-linkings. Adv Mater 28:5844–5849
Xue Y, Xia X, Yu B et al (2015) A green and facile method for preparation of pH-responsive alginate nanogel as subcellular delivery of doxorubicin. RSC Adv 5:73416–73423
Yan J, Miao Y, Tan H et al (2016) Injectable alginate/hydroxyapatite gel scaffold combined with gelatin microspheres for drug delivery and bone tissue engineering. Mater Sci Eng C 63:274–284
Yeh J, Ling YB, Karp JM et al (2006) Micromolding of shape-controlled, harvestable cell-laden hydrogels. Biomaterials 27:5391–5398
Yin Z-C, Wang Y-L, Wang K (2018) A pH-responsive composite hydrogel beads based on agar and alginate for oral drug delivery. J Drug Deliv Sci Technol 43:12–18
Yu SH, Wu SJ, Wu JY et al (2015) Preparation of fucoidan-shelled and genipin-crosslinked chitosan beads for antibacterial application. Carbohydr Polym 126:97–107
Zarrintaj P, Manouchehri S, Ahmadi Z et al (2018) Agarose-based biomaterials for tissue engineering. Carbohydr Polym 187:66–84
Zhang B, He D, Fan Y et al (2014) Oral delivery of exenatide via microspheres prepared by cross-linking of alginate and hyaluronate. PLoS One 9:e86064
Zhang X-Z, Tian F-J, Hou Y-M et al (2015a) Preparation and in vitro in vivo characterization of polyelectrolyte alginate-chitosan complex based microspheres loaded with verapamil hydrochloride for improved oral drug delivery. J Incl Phenom Macrocycl Chem 81:429–440
Zhang Y, Ye L, Cui M et al (2015b) Physically crosslinked poly(vinyl alcohol)-carrageenan composite hydrogels: pore structure stability and cell adhesive ability. RSC Adv 5:8180–78191
Zhang Y, Li X, Zhong N et al (2019a) Injectable in situ dual-crosslinking hyaluronic acid and sodium alginate-based hydrogels for drug release. J Biomater Sci Polym Ed 30:995–1007
Zhang R, Lei L, Song Q et al (2019b) Calcium ion cross-linking alginate/dexamethasone sodium phosphate hybrid hydrogel for extended drug release. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 175:569–575

C. E. Iurciuc-Tincu received a bachelor's degree in Chemical Engineering in 2009 and a master's degree in 2019 in Polymeric Biomaterials and Bioresources from "Gheorghe Asachi" Technical University from Iași, Faculty of Chemical Engineering and Environmental Protection. Also, she obtained the first PhD title in Materials Engineering from "Gheorghe Asachi" Technical University, Faculty of Chemical Engineering and Environmental Protection from Iași, Romania, in 2017 under the supervision of Prof. Popa Marcel. At present, she is a third-year PhD student at the University of Medicine and Pharmacy "Grigore T. Popa" Iași, Romania, Faculty of Pharmacy. The doctoral thesis research involves the development of biopolymer release systems able to overcome some biological barriers. She published, as first author, nine research articles, one article as co-author in journals with a high impact factor, and a book chapter. The research interests are drug delivery systems based on biopolymers for the controlled release of bioactive compounds, preparation of hydrogels as micro-/nanoparticles with polysaccharides modification, physicochemical characterization of polymers, and bioactive compounds.

L. Ochiuz is habilitated university professor, Head of the Pharmaceutical Technology Department of the Faculty of Pharmacy of the "Grigore T. Popa" University of Medicine and Pharmacy of Iași from 2017. The research activities conducted for more than 15 years were performed in the field of pharmaceutical forms with modified release and aimed both to overcome some pharmaco-technical barriers and to optimize the bioavailability of the medicinal substance. Over the years, she has gained experience in the micro- and nanoparticulate therapeutic systems development, prepared by

different methods from microemulsion until lyophilization, using different materials for coatings/loading of the medicinal substance (e.g., hydrophilic polymers, self-emulsifying lipid excipients, nanoporous and mesoporous inorganic matrices). The competence and experience in the development of the pharmaceutical forms with the modified release are also reflected by participating as a member-official referend in the six committees of PhD theses, elaborated in the field of drug research. The scientific results obtained in over 15 years of research can be quantified as follows: publication of 75 reviews or research articles in indexed ISI Web of Knowledge (Hirsch index = 9) and 39 research papers in different international databases; publication of 2 books and 13 book chapters in national and international publishing houses; 2 patents in the field of drug formulation, participation at 15 conferences as an invited speaker at national and international scientific events.

M. Popa, Ph.D. is a Professor in the Department of Natural and Synthetic Polymers, Faculty of Chemical Engineering and Environmental Protection at the "Gheorghe Asachi" Technical University of Iași, Romania. He graduated in Chemical Engineering in 1972 and obtained his PhD degree in Macromolecular Chemistry at the Polytechnic Institute of Iași, Romania. Dr. Popa authored 452 scientific papers, 9 books, 29 book chapters, 530 presented papers at scientific meetings, and 20 patents in the fields of polymer mechano-chemistry, polysaccharides, and biologically active polymer chemistry (immobilized drugs and enzymes on macromolecular supports); he is the editor of 2 books. He is the recipient of the following awards: the "Gh. Spacu" Romanian Academy prize for his pioneering work in the field of bioactive polymers; the "Opera Omnia" prize awarded by the Romanian Education Ministry for lifelong scientific achievements; the "Henri Coanda" gold medal granted by the Romanian Inventor Society; "Excellence in Research" award of the "Gheorghe Asachi" Technical University of Iași, Romania, and other awards and medals at international inventor competitions; he is *Doctor Honoris Causa* of Pau et Pays de l'Adour University and of Haute Alsace University from France and member of Romanian Academy of Scientists. Dr. Popa is working in collaboration with international scientific teams from universities located in France, Canada, and Germany. He is interested in the field of polymer chemistry, polymer composites, and polymer-drug systems with controlled release (including polymer-drug conjugates).

L. I. Atanase (habilitated university professor) studied macromolecular chemistry at the "Gh. Asachi" Technical University in Iași. During his university studies, he received a 3-month Socrates/Erasmus Scholarship at the University of Marseille, France. This first contact with French culture encouraged him to return in 2005 to pursue a master's degree at the National Chemistry School in Mulhouse, France, under the guidance of Prof. Gerard Riess. Also under the guidance of Prof. Riess, he continued his postgraduate studies and in 2010 received PhD in Materials Chemistry from the University of Haute Alsace, Mulhouse. Until 2014, he continued his research, at the same university in France, as a university researcher, in the field of polymers and emulsions biocompatible with applications in the biomedical field. From 2014 to 2015, he worked in the field of nanoemulsions with cosmetic applications at the University of Pau, France, in collaboration with Moët Hennessy Louis Vuitton (LVMH), the Dior branch. This collaboration was materialized by a patent related to the preparation of a perfume only on aqueous basis. At the beginning of 2016, he returned in Romania, at the "Apollonia" University of Iași, and the experience accumulated in the almost 10 years spent in France allowed him to obtain the title of full professor in 2017. His research fields are related to block and graft copolymers, micellization, emulsions, targeted drug delivery systems, biopolymers, and electrospinning. He is currently the Dean of the Faculty of Dental Medicine at the "Apollonia" University in Iași and the coordinator of the Biomaterials Laboratory but also of the Office of International Relations.

3 Chitosan and Chitooligosaccharides: Preparation, Characteristics, and Their Potential Application as Therapeutic Agents

Yusro Nuri Fawzya, Pujoyuwono Martosuyono, and Hari Eko Irianto

Abstract

Chitosan is one of the marine biomaterials widely found in crustacean, insect, arachnids, and fungi as the deacetylation product of chitin. Due to its biocompatibility, biodegradability, bioactivity, and nontoxicity, it has become of great interest and a good material for various applications in pharmaceutical and biomedical fields. The limited solubility of chitosan in acidic solution is then developed into various modification products, one of which is chitooligosaccharides (COS). This chapter overviews chitosan and COS including the preparation methods, properties, and several applications for biomedical purposes.

Keywords

Chitosan · Chitooligosaccharides · Preparation · Properties · Biomedical

3.1 Introduction

Chitosan is a natural polymer which can be derived through deacetylation process from chitin, a natural polysaccharide which is the second most abundant biopolymer after cellulose. Chitin is naturally found in the shells of fish, prawn, shrimp, krill, lobster, crab, cone snails, etc. which are being generated regularly as waste from fish industries and from household garbage. It can be obtained from insect cuticles, egg shells of nematodes and rotifers, the radulae of mollusks, cuticles of arthropods, pen and cuticle of squid, the diatom *Thalassiosira fluviatilis*, fungi, as well as filaments

Y. N. Fawzya · P. Martosuyono · H. E. Irianto (✉)
Research and Development Center for Marine and Fisheries Product Processing and Biotechnology, Jakarta, Indonesia

S. Jana, S. Jana (eds.), *Marine Biomaterials*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-5374-2_3

ejected by *Phaeocystis* in seaweed. Chitin, as structural polysaccharides, functions as supportive and protective material in the organisms (crustaceans, mollusks, insects, arachnids, and yeast or fungi) (Chawla et al. 2014; Dima et al. 2017; Firdous and Chakraborty 2017; Sani et al. 2017).

Some of the chitin-producing shrimps are *Penaeus monodon*, *P. indica*, *P. carinatus*, *Fenneropenaeus indicus*, and *Squilloides leptosquill.* The crabs that show chitosan release include *Portunus pelagicus*, *Sesarma plicatum*, and *Scylla serrata.* Chitins are also identified from white-rot fungus *Rigidoporus lignosus* as well as the mycelia, the caps, and stalks of fruiting bodies of four edible mushrooms, *Lentinus edodes*, *Lyophyllum shimeji*, *Caju*, and *Volvariella volvacea.* The exoskeleton of the short-horned grasshopper *(Schistocerca gregaria)* also produces chitin. Fungi and yeast releasing chitosan are *Aspergillus niger*, *A. terreus*, *Penicillium waksmanii*, *P. aurantiogriseum*, *P. viridicatum*, *P. citrinum*, and *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (Ebrahimzadeh et al. 2013; Akila 2014; Krishnaveni and Ragunathan 2015; Sakthivel et al. 2015; Sartika et al. 2016; Firdous and Chakraborty 2017; Parthiban et al. 2017; Sani et al. 2017).

Of all chitin sources, crustaceans are the main source of chitin produced commercially, specifically from waste of shrimp or crab industries. The waste of crab, shrimp, and lobster shells globally reaches 6–8 million tons annually which is predicted 1.5 million tons in Southeast Asia alone (Yan and Chen 2015). The components proportion of commercial crustacean wastes based on dry weight is chitin 15–40%, protein 20–40%, and minerals 20–50% (Ruiz and Corrales 2017). Thus, chitin is produced by removing protein and minerals from the crustacean shells, which is commonly carried out by chemical method rather than enzymatic method. Deproteination of crustacean shells is conducted by using sodium hydroxide, while acid treatment with chloride acid, sulfuric acid, or nitric acid can be applied to remove minerals/demineralization. So far, preparation of chitin by enzymatic method is still limited for research purposes. Microbial proteases are employed to deproteinize crustacean shells, whereas lactic acid-producing bacteria are used for demineralization of the carapace of crustaceans. The lactic acid produced reacts with calcium carbonate or calcium phosphate yielding calcium lactate which is subsequently precipitated and eliminated. However, the quality of chitin produced is lower than that of produced by chemical method (Antonino et al. 2017; Ruiz and Corrales 2017). A reverse result is obtained from biologic chitin extraction using lactic acid bacteria and/or proteolytic bacteria which give more prospective results. The method produces a good quality of chitin and a high protein liquid fraction which can be used for human and animal feed, and other by-products, i.e., natural pigments, especially astaxanthin. Because of the low yield product compared to the chemical method, scope of the biologic method is still limited to laboratory scale (Arbia et al. 2013). Chitin is then deacetylated to produce chitosan which can be carried out by chemical as well as enzymatic methods.

Chitosan has a wide range of applications, including in agricultural, pharmaceutical, biomedical, and other various fields. The world chitosan market size is valued at $1.7 billion in 2019, and is projected to reach $4.7 billion by 2027, growing at a CAGR of 14.5% from 2020 to 2027. The main global producers of chitosan are

Japan, the USA, China, India, Australia, Poland, and Norway (Dima et al. 2017). Asia-Pacific accounted for the highest chitosan market share, owing to easy availability of crustacean waste in coastal areas (Allied Market Research 2020). The market size of chitosan for cosmetics/toiletries segment is projected to increase approaching to 18.5% in the coming years (Global Market Insights 2018).

Chitosan is insoluble in water and most organic solvents, which limits its applications in various fields. The low molecular weight chitosan, chitooligosaccharides (COS), and other derivative products of chitosan can be used to avoid this hurdle (Mourya et al. 2011). Various methods have been developed to modify chitosan in order to improve its properties through chemical/enzymatic methods to generate depolymerized and/or new derivatives. The production of COS and low molecular weight chitosan can be done by physical (such as sonication, irradiation, etc.), chemical (such as by using HONO, etc.), and enzymatic methods which involve specific enzymes (chitinolytic enzymes) or nonspecific enzymes (such as proteolytic, cellulolytic, lipolytic, amylolytic enzymes) (Baxter et al. 2005; Varun et al. 2017; Zhou et al. 2019).

Chitosan nanoparticles can be formed by the cross-linkers, i.e., STPP (sodium tripolyphosphate) by ionic bonds and glutaraldehyde by covalent bonds (Islam et al. 2019).The chemical modifications of chitosan to produce chitosan sulfate and carboxymethyl chitosan have been confirmed by FTIR and elemental analysis (Blanco et al. 2013).The chitosan derivatives can be obtained by chemical modification of the chitosan reactive functional group, in which the active groups $-OH$ and $-NH_2$ are susceptible to chemical reactions. New methods for reducing the molecular mass of chitosan are high-pressure homogenization, plasma, or using zeolites adsorbents to purify acid hydrolysis COS and low molecular weight chitosan (Brasselet et al. 2019; Wang et al. 2020).

Other than chitosan's ability to induce erythrocyte aggregation, promote platelet activation, and activate complement systems, modified chitosan derivatives have improved biocompatibility, biodegradability, bioactivity, and nontoxicity while retaining the original antibacterial, bactericidal, anticancer, and antiviral pharmacological effects, such as the ability to bring about erythrocyte aggregation, platelet activation, and complement system activation (Wang et al. 2020). These improved properties expand the range of uses for chitosan, including medical and pharmaceuticals, water treatment, agrochemicals, as well as food and beverage. Chitosan is employed in water treatment to adsorb metals, harmful compounds, iron, and other pollutants from wastewater due to its adsorption property. Chitosan is an effective, inexpensive, and environmentally friendly technique to treat water. Chitosan is used as a preservative, nutritional supplement, and anticholesterol ingredient in the food and beverage business. Chitosan is utilized in cosmetics for hair and skin care. Because of its bioactivity, antibacterial activity, and antioxidative activity, chitosan and its derivatives are useful in a range of medical and pharmaceutical applications. Chitosan is applied to wound ointments and medical device coatings. Chitosan is utilized in contact lenses and in medical applications as a drug delivery agent (Markets and Markets 2018). Tissue engineering (Pandey et al. 2017), drug delivery systems (Mengatto et al. 2012), gene therapy systems

(Kritchenkov et al. 2017), wound healing (Patrulea et al. 2015), antioxidant (Rajalakshmi et al. 2014), and antibacterial (Goy et al. 2009) are some of the potential therapeutic applications of chitosan.

In this chapter chitosan with regular and nanoparticle sizes as well as its depolymerized product will be discussed, including their preparation methods and their characteristics. Then, the most recent application of chitosan as therapeutic agents will be overviewed, focusing in tissue engineering, drug delivery system, gene therapy system, and antimicrobial materials.

3.2 Chitosan and Nanochitosan

Chitosan is a natural polymer composed of D-glucosamine and N-acetyl-D-glucosamine linked through β-1,4 glycosidic bonds, generated from partial or total chitin deacetylation. Chitin is an intermediate product prior to chitosan, a poly-(β-(1 → 4)-N-acetyl-D-glucosamine, the main component of crustacean and other arthropod exoskeleton. Chitin is naturally available in three different forms depending on the source designated as α-, β-, and γ-chitin. Each form has a specific structural manner related to the chain arrangement. α-Chitin is the most stable form and built of antiparallel chains, usually found in the exoskeleton of crustaceans and fungi (Jung and Zhao 2013; Alvarez 2014). β-Chitin, composed of parallel chains with a weaker hydrogen bonding, can be obtained from squid pens (Jung and Zhao 2013; Alvarez 2014). γ-Chitin contains both types of parallel and antiparallel chains, which is typically found in insects and the *Loligo* squid stomach (Jang et al. 2004). Commercially, chitin is extracted from crustacean waste including shrimp and crab shells which is categorized as α-chitin.

So far, chitin and chitosan have a great interest for numerous researches due to not only its wide range applications but also its unique characteristics offering chitosan considerable usage in various biomedical applications.

3.2.1 Preparation of Chitosan and Nanochitosan (Chitosan Nanoparticles)

Chitosan can be prepared by chemical and biotransformation via enzymatic method. Even though chemical method consumes much energy, is harsh, and has higher risk of environmental pollution, this method is used extensively for industrial processing of chitosan. It is because of the fast and easier process compared to enzymatic method. The advantages of biological production process of chitosan are particularly in producing higher molecular weight of chitosan with the desired degree of polymerization (Tsigos et al. 2000).

3.2.1.1 Chemical Method

Most commercial chitosan is prepared from crustacean shells due to the availability of the raw materials. Basically, chitosan is produced mainly by elimination of protein

(deproteinization), minerals (demineralization), and acetyl group (deacetylation), where the first and second step can be reversed in sequence. From the first two steps, chitin will be produced, and the next step is deacetylation of chitin to obtain chitosan as the final product.

Various chemicals can be employed for shell deproteinization, including NaOH, Na_2CO_3, $NaHCO_3$, Na_2SO_3, $NaHSO_3$, Na_3PO_4, Na_2S, KOH, K_2CO_3, $Ca(OH)_2$, and $CaHSO_3$ (Younes and Rinaudo 2015). However, the most popular reagent employed is dilute NaOH (0.5–1.25 M) solution with the reaction temperature at 65–100 °C for 0.5 to 72 h. The use of this chemical at high temperature causes depolymerization which may influence chitin properties related to viscosity, molecular weight, as well as degree of acetylation (Gortari and Hours 2013; Antonino et al. 2017; Pighinelli 2019). Removing minerals (mostly $CaCO_3$) from the deproteinized crustacean shell is possibly performed by HCl, HNO_3, H_2SO_4, and CH_3COOH, but so far dilute HCl solutions at room temperature are the most desirable to be applied for demineralization. The reaction is employed at room temperature, which usually takes 2–3 h under stirring (Younes and Rinaudo 2015). Exception methods may be done, such as the deproteinization of crab shell and squid pen using 4% NaOH at lower temperature (10 °C) (Jang et al. 2004) and the use of ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) or acetic acid to reduce degradation in demineralization process (Younes and Rinaudo 2015).

Deacetylation is a process of elimination of acetyl group from chitin molecules. Chitin has been categorized as chitosan when the degree of deacetylation (DD) of chitin reaches more than 50% (Younes and Rinaudo 2015). Deacetylation is generally performed by using concentrated sodium hydroxide solution (approx. 50–70%) at high temperature (80–110 °C) for few hours. Higher concentration of NaOH and higher temperature process of deacetylation will produce chitosan with higher degree of deacetylation. However, depolymerization possibly occurred which is showed by decreasing of chitosan molecular weight. Variation of NaOH concentration, temperature, as well as time of deacetylation process will produce chitosan with various DD and various chitosan properties especially viscosity and molecular weight (Galed et al. 2008; Pires et al. 2014; Younes and Rinaudo 2015). Raw materials as chitosan sources also determine type and characteristics of chitosan produced.

Nanochitosan or chitosan nanoparticle is a modified chitosan form prepared by reducing its particle size producing chitosan in nanosize. This modification is purposed to improve the chitosan properties due to the much smaller size and large surface area that make it easier to diffuse or adsorb into targeted substances in its application. In addition, when functioning as a pharmaceutical carrier, delivery and uptake by cells are more efficient (Othman et al. 2018).

Many studies and reviews showed the potential of nanochitosan in various applications, such as antimicrobial (Yang et al. 2010; Aliasghari et al. 2016; Abdeltwab et al. 2019), drug delivery system (Elgadir et al. 2015; Li et al. 2018), and tissue engineering (Gokila et al. 2018; Sangeetha et al. 2019).

The characteristics of chitosan that have been used for the manufacture of chitosan nanoparticles vary, including chitosan with molecular weight (MW) of

21 kDa and DD 87% (Su et al. 2010), MW 360 kDa and DD 95% (Wu et al. 2005), MW 100 kDa and DD 80% (Kim et al. 2006), and viscosity 95 mPa and DD 86% (Grenha et al. 2005). Meanwhile, the commercial chitosan traded has an average MW and DD in the range of 3800 to 20,000 daltons and 66 to 95%, respectively (Agnihotri et al. 2004).

Chitosan nanoparticles can be prepared by several methods, such as ionic or ionotropic gelation, complex coacervation, coprecipitation, microemulsion, emulsification solvent diffusion, emulsion-based solvent evaporation, and reverse micellar method (Mohammed et al. 2017). However, the most common method applied is ionic gelation method, which is a simple technique. In this method, the positive charge of chitosan solution in acetic acid is added with any polyanionic solution, such as sodium tripolyphosphate with negative charge (with or without a stabilizing agent). The interaction of the two charges results in separation of chitosan in spherical nanoparticles (Yang et al. 2010; Mohammed et al. 2017; Sangeetha et al. 2019).

Practically, 2% acetic acid solution is generally used to dissolve chitosan, and approximately 0.8% STPP solution is then added dropwise while stirred continuously for 30 to 120 min at room temperature. The nanochitosan formed is separated by decantation or centrifugation and then prepared for drying. Several factors affect the physical characteristics of nanochitosan including concentration of chitosan and STPP solution, pH, temperature and stirring speed, number of cross-linking, and molecular weight of chitosan (Gopal and Nandakumar 2015; Othman et al. 2018). Improvement of chitosan nanoparticles properties can be provided by optimization process through reducing concentration of acetic acid at ambient temperature. These treatments result in good storage stability and produce monodisperse and low molecular weight nanochitosan. The stability is related to the more hydrogen bond of chitosan interacting with water molecules due to the fast cooling rate of suspension at low temperature (Fan et al. 2012). A modification process can be employed to improve the chitosan nanoparticles properties by encapsulating it using the right compounds. L-Ascorbic acid (LAA) as hydrophilic antioxidant and thymoquinone as hydrophobic antioxidant can encapsulate chitosan nanoparticles resulting in improvement of their pharmaceutical efficiency (Othman et al. 2018). Firstly, the LAA is added into tripolyphosphate (TPP) solution; then the mixture is reacted with the chitosan as previously described in ionic gelation method producing nanochitosan-LAA, whereas the addition of thymoquinone is conducted by dissolving the thymoquinone in dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and adding the solution to chitosan. Then, TPP as negatively charged is poured into the mixture of chitosan-thymoquinone providing nanochitosan-thymoquinone (Othman et al. 2018). Other cross-linker used in ionic interaction with chitosan is sodium sulfate. The cross-linking of low molecular weight chitosan with sulfate anion as cross-linking bridge producing low molecular weight chitosan sulfate nanoparticles which is relatively stable and considered appropriate carrier in drug delivery application (Al-Remawi 2012). The size of nanochitosan produced by this method ranges from 20 to 200 nm and 500 to 900 nm (Mohammed et al. 2017).

The method of complex coacervation or polyelectrolyte complex is conducted by separation of nanoparticles through mixing electrostatically driven liquids, such as the production of DNA-chitosan nanoparticles. An ionic solution of dextran sulfate DNA solution interacts with the cationic chitosan solution which is dissolved in acetic acid, gelatin, and polyethylenimine followed by charge neutralization generating nanoparticles in the size of 300–500 nm (Hembram et al. 2014; Mohammed et al. 2017). This method has an advantage such that the process can be taken place in an aqueous solution at low temperature (Mohammed et al. 2017). The coprecipitation method to produce chitosan nanoparticles can be prepared by addition of acidic chitosan solution to alkaline solution (pH 8.5–9.0) such as ammonium hydroxide generating spherical and uniformly distributed nanochitosan (Hembram et al. 2014; Mohammed et al. 2017). Preparation of chitosan nanoparticles by microemulsion method is carried out by using surfactant dissolved in n-hexane which is then added with chitosan and glutaraldehyde steadily stirred at ambient temperature (Hembram et al. 2014).

3.2.1.2 Enzymatic Method

Enzymatic deacetylation of chitin into chitosan can be achieved by chitin deacetylases. The most important advantage of enzymatic reaction compared to chemical processes is the product of chitosan with high molecular weight and certain degree of deacetylation (Tsigos et al. 2000). Chitin deacetylases have been found in several fungi, insects, and marine bacteria, particularly those which have chitin and chitosan as a structural component of their cell wall. The enzyme will be secreted to the periplasmic compartment of cell as extracellular enzyme and contribute to biosynthesis of chitosan (Tsigos et al. 2000; Zhao et al. 2010). Preparation of chitosan by enzymatic method using chitin deacetylases should employ soluble forms of chitin such as glycol chitin and chitosan of variable DD, because the enzymes are hard to access toward crystalline chitin (Grifoll-Romero et al. 2018). Pretreatment of chitin may be applied to enhance the accessibility of the enzyme to the acetyl group, such as by partially deacetylated chitin substrates. The use of chitin deacetylase from *Bacillus* K29-14 to produce chitosan is preceded by soaking chitin in 60% NaOH solution at 60–75^{o}C for 60–180 min bringing about chitin swelling and allowing enzyme access to acetyl group of chitin. Chitosan produced has DD of 72–99% with lower molecular weight indicating the depolymerization occurred during the process (Emmawati et al. 2007).

There are other enzymes involved in chitin and chitosan conversion, such as chitinase and chitosanase which catalyze the hydrolysis of glycosidic bonds in different substrate specificity (Jaworska 2012). The products of enzymatic deacetylation can be further modified enzymatically by COS deacetylases to generate products with desired chain arrangement (Hirano et al. 2017). All of these enzymes are widely used as useful tools toward production of chitosan and COS biotechnologically, especially in a controlled, well-defined, and non-degradative process (Hamre et al. 2015). However, the enzymatic methods have main limitation including the application of multistep character of the process and high price of

enzyme, which makes them undesirable options from an economic point of view (Kim and Rajapakse 2005)

3.2.2 Characteristics of Chitosan

Chitosan has lots of special characteristics including physicochemical properties due to its important role of functional group (amino and hydroxyl). The free amino group gives chitosan a positive charge and determines the degree of deacetylation which the latter then affects greatly on the crystallinity of chitosan that is associated with its solubility. The deacetylation requirement is usually $\geq$70% for chitosan which is commonly acceptable for various applications. The number of functional group of chitosan is influenced by preparation method involving concentration of chemical used, temperature, preparation time, etc. which can impact on chitosan properties and functionality such as molecular weight, viscosity, the ability on heavy metal chelation, as well as coagulation of fat and proteinaceous materials (Chi and Cheng 2006; Younes and Rinaudo 2015). Decolorization treatment can also reduce the quality of chitosan such as producing a lower viscosity chitosan which is related to changes in molecular weight. The biological properties of chitosan are widely applied to the development of biomedical products such as antibacterial, wound healing, drug delivery, etc. Quality and different sources of raw material also confer an important effect on chitosan characteristics. The use of shrimp waste produces chitosan with higher viscosity and solubility (5300 cPs and 97%) compared to *Squilla* and crab shell waste chitosan, which have viscosity of 2600 cPs and 465 cPs and the solubility of 89.7% and 85%, respectively (Parthiban et al. 2017).

Molecular weight (MW) and viscosity of commercial chitosan are usually classified into five groups, i.e., ultralow MW (<20,000 Da) or viscosity of <30 cPs; low MW (20,000–250,000 Da) or viscosity of 30–300 cPs; medium MW (250,000–1250,000 Da) or viscosity of 300–1000 cPs; high MW (1250,000–1,800,000 Da) or viscosity of 1000–2000 cPs; and very high MW (>1,800,000 Da) or viscosity of 2000–3500 cPs. The viscosity of chitosan is proportional to the concentration. Chitosan viscosity of 1% in 1% acetic acid is usually used in determining the specification of chitosan or its derivatives. Chitosan with low molecular weight and viscosity can be obtained when deacetylation processes employ higher concentration of NaOH, higher temperature, and longer time. Further impact will occur on increasing DD value and solubility.

Chitosan is a cationic polyelectrolyte, white in color, and solid shape. It is soluble in weakly aqueous acidic solution, such as acetic acid, formic acid, and lactic acids, but insoluble in water at neutral and alkaline solutions as well as organic solvents. The degree of solubility is much affected by the DD value which is correlated with the free amino group and distribution of the acetyl group along the chains of chitosan molecule. The free amino group is the most important factor in determining the chemical and biochemical reactivity of chitosan (Younes and Rinaudo 2015; Majekodunmi 2016; Zhang et al. 2016; Parthiban et al. 2017). Chitosan is also

Table 3.1 Specification for commercial chitosan[a]

Quality parameters	Specification		
	Pharmaceutical grade	Food grade	Industrial grade
Appearance	White or light yellow, powder or flake	White or light yellow, powder or flake	White or light yellow, powder or flake
Degree of deacetylation	70–100	70–100	70–100
Viscosity	≤5 cPs	≤5 cPs	50–500 cPs
Moisture content	<10.0%	<10%	<12%
Residue on ignition	<0.2%	<0.2%	<0.5%
Insolubles	<1.0% insolubility	<1.0% insolubility	<1.0% insolubility
Heavy metal (Pb)	<10 ppm	<10 ppm	–
As	<10 ppm	<10 ppm	–
Total bacterial count	≤1000 cfu/g	≤1000 cfu/g	–
Odor	No taste and smell	No taste and smell	–
pH	7–9	7–9	7–9

[a]Summarized from several commercial chitosan requirements

biodegradable by chitosanase as a specific enzyme or by nonspecific enzymes such as cellulases, proteases, and lipases producing COS which are water-soluble.

The degree of deacetylation value is correlated with the amount of protonated amino groups in chitosan molecule. The higher the DD is, the higher the chitosan purity from the impurities of protein, minerals, pigments, and acetyl group which is accompanied with its higher solubility in acidic solution. The chitosan purity is used as the basis for the classification of commercial chitosan into pharmaceutical grade, food grade, and industrial/technical grade (Table 3.1). Other properties of chitosan that are commercially relevant are its biocompatibility, biodegradability, and transformation capacity into fibers, gels, beads, or other forms that are suitable for foods, cosmetics, and pharmaceutical applications (Majekodunmi 2016). Even though the requirement of chitosan for pharmaceutical is similar to food purposes, practically it is different in the purity and DD value which are higher for pharmaceutical application, usually above 90%. Purity of chitosan is also determined by wide range of chitosan sources and various processing techniques leaving residual or impurities of protein, ash, or microbiological contaminants. Variation in requirements of chitosan specification of each grade is possible due to the development of chitosan modification and the differences of method employed for analyses.

Degree of deacetylation of chitosan also affects the shelf life of chitosan during storage. A higher DD (>85%) is allowed in slower degradation process with a low degradation index in the aqueous conditions. On the contrary, chitosan with a lower DD (82–65%) would have a shorter shelf life due to the faster degradation (Rodríguez-Vázquez et al. 2015). However, chitosan stability is influenced by

internal and external factors. Internal factors include molecular weight, purity level, DD, polydispersity index, and moisture content. Environment conditions, such as temperature and humidity of storage room, and processing condition, including physical methods, sterilization, or other thermal processing, are external factors that affect the degradation rate of chitosan during storage (Szymańska and Winnicka 2015).

Similar to chitosan, chitosan nanoparticles are biocompatible and biodegradable, while its bioactivities are beneficial to wide range of applications, including for pharmaceutical and medical purposes. Chitosan nanoparticles prepared by the aggregation method of chitosan exhibit the same chemical structures and homogenous surface with the native chitosan, but reduce in crystallinity and increase in the amorphous region, improving its hydrophilic properties. The nanochitosan has greater thermal stability (Jampafuang et al. 2019; Guimarães et al. 2020). The particle size of chitosan nanoparticles has a positive correlation with DD of chitosan which is probably related to the availability of amine groups in the chitosan molecules. Chitosan with higher DD can be a stronger protonation of the amine group which makes the chitosan to expand larger generating a larger particle size (Jampafuang et al. 2019).

3.3 Chitooligosaccharides (COS)

COS, or chitooligomers or chitosan oligomers, are degradation products of chitosan with degree of polymerization $\leq$20 and average molecular weight <5 kDa (Jung and Park 2014; Guo et al. 2018). Compared to chitin and chitosan, the low molecular weight COS has advantageous properties such as high solubility, good biocompatibility, good water absorption, etc. which support on its biological properties. Several technological approaches can be used to produce COS including chemical, enzymatic, physical, and electrochemical approaches of chitosan degradation (Liang et al. 2018). However, commercial production of COS is commonly prepared through chemical and enzymatic methods.

3.3.1 Preparation of COS

3.3.1.1 Chemical Method

Preparation of COS by chemical methods includes hydrolysis reaction using acids or oxidative reaction using hydrogen peroxide. The (1 → 4)-β-glycosidic bonds in the chitosan molecule are cleaved randomly during the hydrolysis process, producing homo- or hetero-oligosaccharides depending on the presence of acetyl group in the chitosan molecule. The process is relatively simple and efficient, but it is difficult to control and sometimes produces various by-products in which the COS is not easy to separate and purify. The chemical degradation method is also environmentally hazardous and produces oligomers with various degrees of polymerization (DP) and degrees of acetylation (DA).

Concentrated HCl (12M) employed to produce COS via hydrolyzing fully N-deacetylated chitosan at 72 °C for 75 min is an optimum condition to produce glucosamine oligomers with DP of 1–15 (Cartier and Domard 1989). Similar to those results, degradation of chitosan by chloride acid method results in hydrolysates with DP up to 16 and more monoacetylated residues than with enzymatic methods (Cabrera and Van Cutsem 2005).The use of dilute HCl in the presence of zeolite is developed to prepare COS through the technique of adsorption reaction (Ibrahim et al. 2016). Firstly, chitosan is mixed with deionized water and then added with zeolite and HCl followed by heating the mixture under reflux at 100 °C with stirring for 2 h. After cooling to room temperature, the mixture is centrifuged. The solid fraction is then added with distilled water, vortexed, and centrifuged. The supernatant, as chitooligomer, is then evaporated. Another acid employed to depolymerize chitosan in the preparation of COS is nitrous acid (HONO). Chitosan solution (in dilute acetic acid) is added with $NaNO_2$ and kept overnight at 4 °C or room temperature (Tømmeraas et al. 2001; Varun et al. 2017). The proportion of $NaNO_2$ depends on degree of acetylation (DA) of chitosan used. The higher the DA of chitosan, the higher the proportion of $NaNO_2$. Another chemical method used in COS preparation is oxidative degradation method using oxidants such as hydrogen peroxide. A random degradation of partially deacetylated chitin and chitosan occurred by the addition of hydrogen peroxide at low concentration, and reducing their molecular weight followed the first-order kinetics (Chang et al. 2001). The formation of glucosamine and COS depends on the physicochemical characteristics of chitin and chitosan, reaction temperature, and the peroxide concentration. Degradation of chitosan by the use of 4.5% hydrogen peroxide at 56°C for 6 h produces COS with a degree of polymerization below 6 (Wu et al. 2017). Application of 1% hydrogen peroxide to 3% chitosan solution (in dilute lactic acid) at ambient temperature obtains COS with molecular weight of 4500 g/mol at 15 days of the reaction period (Hai et al. 2019).

3.3.1.2 Enzymatic Method

Enzymatic degradation is of great interest to produce COS with the molecular weight distribution controlled and without any modifications (Lodhi et al. 2014; Liang et al. 2018). In addition, the method offers an eco-friendly and controllable process compared to chemical method which is harsh and needs more purification steps to reduce the residual strong acid. However, this method has limited application due to the cost, availability, and specificity of chitosanases as specific enzymes for COS production (Vishu Kumar et al. 2004). Chitosanase belongs to chitinolytic enzymes which are classified as specific enzymes to produce COS via hydrolyzing chitosan. The enzymes catalyze the cleavage of β-1,4-glycosidic linkages in chitin and chitosan, while the other enzymes referred as nonspecific enzyme group (protease, cellulase, lysozyme, lipase, amylase, etc.) also can be used in the preparation of COS. Most chitosanases employed in the COS production have been found in a variety of microorganisms, including bacteria and fungi. So far their commercial availability is limited. The product of enzymatic hydrolysis is chitosan hydrolysates which are mixtures of COS with DP of 1–7 depending on the reaction condition.

Prolonged hydrolysis period commonly produces monomer as the main product (Jung and Park 2014).

A unique endo-chitosanase from marine bacterium *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. SY39 that is both thermotolerant and cold-adapted enzyme produces chitodisaccharide as the major product after being applied to chitosan (Zhou et al. 2019). Chitobiose having the most proportion of hydrolyzed product is also produced from chitosan catalyzed by purified chitosanase from *Bacillus* sp. HW-002 at 40 °C for 5 h (Lee et al. 1996). High proportion of chitotriose to chitooctose in the COS is produced from chitosan by using crude chitosanase from *Bacillus cereus* P16 incubated at 37 °C for 24 h (Jo et al. 2003). The COS composition is affected by chitosan concentration. The higher the concentration, the higher DP of COS is produced. An exo-chitosanase, exo-chitobiohydrolase, produced by *Gongronella butleri* hydrolyzes soluble chitosan and glucosamine (GlcN) oligomers (DP > 4) producing chitodisaccharide $(GlcN)_2$ from the nonreducing ends of chitosan. The enzyme has the ability to digest the linkage of GlcN-GlcNAc, GlcNAc-GlcN, and GLcN-GlcN (Seki et al. 2019). The quality of both chitosan and enzyme used affects the quality or properties of COS produced. The use of low DD chitosan and crude chitosanase with low activity produces COS with high ash content and should be desalinated to obtain better properties of COS. This problem may be occurred in scaling up production of COS using crude enzyme from wild-type bacteria in which its activity tends to decrease during storage (Fawzya et al. 2018).

The use of nonspecific enzymes to hydrolyze chitosan has shown the ability of the enzymes to produce various COS. They include protease, cellulase, lipase, etc. The use of papain (0.003% w/w) in 16-h hydrolysis of chitosan DD 90% shows the highest molecular weight reduction compared to lysozyme and cellulase, producing COS with the average MW of 4.3 kDa (Laokuldilok et al. 2017), whereas the most effective enzyme in reducing MW of chitosan DD 80% is shown by lysozyme. Papain is predicted working better in cleaving the β-1,4-glucosidic linkage between two glucosamine molecules than cellulase and lysozyme, while lysozyme is more effective in cleaving the bond connecting glucosamine and N-acetylglucosamine molecules. The effectiveness of papain and lysozyme in the depolymerization of chitosan is also reported (Lin et al. 2009). However, the hydrolysis process is generally affected by type of enzyme, hydrolysis time, degree of acetylation, and initial molecular weight of chitosan (Laokuldilok et al. 2017).

The discovery of lytic polysaccharide monooxygenases (LPMOs) since the last 10 years has been a great interest of studies on COS production by using this enzyme to cleave the glycosidic bonds of crystalline chitin/chitosan. The enzyme works by oxidizing either C1 or C4 of the glucopyranose ring through an oxidative mechanism which needs a reductant, an oxygen containing co-substrates and a copper ion with a single bound. The reaction produces oxidized chain ends which then support chitinases/chitosanases in further depolymerization of chitin/chitosan (Vaaje-Kolstad et al. 2010; Bissaro et al. 2017). Some microorganisms producing LPMOs are reported, such as *Serratia marcescens* (Vaaje-Kolstad et al. 2010),*Bacillus cereus* (Mutahir et al. 2018), and *Vibrio cholerae* (Loose et al. 2014).

The synergy between LPMOs and chitinase for degradation of shrimp shell chitin is demonstrated by reacting the mixture of 10 mg/mL chitin, 1 mM ascorbic acid, and 20 mM Bis-Tris buffer (pH 6) with 0.5 μM LPMO (from *B. cereus* or *S. marcescens*) and 0.25 M GH18 chitinases, followed by degradation of the soluble fraction produced from the incubation time (up to 48 h) using 1.0 μM chitobiase for 24 h (Mutahir et al. 2018). The yield of products prepared by both enzymes simultaneously is 26% higher than the sum of the yields processed by the individual enzyme (LPMO and chitinase). In addition, GlcNAc produced corresponds with the yields of oxidized products. The solubilized oxidized products will increase correlated with solubilization of oxidized sites in the solid substrate due to the addition of chitinases to LPMO-pretreated chitin.

3.3.1.3 Physical Method

Degradation of chitosan by physical method usually produces COS with less contamination and low productivity (Liang et al. 2018). In addition, this method, such as ultrasonic, microwave, or gamma irradiation, is much simpler to keep the purity. The use of high-intensity ultrasonication on the chitosan solution (in acetic acid) decreases the intrinsic viscosity which is affected by the intensity and time of ultrasonication, thus resulting in lower molecular weight of chitosan (Baxter et al. 2005). The higher the intensity and the longer the time of sonication, the lower the viscosity as well as the molecular weight of chitosan. The initial molecular weight and viscosity of 1% chitosan (DD 81%) solution which are 867 kDa and 3.85 dL/g, respectively, decreased to 140 kDa and 0.75 dL/g at 35.2 W/cm^2 (power 10) sonication for 30 min. Preparation of COS can be carried out by irradiation of chitosan with 2–200 kGy doses of Co-60 gamma rays (Choi et al. 2002). Irradiation more than 100 kGy produces COS with darker brown color. At the 100 kGy dose of irradiation, the COS produced are mainly dimer, trimer, and tetramer with the proportion of 3.8, 3.9, and 2.5% in 100 cP chitosan solution, respectively. Degradation of chitosan solution by ultrasonic irradiation at frequency of 20 kHz is performed using different chitosan concentration, irradiation period, ultrasound power, and solution temperature (Kasaai et al. 2008). Depolymerization increases with the increase of ultrasound power, irradiation time, and solution temperature, as well as the decrease of chitosan concentration. A hydrodynamic cavitation may be an alternative method to degrade chitosan by passing the chitosan solution through a closed system constructed using an orifice plate. The degradation effect is better when using orifice plates with much more holes and smaller hole diameter increasing the intensity of cavitation. In addition, the degradation of chitosan increases with the increasing upstream pressure and at higher pH solution under acidic condition but decreases by increasing initial concentration of chitosan solution. This procedure is considered as prospective method due to the high degradation rate, low energy used, the availability of equipment, being safe to environment, a lot of samples used, etc. (Huang et al. 2013).

3.3.1.4 Electrochemical Method

Electrochemical method using Ti/Sb-SnO_2 electrode has a good efficiency in the degradation of chitosan (Gu et al. 2013). The electrode as non-active electrode performs better and has lower cost compared to Ti/TiO_2-RuO_2 electrode (Cai et al. 2011), due to the higher oxygen evolution potential of Ti/Sb-SnO_2 electrode. The molecular weight of chitosan rapidly decreases with time of electrolysis from 479 to 85 and 46 kDa (the reduction of 60.5 and 90.4%) at 30 and 60 min, respectively. However, some disadvantages of the method such as easy failure and short electrode endurance may restrict the use of this method (Liang et al. 2018).

3.3.2 Characteristics of Chitooligosaccharides (COS)

COS are derivatives of chitosan which have lower molecular weight. The characteristics of COS are much affected by their chemical properties. Like chitosan, COS is biodegradable and biocompatible. In addition, their greater solubility at neutral pH, low viscosity, and nontoxicity as well as their low molecular weight are beneficial for wider applications than chitosan, especially for food and biomedical applications (Park et al. 2011; Lodhi et al. 2014; Marmouzi et al. 2019). Their various biological activities, including antitumor, anti-oxidative stress, anti-inflammation, anticholesterol, antihypertensive, controlling arthritis, and increasing of calcium uptake, are also the reason of COS application in pharmaceutical and biomedical fields (Park et al. 2011; Lodhi et al. 2014; Marmouzi et al. 2019). Their molecular weight is usually less than 10,000 Da depending on degradation method (chemical, physical, enzymatic) and process condition. The COS also has degree of polymerization (DP) of less than 50 (Marmouzi et al. 2019). It is water-soluble but not soluble in acetone, ethyl acetate, and 2-4 alkyl alcohol. The solubility in methanol is shown by oligomers with DP of 2–4. On the contrary, oligomers with DP >5 are less soluble (Mourya et al. 2011). COS with shorter chain lengths have number of reducing units, and therefore the aldehyde groups in COS allow to react with amino groups as Schiff base formation, Maillard reaction, and Amadori rearrangement, generating product with undesirable characteristics such as brownish color, reduced water solubility, decreased thermal stability, diminished moisture-adsorption capacity, and physiological activity losses to COS (Mourya et al. 2011).

Composition of COS will determine their physicochemical properties which are much affected by methods of chitosan depolymerization and will further influence their bioactivities. A single-step enzymatic method using chitosanase compared to a two-step chemical-enzymatic hydrolysis is applied to COS preparation. The COS produced from the first method consists of lower proportion of fully deacetylated oligomers (42%) and higher monoacetylated oligomers (54%) compared to the second method (50% and 27%, respectively). The end product from the single-step enzymatic method contributes in stabilizing the lipopolysaccharides (LPS)-COS complex and has anti-inflammatory effect on both in vitro (using RAW264.7 macrophages) and in vivo (using LPS-induced mice) assays (Sánchez et al. 2018).

Effect of different enzymes applied to hydrolysis chitosan for COS preparation shows that lipase is the most effective for producing COS with the maximum FRAP (5.66 μmol TE/g) and ABTS (322.68 μmol TE/g) radical scavenging activity compared to amylase and pepsin. The COS from squid pen produced by lipase has water solubility of 49%, intrinsic viscosity of 0.41 dL/g, and average molecular weight of 79,000 Da. Addition of this COS with the concentration of 1% retards lipid oxidation of surimi gel kept at 4 °C, thus extending the storage life (Singh et al. 2019).

The adsorption of COS on activated charcoal increases with the smaller particle size of the charcoal, and its capacity reaches a maximum at pH 8–9 with no significant difference at various temperatures. The adsorption equilibrium is reached after 60 min, and the kinetic process is in accordance with the pseudo-second-order model and shows chemisorption properties. These data and information are important for the production and purification of COS using activated charcoal (Yu and Li 2019).

3.4 Potential Application of Chitosan and Its Derivatives as Therapeutic Agents

3.4.1 Tissue Engineering

Tissue engineering is a part of the regenerative medicine that involves materials (natural and/or synthetic polymers) to develop biomimetic scaffolds for repairing and regenerating tissue and, further, improving function on defective tissue. The biocompatibility, biodegradation, and non-cytotoxicity characteristics of biopolymers make them potential for use in regenerative medicine, and are considered in the selection of appropriate biomaterials which is a critical point in designing scaffolds for tissue engineering (Sultankulov et al. 2019). Chitosan is a natural biopolymer having the characteristics mentioned above, with other important features for scaffold specification including its physicochemical properties (solubility, molecular weight, water absorption capacity, porosity, mechanical and biological properties, etc.). In addition, chitosan molecule can be chemically modified to obtain additional functional properties which are promising to the application for scaffold construction (Rodríguez-Vázquez et al. 2015; Sultankulov et al. 2019).

Molecular weight is associated proportionally with viscosity. High molecular weight chitosan acts as a strong viscosity building agent when it is dissolved in acid solution and transforms into pseudoplastic material which is an important characteristic in tissue interaction. Porosity is an important feature for scaffolding due to the physical structure of the scaffold which should control cell functions by regulating the transfer of nutrients and other substances as well as water diffusion. Chitosan has been proven to generate a porous scaffold which can retain water and bioactive protein (Madihally and Matthew 1999; Rodríguez-Vázquez et al. 2015). The porous chitosan can be developed by freezing and lyophilization of chitosan solution under controlled condition. The hydrated porous chitosan membranes give at least twice

more surface area than nonporous chitosan membranes, but their elasticity and tensile strengths are estimated ten times lower than nonporous one (Madihally and Matthew 1999). The use of chitosan in tissue engineering is clinically safe for humans due to the biocompatibility property of chitosan and the fact that chitosan is composed by GlcN and GlcNAc, natural substances of mammalian tissue (Rodríguez-Vázquez et al. 2015). The cytocompatibility of chitosan film toward keratinocytes and fibroblasts with the cell proliferation is affected by the DD of chitosan (Chatelet et al. 2001).

Various forms of chitosan can be employed to construct scaffold, including bulk, microparticle, nano-fiber, hydrogel, and blended chitosan, with other natural or synthetic polymers. Natural polymers that can be combined with chitosan include collagen, gelatin, silk fibroin, hyaluronic acid, alginate, and cellulose, while synthetic polymers which can be used for producing composite polymer-based chitosan scaffold include polyglycolic acid (PGA), polylactic acid (PLA), polycaprolactone (PCL), polylactic-co-glycolic acid (PLGA), polyvinyl alcohol (PVA), polyacrylic acid, polyethylene glycol (PEG), and γ-glycidoxypropyltrimethoxy silane (GPTMS) (Lan Levengood and Zhang 2015; Pandey et al. 2017; Islam et al. 2020). The synthetic polymers are sometimes employed alone to make scaffold. They are also lower in cost and function better than natural polymers, but some of them show inadequate immune responses and lack of biocompatibility or toxicity, resulting in inflammation (Islam et al. 2020). Therefore, combining natural and synthetic polymers is purposed to obtain a nontoxic and compatible composite with better functional properties for tissue engineering applications.

A new development of chitosan-based materials for cartilage tissue engineering is constructed using dual network hydrogel of thiolated chitosan (CS-NAC) with silk fibroin (SF) via each gelation mechanism. The best formulated composition of CS-NAC/SF solutions produces hydrogels with better properties and supports the chondrocytes growth. These dual network gels are favorable in cartilage reconstruction (Liu et al. 2020).

A tripolymeric composite nanoparticle containing chitosan, poly-γ-glutamic acid, and pluronic is designed as a delivery device for wound healing and prepared by method of a simple ionic gelation. The composite shows stimulating regeneration of neocollagen and reconstruction of skin tissue (Lin et al. 2017).

Chitosan can also be employed for bone tissue engineering application. However, it is commonly hard to produce an ideal bone scaffold by the use of just chitosan or other single substance (polymer, inorganic or biological). The use of individual biomaterial has inadequate electrical performance, mechanical characteristics, and inconsistency quality for batch to batch production. On the other hand, inorganic materials are frequently fragile. The combining materials, including chitosan with two or more types of substances, have often been considered to show better properties of scaffolds. Materials investigated to be mixed with chitosan scaffolds include natural or synthetic polymers (collagen, alginate, silk fibroin, polyvinyl alcohol, polycaprolactone, etc.), biomaterials (hydroxyapatite, silicon dioxide, etc.), or pharmacological molecules (bisphosphonate, vascular endothelial growth factors, etc.) (Yao et al. 2016; Türk et al. 2018; Aguilar et al. 2019). A tissue

scaffolds for bone formation and tissue regeneration have been developed from chitosan/biphasic calcium phosphate (CS/BCP) functionalized with Arg-Gly-Asp (RGD) and bone morphogenetic protein-2 (BMP-2)-loaded nanoparticles. It is synthesized through the method of freeze-drying. The resulting scaffolds exhibit to stimulate cell adhesion and induce cell differentiation and are close to natural bone extracellular matrix (ECM) related to the composition and structural features. This study shows that the scaffolds are potential to be applied in bone tissue engineering (Gan et al. 2018). Other fabrications of artificial bone scaffolds are conducted to generate a superporous 3D collagen/functionalized multiwalled carbon nanotube/chitosan/hydroxyapatite (Col/fMWCNT/CS/HA) scaffold by the method of freezing and lyophilization. The resulting composite scaffold shows a significant enhancement of the biomineralization and mechanical characteristics compared to Col, CS, Col/fMWCNT, and Col/fMWCNT/CS scaffolds and is considered as potential for use in bone tissue engineering (Türk et al. 2018).

The application of chitosan for periodontal tissue engineering has been of interest since the last decade, although the research conducted is not as much as that of for bone tissue engineering. The beneficial properties related to its biocompatibility; bioactivity; antimicrobial, bioadhesive, and minimally immunogenic property; and ability to blend with other materials are to be considered as the reason of chitosan application for biodental or other biomedical purposes. Chitosan can be employed as a sole ingredient, and sometimes it presents better when blending with other compatible materials (Gu et al. 2019; Islam et al. 2020). Application of chitosan-based extrafibrillar demineralization strategy for periodontal treatment yields good results, including decreased collagen degradation initiated by endogenous proteases, keeping intrafibrillar minerals, inhibiting the growth of bacteria on dentin surfaces, and reducing water permeability of hybrid layers which then enhances the stability of resin-dentin bond (Gu et al. 2019).

3.4.2 Drug Delivery Systems

Many medications' efficacy is limited by their ability to reach the therapeutic action site. Only a small portion of the injected dose reaches the intended region, but the majority of the drug is disseminated throughout the body based on its physicochemical and biological properties (Sailaja et al. 2010). As a result, drug delivery systems have been one of the most active research fields for more than 50 years, with a focus on sustained/controlled and targeted pharmaceutical formulations capable of increasing patient compliance, personalizing, and enhancing therapeutic benefits. Drug delivery systems in a variety of forms, ranging from microparticles to nanoparticles, hydrogels to scaffolds, and membranes carrying pharmaceuticals embedded in organic, inorganic, polymeric matrices, or combinations thereof, are researched, some of which have already been marketed (Peptu et al. 2019).

Because of their higher bioadhesion to different tissues/mucosa, transfection properties, efflux pump inhibition, or permeation across biological barriers (nasal, oral, and vaginal mucosa or skin, gastrointestinal, ophthalmic, and blood-brain

barriers), chitosan/modified chitosan as cationic polymers provides increased bioavailability and therapeutic efficiency of various anionic drugs/genetic materials or hydrophobic/hydrophilic drugs (Peptu.et al. 2019). Due to its main amino groups, chitosan has a cationic property. Controlled drug release, mucoadhesion, in situ gelation, transfection, permeation enhancement, and efflux pump inhibitory characteristics are all due to these main amino groups. Most of these qualities can be improved further through chemical modifications (Bernkop-Schnürch, Dünnhaupt 2012).

Chitosan nanoparticles' physicochemical qualities can be changed to improve their use. The features of chitosan nanoparticles differ from those of chitosan, and they can be further improved for more effective drug delivery, particularly in terms of therapeutic efficacy. To increase intestine solubility, N-trimethyl chitosan chloride is manufactured. A nanoparticle formulation including thiolated chitosan is being developed to improve mucoadhesiveness. Chitosan opens tight connections across the membrane leading to an increase in this action by quaternization of chitosan, as seen in insulin permeation in Caco-2 cells. Increase of pH sensitivity can be achieved by grafting carboxylated chitosan with poly (methyl methacrylate). Physical modifications to chitosan can be accomplished by physically blending two or more polymers for particular purposes (Mohammed et al. 2017).

In situ gelling characteristics and mucoadhesive qualities cause chitosan nanoparticles to be employed in ophthalmic administration. Chitosan nanoparticles are used in oral drug delivery because they open mucous membranes' tight junctions and improve absorption. They are useful in the delivery of pulmonary drugs because of their positive charge. The permeability of various medicines can be increased with chitosan nanoparticles, thus enabling them to be delivered through the nose. Chitosan nanoparticles assist mucosal medication delivery by increasing the absorption of hydrophilic compounds. Chitosan nanoparticles are used as a vaccine adjuvant. These have been shown to be useful in the treatment of cancer. The physiochemical characteristics of chitosan nanoparticles have led to these uses. Biocompatibility, biodegradability, mucoadhesiveness, absorption augmentation, and in situ gelling are some of these properties (Garg et al. 2019).

For pharmaceutical purposes, chitosan must have a yellow or white appearance (flake or powder), a particle size of less than 30 m, a density of between 1.35 and 1.40 g/cm3, a pH of 6.5–7.5, a moisture content of less than 10%, a residue on ignition of less than 0.2 percent, a protein content of less than 0.3 percent, a degree of deacetylation of 70–100%, a viscosity of less than 5 cps, an insoluble matter of less than 1%, heavy metals (As) of less than 10 ppm, heavy metals (Pb) of less than 10 ppm, and no smell and taste (Sailaja et al. 2010).

The chitosan particulate system was made using a variety of approaches. The selected method is determined by parameters such as the required particle size, the chemical and thermal stability of the active components, the reproducibility of the kinetic profile of the final product release, and the residual toxicity of the final product. There are two methods for loading pharmaceuticals into the nanoparticle system, i.e., incorporation and incubation. Incorporation occurs during the nanoparticle creation process, whereas incubation occurs after the nanoparticles have been

formed. The drug is physically added to the matrix or adsorbed on the surface in each of these systems. By incorporating the drug during particle manufacture, it is possible to obtain maximum drug loading, and process parameters, such as manufacturing method, presence of additives, etc., affect the loading capability. Drugs that are both water-soluble and insoluble can be added to chitosan-based particle systems (Agnihotri et al. 2004). Hamman (2010) also mentions the usage of a chitosan-based polyelectrolyte complex as a viable carrier material in the drug delivery system.

The release of the drug from the particle system is affected by the degree of cross-linking, size, morphology, and density of the particulate system, and the treatment efficacy can be enhanced by the drug's physicochemical qualities and the presence of adjuvants. Meanwhile, the in vitro release was impacted by polarity, pH, and the presence of enzymes in the dissolving medium. Drug release from the chitosan particulate system is mediated by three mechanisms: (a) release from the surface of particle, (b) diffusion through the inflated rubbery matrix, and (c) release as a result of the erosion of polymer (Agnihotri et al. 2004).

Several chitosan nanoparticle applications as a drug delivery method in the pharmaceutical and biomedical areas have been studied extensively with varied treatment goals. Many researches on the use of chitosan nanoparticles as a delivery agent of drug for diverse therapeutic targets have been conducted. Chitosan nanoparticles can be employed to administer drugs parenterally, orally, or ocularly, as a vector for delivering nonviral gene and vaccine as well as for photodynamic treatment (Irianto and Muljanah 2011; Chakraborty et al. 2012; Rajalakshmi 2014).

3.4.2.1 Parenteral Administration

Nanoparticles can be delivered intravenously since blood capillaries have a diameter of roughly 4 m. The reticuloendothelial system in the liver, spleen, lungs, and bone marrow may quickly pick up particles with a diameter greater than 100 nm. Smaller particles, on the other hand, have a longer circulation duration. Positive or neutrally charged particles are removed more slowly than negatively charged particles (Rajalakshmi et al. 2014). Preparing hydrophilic nanoparticles with a charge of neutral surface is an effective way to decrease macrophage phagocytosis while also enhancing the success rate of loaded therapeutic particles treatment (Tiyaboonchai 2003).

Anticancer drugs are a promising field for research. According to Qi and Xu (2006), chitosan nanoparticles showed good anticancer efficacy when tested in vivo on multiple cancer cell lines. Agnihotri et al. (2004) describe the preparation of gadopentetic acid-charged chitosan nanoparticles for gadolinium neutron capture treatment. The nanoparticles' releasing qualities and ability to keep gadopentetic acid in tumor cells for an extended period of time imply that they can be used as intratumoral syringes in gadolinium neutron capture treatments.

According to Prabahara (2014), biodegradability, biocompatibility, excellent cell membrane penetration, high drug-carrying capacity, pH-dependent therapeutic delivery, multifunctionality, and long circulation period are the distinctive properties of chitosan-based nanoparticles that make them as one of the most promising

chemotherapy and cancer diagnostic delivery vehicles. Qi et al. (2005) show that chitosan nanoparticles efficiently suppress the growth of the human gastric carcinoma MGC803 cell line in vitro via a repeated mechanism and may be a useful drug in the treatment of cancer in humans.

3.4.2.2 Peroral Administration

Nanoparticles are being developed as oral delivery methods for macromolecules, proteins, and polynucleotides in order to protect labile medicines from enzymatic breakdown in the digestive tract. Chitosan nanoparticles transport anti-infective medicines such as antibacterial, antiviral, antifungal, and antiparasitic medications (Tiyaboonchai 2003; Chakraborty et al. 2012).

Qi et al. (2004) applied ionic gelation technique using tripolyphosphate anion to develop antibacterial chitosan nanoparticles which have antibacterial activity against *E. coli*, *S. choleraesuis*, *S. typhimurium*, and *S. aureus*. According to Loutfy et al. (2020), chitosan nanoparticles containing curcumin are utilized as an antiviral medication for the treatment of hepatitis C virus genotype 4a (HCV-4a). As a nanocomposite form, chitosan nanoparticles have the potential to synergize the antiviral action of curcumin. The nanocomposite exhibited a potent multitarget antiviral activity against HCV-4a entry and replication at the molecular and protein levels.

Following the report stating that blood sugar levels in diabetic rats were successfully lowered as a result of oral insulin nanoparticle therapy, this technique has been extensively explored (Tiyaboonchai 2003). Chitosan has been utilized as a carrier method to transport insulin molecules using polymeric nanoparticles. An in vivo study using chitosan/poly-(γ-glutamic acid) on a diabetic mouse model revealed that this nanoparticle system successfully reduced blood sugar levels. The combination of chitosan sulfate dextran nanoparticles was successful as a pH-sensitive delivery method, and insulin release was regulated by the polysaccharide dissociation mechanism (Sona 2010). Chitosan and poly-(γ-glutamic acid) nanoparticle systems were used for oral insulin administration.

Chitosan nanoparticle-based drugs have several advantages over traditional tablet or powder formulations, including the fact that they are nontoxic and compatible with soft tissue and cationic polysaccharides, adhere to the surfaces of mucosa, and momentarily open tight connections between neighboring epithelial cells. Because of their low stability, nanoparticles rapidly dissolve, allowing the loaded insulin to enter the systemic circulation via the opening paracellular route (Sung et al. 2012). Therefore, chitosan nanoparticles can enhance the absorption of insulin and interrelate with the intestinal mucosa (Alonso et al. 2005).

Zhang et al. (2010) present the ionotropic gelation technique for producing 100–400 nm nanoparticles for protein delivery from water-soluble chitosan with sodium tripolyphosphate utilizing bovine serum albumin as a drug model. Nanoparticles of water-soluble chitosan have been found to enhance and extend absorption of bovine serum albumin in the intestine. As a result, water-soluble chitosan nanoparticles might be used as a protein delivery method. Grenha et al. (2005) suggest using microencapsulated chitosan nanoparticles to transport protein

to the lungs, with chitosan increasing peptide absorption. Furthermore, chitosan nanoparticles have been proposed for the treatment of local lung disorders such as cystic fibrosis and cancer. To distribute hydrophilic peptides, Chen et al. (2007) produce a nanoparticle formulation using chitosan and sulfobutyl ether-7-β-sodium cyclodextrin.

3.4.2.3 Ocular Administration

Nanoparticles have been identified as possible ocular carriers for increasing medication bioavailability at the ocular surface. Nanoparticles of various kinds tend to attach to the eye's epithelial surface. The nanoparticles' extended residence time leads in a significantly slower elimination rate than traditional ophthalmological formulations, increasing the drug's bioavailability. Therefore, the delivery of active ingredients in eye drops such as allergy drugs, anti-inflammatory drugs, and beta-blockers is used as a direction for developing nanoparticles. Because of its ability to increase adsorption, chitosan is utilized as a carrier for eye drops (Tiyaboonchai 2003).

Salamanca et al. (2006) examined the potential for developing drug delivery methods for the ocular surface using nanoparticles of chitosan, which is an ionotropic gelation of chitosan with pentasodium tripolyphosphate in the manufacturing process. Chitosan nanoparticles indicated that they easily penetrated the conjunctival epithelial cells and had a good tolerance on the rabbit's eye surface. Silva et al. (2017) used mucoadhesive chitosan and hyaluronic acid for the development of eye drops for the effective treatment of eye disorders. The novel nanoparticle eye-drop formula's mucoadhesivity incorporates ceftazidime, antibiotics for treating eye infections. The eye-drop formulation contains 0.75% (w/v) polymer (hydroxypropyl) methyl cellulose in an isotonic solution made of nanoparticles consisting of sodium tripolyphosphate/chitosan-hyaluronic acid as a ceftazidime carrier.

3.4.2.4 Nonviral Gene Delivery Vector

The main idea of gene-based treatment is to cure pathological diseases by modifying the expression of disease-initiating genes at the cellular level by inserting new genes (DNA and RNA) into target cells. Therapeutic genes must overcome several physiological and molecular obstacles to reach target cells. Nonviral vectors provide a number of advantages, including a high degree of safety with a minimal immune response, ease of large-scale manufacturing, high efficiency for bioactive loading, and unlimited gene material size. In addition, compared to viral vectors, they have a reduced capacity to penetrate cells and a lower efficacy of gene transfection (Cao et al. 2019).

Chitosan has numerous potential benefits as a gene delivery tool, including high biocompatibility and cationic charge density as well as low immunogenicity and cytotoxicity (Lee et al. 2005; Shu and Zhu 2002). Furthermore, because of the presence of amine groups, chitosan is easily able to form a complex with negatively charged DNA. Naked nucleic acids are quickly destroyed by cell nucleases and are unable to get through the cell membrane. Simply combining positively charged

chitosan with negatively charged nucleic acid results in the production of polyelectrostatic complex at the nanoscale that protects an enzymatically degraded nucleic acid that has been condensed (Chang et al. 2010; Huang et al. 2005; Koping-Hoggard et al. 2001). Chitosan, which is positively charged, can form nanoparticle complexes when it interacts with nucleic acids having negative charge. Those vectors are released from the endosome (decomplexing process) into the cytoplasm after being taken in by endocytosis. Section 3.4.3 (Gene Therapy Systems) delves more into the use of chitosan as a vector for nonviral gene transfer.

3.4.2.5 Vaccine Delivery

Some characteristics of chitosan have been significantly enhanced after functional alteration, such as improved stability, mucoadhesivity, membrane permeability, and controlled release behavior, indicating that chitosan is a viable vaccine carrier system. To allow tailored vaccine administration, certain ligands, such as mannose, have been combined with a chitosan derivative for particular interactions with the target cell type (Xing et al. 2018). Meanwhile, nanoparticles have a strong adjuvant impact on vaccine parenteral delivery because they may be taken up directly by the cells that generate the antigen. Furthermore, nanoparticles are considered to have the ability to generate a mucosal protective immune response after oral and nasal delivery, which is one of the main aims of contemporary vaccinology. Peyer's patches are the major target for oral vaccination delivery. The vaccine is shielded from enzymatic breakdown on its journey to the mucosal tissues and is efficiently absorbed by M cells by integrating it into the nanoparticle system. In contrast to oral administration, nasal administration requires the vaccine to be delivered over a short distance, remain in the nasal cavity for 15 min, and not be subjected to degradative enzymes or low pH. Therefore, nasal vaccination delivery may not need nanoparticle formation and may instead be administered as a solution or powder, exceeding the formulation's contact time with nasal tissue (Tiyaboonchai 2003).

In a vaccine delivery method, Gordon et al. (2008) make chitosan nanoparticles that are loaded with the ovalbumin (OVA) protein antigen model. The amount of OVA that chitosan nanoparticles can adsorb is significant, with an adsorption efficiency of above 95%. In vitro studies utilizing immunologically activated murine dendritic cells reveal that chitosan nanoparticles release roughly half of the total protein over 10 days. Chitosan nanoparticles are used as an adjuvant in the administration of mucosal vaccinations by Mehrabi et al. (2018). The use of nanoparticles in the vaccine formulation improves antigen storage and immunogenicity, as well as targeted distribution and more precise release of the target agent. In the physicochemical characteristics of chitosan and vaccine delivery, the deacetylation degree and molecular weight of chitosan nanoparticles play a key impact.

3.4.2.6 Photodynamic Therapy

Photodynamic therapy (PDT) is becoming more widely acknowledged as a cancer treatment option. However, with a number of chemical treatments, photodynamic therapeutic agents such as photosensitizers (PS) have restricted applicability due to extended skin photosensitivity, poor water solubility, and insufficient selectivity.

Without interfering with their magnetic targeting, chitosan magnetic nanoparticles can provide excellent biodegradability, biocompatibility, water solubility, and nontoxicity. PS 2,7,12,18-tetramethyl-3,8-di(1-propoxyethyl)-13,17-bis-(3-hydroxypropyl) porphyrin (PHPP) is produced and developed as a medication delivery system and imaging agent using magnetic targeting chitosan nanoparticles (MTCNPs) (PHPP). PHPPMTCNPs have good targeting and imaging capabilities and may be utilized in PDT targeting monitored with magnetic resonance imaging (magnetic resonance imaging) (Sun et al. 2009). Rad et al. (2019) developed antimicrobial photodynamic therapy using chitosan nanoparticles doped indocyanine green, which reduces *Aggregatibacter actinomycetemcomitans* virulence factor and may be utilized as an addition to regular therapies for effective periodontal therapy in vivo.

Dental administration, colon drug delivery, liver drug delivery, kidney drug delivery, lung drug delivery, cancer-targeted drug delivery, and active targeting-receptor-mediated endocytosis (RME) are some of the other uses of chitosan for drug delivery that have been investigated (Rajalakshmi et al. 2014).

3.4.3 Gene Therapy Systems

Gene therapy is one of the most rapidly growing, promising, and expanding topics in modern medicine, with therapeutic promise for a wide range of hereditary disorders. The main idea behind this therapy is to correct errors in DNA produced by mutations in order to restore the functioning of the gene(s) in the cells. The procedure entails the delivery and introduction of new genes (DNA and RNA) into target cells capable of carrying the transgene's expression. Gene therapy has been widely used to treat a number of genetic disorders, including X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency (Hacein-Bey-Abina et al. 2003), cancers (Adair et al. 2012; Robbins et al. 2011), and infectious diseases (Hashiba et al. 2001; Ivacik et al. 2015; Bunnell and Morgan 1998), and disorders of the cardiovascular system (Stewart et al. 2006; Sundararaman et al. 2011; Vinge et al. 2008).

The quest for a viable vehicle for drug and gene delivery that possesses the entire set of characteristics necessary for therapeutic applications has recently received a lot of attention. During the early stages of development, gene transfer studies are focused on restoring gene function and control. Gene transfer is becoming an integral component of development for efficient therapy against many genetic illnesses, thanks to advancements in molecular biology techniques and a better knowledge of the genetic basis of disease. Direct distribution of bare therapeutic genes in vivo, on the other hand, is nearly impossible. The problems include gene vulnerability to nuclease breakdown in the plasma, nonspecificity targeted cells, and negative charge genes' difficulty to penetrate the negatively charged milieu of cellular membranes. Only six gene therapies have been approved, despite the fact that over 2500 have been finished or are ongoing clinical trials. Because of the difficulties described above, it is now widely accepted that naked gene transfer, either systemically or locally, is not physically feasible. As a result, developing

vectors of gene delivery systems that are safe and efficient in transferring therapeutic genes into target cells is the most challenging approach for human gene therapy. The viral and nonviral vector systems are the two types of gene transfer vectors that are widely employed.

Viruses have the capacity to efficiently transport their genes into host cells as infectious particles that are naturally evolved vectors. Because of these features, viruses are well-suited to the development of virus-based gene carriers. Virus vectors are now used in about 67 percent of gene therapy clinical studies. Adenovirus, retrovirus, vaccinia virus, adeno-associated virus, lentivirus, and herpes simplex virus are used by the majority of them (Giacca and Zacchigna 2012). The essential properties of viral genes include high levels of transfection effectiveness and fast transcription of the packaged gene, which are benefits of viral vectors in gene delivery systems. However, these benefits are frequently accompanied by significant drawbacks, limiting their clinical use. Unwanted immune responses, possible carcinogenic consequences, deadly inflammatory reactions, mutagenesis, poor target selectivity, and size limits on DNA cargo are among the most prevalent flaws of viral-based vectors (Bennett 2003; Check 2005; Hacein-Bey-Abina et al. 2003; Raper et al. 2003; Thomas et al. 2003).

Concerns about toxicity, immunogenicity, inflammatory potential, reduced carrying capacity for genetic material (the highest nucleic acid size is 34,000 bp, which makes gene editing difficult), viral vector cell selectivity, and complex industrial manufacturing have all been raised. The difficulties with viral vectors have accelerated the search for nonviral vectors as an alternative to viral vectors for gene delivery, such as delivery of gene silencing molecules (Needham et al. 2012; Pack et al. 2005).

Nonviral-based delivery systems, which were briefly discussed in Sect. 3.4.2.4, have a better safety profile because they are less immunogenic, don't have the risk of insertional mutagenesis, and can hold more nucleic acids. They are also more cost-effective and safe to manufacture. Attaching the required chemical sequences to the polymer can help increase the cell specificity of vectors. The abilities to form nanoparticles when combined with a nucleic acid, protect the nucleic acid from nuclease action, promote target cell endocytosis, escape from endosomes and lysosomes with ease, dispense the nucleic acid at the action site, and have low toxicity and a low cost of production are all characteristics of an ideal nonviral nucleic acid delivery agent.

Nonviral vectors may be divided into two groups, i.e., cationic lipids (liposomes and lipoplexes) and polymers (polyplexes). Cationic polymers have been extensively studied as gene delivery methods, with the most notable characteristics being their intrinsic ability to offer infinite gene packing capacities and the ability to undergo significant changes. Because of its high transfection effectiveness and robust gene complexation, polyethylenimine (PEI) is the most researched cationic polymer for gene delivery. However, due to a significant toxicity concern, its use in clinical studies is restricted. To solve the toxicity issue, chitosan-based carriers have gained popularity as a safe delivery mechanism for gene materials such as plasmid DNA (pDNA), oligonucleotide, and RNA. Compared to other cationic polymers,

chitosan is easy to form complex with negatively charged genes due to the presence of amine groups and a strong positive charge, as well as outstanding characteristics such as low toxicity, high compatibility, and low immunogenicity.

To increase the efficiency of the gene delivery method in practice, chitosan as a vehicle for carrying genetic material must be changed. To enhance the features of chitosan linked to gene transport, certain characteristics must be considered, such as molecular size, production of chitosan derivatives, degree of deacetylation, N/P ratio, and toxicity. The chitosan molecular weight is a key parameter that influences the size, stability, cellular absorption, and dissociation of the chitosan/DNA complex, impacting the polyplex's transfection effectiveness (MacLaughlin et al. 1998; Sato et al. 2001). Chitosan has a high water solubility in an acidic environment (pH 6.5) because its amino groups are protonated and become positively charged. Because of the hydrophobic effect of the chitosan backbone and the strong intermolecular hydrogen bonding generated by the –OH and $–NH_2$ groups, it becomes less soluble under neutral and alkaline pH settings. Reducing chitosan's molecular weight is the most effective way to enhance its water solubility in a neutral environment (Fu and Xiao 2017). By further hydrolyzing chitosan, smaller molecular weight derivatives of chitosan may be produced, which are thought to be more active than chitosan (Prasertsung et al. 2012). The usage of unmodified chitosan is limited due to its poor solubility under physiological circumstances, despite its attractive qualities as an efficient gene carrier. As a result, the development of chitosan derivatives with increased solubility for gene delivery has been thoroughly investigated and described in many publications (Chuan et al. 2019; Jiang et al. 2018; Layek and Singh 2017). The hydrophilic alteration of chitosan is reported as a covalent modification (Kritchenkov et al. 2017). The hydrophilic alteration of chitosan is reported as a covalent modification (Kritchenkov et al. 2017).

The positive charge and solubility of chitosan, gene binding ability to matrix, cellular absorption, and transfection effectiveness are all determined by the degree of deacetylation (DD) (Alameh et al. 2017; Yang et al. 2017). The more DD in a chitosan molecule, the more primary amines it contains. It entails a higher positive charge and a greater potential for gene complexation. According to one study, chitosan DD must be higher than 65 percent in order to form a stable combination with pDNA. Because siRNA has a strong negative charge, a higher DD (>80%) of chitosan is required to complex it and generate stable nanoparticles (Köping-Höggrd et al. 2001). Malmo et al. (2012) discovered that completely deacetylated chitosan was more effective than partially deacetylated chitosan in gene silencing, because completely deacetylated chitosan contained more amine groups (higher positive charge) and a greater decomplexing number in endosomal/lysosomal compartments.

The N/P ratio is the ratio of chitosan nitrogen (N) to gene phosphate (P). It calculates the net surface charge of polyplexes by combining the gene's molar stoichiometry with that of chitosan. The N/P ratio is a critical component that influences the stability of DNA complexes, their interaction with cells, and transfection effectiveness. A higher N/P ratio indicates more chitosan in the complex, which improves the polyplex's stability and, as a result, the contact with cells, resulting in

improved transfection efficiency. However, because the genetic material is bound too tightly to the matrix (too high stability), a complex with a very high N/P ratio may limit the capacity to release the gene from the complex, lowering transfection efficiency. An extremely low N/P ratio, on the other hand, will result in neutral or negatively charged complexes that will cluster owing to the lack of interparticle repulsive interactions, yielding poor transfection efficiency. At a nitrogen to phosphate ratio of 3:5, chitosan may effectively facilitate in vitro gene transfer. DNA-chitosan complexes with a positive surface charge of about +30 mV may be produced at this ratio with a size of 50 to 100 nm (Tiyaboonchai 2003). Various studies have found that in vivo observation using chitosan nanoparticles with a N/P ratio of >25 and a DD of 80–85% revealed a variety of issues, including blood incompatibility, poor gene release dosage, and nonspecific effects due to significant quantities of free excess cationic chitosan (Alameh et al. 2017; Malmo et al. 2012; Nielsen et al. 2010).

Bowman and Leong (2007) demonstrate the potential of chitosan nanoparticles as components with good gene delivery performance. Using the ionotropic gelation technique, Alonso et al. (2005) create chitosan nanoparticles carrying plasmid DNA. Nanoparticles have a high potential for macromolecular interaction and are a viable method for delivering pDNA transmucosally. In vitro, Kim et al. (2006) demonstrate that chitosan manosylate nanoparticles have high potential for gene delivery methods. Antiangiogenesis, apoptosis, and cell cycle induction are all activities of the chitosan manosylate/plasmic complex encoding murine IL-12, which can suppress tumor development. Lu et al. (2011) produce hybrid hyaluronic acid (HA)/chitosan (CS) nanoparticles that can deliver exogenous genes into primary chondrocytes for the treatment of osteoarthritis.

Zhou et al. (2018) show that a nonviral gene delivery method based on hyaluronic acid-chitosan (HA/CS) may be used to produce the cytokine response modifier (CrmA) gene. This system offers 3 weeks of plasmid DNA release and aids in increasing CrmA levels to high levels in a short length of time. In a mouse model of osteoarthritis, suppression of interleukin (IL)-1 in synovial tissue by HA/CS-CrmA nanoparticles reduces cartilage degradation and synovial inflammation. By suppressing IL-1 production in the synovium, HA/CS-CrmA nanoparticles may be controlled to give local distribution in the joint area, preventing osteoarthritis development.

3.4.4 Antimicrobial Material

Chitosan has been known as biomaterial with antimicrobial activity against large number of microorganisms including bacteria (Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria), yeast, fungi, and also microalgae that are potential for the use in biomedical, cosmetics, food, and agricultural fields. Application of chitosan for antimicrobial can be presented as original or its derivatives form (COS, N-acyl chitosan, quaternized chitosan, etc.) in various physical form of solution, films, beads, fibers, membranes, hydrogel, and composites (Atay 2019). The antimicrobial activities are

related to the intrinsic (molecular weight, degree of deacetylation, concentration, etc.) and extrinsic factors such as pH, temperature, reactive time, and type of microorganisms (Divya et al. 2017; Shih et al. 2019). However, the antimicrobial activities of COS are not determined by their molecular weights, but depend on the type of the microorganism tested (El-Sayed et al. 2017).

Mechanism of antimicrobial activity of chitosan has not been well understood. However, there are several hypotheses related to the mechanism of chitosan antimicrobial action which can be classified based on nature and function of chitosan, as follows:

- Chitosan's polycationic nature: The antimicrobial action is due to the interaction between amino group in chitosan with positive charge and surface bacterial molecules with negative charge causing release of intracellular constituents; the binding makes the charge of bacterial surface to be reverse or neutral (Jeon et al. 2014; Kravanja et al. 2019).
- Binding of chitosan to DNA's bacteria (mRNA inhibition): The binding causes inhibition of mRNA and therefore synthesis of protein; the low molecular weight chitosan ($\leq$ 50 kDa) and nanochitosan may get through the cell wall of bacteria and inhibit the transcription of DNA (Divya et al. 2017; Kravanja et al. 2019).
- Agent of chelation (nutrients and certain important metals): Chitosan binds certain metals and hence inhibits the growth of microbes and toxin production. Antimicrobial activity of chitosan is occurred in an acidic medium (<6.5) when it is as a cationic polymer (Divya et al. 2017; Kravanja et al. 2019; Shih et al. 2019).
- Blocking agent: Chitosan layer covers the outer membrane of bacteria and avoids bacterial cells from obtaining nutrient from the environment. It also inhibits the growth of aerobic bacteria by blocking the oxygen pathway (Kravanja et al. 2019).

Chitosan with large amount of amino groups is potential for antimicrobial agent. The increase of free amino groups enhances the antimicrobial activity. Thus, chitosan with higher degree of deacetylation exhibits a higher activity compared to chitosan molecule with a lower DD. The inhibitory effect of chitosan varies between Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria. The mechanism of activity is relatively complicated. Gram-negative bacteria have hydrophilic outer membranes with lipopolysaccharide content to protect the bacteria from the environment and filter out hydrophobic toxins. Gram-positive bacteria have a thick layer of peptidoglycan and teichoic acid which function as outer membranes and act as scaffolds for membrane-bound enzymes which are essential for cell wall growth and degradation (Swoboda et al. 2010; Shih et al. 2019).

Antibacterial effect of chitosan is investigated for both Gram-negative and Gram-positive pathogenic bacteria, such as *Salmonella paratyphi* and *Staphylococcus aureus*. It is predicted that chitosan positively charged interacts with negatively charged components of bacterial cell walls and membranes disrupting metabolism of normal cell (Islam et al. 1970; Escárega-Galaz et al. 2017). Many studies also exhibit that antimicrobial effect of chitosan targets cell surface, indicating that

chitosan is a good option for antifungal therapy (Shih et al. 2019). The activity of chitosan against pathogenic fungus has been investigated either in the form of solution, film, gel, or composite of natural chitosan, nanochitosan, COS, or chitosan derivatives, including the fungi *Aspergillus flavus* (de Oliveira Pedro et al. 2013; Fawzya et al. 2019), *Trichophyton rubrum* (Mei et al. 2015), and *Candida albicans* (Peña et al. 2013; Pu et al. 2014; Shih et al. 2019).

3.5 Conclusion

Chitin, chitosan, and their derivatives, particularly COS, have been explored by scientists from countries all around the world to reveal the various benefits of their uses, especially for medicinal purposes. Modification of chitosan chemically, physically, and enzymatically has produced derivatives with better physical, chemical, and pharmaceutical properties so that it can expand their uses. Thus, the emergence of more complex types of diseases from time to time must be balanced with the development of more advanced medical and pharmaceutical sciences in order to produce drugs or medicines for therapeutic purposes that are more potent, more targeted, and faster in healing. Based on the existing studies, chitosan has demonstrated an opportunity to contribute to drug and medicinal developments.

It is estimated that the global demand for chitin and chitosan to support the production of several types of drugs for various diseases in the future will increase in line with the projection that the demand for chitosan in the global market will also increase as previously discussed. Chitosan and COS are mostly processed from the shells of crustacean including crabs, lobsters, crayfish, shrimps, krill, woodlice, and barnacles. The market of crustacean can be segmented into shrimps, prawns, lobsters, crabs, and others. The total catch of shrimp, lobster, and crab shows an increasing trend and is estimated at more than 800 thousand tons in 2016, while the total production of crustaceans from aquaculture is around 7862 thousand tons in 2016 (FAO 2018). The crustacean processing industry is generally scattered, so the collection of crustacean shells is a challenge that must be handled properly for the sustainability of the chitosan processing industry. Meanwhile, the available source of crustacean shells as raw material must be ensured to meet the quantity and quality requirements for sustainable chitosan production. In addition, chitin and chitosan production technologies that are more environmentally friendly must be continuously developed, especially in relation to the use of chemicals during processing.

Authorship Contribution Statement Yusro Nuri Fawzya and Hari Eko Irianto are the main contributors in generating the idea and outline as well as preparing the draft of manuscript, while Pujoyuwono Martosuyono is as a supporting contributor. All authors read and approved the final manuscript.

Conflict of Interests The authors declare that there is no conflict of interests regarding the publication of this article.

References

Abdeltwab W et al (2019) Antimicrobial effect of chitosan and nano-chitosan against some pathogens and spoilage microorganisms. J Adv Lab Res Biol 10(1):8–15

Adair JE, Beard BC, Trobridge GD, Neff T, Rockhill JK, Silbergeld DL, Mrugala MM, Kiem HP (2012) Extended survival of glioblastoma patients after chemoprotective HSC gene therapy. Sci Transl Med 4:133ra57

Agnihotri SA, Mallikarjuna NN, Aminabhavi TM (2004) Recent advances on chitosan-based micro and nanoparticles in drug delivery. J Controll Release 100:5–28. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jconrel.2004.08.010

Aguilar, A. et al. (2019) Biodental engineering V. Biodental Engineering. 1–17. https://doi.org/10.1201/9780429265297

Akila RM (2014) Fermentative production of fungal Chitosan, a versatile biopolymer (perspectives and its applications). Adv Appl Sci Res 5(4):157–170

Alameh M, Lavertu M, Tran-Khanh N, Chang CY, Lesage F, Bail M, Darras V, Chevrier A, Buschmann MD (2017) SiRNA delivery with chitosan: influence of chitosan molecular weight, degree of deacetylation, and amine to phosphate ratio on in vitro silencing efficiency, Hemocompatibility, biodistribution, and in vivo efficacy. Biomacromolecules 19(1):112–131. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.biomac.7b01297

Aliasghari A et al (2016) Evaluation of antibacterial efficiency of chitosan and chitosan nanoparticles on cariogenic streptococci: an in vitro study. Iran J Microbiol 8(2):93–100. https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.3342597

Allied Market Research (2020) Chitosan market by source (shrimp, squid, crab, krill, and others) and application (water treatment, biomedical & pharmaceutical, cosmetics, food & beverage, and others): global opportunity analysis and industry forecast, 2020–2027. https://www.alliedmarketresearch.com/chitosan-market. Accessed 17 Aug 2020

Alonso MJ, Csaba N, Sande MA, Sanches A, Lopez CR (2005) Nanoencapsulation of macromolecules. Proceeding of the 15th International Symposium on Microencapsulation, Parma, Italy, 18–21, pp. 451–452

Al-Remawi MMA (2012) Properties of chitosan nanoparticles formed using sulfate anions as crosslinking bridges. Am J Appl Sci 9(7):1091–1100

Alvarez FJ (2014) The effect of chitin size, shape, source and purification method on immune recognition. Molecules 19(4):4433–4451. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules19044433

Antonino RSCMDQ et al (2017) Preparation and characterization of chitosan obtained from shells of shrimp (Litopenaeus vannamei Boone). Mar Drugs 15(5):1–12. https://doi.org/10.3390/md15050141

Arbia W, Arbia L, Adour L, Amrane A (2013) Chitin extraction from crustacean shells using biological methods. Food Technol Biotechnol 51(1):12–25

Atay HY (2019) Antibacterial activity of chitosan-based systems. In: Jana S, Jana S (eds) Functional chitosan. Springer, Singapore, pp 457–489. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-0263-7_15

Baxter S, Zivanovic S, Weiss J (2005) Molecular weight and degree of acetylation of high-intensity ultrasonicated chitosan. Food Hydrocoll 19(5):821–830. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodhyd.2004.11.002

Bennett J (2003) Immune response following intraocular delivery of recombinant viral vectors. Gene Ther 10:977–982

Bernkop-Schnürch AB, Dünnhaupt S (2012) Chitosan-based drug delivery systems. Eur J Pharm Biophar 81(3):463–469. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejpb.2012.04.007

Bissaro B et al (2017) Oxidative cleavage of polysaccharides by monocopper enzymes depends on H_2O_2. Nat Chem Biol 13(10):1123–1128. https://doi.org/10.1038/nchembio.2470

Blanco A, García-Abuín A, Gómez-Díaz D, Navaza JM (2013) Physicochemical characterization of chitosan derivatives. J Food 11(2):190–197. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2010.11.148

Bowman K, Leong KW (2007) Chitosan nanoparticles for oral drug and gene delivery. Int J Nanomedicine 1(2):117–128. https://doi.org/10.2147/nano.2006.1.2.117

Brasselet C, Pierre G, Dubessay P, Dols-Lafargue M, Coulon J, Maupeu J, Vallet-Courbin A, de Baynast H, Doco T, Michaud P, Delattre C (2019) Modification of chitosan for the generation of functional derivatives. Appl Sci 9:1321. https://doi.org/10.3390/app9071321

Bunnell BA, Morgan RA (1998) Gene therapy for infectious diseases. Clin Microbiol Rev 11:42–56

Cabrera JC, Van Cutsem P (2005) Preparation of chitooligosaccharides with degree of polymerization higher than 6 by acid or enzymatic degradation of chitosan. Biochem Eng J 25(2):165–172. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bej.2005.04.025

Cai Q et al (2011) Kinetic study of chitosan degradation by an electrochemical process. Polym Bull 67(4):571–582. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00289-010-0398-3

Cao Y, Tan YF, Wong YS, Liew MWJ, Venkatraman S (2019) Recent advances in chitosan-based carriers for gene delivery. Drugs 17:381. https://doi.org/10.3390/md17060381

Cartier N, Domard A (1989) Glucosamine oligomers. J Biol Macromol 11:297–302

Chakraborty SP, Pramanik P, Roy S (2012) A review on emergence of antibiotic resistant Staphylococcus aureus and role of chitosan nanoparticle in drug delivery. Int J Life Sci Pharma Res 2 (1):96–115. https://www.ijlpr.com/admin/php/uploads/49_pdf.pdf

Chang KLB, Tai MC, Cheng FH (2001) Kinetics and products of the degradation of chitosan by hydrogen peroxide. J Agric Food Chem 49(10):4845–4851. https://doi.org/10.1021/jf001469g

Chang KL, Higuchi Y, Kawakami S, Yamashita F, Hashida M (2010) Efficient gene transfection by histidine-modified chitosan through enhancement of endosomal escape. Bioconjug Chem 21:1087–1095

Chatelet C, Damour O, Domard A (2001) Influence of the degree of acetylation on some biological properties of chitosan films. Biomaterials 22(3):261–268. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0142-9612(00)00183-6

Chawla SP, Kanatt SR, Sharma AK (2014) Chitosan. In: Polysaccharides. Springer International Publishing Switzerland, Mumbai, pp 1–24. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-03751-6_13-1

Check E (2005) Gene therapy put on hold as third child develops cancer. Nature 433:561

Chen Y, Chan P, Benson HAE (2007) Formulation development of chitosan-based nanoparticles for delivery of a hydrophilic hexapeptide. Proceeding of the 4th International Peptide Symposium in Conjuction with the 7th Australian Peptide Conference and the 2nd Asia-Pacific International Peptide Symposium (Ed. Wilce J). Australian Peptide Association, pp. 1–2

Chi FH, Cheng WP (2006) Use of chitosan as coagulant to treat wastewater from milk processing plant. J Polym Environ 14(4):411–417. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10924-006-0027-2

Choi W-S, Ahn K-J, Lee D-W, Byun M-W, Park H-J (2002) Preparation of chitosan oligomers by irradiation. Polym Degrad Stab 78:533–538. pii: S0141-3910(02)00226-4

Chuan D, Jin T, Fan R, Zhou L, Guo G (2019) Chitosan for gene delivery: methods for improvement and applications. Adv Colloid Interf Sci 268:25–38

de Oliveira Pedro R et al (2013) Synthesis, characterization and antifungal activity of quaternary derivatives of chitosan on Aspergillus flavus. Microbiol Res 168(1):50–55. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.micres.2012.06.006

Dima JB, Sequeiros C, Zaritzky N (2017) Chitosan from marine crustaceans: production, characterization and applications. In: Shalaby E (ed) Biological activities and application of marine polysaccharides. IntechOpen, London. https://doi.org/10.5772/65258

Divya K et al (2017) Antimicrobial properties of chitosan nanoparticles: mode of action and factors affecting activity. Fibers Polym 18(2):221–230. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12221-017-6690-1

Ebrahimzadeh MA, Chabra A, Gharaei E, Pourmorad F (2013) Preparation of chitosan from Penicillium spp. and determination of their degree of deacetylation. Indian J Biotechnol 12 (2):231–235. http://rps.mui.ac.ir/index.php/jrps/article/view/704

Elgadir MA et al (2015) 'Impact of chitosan composites and chitosan nanoparticle composites on various drug delivery systems: a review. J Food Drug Anal 23(4):619–629. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jfda.2014.10.008

El-Sayed ST et al (2017) Characterization and potential antimicrobial effect of novel chitooligosaccharides against pathogenic microorganisms. J Appl Pharmac Sci 7(6):006–012. https://doi.org/10.7324/JAPS.2017.70602

Emmawati A, Laksmi BS, Fawzya YN (2007) Kombinasi perendaman dalam NaOH dan aplikasi kitin deasetilase terhadap kitin kulit udang untuk menghasilkan kitosan dengan berat molekul rendah (Combination of soaking in NaOH solution and application of chitin deacetylase to produce low molecular weight). J Teknologi Pertanian 1(3):12–18

Escárega-Galaz AA et al. (2017) Antimicrobial activity of chitosan membranes against Staphylococcus Aureus of clinical origin. The rise of virulence and antibiotic resistance in Staphylococcus aureus. https://doi.org/10.5772/65980

Fan W et al (2012) Formation mechanism of monodisperse, low molecular weight chitosan nanoparticles by ionic gelation technique. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 90(1):21–27. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.colsurfb.2011.09.042

FAO (2018) The state of world fisheries and aquaculture 2018 - meeting the sustainable development goals. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome

Fawzya YN, Rahmawati A, Patantis G (2018) Physicochemical properties of chitooligosaccharide prepared by using chitosanase from Stenotrophomonas maltophilia KPU 2123. IOP Conf Ser Earth Environ Sci 139(1). https://doi.org/10.1088/1755-1315/139/1/012045

Fawzya YN et al (2019) Antifungal activity of chitosan oligomer prepared using chitosanase of Aeromonas media KLU 11.16. IOP Conf Ser Earth Environ Sci 278(1). https://doi.org/10.1088/1755-1315/278/1/012026

Firdous K, Chakraborty S (2017) A review: naturally available sources of chitosan and analysis of chitosan derivatives for its antimicrobial activity. Int J Rec Scient Res 8(3):15773–15776. https://doi.org/10.24327/ijrsr.2017.0803.0003

Fu Y, Xiao C (2017) A facile physical approach to make chitosan soluble in acid-free water. Int J Biol Macromol 103:575–580. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2017.05.066

Galed G et al (2008) Influence of N-deacetylation conditions on chitosan production from α-chitin. Nat Prod Commun 3(4):543–550. https://doi.org/10.1177/1934578x0800300414

Gan D et al (2018) Chitosan/biphasic calcium phosphate scaffolds functionalized with BMP-2-encapsulated nanoparticles and RGD for bone regeneration. J Biomed Mater Res Part A 106 (10):2613–2624. https://doi.org/10.1002/jbm.a.36453

Garg U, Chauhan S, Nagaich U, Jain N (2019) Current advances in chitosan nanoparticles based drug delivery and targeting. Adv Pharm Bull 9(2):195–204. https://doi.org/10.15171/apb.2019.023

Giacca M, Zacchigna S (2012) Virus-mediated gene delivery for human gene therapy. J Control Release 161:377–388

Global Market Insights (2018) Chitosan market size by source (shrimps, prawns, crabs, lobsters), by end-user (water treatment, cosmetic & toiletries, food & beverage, healthcare/medical, agrochemical, biotechnology), industry analysis report, regional outlook, application growth potential, price trends, competitive market share & forecast, 2018–2024. https://www.gminsights.com/industry-analysis/chitosan-market. Accessed 17 Aug 2020

Gokila S et al (2018) Development of 3D scaffolds using nanochitosan/silk-fibroin/hyaluronic acid biomaterials for tissue engineering applications. Int J Biol Macromol 120:876–885. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2018.08.149

Gopal GRY, Nandakumar KSLC (2015) Chitosan nanoparticles for generating novel systems for better applications: a review. J Mol Gen Med s4:005. https://doi.org/10.4172/1747-0862.s4-005

Gordon S, Saupe A, McBurney W, Rades T, Hook S (2008) Comparison of chitosan nanoparticles and chitosan hydrogels for vaccine delivery. J Pharm Pharmacol 60(12):1591–1600. https://doi.org/10.1211/jpp/60.12.0004

Gortari MC, Hours RA (2013) Biotechnological processes for chitin recovery out of crustacean waste: a mini-review. Electron J Biotechnol 16(3). https://doi.org/10.2225/vol16-issue3-fulltext-10

Goy RC, de Britto D, Assis OBG (2009) A review of the antimicrobial activity of chitosan. Polím Ciên Tecnol 19(3):241–247. https://doi.org/10.1590/S0104-14282009000300013
Grenha A, Seijo B, Remunan-Lopez C (2005) Microencapsulated chitosan nanoparticles for lung protein delivery. Eur J Pharmac Sci 25:427–437. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejps.2005.04.009
Grifoll-Romero L et al (2018) Chitin deacetylases: structures, specificities, and biotech applications. Polymers 10(4):1–29. https://doi.org/10.3390/polym10040352
Gu Z et al (2013) Electrochemical degradation of chitosan using Ti/Sb-SnO2 electrode. J Polym Environ 21(2):479–486. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10924-012-0532-4
Gu LS et al (2019) Chitosan-based extrafibrillar demineralization for dentin bonding. J Dent Res 98 (2):186–193. https://doi.org/10.1177/0022034518805419
Guimarães MF et al (2020) 'Chemical and physical properties of nanocrystalline chitosan by the method: modified nanochitosan complex and process of obtaining modified nanochitosan. Carbohyd Res 493:108035. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carres.2020.108035
Guo X et al (2018) Effects of chitosan oligosaccharides on human blood components. Front Pharmacol 9(December):1–10. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2018.01412
Hacein-Bey-Abina S, Von Kalle C, Schmidt M, Le Deist F, Wulffraat N, Mcintyre E, Radford I, Villeval JL, Fraser CC, Cavazzana-Calvo M, Fischer A (2003) A serious adverse event after successful gene therapy for X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency. N Engl J Med 348:255–256
Hai NTT et al (2019) 'Preparation of Chitooligosaccharide by hydrogen peroxide degradation of chitosan and its effect on soybean seed germination. J Polym Environ:2098–2104. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10924-019-01479-y
Hamman JH (2010) Chitosan based polyelectrolyte complexes as potential carrier materials in drug delivery systems. Mar Drugs 8:1305–1322. https://doi.org/10.3390/md8041305
Hamre AG et al (2015) Activation of enzymatic chitin degradation by a lytic polysaccharide monooxygenase. Carbohyd Res 407:166–169. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carres.2015.02.010
Hashiba T, Suzuki M, Nagashima Y, Suzuki S, Inoue S, Tsuburai T, Matsuse T, Ishigatubo Y (2001) Adenovirus-mediated transfer of heme oxygenase-1 cDNA attenuates severe lung injury induced by the influenza virus in mice. Gene Ther 8:1499–1507
Hembram KC et al (2014) Advances in preparation and characterization of chitosan nanoparticles for therapeutics. Artif Cells Nanomed Biotechnol 44(1):305–314. https://doi.org/10.3109/21691401.2014.948548
Hirano T, Shiraishi H, Ikejima M, Uehara R, Hakamata W, Nishio T (2017) Chitin oligosaccharide deacetylase from *Shewanella baltica* ATCC BAA-1091. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 81:547–550. https://doi.org/10.1080/09168451.2016.1254529
Huang M, Fong CW, Khor E, Lim LY (2005) Transfection efficiency of chitosan vectors: effect of polymer molecular weight and degree of deacetylation. J Control Release 106:391–406
Huang Y et al (2013) Degradation of chitosan by hydrodynamic cavitation. Polym Degrad Stab 98 (1):37–43. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.polymdegradstab.2012.11.001
Ibrahim KA et al (2016) Preparation of chito-oligomers by hydrolysis of chitosan in the presence of zeolite as adsorbent. Mar Drugs 14(8):1–13. https://doi.org/10.3390/md14080043
Irianto HE, Muljanah HE (2011) Proses dan aplikasi nanopartikel kitosan sebagai penghantar obat. Squalen 6(1):1–8. https://doi.org/10.15578/squalene.v6i1.55
Islam MM, Masum SM, Mahbub KR (1970) In vitro antibacterial activity of shrimp chitosan against Salmonella paratyphi and Staphylococcus aureus. J Bangladesh Chem Soc 24 (2):185–190. https://doi.org/10.3329/jbcs.v24i2.9707
Islam N, Dmour I, Taha MO (2019) Degradability of chitosan micro/nanoparticles for pulmonary drug delivery. *Heliyon* 5:e01684. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bioactmat.2020.01.012
Islam MM et al (2020) Chitosan based bioactive materials in tissue engineering applications-A review. Bioactive Mater 5(1):164–183. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bioactmat.2020.01.012
Ivacik D, Ely A, Ferry N, Arbuthnot P (2015) Sustained inhibition of hepatitis B virus replication in vivo using RNAi-activating lentiviruses. Gene Ther 22:163–171

Jampafuang Y, Tongta A, Waiprib Y (2019) Impact of crystalline structural differences between α- and β-chitosan on their nanoparticle formation'. Polymers 11(2010):1–16

Jang MK et al (2004) 'Physicochemical characterization of α-chitin, β-chitin, and γ-chitin separated from natural resources. J Polym Sci Part A Polym Chem 42(14):3423–3432. https://doi.org/10.1002/pola.20176

Jaworska MM (2012) Kinetics of enzymatic deacetylation of chitosan. Cellulose 19(2):363–369. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10570-012-9650-3

Jeon SJ et al (2014) Underlying mechanism of antimicrobial activity of chitosan microparticles and implications for the treatment of infectious diseases. PLoS One 9(3). https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0092723

Jiang H-L, Xing L, Luo C-Q, Zhou T-J, Li H-S, Cho C-S (2018) Chemical modification of chitosan as a gene transporter. Curr Org Chem 22:668–689

Jo YY et al (2003) Characterization of endochitosanases-producing Bacillus cereus P16. J Microbiol Biotechnol 13(6):960–968

Jung W, Park R (2014) Bioproduction of chitooligosaccharides: present and perspective. Mar Drugs:5328–5356. https://doi.org/10.3390/md12105328

Jung J, Zhao Y (2013) Impact of the structural differences between α- and β-chitosan on their depolymerizing reaction and antibacterial activity. J Agric Food Chem 61(37):8783–8789. https://doi.org/10.1021/jf4018965

Kasaai MR, Arul J, Charlet G (2008) Fragmentation of chitosan by ultrasonic irradiation. Ultrason Sonochem 15(6):1001–1008. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ultsonch.2008.04.005

Kim SK, Rajapakse N (2005) Enzymatic production and biological activities of chitosan oligosaccharides (COS): a review. Carbohydr Polym 62:357–368. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carbpol.2005.08.012

Kim TH, Jin H, Kim HW, Cho MH, Cho CS (2006) Mannosylated chitosan nanoparticle-based cytokine gene therapy suppressed cancer growth in BAB/c mice bearing CT-26 carcinoma cells. Mol Cancer Ther 5(7):1723–1732. https://doi.org/10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-05-0540

Koping-Hoggard M, Tubulekas I, Guan H, Edwards K, Nilsson M, Varum KM, Artursson P (2001) Chitosan as a nonviral gene delivery system. Structure-property relationships and characteristics compared with polyethylenimine in vitro and after lung administration in vivo. Gene Ther 8:1108–1121

Kravanja G et al (2019) Chitosan-based (Nano)materials for novel biomedical applications. Molecules 24(10):1–23. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules24101960

Krishnaveni B, Ragunathan R (2015) Extraction and characterization of chitin and chitosan from *Aspergillus terreus sps,* synthesis of their bionanocomposites and study of their productive applications. J Chem Pharmac Res 7(2):115–132. https://doi.org/10.24297/jbt.v6i3.6598

Kritchenkov AS, AndranovitsĬ S, Skorik YA (2017) Chitosan and its derivatives: vectors in gene therapy. Russ Chem Rev 86(3):231–239. https://doi.org/10.1070/RCR4636

Lan Levengood S, Zhang M (2015) Chitosan-based scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. J Mater Chem B Mater Biol Med 2(21):3161–3184. https://doi.org/10.1039/C4TB00027G.Chitosan-based

Laokuldilok T et al (2017) 'Physicochemical, antioxidant, and antimicrobial properties of chitooligosaccharides produced using three different enzyme treatments', *food bioscience*. Elsevier Ltd 18:28–33. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fbio.2017.03.004

Layek B, Singh J (2017) 8—Chitosan for DNA and gene therapy. In: Jennings JA, Bumgardner JD (eds) Chitosan based biomaterials, vol 2. Woodhead Publishing, Cambridge, pp 209–244

Lee H-W, Choi J-H, Han D-P, Par M-J, Lee N-W, Yi D-H (1996) Purification and characteristics of chitosanase from Bacillus sp. HW-002. J Microbiol Biotechnol:19–25

Lee MK, Chun SK, Choi WJ, Kim JK, Choi SH, Kim A, Oungbho K, Park JS, Ahn WS, Kim CK (2005) The use of chitosan as a condensing agent to enhance emulsion-mediated gene transfer. Biomaterials 26:2147–2156

Li J et al (2018) Chitosan-based nanomaterials for drug delivery. Molecules 23(10):1–26. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules23102661

Liang S, Sun Y, Dai X (2018) A review of the preparation, analysis and biological functions of chitooligosaccharide. Int J Mol Sci 19(8). https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms19082197

Lin SB, Lin YC, Chen HH (2009) 'Low molecular weight chitosan prepared with the aid of cellulase, lysozyme and chitinase: characterisation and antibacterial activity. Food Chem 116 (1):47–53. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2009.02.002

Lin YH, Lin JH, Hong YS (2017) Development of chitosan/poly-γ-glutamic acid/pluronic/curcumin nanoparticles in chitosan dressings for wound regeneration. J Biomed Mater Res Part B Appl Biomater 105(1):81–90. https://doi.org/10.1002/jbm.b.33394

Liu J et al (2020) Enhanced dual network hydrogels consisting of thiolated chitosan and silk fibroin for cartilage tissue engineering. Carbohyd Polym 227:115335. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carbpol.2019.115335

Lodhi G et al (2014) Chitooligosaccharide and its derivatives: preparation and biological applications. BioMed Res Int. https://doi.org/10.1155/2014/654913

Loose JSM et al (2014) A rapid quantitative activity assay shows that the Vibrio cholerae colonization factor GbpA is an active lytic polysaccharide monooxygenase. FEBS Lett 588 (18):3435–3440. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.febslet.2014.07.036

Loutfy SA, Elberry MH, Farroh KY, Mohamed HT, Mohamed AA, Mohamed EB, Faraag AHI, Mousa SA (2020) Antiviral activity of chitosan nanoparticles encapsulating curcumin against hepatitis C virus genotype 4a in human hepatoma cell lines. Int J Nanomedicine 15:2699–2715. https://doi.org/10.2147/IJN.S241702

Lu HD, Zhao HQ, Wang K (2011) Novel hyaluronic acid-chitosan nanoparticles as non-viral gene delivery vectors targeting osteoarthritis. Int J Pharm 420(2):358–365. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2011.08.046

MacLaughlin FC, Mumper RJ, Wang J, Tagliaferri JM, Gill I, Hinchcliffe M, Rolland AP (1998) Chitosan and depolymerized chitosan oligomers as condensing carriers for in vivo plasmid delivery. J Control Release 56:259–272

Madihally SV, Matthew HWT (1999) Porous chitosan scaffolds for tissue engineering. Biomaterials 20(12):1133–1142. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0142-9612(99)00011-3

Majekodunmi SO (2016) Current development of extraction, characterization and evaluation of properties of chitosan and its use in medicine and pharmaceutical industry. Am J Polym Sci 6 (3):86–91. https://doi.org/10.5923/j.ajps.20160603.04

Malmo J, Sørgård H, Vårum KM, Strand SP (2012) siRNA delivery with chitosan nanoparticles: molecular properties favoring efficient gene silencing. J Control Release 158:261–268

Markets and Markets (2018) Chitosan market by grade (industrial, food, and pharmaceutical), application (water treatment, food & beverages, cosmetics, medical & pharmaceuticals, and agrochemicals), and region (Asia Pacific, North America, Europe, Row) - global forecast to 2022. https://www.marketsandmarkets.com/Market-Reports/chitosan-market-202177578.html. Accessed 17 Aug 2020

Marmouzi I et al (2019) Recent updates in pharmacological properties of chitooligosaccharides. BioMed Res Int. https://doi.org/10.1155/2019/4568039

Mehrabi M, Montazeri H, Dounighi NM, Rashti A, Ghartavol RV (2018) 'Chitosan-based nanoparticles in mucosal vaccine delivery. Archives of Razi Institute 73(3):165–176. https://doi.org/10.22092/ari.2017.109235.1101

Mei YX et al (2015) Antifungal activity of chitooligosaccharides against the dermatophyte Trichophyton rubrum. Int J Biol Macromol 77:330–335. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2015.03.042

Mengatto LN, Helbling IM, Luna JA (2012) Recent advances in chitosan films for controlled release of drugs. Recent Pat Drug Deliv Formul 6:156–170. https://doi.org/10.2174/187221112800672967

Mohammed MA, Syeda JTM, Wasan KM, Wasan EK (2017) An overview of chitosan nanoparticles and its application in non-parenteral drug delivery. Pharmaceutics 9(4):53. https://doi.org/10.3390/pharmaceutics9040053

Mourya VK, Inamdar NN, Choudhari YM (2011) Chitooligosaccharides: synthesis, characterization and applications. Polym Sci Ser A 53(7):583–612. https://doi.org/10.1134/S0965545X11070066

Mutahir Z et al (2018) Characterization and synergistic action of a tetra-modular lytic polysaccharide monooxygenase from Bacillus cereus. FEBS Lett 592(15):2562–2571. https://doi.org/10.1002/1873-3468.13189

Needham CJ, Williams AK, Chew SA, Kasper FK, Mikos AG (2012) Engineering a polymeric gene delivery vector based on poly(ethylenimine) and hyaluronic acid. Biomacromolecules 13:1429–1437

Nielsen EJ, Nielsen JM, Becker D, Karlas A, Prakash H, Glud SZ, Merrison J, Besenbacher F, Meyer TF, Kjems J (2010) Pulmonary gene silencing in transgenic EGFP mice using aerosolised chitosan/siRNA nanoparticles. Pharm Res 27:2520–2527

Othman N et al (2018) Synthesis and optimization of chitosan nanoparticles loaded with l-ascorbic acid and thymoquinone. Nano 8(11). https://doi.org/10.3390/nano8110920

Pack DW, Hoffman AS, Pun S, Stayton PS (2005) Design and development of polymers for gene delivery. Nat Rev Drug Discov 4:581–593

Pandey AR, Singh US, Momin M, Bhavsar C (2017) Chitosan: application in tissue engineering and skin grafting. J Polym Res 24(8). https://doi.org/10.1007/s10965-017-1286-4

Park JK et al (2011) Effects of the molecular weight and the degree of deacetylation of chitosan oligosaccharides on antitumor activity. Int J Mol Sci 12(1):266–277. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms12010266

Parthiban F, Balasundari S, Gopalakannan A, Rathnakumar K, Felix S (2017) Comparison of the quality of chitin and chitosan from shrimp, crab and squilla waste. Curr World Environ 12 (3):672–679. https://doi.org/10.12944/cwe.12.3.18

Patrulea V, Ostafe V, Borchard, G. dan Jordan, O. (2015) Chitosan as a starting material for wound healing applications. Eur J Pharm Biopharm 97:417–426. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejpb.2015.08.004

Peña A, Sánchez NS, Calahorra M (2013) Effects of chitosan on candida albicans: conditions for its antifungal activity. BioMed Res Int. https://doi.org/10.1155/2013/527549

Peptu C, Humelnicu AC, Rotaru R, Fortuna ME, Patras X, Teodorescu M, Tamba BI, Harabagiu V (2019) Chitosan-based drug delivery systems. In: van den Broek LAM, Boeriu CG (eds) Chitin and chitosan: properties and applications. John Wiley & Sons Ltd., Chichester, pp 259–289. https://doi.org/10.1002/9781119450467.ch11

Pighinelli L (2019) Methods of chitin production a short review. Am J Biomed Sci Res 3 (4):307–314. https://doi.org/10.34297/ajbsr.2019.03.000682

Pires CTGVMT, Vilela JAP, Airoldi C (2014) The effect of chitin alkaline deacetylation at different condition on particle properties. Procedia Chem 9:220–225. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.proche.2014.05.026

Prabaharan M (2014) Chitosan-based nanoparticles for tumor-targeted drug delivery. Int J Biol Macromol 72C:1313–1322. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2014.10.052

Prasertsung I, Damrongsakkul S, Terashima C, Saito N, Takai O (2012) Preparation of low molecular weight chitosan using solution plasma system. Carbohyd Polym 87:2745–2749

Pu Y et al (2014) In vitro damage of Candida albicans biofilms by chitosan. Exp Ther Med 8 (3):929–934. https://doi.org/10.3892/etm.2014.1839

Qi L, Xu Z (2006) In vivo antitumor activity of chitosannanoparticles. Bioorganic Med Chem Lett 16(16):4243–4245. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmcl.2006.05.078

Qi L, Xu Z, Jiang X, Hu C, Zou X (2004) Preparation and antibacterial activity of chitosan nanoparticles. Carbohydr Res 339(16):2693–2700. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carres.2004.09.007

Qi L, Xu Z, Li Y, Jiang X, Han X (2005) In vitro effects of chitosan nanoparticles on proliferation of human gastric carcinoma cell line MGC803 cells. World J Gastroenterol 11(33):5136–5141. https://doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v11.i33.5136

Rad MR, Pourhajibagher M, Rokn AR, Barikani HR, Bahador A (2019) Effect of antimicrobial photodynamic therapy using indocyanine green doped with chitosan nanoparticles on biofilm

formation-related gene expression of Aggregatibacter actinomycetemcomitans. Front Dent 16 (3):187–193. https://doi.org/10.18502/fid.v16i3.1590

Rajalakshmi R, Muzib YI, Aruna U, Vinesha V, Rupangada V, Krishna Moorthy SB (2014) Chitosan nanoparticles - an emerging trend in nanotechnology. Int J Drug Deliv 6:204–229. http://www.arjournals.org/index.php/ijdd/index

Raper SE, Chirmule N, Lee FS, Wivel NA, Bagg A, Gao GP, Wilson JM, Batshaw ML (2003) Fatal systemic inflammatory response syndrome in an ornithine transcarbamylase deficient patient following adenoviral gene transfer. Mol Genet Metab 80:148–158

Robbins PF, Morgan RA, Feldman SA, Yang JC, Sherry RM, Dudley ME, Wunderlich JR, Nahvi AV, Helman LJ, Mackall CL, Kammula US, Hughes MS, Restifo NP, Raffeld M, Lee CC, Levy CL, Li YF, El-Gamil M, Schwarz SL, Laurencot C, Rosenberg SA (2011) Tumor regression in patients with metastatic synovial cell sarcoma and melanoma using genetically engineered lymphocytes reactive with NY-ESO-1. J Clin Oncol 29:917–924

Rodríguez-Vázquez M et al (2015) 'Chitosan and its potential use as a scaffold for tissue engineering in regenerative medicine. BioMed Res Int. https://doi.org/10.1155/2015/821279

Ruiz GAM, Corrales HFZ (2017) Chitosan, chitosan derivatives and their biomedical applications. In: Shalaby EA (ed) Biological activities and application of marine polysaccharides. IntechOpen Limited, London, pp 87–106. https://doi.org/10.5772/66527

Sailaja AK, Amareshwar P, Chakravarty P (2010) Chitosan nanoparticles as a drug delivery system. Res J Pharmac 1(3):474–484. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/230559444_Chitosan_nanoparticles_as_a_drug_delivery_system

Sakthivel D, Vijayakumar N, Anandan V (2015) Extraction of Chitin and Chitosan from Mangrove Crab Sesarma plicatum from Thengaithittu Estuary Pondicherry Southeast Coast of India. Ijppr Human 4(1):12–24. http://ijppr.humanjournals.com/wp-content/uploads/2015/08/2.D.-Sakthivel-N.-Vijayakumar-and-V.-Anandan.pdf

Salamanca AE, Diebold Y, Calonge M, GarciaVazquaz C, Callejo S, Vila A, Alonso MJ (2006) 'Chitosan nanoparticles as a potential drug delivery system for the ocular: toxicity, uptake mechanism and in vivo tolerance. Investig Ophthalmol Vis Sci 47(4):1416–1425. https://doi.org/10.1167/iovs.05-0495

Sánchez A et al (2018) Influence of preparation methods of chitooligosaccharides on their physicochemical properties and their anti-inflammatory effects in mice and in RAW264.7 macrophages. Mar Drugs 16:430. https://doi.org/10.3390/md16110430

Sangeetha V et al (2019) Fabrication of nanochitosan based biocompatible polymer blend for bone tissue engineering applications. Dig J Nanomater Biostruct 14(4):963–972

Sani MG, Bashir UG, Bawa AA (2017) Comparative study of percentage yield and solubility of chitosan extracted from male and female short-horned grasshopper. Bayero J Pure Appl Sci 10 (1):570–574. https://doi.org/10.4314/bajopas.v10i1.107S

Sartika ID, Alamsjah MA, Nasution NE, Sugijanto (2016) Isolasi dan Karakterisasi Kitosan dari Cangkang Rajungan (Portunus pelagicus). Jurnal Biosains Pascasarjana 18:98–112. https://doi.org/10.20473/jbp.v18i2.2016.98-111

Sato T, Ishii T, Okahata Y (2001) In vitro gene delivery mediated by chitosan. Effect of pH, serum, and molecular mass of chitosan on the transfection efficiency. Biomaterials 22:2075–2080

Seki K, Nishiyama Y, Mitsutomi M (2019) Characterization of a novel exo-chitosanase, an exo-chitobiohydrolase, from Gongronella butleri. J Biosci Bioeng 127(4):425–429. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jbiosc.2018.09.009

Shih PY et al (2019) 'A potential antifungal effect of chitosan against candida albicans is mediated via the inhibition of SAGA complex component expression and the subsequent alteration of cell surface integrity. Front Microbiol 10:1–14. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2019.00602

Shu XZ, Zhu KJ (2002) The influence of multivalent phosphate structure on the properties of ionically cross-linked chitosan films for controlled drug release. Eur J Pharm Biopharm 54:235–243

Silva MM, Calado R, Marto J, Bettencourt A, Almeida AJ, Gonçalves LMD (2017) 'Chitosan nanoparticles as a Mucoadhesive drug delivery system for ocular administration. Mar Drugs 15 (12):370. https://doi.org/10.3390/md15120370

Singh A, Benjakul S, Prodpran T (2019) Chitooligosaccharides from squid pen prepared using different enzymes: characteristics and the effect on quality of surimi gel during refrigerated storage. Food Prod Process Nutr:1–10. https://doi.org/10.1186/s43014-019-0005-4

Sona PS (2010) Nanoparticulate drug delivery system for the treatment of diabetes. Dig J Nanomater Biostruct 5(2):411–418

Stewart DJ, Hilton JD, Arnold JM, Gregoire J, Rivard A, Archer SL, Charbonneau F, Cohen E, Curtis M, Buller CE, Mendelsohn FO, Dib N, Page P, Ducas J, Plante S, Sullivan J, Macko J, Rasmussen C, Kessler PD, Rasmussen HS (2006) Angiogenic gene therapy in patients with nonrevascularizable ischemic heart disease: a phase 2 randomized, controlled trial of AdVEGF (121) (AdVEGF121) versus maximum medical treatment. Gene Ther 13:1503–1511

Su ZQ, Zhang HL, Wu S, Tao Y, Zang LQ (2010) Preparation and characterization of water-soluble chitosan nanoparticles as protein delivery system. J Nanomater 2010. https://doi.org/10.1155/2010/898910

Sultankulov B et al (2019) Progress in the development of chitosan-based biomaterials for tissue engineering and regenerative medicine. Biomol Ther 9(9). https://doi.org/10.3390/biom9090470

Sun YS, Chen Z, Yang X, Huang P, Zhou X, Du X (2009) Magnetic chitosan nanoparticles as a drug delivery system for targeting photodynamic therapy. Nanotechnology 20(13):135102. https://doi.org/10.1088/0957-4484/20/13/135102

Sundararaman S, Miller TJ, Pastore JM, Kiedrowski M, Aras R, Penn MS (2011) Plasmid-based transient human stromal cell-derived factor-1 gene transfer improves cardiac function in chronic heart failure. Gene Ther 18:867–873

Sung HW, Sonaje K, Liao ZX, Hsu LW, Chuang EY (2012) pH-responsive nanoparticles shelled with chitosan for oral delivery of insulin: from mechanism to therapeutic applications. Acc Chem Res 45(4):619–629. https://doi.org/10.1021/ar200234q

Swoboda JG et al (2010) Wall teichoic acid functions, biosynthesis and inhibition. Chembiochem 11(1):35–45. https://doi.org/10.1002/cbic.200900557.Wall

Szymańska E, Winnicka K (2015) Stability of chitosan - a challenge for pharmaceutical and biomedical applications. Mar Drugs. https://doi.org/10.3390/md13041819

Thomas CE, Ehrhardt A, Kay MA (2003) Progress and problems with the use of viral vectors for gene therapy. Nat Rev Genet 4:346–358

Tiyaboonchai W (2003) Chitosan nanoparticles: A promising system for drug delivery. Naresuan Univ J 11(3):51–66

Tømmeraas K et al (2001) Preparation and characterisation of oligosaccharides produced by nitrous acid depolymerisation of chitosans. Carbohydr Res 333(2):137–144. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0008-6215(01)00130-6

Tsigos I et al (2000) Chitin deacetylases: new, versatile tools in biotechnology. TibTech 18:305–312

Türk S et al (2018) '3D porous collagen/functionalized multiwalled carbon nanotube/chitosan/hydroxyapatite composite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Mater Sci Eng 92:757–768. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.msec.2018.07.020

Vaaje-Kolstad G et al (2010) An oxidative enzyme boosting the enzymatic conversion of recalcitrant polysaccharides. Science 330(6001):219–222. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1192231

Varun TK et al (2017) Extraction of chitosan and its oligomers from shrimp shell waste, their characterization and antimicrobial effect. Veterinary World 10(2):170–175. https://doi.org/10.14202/vetworld.2017.170-175

Vinge LE, Raake PW, Koch WJ (2008) Gene therapy in heart failure. Circ Res 102:1458–1470

Vishu Kumar AB et al (2004) Low molecular weight chitosans: preparation with the aid of papain and characterization. Biochim Biophys Acta Gen Subj 1670(2):137–146. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbagen.2003.11.004

Wang W, Meng Q, Li Q, Liu J, Zhou M, Jin Z, Zhao K (2020) Chitosan derivatives and their application in biomedicine. Int J Mol Sci 21:487–513. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms21020487

Wu Y, Yang W, Wang C, Hu J, Fu S (2005) Chitosan nanoparticles as a novel delivery system for ammonium glycyrrhizinate. Int J Pharm 295(1–2):235–245. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2005.01.042

Wu LH et al (2017) preparation of chitooligosaccharides with the degree of polymerization below six by oxidative degradation of chitosan. Modern Food Sci Technol. https://doi.org/10.13982/j.mfst.1673-9078.2017.9.021

Xing L, Fan YT, Zhou TJ, Gong JH, Cui LH, Cho KH, Choi YJ, Jiang HL, Cho CS (2018) Chemical modification of chitosan for efficient vaccine delivery. Molecules 23(2):229. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules23020229

Yan N, Chen X (2015). Don't waste seafood waste: turning cast-off shells into nitrogen-rich chemicals would benefit economies and the environment. Macmillan Publishers Limited 524, pp. 155–157

Yang HC et al (2010) Preparation and application of nanochitosan to finishing treatment with antimicrobial and anti-shrinking properties. Carbohyd Polym 79(1):176–179. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carbpol.2009.07.045

Yang Y, Guo M, Qian R, Liu C, Zong X, Li Y-Q, Li W (2017) Binding efficacy and kinetics of chitosan with DNA duplex: the effects of deacetylation degree and nucleotide sequences. Carbohydr Polym 169:451–457

Yao MZ et al (2016) Fabrication and characterization of drug-loaded nano-hydroxyapatite/polyamide 66 scaffolds modified with carbon nanotubes and silk fibroin. Int J Nanomedicine 11:6181–6194. https://doi.org/10.2147/IJN.S106929

Younes I, Rinaudo M (2015) Chitin and chitosan preparation from marine sources. Structure, properties and applications. Mar Drugs 13(3):1133–1174. https://doi.org/10.3390/md13031133

Yu Y, Li K (2019) Adsorption characteristics of chitooligosaccharides onto activated charcoal in aqueous solutions. J Oceanol Limnol:1–9. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00343-019-8327-2

Zhang HH, Wu S, Tao Y, Zang L, Su Z (2010) Preparation and characterization of water-soluble chitosan nanoparticles as protein delivery system. J Nanomat 1) Article ID 8989105. https://doi.org/10.1155/2010/898910

Zhang H et al (2016) Directly determining the molecular weight of chitosan with atomic force microscopy. Front Nanosci Nanotechnol 2(3):123–127. https://doi.org/10.15761/fnn.1000121

Zhao Y, Park RD, Muzzarelli RAA (2010) Chitin deacetylases: properties and applications. Mar Drugs 8(1):24–46. https://doi.org/10.3390/md8010024

Zhou P, Qiu B, Deng R, Li H, Xu X, Shang X (2018) Chondroprotective effects of hyaluronic acid-chitosan nanoparticles containing plasmid DNA encoding cytokine response modifier A in a rat knee osteoarthritis model. Cell Physiol Biochem 47:1207–1216

Zhou Y et al (2019) Purification and characterization of a new cold-adapted and thermo-tolerant chitosanase from marine bacterium Pseudoalteromonas sp. SY39. Molecules 24(1). https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules24010183

Marine Collagen for Delivery of Therapeutics

4

Sonal Choudhary, Kashma Sharma, Vishal Sharma, Vijay Kumar, and Rakesh Sehgal

Abstract

Collagen is the most plentiful protein in mammals and considered the most significant part of the body structurally and functionally. The marine sponge is also an important and unexplored source for collagen productions until now. Among the biopolymers, collagen signifies one of the most utilized biomaterials in view of its superb biocompatibility, biodegradability, and low antigenicity, confirmed structure, and biologic features. The increasing enthusiasm for the utilization of marine collagen biomaterials and their important properties makes them useful for various biomedical applications. This chapter centers on the growing interest in marine collagen (MC)-based platforms for therapeutic applications. Specific consideration is given to the bioactive properties of MC that are being investigated in preclinical and clinical examinations. In this chapter, an analysis of the work reported on collagen derived from marine species and fish trashes is presented. This chapter also provides structure, extraction, sources, and various therapeutic applications about MC obtained from marine sources. The MC market is quickly examined to feature the area of interest and the most productive areas of interest. The present status and upcoming possibilities of

S. Choudhary · V. Sharma
Institute of Forensic Science & Criminology, Panjab University, Chandigarh, India

K. Sharma
Department of Chemistry, DAV College, Chandigarh, India

V. Kumar (✉)
Department of Physics, National Institute of Technology Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir, India

Department of Physics, University of the Free State, Bloemfontein, South Africa

R. Sehgal (✉)
Department of Mechanical Engineering, National Institute of Technology Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir, India

S. Jana, S. Jana (eds.), *Marine Biomaterials*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-5374-2_4

marine collagen-based biomaterials are examined in general along with appropriate examples drawn from existing literature.

Keywords

Marine collagen · Therapeutic · Anti-HIV: pharmaceutical · Marine collagen peptides · Obesity · Drug delivery

4.1 Introduction

Collagen molecules signify the most abundant construction material in the human body, where they give mechanical stability, flexibility, and strength to the organism, for example, tendons, ligaments, bone, and the extracellular matrix (ECM) (Gautieri et al. 2011; Fratzl 2008; Buehler and Yung 2009; Rainey et al. 2002; Fraser et al. 1983; Hulmes et al. 1995; Orgel et al. 2001; Currey 2002; Orgel et al. 2006; Aladin et al. 2010). These are also called smart materials because they change their behavior in response to mechanical force by modifying their structures from the subatomic level (Chang and Buehler 2014; Wang 2006; Magnusson et al. 2010; Kjær 2004). It is realized that almost all collagen-based tissues are composed of progressive structures, where the lowest hierarchical level consists of triple-helical collagen molecules (Fig. 4.1) (Gautieri et al. 2011; Chang and Buehler 2014). Collagen is a trimeric particle composed of three chains of polypeptide twisted into a triple helix that frames homotrimers or heterotrimers, subject to the kind of collagen (Lee et al. 2001; Cen et al. 2008). High biocompatibility, biodegradability, and bio-renewal as well as low antigenicity have been found in collagen (Lee et al. 2001; Sayani and Ronald 2014; Carvalho et al. 2018; Asghari et al. 2017; Albu et al. 2011). The communication among collagens and cells is attained by cell surface receptors (Vogel 2001; Hartford Svoboda and Reenstra 2002). These features have contributed to the improvement of a significant range of biomedical devices based on collagen, including drug delivery systems, hemostatic specialists, tissue engineering, etc. (Lee et al. 2001; Cen et al. 2008; Sayani and Ronald 2014; Carvalho et al. 2018; Asghari et al. 2017; Albu et al. 2011; Karsdal 2016). Likewise, collagen has organized structure and arrangement of the amino acid organization among species, contributing to the referenced properties when taking into account the use of animal collagen in the biomedical perspective. There are 28 distinct collagen forms called in sequential order of disclosure with Roman numeral assignments (I–XXVIII) (Karsdal 2016). Collagens are commonly comprised of three long amino acid chain helicoidally molded. Bindings of proline and hydroxyproline at the Y position are the base structure of the chains of two other amino acids and repeat grouping $(Gly\text{-}X\text{-}Y)_{n.}$ The chains are classified into main, secondary, and tertiary structures with a final fibril structure (Ferreira et al. 2012). The various kinds of collagen are ordered relying upon domain structure and their superstructural group. Every collagen has a particular α-chain with its own space structure which adds to the characterization by collagen type. Collagens can be fibril-forming, fibril-related with interrupted triplex helix such as collagen types, fibril-related with interrupted

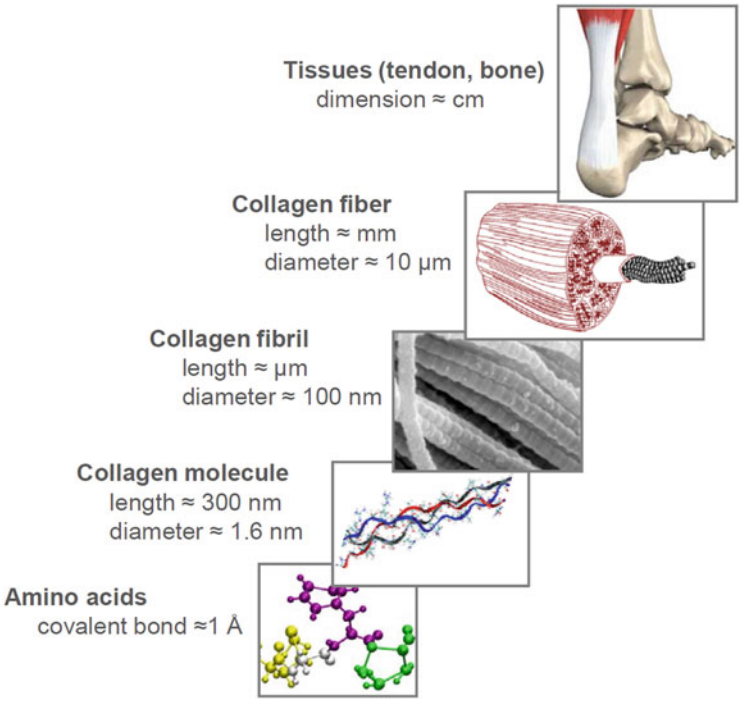


Fig. 4.1 Hierarchical structure of collagen protein materials. Reprinted with permission from Ref. (Gautieri et al. 2011). Copyright (2011) American Chemical Society

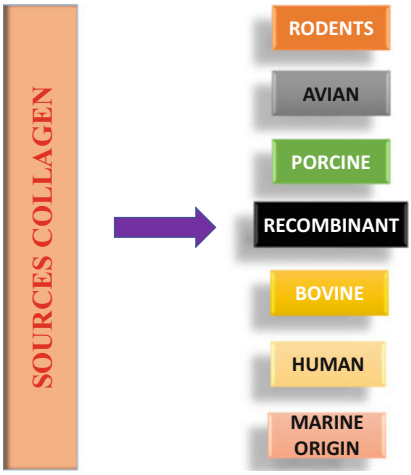


Fig. 4.2 Popular sources of collagen

triple helix-like, and network-forming (Coppola et al. 2020). Collagens in each class have their own specific capacity and add to higher degree tissue structures. Figure 4.2 signifies the most well-known sources of collagen (Tharindu et al. 2020). It is considered as the primary basic protein of connective tissues (Shoulders and Raines

2009). It signifies around one-fourth of the complete protein content in many creatures (Prockop and Kivirikko 1995). It is a fibrous protein framed by three polypeptide chains, organized as a triple helix enclosed around one another (Ramshaw et al. 1998). This chapter focuses on the comprehensive description of marine sources, extraction, and various applications of marine collagen in the biomedical field, particularly for therapeutic applications.

4.2 Marine Collagen (MC)

More than 70% of the Earth is occupied by oceans that are populated by a range of life forms. A fascinating source of collagen and bioactive substances used in many fields, as well as the medicinal, cosmetic, and food industry, is the MC. MC has attracted a wide reasonable and industrial interest on the account of its solubility in water, safety, biocompatibility, high biodegradability, ease of extraction which converts into high performance, and low production costs. MC can be categorized into two: collagen derived from invertebrate species, including fish (Liu et al. 2014), squid (Ando et al. 2001), octopuses (Nagai et al. 2002), wipes (Lin et al. 2011), and marine sponge (Silva et al. 2016), which are marine collagen sources, and collagen from marine vertebrates, incorporating fish and marine mammals, which is another class of marine collagen. Type I collagen is mainly derived from marine sources, much of use as essential biomaterials for the development of scaffolding, through various collagen types and can be attained correspondingly from fish cartilage, jellyfish, and marine sponges (Coppola et al. 2020; Tharindu et al. 2020; Shoulders and Raines 2009). Type I collagen is the protein most commonly isolated from marine organisms, as it is a significant biomaterial in the tissue designing field. In recent times, collagen derived from marine sources has been widely explored (Fig. 4.3) (Tharindu et al. 2020). The various important characteristics of marine collagen are displayed in Fig. 4.4. If the fish ligament is the primary source, collagen type II may be achieved. Various methods for evaluating the antioxidant effects of peptides obtained from fish have also been used, together with radical and hydroxyl scavenging tests (Jeevithan et al. 2015). Antimicrobial peptides have cationic residues that facilitate their interaction with microbial germ membranes (Bardan et al. 2004). Antimicrobial peptides in marine species, however, contain new antibiotics forms. Papain, pepsin, trypsin, alkaline proteases, acid proteases, aromatic proteases, and so on were enzymes used to isolate antimicrobial fish peptides and bacteria vulnerable to these antimicrobial peptides. Some jellyfish, such as the strip jellyfish (*Chrysaora* sp.), are rich in collagen type II (Barzideh et al. 2014), and marine sponges such as *Chondrosia reniformis* are identified to have type IV collagen (Pozzolini et al. 2012). These are the common sources of MC and found tremendous applications for medical and industrial use (Lin et al. 2011). Table 4.1 sums up various categories of collagen acquired from marine sources. Collagen of marine origin has different characteristics from those obtained from terrestrial sources. It has been found to have diverse amino acid composition, glycosaminoglycan content, and denaturation temperature (Bardan et al. 2004). These different characteristics, added to the minimal possibility of transmission of diseases

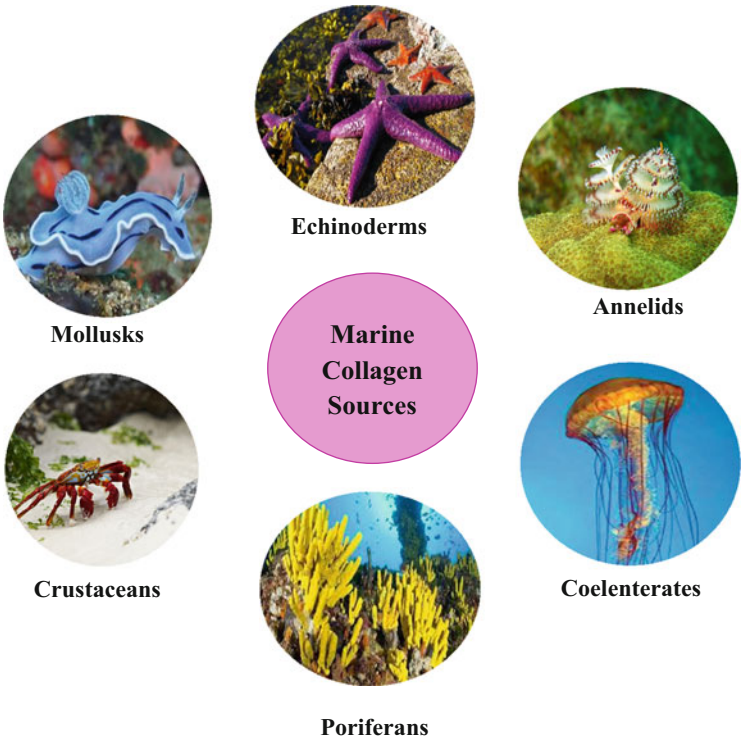


Fig. 4.3 Marine sources of collagen

communicable to humans and of not having religious restrictions, make marine collagen superior to its terrestrial equivalents. However, a lot of marine biodiversity has not yet been explored from this point of view (Pal and Suresh 2016).

4.2.1 Marine Collagen Peptides

A perfect source of bioactive proteins and peptides is marine collagen, which has much of the global biodiversity (Nikoo et al. 2011). Generally, bioactive peptides are acquired from entire protein molecules through enzymatic hydrolysis and fermentation. Collagen may be hydrolyzed into collagen hydrolysates or gelatin hydrolysates under desirable conditions in its denatured (gelatin) or undenatured type. In this process, collagen is mixed with proteins such as papain, pepsin, E-erase prop, and trypsin to form short peptide chains with bioactive properties (Fan et al. 2013). Enzymatic hydrolysis is one of the most widely recognized techniques utilized for the formation of bioactive peptides. Enzymatic hydrolysis was performed by utilizing an autolytic procedure or commercial protease (Nikoo et al. 2014). The enzymatically hydrolyzed oligopeptide compounds in collagen, cartilage, and

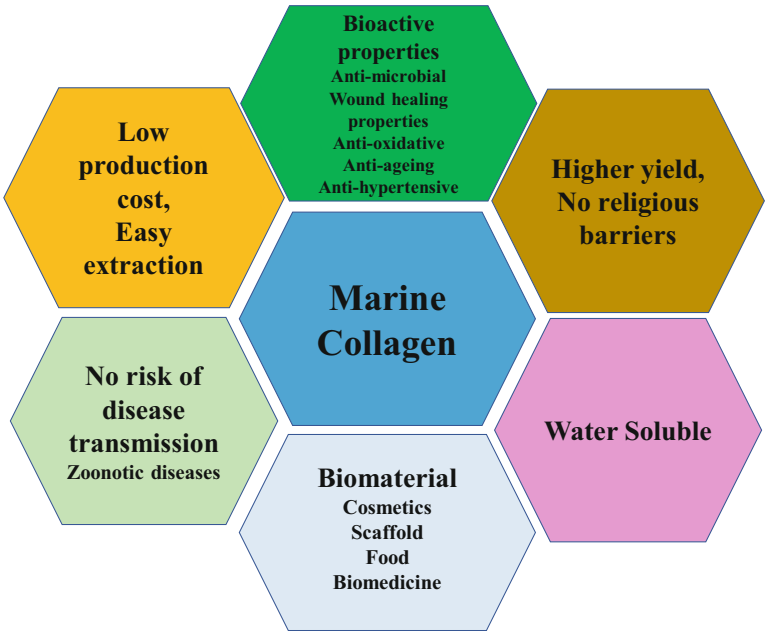


Fig. 4.4 Important properties of marine collagen

Table 4.1 Marine species for the extraction of collagen

Collagen type	Type	Collagen sources
I	Fibril-forming collagens	Jellyfish (Cheng et al. 2017), sea urchin (Benedetto et al. 2014), Persian Gulf squid skin (Delphi et al. 2016), crown-of-thorns starfish (Tan et al. 2013), codfish skins (Alves et al. 2017), salmon skins (Raftery et al. 2016), fish scales of oil sardines (Muthumari et al. 2016), minke whale (Nagai et al. 2008), catfish (Bama et al. 2010), yellowfin tuna skin (Woo et al. 2008), chum salmons (Wang et al. 2010a)
II	Fibril-forming (fibrillar)	Ribbon jellyfish (Barzideh et al. 2014), silvertip shark cartilage (Jeevithan et al. 2014)
III	Fibril-forming (fibrillar)	
IV	Basement membrane collagens	Sponges (Pozzolini et al. 2012), marine sponge (Lin et al. 2011)
V	Fibril-forming collagens	Jellyfish medusa (Calejo et al. 2012)

marine fish bones are marine collagen peptides (MCPs), rich in glycine, glutamic acid, proline, and hydroxyproline (Ri et al. 2007). Furthermore, in in vitro studies, it has been discovered that fish collagen peptides have a high level of antioxidant

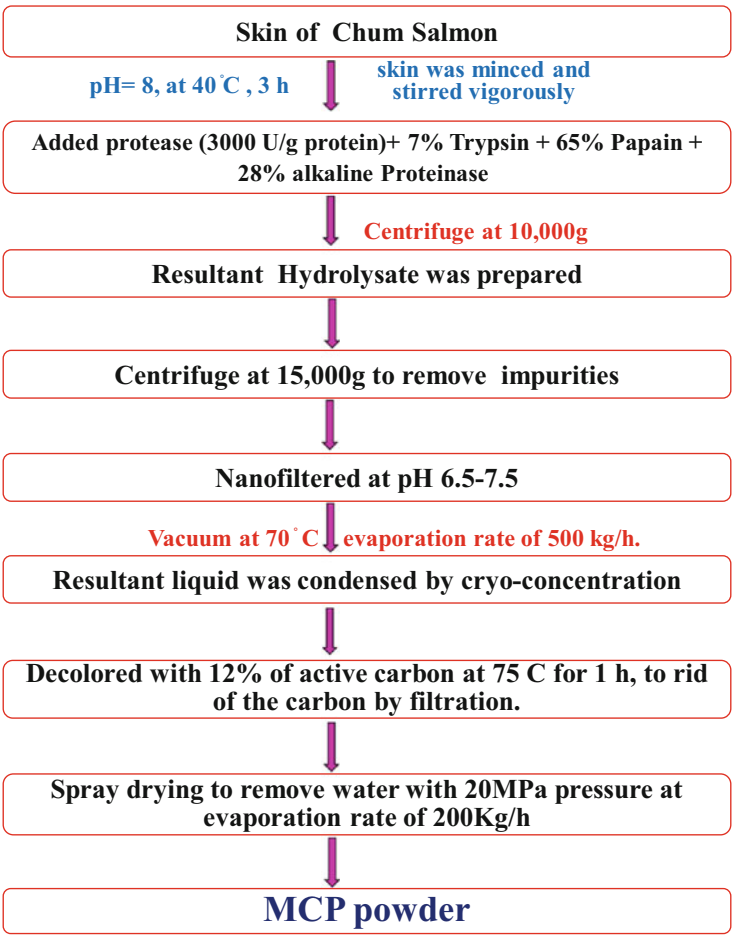


Fig. 4.5 Schematic representation of extraction of marine collagen peptides (MCPs) from chum salmon (*Oncorhynchus keta*) skin

activity to remove free radicals and inhibit lipid peroxidation (Zhuang et al. 2009), whereas in another study, MCPs were recommended to show substantial radical scavenging activity and antagonistic to lipid peroxidation action tested with a 2,2-diphenyl-1-picrylhydrazyl radical scavenging assay and linoleic acid peroxidation process, correspondingly (Zhentao et al. 2009). Schematic representation of MCP extraction from chum salmon skin is demonstrated in Fig. 4.5 (Pei et al. 2010).

4.3 Collagen Extraction

The higher number of distributions about marine collagen discovers a developing enthusiasm from the pedagogic system to think of new gainful sources. Marine collagen can be gained from various sources, and the emphasis is the extraction from the abundant ones with strategies that could be effectively scaled up so that processes can be beneficial for industrial applications. Therefore, with the right technology, marine collagen can be used as a potential alternative to using mammals for this purpose. From the marine environment, different strategies for the acquisition of collagen have been suggested, based on marine sources. An overall method for the separation of collagen from fish and marine sources is by taking into consideration three stages: synthesis, extraction, and recovery (Nagai et al. 2010). The procedure includes washing, the partition of animal chunks, and reducing the size of the sample by chopping or shredding them. To allow the resulting chemical pre-treatment activities to eliminate non-collagenous proteins, stains, or fats, reducing the size of these samples is important. The standard technique uses an essential sodium hydroxide pre-treatment, which does not allow structural alteration of the chains of collagen, alcohol, and oxygen peroxide separate from non-collagenous protein, fats, and color, during the expulsion phase (Zhang et al. 2009). In addition, the use of NaCl as a substitute for NaOH was also suggested for the abstraction of non-collagenous proteins from the skin of codfish (Sadowska et al. 2003). Moreover, EDTA is recommended for demineralization purposes to improve collagen production from hair, ligament, and scales (Kittiphattanabawon et al. 2005). On the other hand, HCl can likewise be utilized (Żelechowska et al. 2010). Collagen extraction from the umbrella's species results after the removal of the inner and external skin with a surgical blade. The tissue was lyophilized and frozen at −80 °C before use. In short, the freeze-dried umbrellas were treated with 0.1 M sodium hydroxide to eliminate non-collagen proteins. When collagen extraction takes place only with acid, the resulting material is called acid-soluble collagen (ASC). Acetic acid is often employed, although citric acid and lactic acid are also used in collagen production from marine animal tissues (Nagai et al. 2000). Yusoff et al. (2013) proposed a different approach to separate collagens from amphibian species that blends acidic preparation with physical and mechanical preparations, including pH enhancement, uniformity, mixing, and sonication. The extraction yield increases dramatically compared with the methods of standard extraction by extending physical procedures in jellyfish (Khong et al. 2018). The derived collagen is called pepsin-soluble collagen (PSC) at the stage where the protein pepsin is used in the extraction process. This procedure is very beneficial because proteases cut the telopeptide cross-linked regions without interrupting the triple helix integrity, thus hydrolyzing some non-collagen proteins and increasing the collagen purity (Zhang et al. 2007). Catalyst is also used to acquire explicit protein material, high outputs, and decreased waste and to reduce antigenicity due to telopeptides (Schmidt et al. 2016). But when a large measurement of pepsin is employed for a higher time period, PSC output may decrease for the reason that the collagen can decompose, undermining the integrity

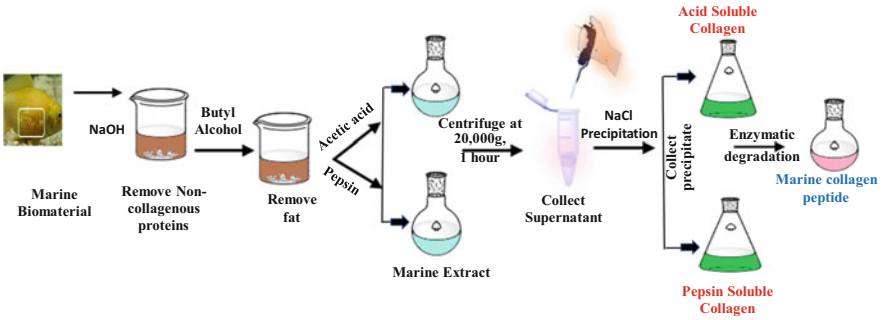


Fig. 4.6 A flowchart for extracting acid-soluble collagen and pepsin-soluble collagen from the skin of the marine fish

of the triple helix structure (Jongjareonrak et al. 2005). The detailed extraction procedure of ASC and PSC is displayed in Fig. 4.6 (Jongjareonrak et al. 2005).

For the most part, collagen is precipitated during the recovery period by applying NaCl to the final concentration, i.e., 2.3–2.6 M. The subsequent precipitate, dissolved in 0.5 M acetic acid, dialyzed, and lyophilized, is collected by centrifugation (Silva et al. 2014). In general, collagen extraction from jellyfish is based on solubilization in a solution of 0.5 M acetic acid, followed by dialysis salting against a solution of Na_2HPO_4. By centrifugation, collagen precipitates were separated, solubilized into acetic acid, and reprecipitated for purification with 0.9 M NaCl. ASC can likewise be treated with pepsin to produce atelocollagen (Song et al. 2006). Zhang et al. (2007) compared the properties and composition of collagen extracted from grass carp with the calfskin. The grass carp skin was used to isolate the collagen with a yield of 46.6% by the PSC method. The grass carp skin collagen contained low imino acid content as compared to mammalian's collagens. Several peptide maps of collagens of grass carp skin and calfskin collagens showed that there might be several variations in sequences or conformation of amino acids. Therefore, grass carp will be used for industrial applications as an alternative to calfskin and pigskin collagen (Zhang et al. 2007). Many peptide maps of grass carp skin collagens and calfskin collagens showed that several differences in amino acid sequences or confirmation could occur.

4.4 Therapeutic Effect of Marine Collagen

The utilization of collagen-based materials in the administration of drugs implies the investigation of multiple viewpoints, viz., in vivo toxicity, bioavailability, solubility, and body tissue captivation with specific target administration. The significant concern has been raised with respect to the protection and medical credibility of the administration of marine collagen peptides in light of the fact that MCPs from various cause can trigger the innate immune response through the initiation and overproduction of responsive oxygen species (ROS) by a Toll-like receptor

4 (TLR4)-intervened NADPH oxidase (NOX4) (De Luca et al. 2016a). Various studies on MC, collagen-derived peptides, and gelatin from natural sources were carried out to find future medicinal and pharmaceutical applications, as well as gelatin from natural sources.

4.4.1 Drug Delivery

Currently, the area of drug delivery from various biopolymer/biomaterials has an expanded improvement because of its advantages contrasted with the fundamental administration. Among the biopolymers, collagen is one of the most utilized, being an appropriate biodegradable polymer help for drug delivery systems, providing the benefit of natural biopolymers with hemostatic, vitreous implants and wound dressings properties (Lee et al. 2001; Albu et al. 2010; Arpornmaeklong et al. 2008; Davidenko et al. 2010; Goissis and De Sousa 2009; Gonçalves-Neto et al. 2002; Gotterbarm et al. 2006). The use of polymers for the film covering of solid pharmaceutical formulations has grown exponentially. Several investigations have demonstrated that it is workable for a limited quantity of medication to either break down in the covering solution during the film development or relocate from the tablet center to the surface of the film (Dansereau et al. 1993). In addition, collagen fibrils and their denatured derivatives, such as gelatin, are the primary structural and functional components in different biomedical applications (Coppola et al. 2020; León-López et al. 2019; Meyer 2019; Gorgieva and Kokol 2011; Lu and Guo 2018; Sorushanova et al. 2019). For the most part, cross-linking agents such as glutaraldehyde or the approval of cross-linking by UV or g-radiations reduces the in vivo absorption of collagen. Furthermore, collagen, along with gene therapy nanoparticles, base matrices for cell culture systems, and healthy blood vessels and artificial valves, can be used as regulatory material for transdermal release. Several pieces of research have been undertaken from numerous sources to manufacture collagen, including skin and fish bones from the seafood manufacturing industry. Consequently, Veeruraj and his collaborators (Veeruraj et al. 2012) conducted studies to understand the drug-releasing behavior of the implantable type I collagen derived from the waste from the external eelophish skin (Evenchelys Macura) as a drug carrier against human pathogenic microorganisms. ASC and PSC gels were successfully distributed with standard pharmaceutical medicines like ampicillin and tetracycline and isolated collagen films. The drug's antibiotic efficacy (ampicillin and tetracycline) has been reviewed by the process of agar disc diffusion in which the zone of inhibition was formed by them. This method has confirmed to be employed for drug delivery in the future (Veeruraj et al. 2012). Due to the beneficial properties of marine sponge collagen such as adsorption ability, nonantigenic nature, non-toxicity, and biocompatibility, it can be used as a drug delivery tool (Chak et al. 2013). Microparticles derived from collagen of marine sponges were used for the cutaneous administration of all-trans-retinol by Swatschek et al. Retinol-loaded sponge collagen was studied in the skin of hairless mice and retinol penetration into the skin was greatly improved (Swatschek et al. 2002). As

penetration stimulators for the transdermal administration of 17β-estradiol-hemihydrate in hormone replacement therapy, *Chondrosia reniformis* spongy collagen nanoparticles were developed by Nicklas et al. (2009a). These collagen nanoparticles were synthesized by conventional alkaline hydrolysis processes and were later distinguished by various spectroscopic techniques. Compared with a commercial gel, the collagen nanoparticle hydrogel loaded with estradiol permitted a prolonged release of estradiol and produced a much-improved estradiol absorption. Sponge collagen nanoparticles are also encouraging materials for the delivery of transdermal drugs (Farstvedt et al. 2004). Collagen-based films seem to be encouraging from this point of view based on the fact that their three-dimensional porosity/structure can be altered as desired. Marine sponge collagen (Porifera, Dictyoceratida) has been described and processed into polymer films that contain l-cysteine hydrochloride for wound healing purposes (Pozzolini et al. 2012). A large number of topical wound dressings are now accessible, such as films, foams, antiseptic-containing hydrogels, antibiotics, and/or healing factors (Langasco et al. 2017). In vitro experiments have shown that cysteine is released more steadily than the pure substance at the injury site. This makes the system interesting and able to provide bio-based collagen, which can be used as a biocompatible transport system as it adds the known healing properties of cysteine with the beneficial properties of the collagen/proteoglycan network (Panduranga Rao 1996). The progress in the use of collagen as suitable biomaterials and in drug delivery devices is reviewed by various authors (Lee et al. 2001; Panduranga Rao 1996; Chvapil et al. 1973; Khan and Khan 2013). Gil et al. (2016) utilized reused collagen films for controlled drug delivery devices. They concluded that examined films have a great ability for drug delivery and extraordinary efficacy in hindering microorganism's expansion. Use of collagen-model triple-helical peptide amphiphiles (PA) for CD44-targeted drug delivery devices was reported by Ndinguri et al. (2012). They recommend that PA targeted liposomes may signify another class of nanotechnology-based drug delivery devices. The sustained release of studies for antibiotics, for example, gentamicin, utilizing collagen as a drug delivery carrier was investigated by Wahlig and Dingeldein (1980). Fujioka et al. (1995) reported a novel drug delivery system for proteins utilizing collagen mini pellets as a carrier material. This system is appropriate to different sorts of biologically active proteins and likely to encourage their use in biomedical applications. Protein nanoparticles as suitable materials to be employed for various pharmaceutical devices were reviewed by Jain et al. (2018). The use of new drug delivery schemes to focus on drugs for explicit parts of the body could be an option that can address these basic problems. The enteric coating of granules, tablets, and cases has been used as often as possible for decades, prevents the processing of oral medications in the stomach, and guides the sustained release of the active substance into the upper digestive system. Moreover, the collagen found in *Chondrosia reniformis* marine wipe is stable against pepsin and trypsin and insoluble in acid media (Imhoff and Garrone 1983).

4.4.2 Metabolic Syndrome

Marine collagen peptides (MCPs) were shown to have positive consequences for metabolic syndrome, which involves type 2 diabetes, abdominal obesity, hyperlipidemia, and hypertension, among other unhealthy diseases (Alberti et al. 2005). Angiotensin I conversion enzyme (ACE) may be inhibited by marine collagen peptides (Kim et al. 2012) and so can probably diminish hypertension and hyperlipidemia (Wang et al. 2010b). Furthermore, MCPs indicate an increased response to insulin and decrease the risk of related metabolic complications (Zhu et al. 2010a) in people who have resistance to insulin. Similarly, MCPs demonstrated greater glucose and lipid metabolism and blood pressure in patients with type 2 diabetes (Cui-Feng et al. 2010), though the mechanisms behind the effects of MCPs are not completely understood. A significant factor in the pathophysiology of type 2 diabetes is insulin obstruction. Oxidative stress increased inflammation, and increased peroxisome activity was involved in insulin-resistance pathogenesis, including proliferating-activated receptor and type 4 glucose transporter (GLUT4) (Tangvarasittichai et al. 2016). In patients with type 2 diabetes, MCPs extracted from wild salmon skin are likely to decrease insulin resistance. MCPs have also been thought to have a positive impact on the reduction of oxidative stress, inflammation, and GLUT4 and PPAR-a expression (Zhu et al. 2017a). MCP therapy has been shown in these patients to aid in treating hyperglycemia and high blood pressure. MCP therapy was also beneficial to manage hypertension as revealed by a fundamental reduction in SBP, DBP, PPD, and MAP levels, compares and the baseline of these patients and the treatment with MCP indicates substantially decreased levels of diabetes-related renal impairment and hypertension as seen in these patients, CR levels are drastically decreased. These therapeutic results indicated that MCPs could be useful for enhancing the metabolism of insulin-sensitive glucose, renal function, and control of the blood pressure in patients, inflammation, and positive modulation of the development of bradykinin and adiponectin. These findings, together with relative protection, show that MCPs can work as an interventional supplement in patients with both T2DM and hypertension (Zhu et al. 2010b; Wang et al. 2008). MCPs have been recognized to substantially decrease the sugar level in the blood, total triglycerides, total cholesterol, low-density lipoprotein, and free fatty acids. However, it has improved insulin sensitivity, high-density lipoprotein (HDL), and adiponectin levels (Zhu et al. 2010c). Diabetic patients have been recognized to have overall increased plasma CF6 levels, which are positively correlated with blood lipid and glucose levels (Li et al. 2007). The medium and high doses of MCP somewhat repressed elevated glucose-mediated endothelial cell apoptosis, as confirmed by the reduced level of caspase-3, in vitro staining with caspase-8, MP, Fas, sFasL, and annexin V, which can be attributed to the hindrance of the N-terminal kinase p38/c-Jun and activation of Janus kinase 2 and its natural antioxidant properties (He et al. 2015). Zhu et al. (2017b) explained the function of MCPs in protecting the endothelial carotid artery by inhibiting biomarkers' expression, restricting endothelial dilution, and provocative exudation. They concluded that MCPs can be a possible preventive way to be safe against initial cardiovascular risks linked with T2DM.

4.4.3 Antitumor Agent and Anti-HIV Peptides

Marine fishes are a huge, multifaceted group of high protein organisms, with nearly 13,000 species, and more than 100 species are conventional tumor medicines. But just a couple of marine fish species have been artificially investigated and examined. Interestingly, most biomaterials got from marine fish have been assessed and delivered as useful functional foods, and these sorts of items have been overwhelmed by low atomic weight compounds. Some marine fish proteins have been reported recently to have a potent antitumor effect such as shark, globefishes, devil ray (*Manta birostris*), king crab, and hairy clam (*Arca subcrenata*) (Kim et al. 2001; Wang et al. 2015). Protamine and fish antibacterial peptides have also been shown to suppress tumors (Liang et al. 2010). For the study and development of new antitumor medicines, marine fish proteins are an essentially untapped option. Peptides obtained from enzymatically fabricated fish skin gelatin hydrolysate have been reported in research performed by Mendis et al. (2005) to raise levels of antioxidant enzymes in cultured human hepatoma cells with a probable function to support redox equilibrium in the cellular environment. The precise molecular mechanism that underlies antioxidant enzyme induction by MCP has not yet been explained. MCP, a combination of oligopeptides rich in proline and hydroxyproline (100–860 Da), was enzymatically hydrolyzed from the skin of chum salmon (*O. keta*), which generally causes waste and contamination in the fish preparation industry (Jang and Park 2016a; Jang and Park 2016b). The findings have shown that the long-term administration of MCPs has improved the endurance of the long-term subpopulation and delayed life expectancy. The life cycle of tumor-bearing animals in both sexes was also effectively extended by MCPs (Baum and Arpey 2005).

Marine life can become a significant source of natural anti-HIV products, due to the remarkable, entreating, and dynamic condition in which marine life forms produce different new substances. The production of marine anti-HIV agents has recently been focused on. Various studies indicated that, as a result of their therapeutic ability for treating or preventing infectious diseases, marine peptides can be used in functional foods or in pharmaceutical and nutraceutical products as anti-HIV agents (Brown and Phillips 2010). The present research reveals the prevention of HIV-1 infection of human MT-4 T cells in the marine collagen peptides, which contain APHCP (due to the Alaska pollock). APHCP inhibited the production and reverse transcriptase activity of cell lysis instigated by HIV-1IIIB and noncytotoxic performance of viral p24. However, APHCP did not suppress the HIV-2ROD infection of MT-4 cells. The following results suggested that APHC is noncytotoxic to HIV-1 and that APHCP inhibits HIV-1-pumped cell lysis, syncytious development, RT action, and viral p24 antigen formation. APHCP is a natural new peptide with a strong HIV-1 inhibitory activity and may be a therapeutic potential agent for HIV-1 therapy (Simhaee et al. 2009). These are small peptides that display anti-HIV-1 activity, rich in residues of hydroxyproline. The process of its new antiretroviral peptide was described by Jang and Park (2016b) with particular underlying mechanisms of action. The peptide is derived from the collagen of the Alaska

pollock fish. This novel peptide is highly sensitive against HIV-1 and could be a possible and encouraging therapeutic agent for HIV-1 treatment.

4.4.4 Wound Healing

The methodological technique for wound healing involves three characteristic stages: inflammation, proliferation, and maturation (Aneiros and Garateix 2004). The acceptable nutrient measure is essential to amalgamate nucleic acids, proteins, and the various components relevant to functional tissue maturation and differentiation (Liu and Sun 2014). Collagen is a characteristic cell connection, development, and differentiation substratum and covers all three stages of injury recovery. The wound healing mechanism includes many biochemical pathways, including inflammation, angiogenesis, the development of granulated tissue, reepithelialization, and wound contraction (Mehbub et al. 2014). Deposition of the collagen is an important event for the healing of wounds. In addition, the acceleration of angiogenesis is an effective method for improved recovery, particularly in incessant injuries. Angiogenesis is an integrative technique after early injury for the elimination of waste, for the delivery of necessary supplements and oxygen to the injury site, and for the advancement of granulation tissue formation. The present research investigated the injury recovery potential of MCPs, mixes of low atomic weight peptides extracted from enzymatically hydrolyzed skin of chum salmon (*Oncorhynchus keta*), and rodents using two models of injury: the excision and the incision wound type. They also intended to study the healing process and the likelihood of MCP building angiogenesis in wound tissue. Marine items would likely have many unique and potent bioactive sequences in a safe manner due to their extreme, adverse living conditions (Leal et al. 2012). Hydrolyzed collagen peptides from tilapia fish scales with a range from 0.7 to 1.3 kDa in molecular sizes will contribute to multidirectional distinguishment and osteogenic differentiation of mesenchymal stem cells from rat bone marrow, as well as to regulate the behavior of macrophages (Kreuter et al. 2003). This sponge is present in the Mediterranean Sea everywhere. They developed a wide range of secondary metabolites to defend themselves from rivals, predators, and pathogens (Nicklas et al. 2009b). Over 30 percent of the 18,000 bioactive natural marine products in pharmaceutical applications listed so far have been derived from sponges (Pozzolini et al. 2018). The biocompatibility of *Chondrosia reniformis* species with human skin has been assessed, and the use as nanoparticles for drug preparation as vehicles and coating has been described as well. Chondrosia reniformis collagen was also demonstrated to be useful as a drug preparation and nanoparticulate carrier and to assess its lack of harmfulness in human skin (Venkatesan et al. 2017; Chen et al. 2016).

Sea sponge collagen is ideal for delayed release of tablet coating and has high mechanical properties and storage stability. The prospect of using it for tissue engineering and regenerative therapeutic uses in the form of thin biocompatible membranes has also been examined (Hu et al. 2017). The recuperation, healing, and aging of the skin are another relevant area of research for which marine hydrolysates

have shown substantial results (Exposito et al. 2010). Particular interest is paid in recent years in different preclinical and clinical trials to the use of MC hydrolysates as regenerative agents for the reconstruction of the skin. Collagen hydrolysates from different sources exhibited high biocompatibility, penetration capacity, and skin-protective properties in various experimental settings. In preclinical trials, different models have shown huge defensive effects on the in vivo photoaging (Liang et al. 2010) of collagen hydrolysates of jellyfish, salmon, and Pacific cod, while Nile and chum peptides show wound healing properties (Yamada et al. 2013).

Marine fish collagen and collagen peptides have been commonly utilized as functional foods or nutritional supplements owing to their homology with human collagen structure (Girgih et al. 2013) and their safety profile (De Luca et al. 2016b). MCPs formed by the enzymatic assimilation of fish skin have been found to have various health effects primarily in two ways: metabolic issues and skin/bone repair. From the mechanistic point of view, oral administration of MCP induced, for example, endogenous collagen, to synthesize the extracellular matrix, by positively controlling the gene expression of many collagen modifying enzymes that were active in modifying and cross-linking the post-translation collagen (Zhang et al. 2011). Some in vitro studies demonstrated antioxidant properties of exceptionally low atomic weight (1–20 Da) of proline-containing MCP (Nagai et al. 2007) acting as a hydroxyl radical scavenger. Clinical examinations have demonstrated an increase in the aging parameters of the skin following oral ingestion of fish collagen peptides (Hoyer et al. 2012), which obviously demonstrated the integrity of the bioactive properties of MC hydrolysates under various pathophysiological situations of the skin. The current examination is the first to show the oral ingestion of MCP accelerates the healing of cutaneous injury using two separate rodent wound models using two injury models: the excision and the incision wound model. Tissue samples were taken on 7, 14, and 20 days after the caesarian section to determine the impacts of enzymatically hydrolyzed marine collagen peptides from the salmon skin (*Oncorhynchus keta*). At first, the fracturing power of the wounds is evidently minimal since the clotting just binds the edges together. Subsequently, the tensile strength rises rapidly with increased collagen deposition and cross-links between collagen filaments. Important improvements in the wound closure rate and increased epithelialization have been observed. The results revealed that in the 1125 g kgbw-1 MCP group, Hyp values were higher in skin wound tissues than in the vehicle group. Hyp is a derivative of proline; proline and Hyp are essential for the biosynthesis, structure, and strength of collagen (Wang et al. 2015). MCP administration by means of two different rat wound models speeds up the healing of skin injuries. Histopathological tests have established a substantial improvement ($P < 0.05$) in tensile power, hydroxyproline content, and collagen levels and an improvement in granuloma angiogenesis. It is also hypothesized that MCP can augment the initiation of antioxidants formation at an early stage of healing, which may be a significant contributor to the healing properties. Treatment of MCP rodents has led to improved wound healing, as shown by prolonged fracture closure, fibroblasts, and the production of fresh blood vessels. Angiogenesis is also an early event in the formation of granulation tissue, so the density of blood vessels was measured 3 days after injury

using a stereological procedure. Articulation of pro-angiogenic developmental factors, including VEGF and FGF-2, was tested in incisional wound tissues of different treatment groups. Both growth factors indicated the maximum improvement in MCP-treated wounds immunostained on day 3 with about 78% and 40% increase in VEGF and FGF-2, respectively, compared with vehicle-treated wounds (Bradt et al. 1999). Nagai and collaborators (Rao et al. 2011) assessed salmon collagen scaffolds for human periodontal ligament cells. Salmon (Yumuk et al. 2015) skin collagen was used for the development of porous mineralized collagen scaffolds for use in bone tissue engineering. The reassembly of collagen fibril and nanocrystalline hydroxyapatite precipitation happens concurrently in this biomimetic technique, to create a structure that is very similar to that of a natural bone (Hoyer et al. 2012). Collagen has been commonly used for the development of scaffolds due to its biocompatibility, non-toxicity, and biodegradability. Chum salmon skin was tried for its wound healing impact on a rat model isolated from MCPs. In contrast with the control group, MC was given to wound-induced rats. The findings displayed quicker wound soothing and enhanced tissue restoration at the injury site following the ingestion of MC as well as increased angiogenesis and deposition of denser and improved structured collagen fibers produced than the vehicle-treated group. In general, MC is about 60 percent purer than bovine collagen and is much safer (Bradt et al. 1999).

4.4.5 Obesity

Obesity was a major public health concern during the last century, primarily caused by unhealthy eating habits including excess calories or excess fats, poor physical action, and an inactive way of life (Rao et al. 2011). The worldwide dominance of obesity in particular almost doubled between 1980 and 2014, with about 40% of grown-ups worldwide being bulky and 13% being clinically stout. Obesity is considered to be the primary contributing element not just for nontransferable conditions, but even for different neurological and physical disorders (Yumuk et al. 2015). Type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) is a particularly common type of diabetes, responsible for around 90 percent of total diabetic patients (Stumvoll et al. 2005). Patients with T2DM also face the issue of loss of insulin sensitivity. Both insulin resistance and β-cell dysfunction are key parameters for T2DM (Gloyn and McCarthy 2008). Treatment with marine salmon oligopeptides skin has shown repressed inflammation by decreasing pro-inflammatory cytokine creation in mice (Zoetendal et al. 2006). Despite several years of severe and focused study, remedies for these life-threatening disorders remain indefinable, and successful anti-obesity therapies are yet to be developed (Tschöp and DiMarchi 2017). Therefore, it is also important that experimental methods to treat and prescribe serious medical conditions associated with metabolic abnormalities be found and established. Recently, dietary obesity and the resulting complications can be avoided by natural bioactive therapy for warm-sea MCP (Astre et al. 2018). In accordance with these findings, it has been confirmed that MCPs increase glucose and insulin tolerance and

reduce the expression of T2DM rat model liver oxidative stress biomarkers and inflammatory cytokines and adipocytokines (Zhu et al. 2017a). In comparison, MCP decreases the free fatty acid levels but raises the level of adiponectin (Cui-Feng et al. 2010). The safety profile of MCP in this study seemed substantial to be greater for those who were only diabetic than for those who were diabetics with high blood pressure, suggesting that MCP would shield them from diabetes and high blood pressure by influencing different molecular levels of diabetic pathogens. A clinical trial using Nutripeptin® and Hydro MN Peptide®, two commercial MCP products, has shown that blood glucose levels are regulated and that obesity risks for patients with T2DM have been lowered to a low level. The consequences of MCP extracted from fish skin tuna on the adipogenic 3 T3-L1 breakdown and on the obese HFD-treated mouse were investigated by Lee et al. (2017). This research specifically prevented lipid aggregation during mouse differentiation preadipocyte (3 T3-L1), accompanied by a decrease in adipocyte differentiation and retention regulators expression. Furthermore, MCP blocked the lipid vacuoles aggregation in hepatocytes by palmitate; reduced the size of adipocyte; decreased overall serum cholesterol, triglyceride, and LDL; and raised serum HdL. The findings provide an insight into alternative therapeutic obesity agents.

4.4.6 Anticancer Properties

AMPs Antimicrobial peptides can be classified into two types of categories which directly operate only on bacteria and cancer cells and do not attack normal mammalian cells; and cytotoxic AMPs on bacteria, cancer cells, and normal mammalian cells (Hoskin and Ramamoorthy 2008). AMPs have the ability to be a natural source antibiotic that generally includes cationic and antitumor molecules (Rege et al. 2007). AMPs can be used in early treatment approaches and when a cream combined with CAP18 AMP is rubbed onto tumors of the exterior surface, intradermal, and epithelial skin cancer (Rodrigues et al. 2008). AMPs from the marine organisms and epithelial tumors are demonstrated to be effective. AMPs can disrupt membranes through the formation of holes, leading to cancer cell death. Epinecidin-1 cytotoxic activities have been identified with normal human cells, mouse cell lines, and multiple human carcinogenic cell lines. The findings were supported by a smooth agar experiment. Epinecidin-1 selectively destroys certain cancer cells on lower doses. Also, the results of the inhibition of necrosis and real-time PCR studies show that epinecidin-1 is not only cytolytic but also may have anti-necrosis action in cancer cells (Chen et al. 2009). The unicorn leatherjacket, belonging to the order Tetraodontiformes and family Monacanthidae, is a fish used primarily for the processing of fillets. The toughness of fish causes a lot of waste, which serves as a possible basis for the manufacture of collagen from fish. The fish peptides synthesized using Protomex and alcalase demonstrated inhibition of growth of 33.3 percent in HeLa cells but inhibition of 81.7 percent in HCT166 cells at a concentration of 1 mg/mL (Picot et al. 2006). In another analysis, bluefin and salmon skin collagen and collagen peptides displayed the highest cytotoxic activity of

65 percent and 50 percent at a concentration of 0.2 mg/mL for HepG2 and HeLa cells, respectively (Han et al. 2011). Baehaki et al. (2016) isolated collagen peptides from milkfish which demonstrated 70 percent and 18 percent inhibition in HeLa cells and HCT166 cells at a concentration of 1 mg/mL, respectively. Lower cytotoxic activity was recorded in HaCaT cells of 19.9 ± 1.9 percent at a concentration of 1 mg/ml of fish-scale collagen peptide (Subhan et al. 2017). It was inferred from the above studies that the reduction of cell growth by collagen or collagen peptides is determined by the type of cell, the type of fish, and the degree of hydrolysis (DH). In addition to these experiments, anchovy peptide 440.9 Da was observed to cause apoptosis in human U937 lymphoma cells by increasing the function of caspase-3 and caspase-8 (Lee et al. 2003). Another hepcidin TH2–3 tilapia peptide (Chen et al. 2009) and epinecidin-1 peptide grouper showed significant restraint in human fibrosarcoma cells (Lin et al. 2009). Various authors reported that the form and thickness of the collagen strands had an impact on cell growth (Subhan et al. 2017; Hassan et al. 2005). Limited reports are available on the anticancer effects of fish collagen peptides. The effect of collagen-derived abdominal skin and bluefin tuna collagen peptides on HepG2 and HeLa cells was investigated using the MTT assay (Han et al. 2011).

4.4.7 Antidiabetic and Anti-inflammatory

Diabetes is typically affected by the combination of genetic and natural causes and is characterized by the loss of insulin secretion and tolerance, which is continuously activated by the metabolic problems of weight, protein, and sugars. The in vitro antidiabetic activity of collagen peptides was tested in the α-amylase inhibition test (Kumanan et al. 2010). The collagenous gut of red porgy, common pandora, and sea bream had the most serious hindrance (Fernandez et al. 2001). Inhibitions of alpha-amylase expressed by the collagen peptides of the unicorn leatherjacket skin were about compatible with the values suggested. Hydrolyzed fish protein isolated from crucian carp (*Carassius carassius*) showed only 20.03 ± 0.89 percent inhibition of alpha-amylase at a concentration of 1.2 mg/ml, which suggested that peptides derived from fish muscle had less inhibition of alpha-amylase than collagen-derived peptides (Liu et al. 2013). As a result, the inhibition of alpha-amylase differed with the substrate, the structure of the peptide, and even the hydrolysis temperature. Zhu et al. (2010a) tested oligopeptides obtained from salmon skin for potential antidiabetic effects on rodents by terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase dUTP nick end labeling (TUNEL) measure. The complete procedure of collagen hydrolysates extraction is presented in Fig. 4.7 (Kumar et al. 2019).

4.4.8 Osteoarthritis

Osteoarthritis (OA), the utmost communal joint infection, is caused by ligament damage that causes joint annihilation with sternly reduced movement. Dilapidation

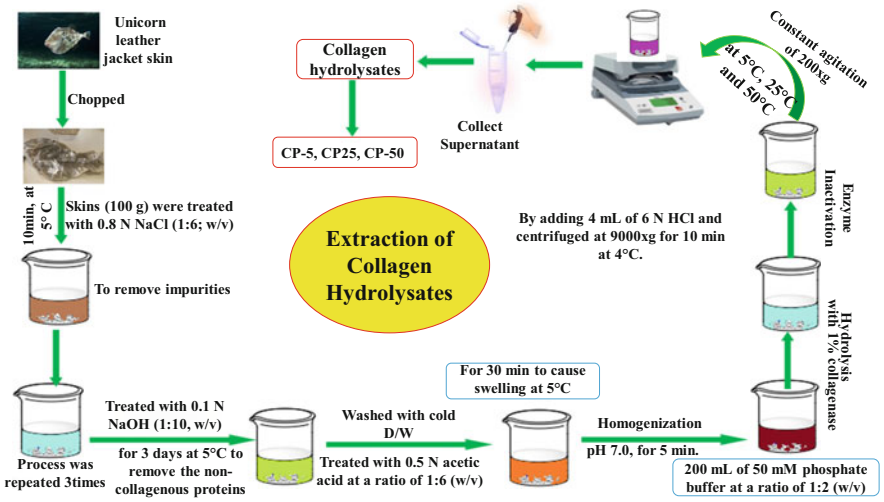


Fig. 4.7 Schematic illustration of collagen hydrolysates extraction

of the articular ligament of the affected joint is a chief component of OA. There is no compelling cure for OA as of now. The available drugs are directed at dropping manifestations such as pain and inflammation, maintaining joint mobility, and minimizing the loss of function (Henrotin et al. 2011). Glucosamine, an amino monosaccharide, is synthesized from glucose to glycosaminoglycan and helps to preserve cartilage strength, durability, and elasticity (Naito et al. 2010). Clinical examinations recommend that the use of collagen dietary enhancement can recover joint torment and mobility (Benito-Ruiz et al. 2009). Collagen was isolated from the skins of the genus Gadiformes. In addition, they looked at the effect of glucosamine and fish collagen peptide on OA. OA was triggered in 12 rabbits (12 weeks old enough) by the most cruciate tendon crosscut (ACLT). In the current study, cartilaginous tissue corruption by estimating serum levels of keratan sulfate (KS), hyaluronic acid (HA), and chondroitin sulfate (CS) 846 epitope for about one month using a reliable ACLT model and assessing the chondroprotective effect of FCP and glucosamine intake was explored. From current findings, the oral consumption of FCP or possibly glucosamine has been effectively regulated by cartilage degradation in the ACLT model. The assessment of various biomarkers for joint pain would be beneficial for the assessment of the progression of cartilaginous deterioration. In addition, the distinguished degrees of HA and CS 846 corresponded to histological observations, indicating that the HA and CS 846 figures could be worthwhile for checking the development of OA (Ohnishi et al. 2012). Thrombosis and hypertension remained the major causes of death linked with cardiovascular disease (Mackman 2008), but the search for potential therapies continues to be successful. In that context, the pulmonary collagen was utilized to make an APTA-sensor appropriate for the scientific discovery of thrombin in blood. The collagen was cross-linked to the amino thrombin aptamer developed by employing a

cross-linking agent (Derkus et al. 2016). This hybrid sensor exhibited a detection limit of 6.25 nM, well underneath the known clinical limits, indicating an intriguing potential involvement of collagen as an encouraging material for clinical thrombin testing (Derkus et al. 2016). Four novel R-purified angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor peptides purified from Esculentum hydrolyzed collagen were studied (Liu et al. 2016). Following oral administration of jellyfish collagen peptides angiotensin II aggregation in the kidney reduced, which resulted in a major drop in systolic and diastolic blood pressure (Zhuang et al. 2012).

4.5 Future Perspective

The current chapter should pave the way to further evaluate or re-evaluate possible marketable substitutions for collagen derived from marine sources. MCs should be a genuine substitute source of collagen. Marine species have a strong benefit in that they are believed to have a lower chance of spreading agents that induce human infection (Exposito et al. 2002) and are perceived to be much less concerned with cultural and religious issues over the human consumption of marine inferred goods. As described in the earlier parts of this study, "standard" forms of collagen, together with type I collagen commonly employed in health and foodstuffs, have been extracted and cleaned from various marine mammalian sources and non-mammals, of high purity and satisfactory yield, using traditional collagen purification techniques. However, while native, undenatured triple helix collagen is meant for use in human health goods, it can also be selected from those with maximum denaturation temperatures. It is also predicted that more structural stabilization of these marine collagens will be needed by chemical derivatives, resulting in higher temperature denaturation and greater resistance to enzymatic degradation (Zhuang and Sun 2012). A recent investigation gives a scientific logic to future uses of fish collagen as an osteogenic part in the fields of tissue engineering and stem cell treatment (Liu and Sun 2020). Marine collagen can provide real new opportunities for first-to-market opportunities, especially in the areas of health care, diversification and reduction of protection risks and cultural and religious issues, and the advancement of expertise on collagen production from different sources.

4.6 Conclusion

Marine originated proteins and peptides are turning into a significant option for medicinal applications. Numerous bioactive proteins and peptides have been developed by chemical or enzymatic hydrolysis from marine fish and have been considered as a secure alternative for the production of different items. The use of peptides and proteins extracted from marine organisms helps to reduce the environmental contamination initiated by the waste created by the fish handling industry. A great deal of consideration has been given to MC for cosmeceutical applications due to its properties for skin hydration, with low smell and better mechanical efficiency.

Furthermore, marine peptides have been thoroughly studied for medicinal applications because of their numerous organic properties, including cancer prevention, antimicrobial, photoprotective, and anti-photoactive behaviors. The poorer thermal stability of MC might be because of short residues of amino acids in comparison to mammalian collagen. The denaturation temperature of MC may be improved by the changed extraction process and the development of a composite compound for biomedical applications. Modifying the thermal stability of MC will discover a new product with the possible use of collagen in medicinal and biomedical applications and gives a premise tissue regeneration in the near future. A wide variety of collagen applications have been reported and a few more are standing to be uncovered later on. Work proceeds to find many unexplored origins of collagen and novel uses. The present state of collagen isolated from the ECM of spineless creatures and its uses in the therapeutic sector have been addressed, and some light has been shed on potential points of view of this vital marine substance. Discussion of purification methods in this analysis may be of many benefits in the production of distilled collagen from invertebrates. The various extraction techniques of marine species have been explained with descriptive imaging. The results obtained show the ability of marine invertebrates to produce new medicines, especially for bone tissue regeneration. In outline, this survey study indicates that MC can be an additional source of collagen to traditional bovine and porcine collagen. Collagen peptides extracted from MC have been appeared to display captivating biological behaviors. The prevalence of collagen in fish, starfish, wipes, jellyfish, and so on, the obstruction of certain collagen-derived peptides to gastrointestinal digestion, and their ability to enter the circulatory system indicate that MC could be a source—an intriguing bioactive peptide with exciting applications, functional food and drug distribution. A substantial amount of collagen workers have now been seen and even more are being kept up in the future. The investigation is also in transit to see the complex unexplored sources of collagen and modern applications.

References

Aladin DM, Cheung KM, Ngan AH, Chan D, Leung VY, Lim CT, Luk KD, Lu WW (2010) Nanostructure of collagen fibrils in human nucleus pulposus and its correlation with macroscale tissue mechanics. J Orthop Res 28(4):497–502

Alberti KGM, Zimmet P, Shaw J (2005) The metabolic syndrome—a new worldwide definition. Lancet 366(9491):1059–1062

Albu MG, Ghica MV, Leca M, Popa L, Borlescu C, Cremenescu E, Giurginca M, Trandafir V (2010) Doxycycline delivery from collagen matrices crosslinked with tannic acid. Mol Cryst Liq Cryst 523:97–105. ISSN 1542-1406

Albu MG, Titorencu I, Ghica MV (2011) Collagen-based drug delivery systems for tissue engineering, 17, pp. 333–358

Alves AL, Marques AL, Martins E, Silva TH, Reis RL (2017) Cosmetic potential of marine fish skin collagen. Cosmetics 4(4):39

Ando M, Ando M, Makino M, Tsukamasa Y, Makinodan Y, Miyosh M (2001) Interdependence between heat solubility and pyridinoline contents of squid mantle collagen. J Food Sci 66(2):265–269

Aneiros A, Garateix A (2004) Bioactive peptides from marine sources: pharmacological properties and isolation procedures. J Chromatogr B 803(1):41–53

Arpornmaeklong P, Suwatwirote N, Pripatnanont P, Oungbho K (2008) Growth and differentiation of mouse osteoblasts on chitosan–collagen sponges. J Oral Maxillofac Surg 36(4):328–337

Asghari F, Samiei M, Adibkia K, Akbarzadeh A, Davaran S (2017) Biodegradable and biocompatible polymers for tissue engineering application: a review. Artif Cells Nanomed Biotechnol 45(2):185–192

Astre G, Deleruyelle S, Dortignac A, Bonnet C, Valet P, Dray C (2018) Diet-induced obesity and associated disorders are prevented by natural bioactive type 1 fish collagen peptides (Naticol®) treatment. J Physiol Biochem 74(4):647–654

Baehaki A, Suhartono MT, Sukarno Syah D, Setyahadi S (2016) Collagen peptides from fish skin with angiotensin I-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor and cancer antiproliferative activity. Res J Pharmac Biol Chem Sci 7(1):1994–2000

Bama P, Vijayalakshimi M, Jayasimman R, Kalaichelvan PT, Decca Raman M, Sankaranarayanan S (2010) Extraction of collagen from cat fish (Tachysurus maculatus) by pepsin digestion and preparation and characterization of collagen chitosan sheet. Int J Pharm Pharm Sci 2(4):133–137

Bardan A, Nizet V, Gallo RL (2004) Antimicrobial peptides and the skin. Expert Opin Biol Ther 4(4):543–549

Barzideh Z, Latiff AA, Gan CY, Benjakul S, Karim AA (2014) Isolation and characterization of collagen from the ribbon jellyfish (Chrysaora sp.). Int J Food Sci Technol 49(6):1490–1499

Baum CL, Arpey CJ (2005) Normal cutaneous wound healing: clinical correlation with cellular and molecular events. Dermatol Surg 31(6):674–686

Benedetto CD, Barbaglio A, Martinello T, Alongi V, Fassini D, Cullora E, Patruno M, Bonasoro F, Barbosa MA, Carnevali MDC, Sugni M (2014) Production, characterization and biocompatibility of marine collagen matrices from an alternative and sustainable source: the sea urchin Paracentrotus lividus. Mar Drugs 12(9):4912–4933

Benito-Ruiz P, Camacho-Zambrano M, Carrillo-Arcentales JN, Mestanza-Peralta MA, Vallejo-Flores CA, Vargas-López SV, Villacís-Tamayo RA, Zurita-Gavilanes LA (2009) A randomized controlled trial on the efficacy and safety of a food ingredient, collagen hydrolysate, for improving joint comfort. Int J Food Sci Nutr, 60(sup2), pp. 99–113

Bradt JH, Mertig M, Teresiak A, Pompe W (1999) Biomimetic mineralization of collagen by combined fibril assembly and calcium phosphate formation. Chem Mater 11(10):2694–2701

Brown KL, Phillips TJ (2010) Nutrition and wound healing. Clin Dermatol 28(4):432–439

Buehler MJ, Yung YC (2009) Deformation and failure of protein materials in physiologically extreme conditions and disease. Nat Mater 8(3):175–188

Calejo MT, Almeida AJ, Fernandes AI (2012) Exploring a new jellyfish collagen in the production of microparticles for protein delivery. J Microencapsul 29(6):520–531

Carvalho AM, Marques AP, Silva TH, Reis RL (2018) Evaluation of the potential of collagen from codfish skin as a biomaterial for biomedical applications. Marine Drugs 16(12):495

Cen L, Liu WEI, Cui LEI, Zhang W, Cao Y (2008) Collagen tissue engineering: development of novel biomaterials and applications. Pediatr Res 63(5):492–496

Chak V, Kumar D, Visht S (2013) A review on collagen-based drug delivery systems. Int J Pharm Teach Pract 4(4):811–820

Chang SW, Buehler MJ (2014) Molecular biomechanics of collagen molecules. Mater Today 17(2):70–76

Chen JY, Lin WJ, Lin TL (2009) A fish antimicrobial peptide, tilapia hepcidin TH2-3, shows potent antitumor activity against human fibrosarcoma cells. Peptides 30(9):1636–1642

Chen T, Hou H, Lu J, Zhang K, Li B (2016) Protective effect of gelatin and gelatin hydrolysate from salmon skin on UV irradiation-induced photoaging of mice skin. J Ocean Univ China 15(4):711–718

Cheng X, Shao Z, Li C, Yu L, Raja MA, Liu C (2017) Isolation, characterization and evaluation of collagen from jellyfish Rhopilema esculentum Kishinouye for use in hemostatic applications. PLoS One 12(1):e0169731

Chvapil M, Kronenthal RL, van Winkle JW (1973) Medical and surgical applications of collagen. Int Rev Connect Tissue Res 6:1–61

Coppola D, Oliviero M, Vitale GA, Lauritano C, D'Ambra I, Iannace S, de Pascale D (2020) Marine collagen from alternative and sustainable sources: extraction, processing and applications. Mar Drugs 18(4):214

Cui-Feng ZHU, Guan-Zhi LI, Hong-Bin PENG, Zhang F, Yun CHEN, Yong LI (2010) Effect of marine collagen peptides on markers of metabolic nuclear receptors in type 2 diabetic patients with/without hypertension. Biomed Environ Sci 23(2):113–120

Currey JD (2002) Bones: structure and mechanics. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ

Dansereau R, Brock M, Redman-Furey N (1993) The solubilization of drug and excipient into a hydroxypropyl methylcellulose (HPMC)-based film coating as a function for the coating parameters in a 24″Accela-Cota®. Drug Dev Ind Pharm 19(7):793–808

Davidenko N, Campbell JJ, Thian ES, Watson CJ, Cameron RE (2010) Collagen–hyaluronic acid scaffolds for adipose tissue engineering. Acta Biomater 6(10):3957–3968

De Luca C, Mikhal'chik EV, Suprun MV, Papa Charalambous M, Truhanov AI, Korkina LG (2016a) Skin antiaging and systemic redox effects of supplementation with marine collagen peptides and plant-derived antioxidants: a single-blind case-control clinical study. Oxidative Med Cell Longev:4389410

De Luca C, Mikhal'chik EV, Suprun MV, Papacharalambous M, Truhanov AI, Korkina LG (2016b) Skin antiageing and systemic redox effects of supplementation with marine collagen peptides and plant-derived antioxidants: a single-blind case-control clinical study. Oxidative Med Cell Longev 2016

Delphi L, Sepehri H, Motevaseli E, Khorramizadeh MR (2016) Collagen extracted from Persian Gulf squid exhibits anti-cytotoxic properties on apple pectic treated cells: assessment in an in vitro bioassay model. Iran J Public Health 45(8):1054

Derkus B, Arslan YE, Bayrac AT, Kantarcioglu I, Emregul KC, Emregul E (2016) Development of a novel apta-sensor using jellyfish collagen as matrix and thrombin detection in blood samples obtained from patients with various neuro-disease. Sens Actuators B Chem 228:725–736

Exposito JY, Cluzel C, Garrone R, Lethias C (2002) Evolution of collagens. Anat Rec 268(3):302–316

Exposito JY, Valcourt U, Cluzel C, Lethias C (2010) The fibrillar collagen family. Int J Mol Sci 11(2):407–426

Fan J, Zhuang Y, Li B (2013) Effects of collagen and collagen hydrolysate from jellyfish umbrella on histological and immunity changes of mice photoaging. Nutrients 5(1):223–233

Farstvedt E, Stashak TS, Othic A (2004) Update on topical wound medications. Clin Techn Equine Pract 3(2):164–172

Fernandez I, Moyano FJ, Diaz M, Martınez T (2001) Characterization of α-amylase activity in five species of Mediterranean sparid fishes (Sparidae, Teleostei). J Exp Mar Biol Ecol 262(1):1–12

Ferreira AM, Gentile P, Chiono V, Ciardelli G (2012) Collagen for bone tissue regeneration. Acta Biomater 8(9):3191–3200

Fraser RDB, MacRae TP, Miller A, Suzuki E (1983) Molecular conformation and packing in collagen fibrils. J Mol Biol 167(2):497–521

Fratzl P (2008) Collagen: structure and mechanics, an introduction, Collagen. Springer, Boston, MA, pp 1–13

Fujioka K, Takada Y, Sato S, Miyata T (1995) Novel delivery system for proteins using collagen as a carrier material: the mini-pellet. J Control Release 33(2):307–315

Gautieri A, Vesentini S, Redaelli A, Buehler MJ (2011) Hierarchical structure and nano-mechanics of collagen microfibrils from the atomistic scale up. Nano Lett 11(2):757–766

Gil CS, Gil VS, Carvalho SM, Silva GR, Magalhães JT, Oréfice RL, Mansur A, Mansur HS, Patricio PS, Oliveira LC (2016) Recycled collagen films as biomaterials for controlled drug delivery. New J Chem 40(10):8502–8510

Girgih AT, Udenigwe CC, Hasan FM, Gill TA, Aluko RE (2013) Antioxidant properties of Salmon (Salmo salar) protein hydrolysate and peptide fractions isolated by reverse-phase HPLC. Food Res Int 52(1):315–322

Gloyn AL, McCarthy MI (2008) Genetics: how the UKPDS contributed to determining the genetic landscape of type 2 diabetes. Diabet Med 25:35–40
Goissis G, De Sousa MH (2009) Characterization and in vitro release studies of tetracycline and rolitetracycline immobilized on anionic collagen membranes. Mater Res 12(1):69–74
Gonçalves-Neto J, Witzel SS, Teodoro WR, Carvalho-Júnior AE, Fernandes TD, Yoshinari HH (2002) Changes in collagen matrix composition in human posterior tibial tendon dysfunction. Joint Bone Spine 69(2):189–194
Gorgieva S, Kokol V (2011) Biomaterials applications for nanomedicine. InTech, China
Gotterbarm T, Richter W, Jung M, Vilei SB, Mainil-Varlet P, Yamashita T, Breusch SJ (2006) An in vivo study of a growth-factor enhanced, cell free, two-layered collagen–tricalcium phosphate in deep osteochondral defects. Biomaterials 27(18):3387–3395
Han SH, Uzawa Y, Moriyama T, Kawamura Y (2011) Effect of collagen and collagen peptides from bluefin tuna abdominal skin on cancer cells. Health 3(03):129
Hartford Svoboda KK, Reenstra WR (2002) Approaches to studying cellular signaling: a primer for morphologists. Anat Rec 269(2):123–139
Hassan ZM, Feyzi R, Sheikhian A, Bargahi A, Mostafaie A, Mansouri K, Shahrokhi S, Ghazanfari T, Shahabi S (2005) Low molecular weight fraction of shark cartilage can modulate immune responses and abolish angiogenesis. Int Immunopharmacol 5(6):961–970
He Y, Yang J, Li H, Shao H, Wei C, Wang Y, Li M, Xu C (2015) Exogenous spermine ameliorates high glucose-induced cardiomyocytic apoptosis via decreasing reactive oxygen species accumulation through inhibiting p38/JNK and JAK2 pathways. Int J Clin Exp Pathol 8(12):15537
Henrotin Y, Lambert C, Couchourel D, Ripoll C, Chiotelli E (2011) Nutraceuticals: do they represent a new era in the management of osteoarthritis? –a narrative review from the lessons taken with five products. Osteoarthr Cart 19(1):1–21
Hoskin DW, Ramamoorthy A (2008) Studies on anticancer activities of antimicrobial peptides. Biochim Biophys Acta Biomembr 1778(2):357–375
Hoyer B, Bernhardt A, Heinemann S, Stachel I, Meyer M, Gelinsky M (2012) Biomimetically mineralized salmon collagen scaffolds for application in bone tissue engineering. Biomacromolecules 13(4):1059–1066
Hu Z, Yang P, Zhou C, Li S, Hong P (2017) Marine collagen peptides from the skin of Nile Tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus): characterization and wound healing evaluation. Mar Drugs 15(4):102
Hulmes DJ, Wess TJ, Prockop DJ, Fratzl P (1995) Radial packing, order, and disorder in collagen fibrils. Biophys J 68(5):1661–1670
Imhoff JM, Garrone R (1983) Solubilization and characterization of Chondrosia reniformis sponge collagen. Connect Tissue Res 11(2–3):193–197
Jain A, Singh SK, Arya SK, Kundu SC, Kapoor S (2018) Protein nanoparticles: promising platforms for drug delivery applications. ACS Biomater Sci Eng 4(12):3939–3961
Jang IS, Park SJ (2016a) A Spirulina maxima-derived peptide inhibits HIV-1 infection in a human T cell line MT4. Fisher Aquat Sci 19(1):1–5
Jang IS, Park SJ (2016b) Hydroxyproline-containing collagen peptide derived from the skin of the Alaska pollock inhibits HIV-1 infection. Mol Med Rep 14(6):5489–5494
Jeevithan E, Bao B, Bu Y, Zhou Y, Zhao Q, Wu W (2014) Type II collagen and gelatin from silvertip shark (Carcharhinus albimarginatus) cartilage: Isolation, purification, physicochemical and antioxidant properties. Mar Drugs 12(7):3852–3873
Jeevithan E, Bao B, Zhang J, Hong S, Wu W (2015) Purification, characterization and antioxidant properties of low molecular weight collagenous polypeptide (37 kDa) prepared from whale shark cartilage (Rhincodon typus). J Food Sci Technol 52(10):6312–6322
Jongjareonrak A, Benjakul S, Visessanguan W, Nagai T, Tanaka M (2005) Isolation and characterisation of acid and pepsin-solubilised collagens from the skin of Brown stripe red snapper (Lutjanus vitta). Food Chem 93(3):475–484
Karsdal M (2016) In: Karsdal M (ed) Biochemistry of collagens, laminins and elastin: structure, function and biomarkers. Academic Press, Cambridge, MA, pp 127–129
Khan R, Khan MH (2013) Use of collagen as a biomaterial: an update. J Indian Soc Periodontol 17(4):539

Khong NM, Yusoff FM, Jamilah B, Basri M, Maznah I, Chan KW, Armania N, Nishikawa J (2018) Improved collagen extraction from jellyfish (Acromitus hardenbergi) with increased physical-induced solubilization processes. Food Chem 251:41–50

Kim SK, Kim YT, Byun HG, Nam KS, Joo DS, Shahidi F (2001) Isolation and characterization of antioxidative peptides from gelatin hydrolysate of Alaska pollock skin. J Agric Food Chem 49(4):1984–1989

Kim SK, Ngo DH, Vo TS (2012) Marine fish-derived bioactive peptides as potential antihypertensive agents. In: Advances in food and nutrition research, vol 65. Academic Press, pp 249–260

Kittiphattanabawon P, Benjakul S, Visessanguan W, Nagai T, Tanaka M (2005) Characterisation of acid-soluble collagen from skin and bone of bigeye snapper (Priacanthus tayenus). Food Chem 89(3):363–372

Kjær M (2004) Role of extracellular matrix in adaptation of tendon and skeletal muscle to mechanical loading. Physiol Rev 84(2):649–698

Kreuter J, Muller W, Swatschek D, Schatton W, Schatton M (2003) Method for isolating sponge collagen and producing nanoparticulate collagen, and the use thereof. U.S. Patent Application 10/204,873

Kumanan R, Manimaran S, Saleemulla K, Dhanabal SP, Nanjan MJ (2010) Screening of bark of Cinnamomum tamala (Lauraceae) by using α-amylase inhibition assay for anti-diabetic activity. Int J Pharmac Biomed Res 1(2):69–72

Kumar LV, Shakila RJ, Jeyasekaran G (2019) In vitro anti-cancer, anti-diabetic, anti-inflammation and wound healing properties of collagen peptides derived from unicorn leatherjacket (Aluterus Monoceros) at different hydrolysis. Turk J Fisher Aquat Sci 19(7):551–560

Langasco R, Cadeddu B, Formato M, Lepedda AJ, Cossu M, Giunchedi P, Pronzato R, Rassu G, Manconi R, Gavini E (2017) Natural collagenic skeleton of marine sponges in pharmaceutics: Innovative biomaterial for topical drug delivery. Mater Sci Eng C 70:710–720

Leal MC, Puga J, Serôdio J, Gomes NC, Calado R (2012) Trends in the discovery of new marine natural products from invertebrates over the last two decades–where and what are we bioprospecting. PLoS One 7(1):e30580

Lee CH, Singla A, Lee Y (2001) Biomedical applications of collagen. Int J Pharm 221(1–2):1–22

Lee YG, Kim JY, Lee KW, Kim KH, Lee HJ (2003) Peptides from anchovy sauce induce apoptosis in a human lymphoma cell (U937) through the increase of caspase-3 and-8 activities. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1010(1):399–404

Lee EJ, Hur J, Ham SA, Jo Y, Lee S, Choi MJ, Seo HG (2017) Fish collagen peptide inhibits the adipogenic differentiation of preadipocytes and ameliorates obesity in high fat diet-fed mice. Int J Biol Macromol 104:281–286

León-López A, Morales-Peñaloza A, Martínez-Juárez VM, Vargas-Torres A, Zeugolis DI, Aguirre-Álvarez G (2019) Hydrolyzed collagen—sources and applications. Molecules 24(22):4031

Li XL, Xing QC, Dong B, Gao YY, Xing SS, Pang YZ, Jiang HF, Tang CS (2007) Plasma level of mitochondrial coupling factor 6 increases in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Int J Cardiol 117(3):411–412

Liang J, Pei XR, Wang N, Zhang ZF, Wang JB, Li Y (2010) Marine collagen peptides prepared from chum salmon (Oncorhynchus keta) skin extend the life span and inhibit spontaneous tumor incidence in Sprague-Dawley rats. J Med Food 13(4):757–770

Lin WJ, Chien YL, Pan CY, Lin TL, Chen JY, Chiu SJ, Hui CF (2009) Epinecidin-1, an antimicrobial peptide from fish (Epinephelus coioides) which has an antitumor effect like lytic peptides in human fibrosarcoma cells. Peptides 30(2):283–290

Lin Z, Solomon KL, Zhang X, Pavlos NJ, Abel T, Willers C, Dai K, Xu J, Zheng Q, Zheng M (2011) In vitro evaluation of natural marine sponge collagen as a scaffold for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Sci 7(7):968

Liu C, Sun J (2014) Potential application of hydrolyzed fish collagen for inducing the multidirectional differentiation of rat bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells. Biomacromolecules 15(1):436–443

Liu C, Sun J (2020) Impact of marine-based biomaterials on the immunoregulatory properties of bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells: potential use of fish collagen in bone tissue engineering. ACS Omega Article ASAP 5(43):28360–28368. https://doi.org/10.1021/acsomega.0c04360

Liu L, Wang Y, Peng C, Wang J (2013) Optimization of the preparation of fish protein anti-obesity hydrolysates using response surface methodology. Int J Mol Sci 14(2):3124–3139

Liu H, Zhao L, Guo S, Xia Y, Zhou P (2014) Modification of fish skin collagen film and absorption property of tannic acid. J Food Sci Technol 51(6):1102–1109

Liu X, Zhang M, Shi Y, Qiao R, Tang W, Sun Z (2016) Production of the angiotensin I converting enzyme inhibitory peptides and isolation of four novel peptides from jellyfish (Rhopilema esculentum) protein hydrolysate. J Sci Food Agric 96(9):3240–3248

Lu WP, Guo Y (2018) Electrospinning of collagen and its derivatives for biomedical applications. Nov Asp Nanofibers 39

Mackman N (2008) Triggers, targets and treatments for thrombosis. Nature 451(7181):914–918

Magnusson SP, Langberg H, Kjaer M (2010) The pathogenesis of tendinopathy: balancing the response to loading. Nat Rev Rheumatol 6(5):262–268

Mehbub MF, Lei J, Franco C, Zhang W (2014) Marine sponge derived natural products between 2001 and 2010: trends and opportunities for discovery of bioactives. Mar Drugs 12(8):4539–4577

Mendis E, Rajapakse N, Kim SK (2005) Antioxidant properties of a radical-scavenging peptide purified from enzymatically prepared fish skin gelatin hydrolysate. J Agric Food Chem 53:581–587

Meyer M (2019) Processing of collagen based biomaterials and the resulting materials properties. Biomed Eng Online 18(1):24

Muthumari K, Anand M, Maruthupandy M (2016) Collagen extract from marine finfish scales as a potential mosquito larvicide. Protein J 35(6):391–400

Nagai T, Worawattanamateekul W, Suzuki N, Nakamura T, Ito T, Fujiki K, Nakao M, Yano T (2000) Isolation and characterization of collagen from rhizostomous jellyfish (Rhopilema asamushi). Food Chem 70(2):205–208

Nagai T, Nagamori K, Yamashita E, Suzuki N (2002) Collagen of octopus Callistoctopus arakawai arm. Int J Food Sci Technol 37(3):285–289

Nagai N, Mori K, Satoh Y, Takahashi N, Yunoki S, Tajima K, Munekata M (2007) In vitro growth and differentiated activities of human periodontal ligament fibroblasts cultured on salmon collagen gel. J Biomed Mater Res Part A 82(2):395–402

Nagai T, Suzuki N, Nagashima T (2008) Collagen from common minke whale (Balaenoptera acutorostrata) unesu. Food Chem 111(2):296–301

Nagai T, Suzuki N, Tanoue Y, Kai N, Nagashima T (2010) Characterization of acid-soluble collagen from skins of surf smelt (Hypomesus pretiosus japonicus Brevoort). Food Nutr Sci 1(2):59

Naito K, Watari T, Furuhata A, Yomogida S, Sakamoto K, Kurosawa H, Kaneko K, Nagaoka I (2010) Evaluation of the effect of glucosamine on an experimental rat osteoarthritis model. Life Sci 86(13–14):538–543

Ndinguri MW, Zheleznyak A, Lauer JL, Anderson CJ, Fields GB (2012) Application of collagen-model triple-helical peptide-amphiphiles for CD44-targeted drug delivery systems. J Drug Del 2012

Nicklas M, Schatton W, Heinemann S, Hanke T, Kreuter J (2009a) Preparation and characterization of marine sponge collagen nanoparticles and employment for the transdermal delivery of 17β-estradiol-hemihydrate. Drug Dev Ind Pharm 35(9):1035–1042

Nicklas M, Schatton W, Heinemann S, Hanke T, Kreuter J (2009b) Enteric coating derived from marine sponge collagen. Drug Dev Ind Pharm 35(11):1384–1388

Nikoo M, Xu X, Benjakul S, Xu G, Ramirez-Suarez JC, Ehsani A, Kasankala LM, Duan X, Abbas S (2011) Characterization of gelatin from the skin of farmed Amur sturgeon Acipenser schrenckii. Int Aquat Res 3(2):135–145

Nikoo M, Benjakul S, Ehsani A, Li J, Wu F, Yang N, Xu B, Jin Z, Xu X (2014) Antioxidant and cryoprotective effects of a tetrapeptide isolated from Amur sturgeon skin gelatin. J Funct Foods 7:609–620

Ohnishi A, Osaki T, Matahira Y, Tsuka T, Imagawa T, Okamoto Y, Minami S (2012) Evaluation of the chondroprotective effects of glucosamine and fish collagen peptide on a rabbit ACLT model using serum biomarkers. J Vet Med Sci:12–0240

Orgel JP, Miller A, Irving TC, Fischetti RF, Hammersley AP, Wess TJ (2001) The in situ super molecular structure of type I collagen. Structure 9(11):1061–1069

Orgel JP, Irving TC, Miller A, Wess TJ (2006) Microfibrillar structure of type I collagen in situ. Proc Natl Acad Sci 103(24):9001–9005

Pal GK, Suresh PV (2016) Sustainable valorization of seafood by-products: Recovery of collagen and development of collagen-based novel functional food ingredients. Innovative Food Sci Emerg Technol 37:201–215

Panduranga Rao K (1996) Recent developments of collagen-based materials for medical applications and drug delivery systems. J Biomater Sci Polym Ed 7(7):623–645

Pei X, Yang R, Zhang Z, Gao L, Wang J, Xu Y, Zhao M, Han X, Liu Z, Li Y (2010) Marine collagen peptide isolated from Chum Salmon (Oncorhynchus keta) skin facilitates learning and memory in aged C57BL/6J mice. Food Chem 118(2):333–340

Picot L, Bordenave S, Didelot S, Fruitier-Arnaudin I, Sannier F, Thorkelsson G, Bergé JP, Guérard F, Chabeaud A, Piot JM (2006) Antiproliferative activity of fish protein hydrolysates on human breast cancer cell lines. Process Biochem 41(5):1217–1222

Pozzolini M, Bruzzone F, Berilli V, Mussino F, Cerrano C, Benatti U, Giovine M (2012) Molecular characterization of a nonfibrillar collagen from the marine sponge Chondrosia reniformis Nardo and positive effects of soluble silicates on its expression. Mar Biotechnol 14(3):281–293

Pozzolini M, Scarfì S, Gallus L, Castellano M, Vicini S, Cortese K, Gagliani MC, Bertolino M, Costa G, Giovine M (2018) Production, characterization and biocompatibility evaluation of collagen membranes derived from marine sponge Chondrosia reniformis Nardo, 1847. Mar Drugs 16(4):111

Prockop DJ, Kivirikko KI (1995) Collagens: molecular biology, diseases, and potentials for therapy. Annu Rev Biochem 64(1):403–434

Raftery RM, Woods B, Marques AL, Moreira-Silva J, Silva TH, Cryan SA, Reis RL, O'Brien FJ (2016) Multifunctional biomaterials from the sea: assessing the effects of chitosan incorporation into collagen scaffolds on mechanical and biological functionality. Acta Biomater 43:160–169

Rainey JK, Wen CK, Goh MC (2002) Hierarchical assembly and the onset of banding in fibrous long spacing collagen revealed by atomic force microscopy. Matrix Biol 21(8):647–660

Ramshaw JA, Shah NK, Brodsky B (1998) Gly-XY tripeptide frequencies in collagen: a context for host–guest triple-helical peptides. J Struct Biol 122(1–2):86–91

Rao JV, Pallela R, Prakash GVSB (2011) Prospects of marine sponge collagen and its applications in cosmetology. Mar Cosmeceut 20:77–103

Rege K, Patel SJ, Megeed Z, Yarmush ML (2007) Amphipathic peptide-based fusion peptides and immunoconjugates for the targeted ablation of prostate cancer cells. Cancer Res 67(13):6368–6375

Ri SX, Hideyuki K, Koretaro T (2007) Characterization of molecular species of collagen in scallop mantle. Food Chem 102(4):1187–1191

Rodrigues EG, Dobroff AS, Cavarsan CF, Paschoalin T, Nimrichter L, Mortara RA, Santos EL, Fázio MA, Miranda A, Daffre S, Travassos LR (2008) Effective topical treatment of subcutaneous murine B16F10-Nex2 melanoma by the antimicrobial peptide gomesin. Neoplasia 10(1):61–68

Sadowska M, Kołodziejska I, Niecikowska C (2003) Isolation of collagen from the skins of Baltic cod (Gadus morhua). Food Chem 81(2):257–262

Sayani C, Ronald TR (2014) Collagen-based biomaterials for wound healing. Biopolymers 101(8):821–833

Schmidt MM, Dornelles RCP, Mello RO, Kubota EH, Mazutti MA, Kempka AP, Demiate IM (2016) Collagen extraction process. Int Food Res J 23(3):913–922
Shoulders MD, Raines RT (2009) Collagen structure and stability. Annu Rev Biochem 78:929–958
Silva TH, Moreira-Silva J, Marques AL, Domingues A, Bayon Y, Reis RL (2014) Marine origin collagens and its potential applications. Mar Drugs 12(12):5881–5901
Silva JC, Barros AA, Aroso IM, Fassini D, Silva TH, Reis RL, Duarte ARC (2016) Extraction of collagen/gelatin from the marine demosponge Chondrosia reniformis using water acidified with carbon dioxide–process optimization. Ind Eng Chem Res 55(25):6922–6930
Simhaee DA, Marsano A, Fomovsky GM, Niedt G, Wu JK (2009) Efficacy and mechanisms of vacuum-assisted closure (VAC) therapy in promoting wound healing: a rodent model. J Plast Reconstr Aesthet Surg 62(10):1331–1338
Song E, Kim SY, Chun T, Byun HJ, Lee YM (2006) Collagen scaffolds derived from a marine source and their biocompatibility. Biomaterials 27(15):2951–2961
Sorushanova A, Delgado LM, Wu Z, Shologu N, Kshirsagar A, Raghunath R, Mullen AM, Bayon Y, Pandit A, Raghunath M, Zeugolis DI (2019) The collagen suprafamily: from biosynthesis to advanced biomaterial development. Adv Mater 31(1):1801651
Stumvoll M, Goldstein BJ, Van Haeften TW (2005) Type 2 diabetes: principles of pathogenesis and therapy. Lancet 365(9467):1333–1346
Subhan F, Kang HY, Lim Y, Ikram M, Baek SY, Jin S, Jeong YH, Kwak JY, Yoon S (2017) Fish scale collagen peptides protect against CoCl2/TNF-α-induced cytotoxicity and inflammation via inhibition of ROS, MAPK, and NF-κB pathways in HaCaT cells. Oxidative Med Cell Longev 2017:1–17
Swatschek D, Schatton W, Müller WE, Kreuter J (2002) Microparticles derived from marine sponge collagen (SCMPs): preparation, characterization and suitability for dermal delivery of all-trans retinol. Eur J Pharm Biopharm 54(2):125–133
Tan CC, Karim AA, Latiff AA, Gan CY, Ghazali FC (2013) Extraction and characterization of pepsin-solubilized collagen from the body wall of crown-of-thorns Starfish (Acanthaster planci). Int Food Res J 20(6):3013
Tangvarasittichai S, Pongthaisong S, Tangvarasittichai O (2016) Tumor necrosis factor-A, interleukin-6, C-reactive protein levels and insulin resistance associated with type 2 diabetes in abdominal obesity women. Indian J Clin Biochem 31(1):68–74
Tharindu RL, Senadheera DD, Fereidoon S (2020) Sea cucumber derived type I collagen: a comprehensive review. Mar Drugs 18(9):471
Tschöp M, DiMarchi R (2017) Single-molecule combinatorial therapeutics for treating obesity and diabetes. Diabetes 66(7):1766–1769
Veeruraj A, Arumugam M, Ajith Kumar T, Balasubramanian T (2012) Isolation and characterization of drug delivering potential of type-I collagen from eel fish Evenchelys macrura. J Mater Sci Mater Med 23(7):1729–1738
Venkatesan J, Anil S, Kim SK, Shim MS (2017) Marine fish proteins and peptides for cosmeceuticals: a review. Mar Drugs 15(5):143
Vogel WF (2001) Collagen-receptor signaling in health and disease. Eur J Dermatol 11(6):506–514
Wahlig H, Dingeldein E (1980) Antibiotics and bone cements: experimental and clinical long-term observations. Acta Orthop Scand 51(1–6):49–56
Wang JHC (2006) Mechanobiology of tendon. J Biomech 39(9):1563–1582
Wang L, An X, Yang F, Xin Z, Zhao L, Hu Q (2008) Isolation and characterization of collagens from the skin, scale and bone of deep-sea redfish (Sebastes mentella). Food Chem 108(2):616–623
Wang W, Itoh S, Aizawa T, Okawa A, Sakai K, Ohkuma T, Demura M (2010a) Development of an injectable chitosan/marine collagen composite gel. Biomed Mater 5(6):065009
Wang J, Zhang Z, Pei X, Yang R, Li Y (2010b) Effects of marine collagen peptides on blood glucose and lipid metabolism in hyper insulinemic rats. Wei sheng yan Jiu J Hyg Res 39(2):143

Wang J, Xu M, Liang R, Zhao M, Zhang Z, Li Y (2015) Oral administration of marine collagen peptides prepared from chum salmon (Oncorhynchus keta) improves wound healing following cesarean section in rats. Food Nutr Res 59(1):26411

Woo JW, Yu SJ, Cho SM, Lee YB, Kim SB (2008) Extraction optimization and properties of collagen from yellowfin tuna (Thunnus albacares) dorsal skin. Food Hydrocoll 22(5):879–887

Yamada S, Nagaoka H, Terajima M, Tsuda N, Hayashi Y, Yamauchi M (2013) Effects of fish collagen peptides on collagen post-translational modifications and mineralization in an osteoblastic cell culture system. Dent Mater J 32(1):88–95

Yumuk V, Tsigos C, Fried M, Schindler K, Busetto L, Micic D, Toplak H (2015) European guidelines for obesity management in adults. Obes Facts 8(6):402–424

Yusoff FM, Bakar J, Basri M, Ismail M, Khong NMH (2013) A method for extracting collagen from aquatic animals, collagen and products containing it. WO2015012682A3, 2013

Żelechowska E, Sadowska M, Turk M (2010) Isolation and some properties of collagen from the backbone of Baltic cod (Gadus morhua). Food Hydrocoll 24(4):325–329

Zhang Y, Liu W, Li G, Shi B, Miao Y, Wu X (2007) Isolation and partial characterization of pepsin-soluble collagen from the skin of grass carp (Ctenopharyngodon idella). Food Chem 103(3):906–912

Zhang M, Liu W, Li G (2009) Isolation and characterisation of collagens from the skin of large fin longbarbel catfish (Mystus macropterus). Food Chem 115(3):826–831

Zhang Z, Wang J, Ding Y, Dai X, Li Y (2011) Oral administration of marine collagen peptides from Chum Salmon skin enhances cutaneous wound healing and angiogenesis in rats. J Sci Food Agric 91(12):2173–2179

Zhentao J, Wei R, Lian C, Muyi C, Weixue Y (2009) Isolation of marine collagen peptide with ion exchange chromatography and research of the anti-oxidative activity [J]. Food Ferment Ind 2(35):71–75

Zhu CF, Peng HB, Liu GQ, Zhang F, Li Y (2010a) Beneficial effects of oligopeptides from marine salmon skin in a rat model of type 2 diabetes. Nutrition 26(10):1014–1020

Zhu CF, Li GZ, Peng HB, Li Y, Zhang F, Chen Y (2010b) Therapeutic effects of marine collagen peptides on Chinese patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus and primary hypertension. Am J Med Sci 340(5):360–366

Zhu CF, Li GZ, Peng HB, Zhang F, Chen Y, Li Y (2010c) Treatment with marine collagen peptides modulates glucose and lipid metabolism in Chinese patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Appl Physiol Nutr Metab 35(6):797–804

Zhu C, Zhang W, Mu B, Zhang F, Lai N, Zhou J, Xu A, Liu J, Li Y (2017a) Effects of marine collagen peptides on glucose metabolism and insulin resistance in type 2 diabetic rats. J Food Sci Technol 54(8):2260–2269

Zhu C, Zhang W, Liu J, Mu B, Zhang F, Lai N, Zhou J, Xu A, Li Y (2017b) Marine collagen peptides reduce endothelial cell injury in diabetic rats by inhibiting apoptosis and the expression of coupling factor 6 and microparticles. Mol Med Rep 16(4):3947–3957

Zhuang YL, Sun LP (2012) Anti-melanogenic activities of collagen peptides from jellyfish (Stomolophus meleagris). Adv Mater Res 343:505–512

Zhuang Y, Sun L, Zhao X, Wang J, Hou H, Li B (2009) Antioxidant and melanogenesis-inhibitory activities of collagen peptide from jellyfish (Rhopilema esculentum). J Sci Food Agric 89(10):1722–1727

Zhuang Y, Sun L, Zhang Y, Liu G (2012) Antihypertensive effect of long-term oral administration of jellyfish (Rhopilema esculentum) collagen peptides on renovascular hypertension. Mar Drugs 10(2):417–426

Zoetendal EG, Vaughan EE, de Vos WM (2006) A microbial world within us. Mol Microbiol 59: 1639–1650

Marine Biopolymers for Gene Delivery

5

Sheetal Yadav, Vineet Kumar Jain, and Keerti Jain

Abstract

The marine ecosystem species biodiversity including algae, crustacean, and plant offers biopolymers such as chitin, chitosan, alginate, gelatin, laminarin, lignin, pullulan, etc. for industrial and pharmaceutical application. Marine biopolymers are an alternative source for mammalian biopolymers and play a significant role in marine waste management. In addition, plentiful properties of marine polymers, i.e., biocompatibility, lack of toxicity, biodegradability, ease of surface functionalization, antioxidant, and low cost, have steadily grown in popularity. The cationic nature of a biopolymer enables effective condensation and transfection of nucleic acid to overcome its extracellular and intracellular obstacles. Surface modification or combination of marine polymer with other polymers is a strategy to improve physicochemical properties. Furthermore processability issues, content, and physicochemical properties variation between species limit applicability of marine biopolymers, which needs to be resolved. This chapter will highlight the application of marine biopolymer for the delivery of siRNA, pDNA, and CRISPR/Cas9 for the effective treatment of various diseases.

Keywords

Marine biopolymer · Gene · Delivery · Vector · Condensation · Transfection · Chitosan

S. Yadav · K. Jain (✉)
Department of Pharmaceutics, National Institute of Pharmaceutical Education and Research (NIPER)—Raebareli, Lucknow, India

V. K. Jain
Department of Pharmaceutics, Delhi Pharmaceutical Sciences and Research University (DPSRU), New Delhi, India

S. Jana, S. Jana (eds.), *Marine Biomaterials*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-5374-2_5

5.1 Introduction

Gene therapy encompasses the treatment of various disease, i.e., neurological disorders, cancers, and AIDS via inactivation of disease-causing gene or introduction and replacement with healthy gene (Rai et al. 2020). Gene therapy generally involves the introduction of genetic material such as pDNA, RNA (siRNA, shRNA) and antisense oligonucleotides (AONs) (Kargaard et al. 2019), and CRISPR/Cas9 for therapeutic application (Knott and Doudna 2018). Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes gene introduction was firstly reported in 1989 in humans (Massadeh and Al Aamery 2016). Delivery of naked nucleic acid was limited by several extracellular and intracellular hurdles which forced scientists to develop a suitable vehicle for effective delivery. Nonviral gene delivery vectors are less effective than viral vector but offer less immunogenicity, cost-effectiveness, and reproducibility, which makes them attractive vector for gene delivery (Nayerossadat et al. 2012).

Complex diversity of marine system is an indiscernible part of the ecosystem, and about 70% of the Earth is covered with ocean with 5 lakh species. Marine animals and plants are excellent sources of minerals, carotenoids, proteins, vitamins, peptides, and polysaccharides (Kadam et al. 2015). Nowadays gene delivery via nonviral polymer including marine-derived biopolymer is major exploring area. Marine biopolymers, e.g., chitosan, alginate, gelatin, lignin, pullulan, laminarin, etc., are naturally abundant in marine algae and crustaceans (e.g., crabs, lobsters, shrimps, prawns, and crayfish) (Lee et al. 2017). Marine biopolymers with unique properties, i.e., renewability, stability, being cost-effective and abundant, biocompatible, biodegradable, and nontoxicity, make them potential polymeric carriers in gene delivery (Manivasagan et al. 2017). In this chapter, we reviewed different marine polymers and their applicability in DNA, RNA, and CRISPR/Cas9 delivery to overcome the obstructions associated with nucleic acid delivery.

5.2 Challenges in Gene Delivery

Delivery of gene is not an easy job, due to various intracellular and extracellular barriers which poses strong challenges in gene delivery. The extracellular challenges involve instability in serum environment, cellular uptake, biodistribution, and rapid clearance, whereas intracellular hurdles include poor endosomal escape and off-target effects, mainly (Parlea et al. 2016). Gene delivery through intravenous or intramuscular injection experience serum environment where the presence of divalent calcium activates endonuclease enzymes which is responsible for gene degradation (Jinturkar and Misra 2011). Another complication involves the existence of tight junction between vascular endothelial cells which limits the paracellular or transcellular transport of molecules with size >5 nm diameter (Johannes and Lucchino 2018).

Cellular internalization of polyplexes is rate-limiting factor which depends on cellular interaction of the carrier and cell membrane (Lai and Wong 2018). Anionic charge on nucleic acid causes repulsive interaction with negatively charged cell

membrane which leads to the lack of spontaneous penetrability (Jinturkar and Misra 2011). Nanoparticles, carrying gene or nucleic acid as nonviral vector, having particle size approximately 1 μm, 100 nm, 50–80 nm follow phagocytosis, micropinocytosis, clathrin, and caveolae-mediated endocytosis respectively for cellular internalization (Ita 2020). Large nanoparticles >100 nm undergo RES engulfment and throw-out by RES organs (liver, spleen, lung, and bone marrow), and very small particles (8 nm or about 40 KD) are easily taken up by the kidney and suffer with short half-life and poor biodistribution due to fast renal clearance (Parlea et al. 2016; Chen et al. 2015; Jinturkar and Misra 2011).

Cationic polymeric nanoparticle (e.g., polylactic acid) showed tendency to form aggregates in the gastric environment and spleen homogenate (Lazzari et al. 2012); moreover aggregation in a circulation increases risk of embolus formation (Rai et al. 2019). After endocytic cellular internalization, another barrier involves inability to escape endosomal lysis (pH 4.5–6.2). Gene or nucleic acids taken up via endocytosis get trapped in early endosome where the existence of lysozyme degrade nucleic acids (Zhou et al. 2019). Delivery of miRNA induces Toll-like receptors (TLR) including upregulation of cytokines, IFN-α, IFN-β, IL-1B, and IL-6 via immune-toxic type 1 interferon pathway (Chen et al. 2015). Extracellular and intracellular barriers (Fig. 5.1) which limit gene delivery necessitated surge for a promising and suitable polymeric vector to overcome these obstacles, and marine biopolymers could be one possibility in this regard and may lead to successful gene delivery for effective treatment.

5.3 Marine Biopolymers

Nonviral vectors are extensively being investigated for gene delivery including polymeric nanoparticles, dendrimers, carbon nanotubes, lipid nanoparticles, etc. Polymers including marine biopolymers like chitin, chitosan, lignin, laminarin, gelatin, pullulan, and alginate have been explored by scientists for fabrication of prospective gene delivery vectors with promising results (Fig. 5.2).

5.3.1 Chitin

Chitin (cationic linear polysaccharide) is the second most abundant biopolymer comprising β-1-4 linked N-acetyl-D-glucosamine and D-glycosamine (Younes and Rinaudo 2015). The word chitin is derived from the French word *chitine* which means tunic or coverage. Chitin content has been investigated in different species like the exoskeleton of arthropods which contains 15–40% chitin whereas 20–30% chitin has been found in crustacean shells (Buschmann et al. 2013; Kurita 2006). Marine source of chitin includes mushrooms, crabs, shrimps, shells, grooved tiger prawn, Jinga shrimps, cuttlefish, scyllarid, and swimming crabs (Younes and Rinaudo 2015). Certain fish species, e.g., *Chlorurus sordidus*, *Lutjanus argentimaculatus*, and *Oreochromis niloticus*, contain low chitin concentration

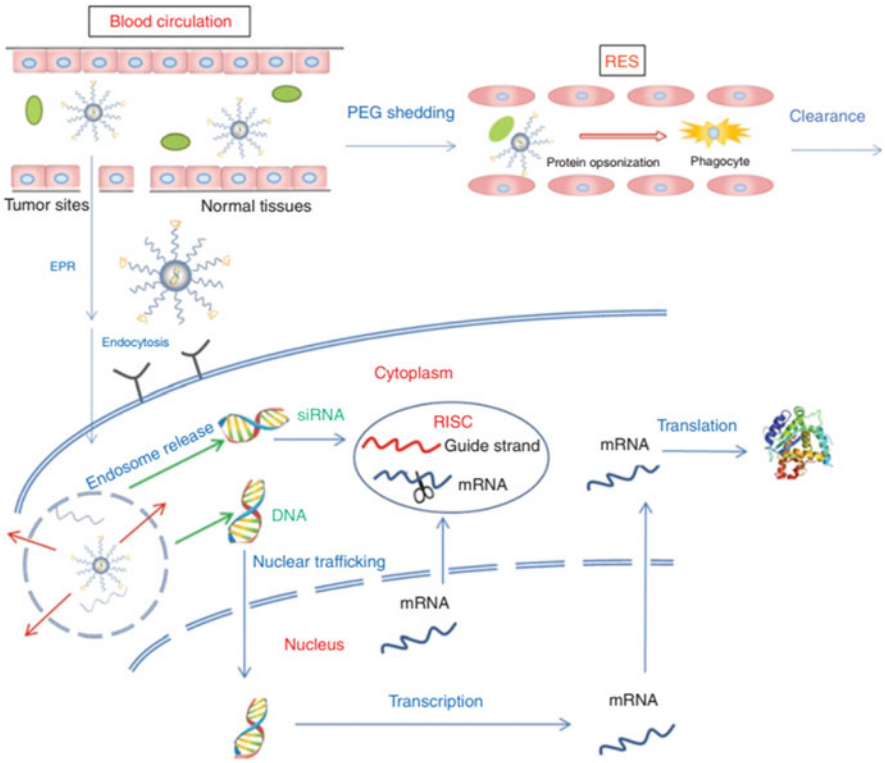


Fig. 5.1 Schematic presentation of extracellular and intracellular challenges/hurdles to be overcome for promising gene delivery (reproduced with permission from Zhang et al. 2012)

(Rumengan et al. 2017). The featured physiochemical and biological characteristics depend on molecular weight and degree of acetylation.

Chitosan (pKa close to 6.5) is deacetylated chitin prepared through the removal of R-$NHCOCO_3$ of chitin followed by alkali treatment at elevated temperature (Mohammed et al. 2017). Chitosan is having extensive relevance in the industrial field due to some important properties, such as biodegradable, antibacterial, non-toxic, nonimmunogenic,

noncarcinogenic, and biocompatibility (Manivasagan et al. 2017). Chitosan significantly dissolves in acidic solution but is insoluble in basic solution, while surface modification could improve the physicochemical property of chitosan (Negm et al. 2020). Additionally, the higher transfection efficiency could be achieved by fabricating nanoparticles using chloride, glutamate, acetate, aspartate, or lactate salts of chitosan (Weecharangsan et al. 2008). The surface functionalization of chitosan has been achieved with groups like thiol, phosphorus, glutaraldehyde, EDTA, epichlorohydrin, carboxylic acid, methacrylic acid, and benzoylated sulfate (Negm et al. 2020). Chitosan surface modification with histidine or imidazole has shown a great potential to improve proton sponge effect resulting in perfect

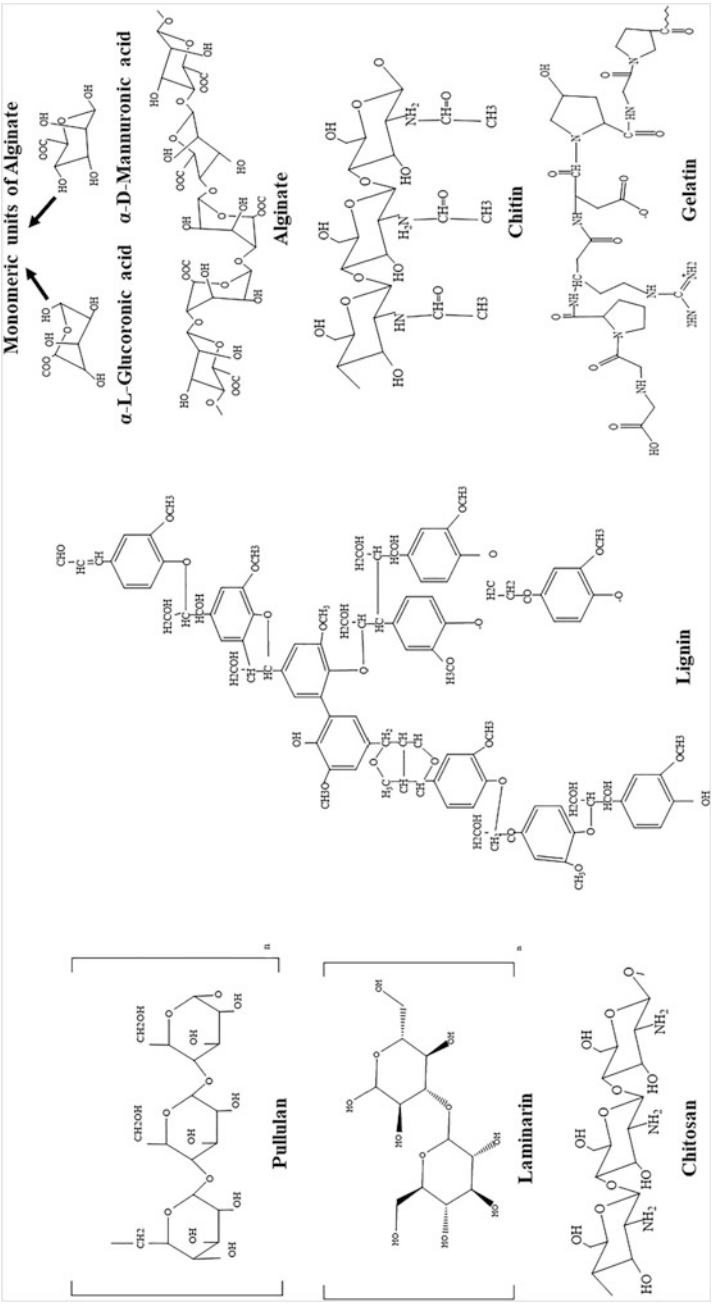


Fig. 5.2 Structure of few important marine biopolymers explored for gene delivery

endosomal escape (Chang et al. 2010). Various forms of chitosan include films, membranes, microparticles, beads, nanofibers, scaffolds, and nanoparticles (Manivasagan et al. 2017). Owing to mucoadhesive nature, chitosan interacts with mucin which reduces its clearance. Cross-linking with sodium tripolyphosphate enhances stability, shielding, and transfection efficiency of chitosan (Collado-González et al. 2019, Jonassen et al. 2012).

5.3.2 Alginate

Alginate is a linear and unbranched polysaccharide polymer (M.W. 33,000–400,000 g/mol) of 1,4-linked β-d-mannuronic acid (M) and α-l-glucuronic acid (G) residue (Szekalska et al. 2016) extracted from the extracellular matrix of brown algae (e.g., *Ascophyllum nodosum*, *Laminaria hyperborea*, *Macrocystis pyrifera*, *Laminaria digitata*, and *Laminaria japonica*) (Smidsrod and Skjakbrk 1990). Alginate has pinched much consideration due to its biodegradable, biocompatible, mucoadhesive, and hemocompatible properties (Rajaonarivony et al. 1993). Alginate marine biopolymer is naturally available in forms of alginate salt, i.e., Ca, Mg, and Na alginates (Shahabi-Ghahfarrokhi et al. 2020), and functionally characterized according to M/G ratio (Grøndahl et al. 2020). Alginates are having a block or alternating copolymer arrangement and content variation observed in different sources, such as *Pseudomonas* species lack alginate whereas *L. japonica* and *L. hyperborea* contain low and high alginate content, respectively (Rehm and Valla 1997).

The chemical structure is responsible for different characteristics of alginates, like M content stimulates cytokine production whereas cross-linking G-blocks with divalent cation Ca^{+2} is used to formulate hydrogel (Lee and Mooney 2012). Complexation of alginate with cationic polymer enhances the transfection efficiency, cytotoxicity, and shielding effect (Hu and Tsou 2014). Mixing of alginates with other materials could overcome mechanical weakness and poor cell binding problems associated with alginate. The egg box mechanism responsible for gelation includes G residue-assisted ionic bridge formation between polymer chain followed by chain-to-chain associations by calcium ion (Shahabi-Ghahfarrokhi et al. 2020). Alginate-based nanoparticle has been formulated by different methods including covalent cross-linking, self-assembly, complexation method in combination with chitosan, and emulsification method (Venkatesan et al. 2016).

5.3.3 Gelatin

Collagen frequently obtained from bovine and pork skin by acidic and alkaline hydrolysis yields denatured protein gelatin. Collagen consists of two α1 chains and one α2 chain with repeating amino acid sequence Gly-X-Y in the structure where X and Y illustrate proline and hydroxyproline units, respectively (Duconseille et al. 2015). Natural collagen exists in 29 types among them type 1 is abundant in nature (Liu et al. 2015). The major drawback associated with animal-derived collagen or gelatin except marine includes mad cow disease (bovine spongiform

encephalopathy); certain social and religious limitation of Hinduism and Islam leads to necessitate alternative source of gelatin (Coppola et al. 2020). Fishes are an important food product for the massive population and processing their waste is of major concern for the environment. The waste materials (skin, bones, and scales) are rich in collagen protein and could be plentiful alternative sources (Wasswa et al. 2007).

Worldwide production percentage of gelatin from marine source (1.5%) is quite lesser than pig (41%), bovine hide (28.5%), and bovine bones (29.5%) (Milovanovic and Hayes 2018). Kumar et al. (2017) extracted gelatin from croaker fish (*Johnius* species) skin belonging to family Sciaenidae having bloom strength of 193.4 g and pH 6.57 (1% solution). Marine gelatin obtained from collagen required shorter extraction time, but having poor textural characteristics (Kumar et al. 2017) and low imino (proline and hydroxyproline) content leads to lower melting point and gel strength (Fu et al. 2019). Generally, gelatin extracted from fish skin has low amino content than fish scales and bones (Das et al. 2017). Fish gelatin species are having variation in imino contents, functional properties, and amino acid compositions (Milovanovic and Hayes 2018). Collagen extraction from the aquatic sponge's species incorporates *Spongia graminea*, *Microciona prolifera*, *Haliclona oculata* (Gross et al. 1956), *Axinella cannabina*, *Suberites carnosus* (Tziveleka et al. 2017), *Hippospongia communis*, *Cacospongiascalaris* (Junqua et al. 1974), and *Geodia cydonium* (Diehl-Seifert et al. 1985).

Gelatin extracted from marine snail *Rapana venosa* in the family Muricidae performing acidic and enzymatic extraction using pepsin by thermal hydrolysis at temperature 60 °C shows no cytotoxicity with better cytocompatibility (Gaspar-Pintiliescu et al. 2019). Surface modification of gelatin through grafting and cross-linking with the cross-linking agents (hydroxyl, amine, and acid) can improve rheological properties. Modification of gelatin via mixing with proteins, salts, transglutaminase, glutaraldehyde, and polysaccharides is necessary for improvement of its properties so that it can compete with mammalian gelatin in terms of required properties (Lin et al. 2017).

5.3.4 Laminarin

Laminarin known as leucosin or laminaran (Kadamet al. 2014) is β-glycan food reserve material after carbon fixation in seaweed containing >30% on dry mass (Dobinson et al. 2020). Laminarin consists of 1, 3β-glucan and 1-6 β-glycosidic bond (Kadam et al. 2015). The M and G subdivision of laminarin contains mannitol and glucose terminal, respectively (Dobrincic et al. 2020). Laminarin is a plentiful biocompatible, biodegradable polymer with intestinal metabolism-modulating activity (Deville et al. 2007). Laminarin widespread applicability comprises TRAIL/DR pathway-dependent (Ji and Ji 2014) apoptosis and antiproliferation (mitochondrial pathway), allergic, anticoagulant (Kadam et al. 2014), and antioxidant activity (EC 50 value 460 μg/ml) (Choi et al. 2011) activity in the pharmaceutical field (Zargarzadeh et al. 2020). Various methods to extract laminarin are proposed, but

extraction in hot and mild acidic conditions followed by precipitation using 85% ethanol is majorly applied (Kadam et al. 2014). Laminarinase (exo- and endo-B-1,3-glucanase)-mediated hydrolysis resulted in the conversion of laminarin into glucose and oligosaccharide (Dobrincic et al. 2020).

5.3.5 Lignin

In 1813 Swiss botanist A. P. Candolle used the word "lignum" for lignin which means wood. Lignin is a natural copious biopolymer obtained from plant cell walls. Cell wall component and microfibril bind together with dense matrix which is ultimately responsible for stiffness and strength of the secondary cell wall (Martone et al. 2009). Lignin is complex, aromatic, and insoluble heteropolymer having antioxidant, biodegradability, and free radical scavenger properties (Ho et al. 2018).

Lignin contains different residues, i.e., p-hydroxyphenyl (H), guaiacyl (G), and syringyl residues derived from p-coumaryl alcohol, coniferyl alcohol, and sinapyl alcohol, respectively (Ten et al. 2014). Analysis of lignin content in marine sediment or environment is performed via chemical decomposition or thermochemoanalysis (over 600 °C). Generally, mild oxidants nitrobenzene or cupric oxide are used for chemical decomposition gives oxidants products like p-hydroxyl, vanillyl, syringyl and cinnamyl series, which are quantitatively estimated using chromatographic techniques (Li et al. 2012). Lignin extracted from marine red algae *Callarthron chellosrioides* (Martone et al. 2009), duckweed (Yadav et al. 2017), and *A. pinnata* is extensively used as an alternative in the field of biopolymer production (Setiawati et al. 2018).

5.3.6 Pullulan

Pullulan is exocarbohydrate biopolymer extracted from marine black yeast-like fungus *Aureobasidium pullulans* belonging to the family Dothideaceae having characteristic features of chlamydospores production (Bozoudi and Tsaltas 2018). Another source includes microorganisms, i.e., *Tremella*, *Cyttaria*, *Teloschistes flavicans*, *Cytariaharioti*, *Rhodotorulabacarum*, and *Cryphonectria parasitica* (Singh et al. 2017). De Bary Bernier in 1958 firstly reported pullulan as *Dematium pullulans*. Furthermore, Bender et al. in 1959 defined that pullulan structure consisted of maltotriose units (trimers of glucose connected by α-1,4 glycosidic linkage) and joint together with α-1,6 glycosidic bond (Bender et al. 1959). Pullulan generally having molecular weight range of 5000–9,000,000 g/mol is considered as exploring candidate in the field of biopolymer due to some featured properties, i.e., aqueous solubility, linear chain, flexibility, nontoxicity, and biodegradability (Kimoto et al. 1997).

Pullulan is being explored as polymeric carriers for gene delivery because of its good biocompatibility and safety profile (Prajapati et al. 2013). Biosynthesis of pullulan involves phosphoester bond formation between D-glucose and lipid

molecule mediated via UDPG. After that lipid-linked glucose structure interaction with isomaltosyl will produce isopanosyl or pyranosyl residue which further leads to polymerization of pullulan chain (Singh et al. 2017). Gibson and Coughlin (2002) performed batch fermentation process for production of pullulan from five strains of *A. pullulans* (NRRL Y-2311-1, NRRL Y-6220, NRRL Y-2567, NRRL Y-12972, and NRRL Y-12974) demonstrating extensive higher pullulan concentration in strain NRRL Y-2311-1 (Gibson and Coughlin 2002). Sulfated, phosphorylated, carboxylated, chlorinated, sulphinylethylated, and etherified pullulan are widely used for industrial application (Singh et al. 2015). Additionally conjugation or grafting of pullulan to the 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, 4-dimethyl amino pyridine (Singh et al. 2017), diethylaminoethylamine (Sherly et al. 2020), glycidyltrimethylammonium chloride (Moraes et al. 2020), poly(L-lysine), and vinylimidazole (Caroline and Rekha 2017) provides significant improved properties and application.

5.4 Application of Marine Biopolymer in Gene Delivery

Marine biopolymers are integral part of the nonviral vector and overcome the barriers associated with naked nucleic acid delivery. Different applications of marine biopolymers in gene delivery are compiled in Table 5.1. Marine biopolymers are providing protective shielding which prevents serum degradation of naked gene. Cationic marine biopolymers like chitosan create an electrostatic connection with anionic nucleic acids providing good condensation and protection of gene (Chaun et al. 2019). Cationic biopolymer complex with nucleic acid is known as polyplex (PP), generally ionizable polyplexes having pKa value of 5–7 most preferable for DNA condensation (Prabu and Ruckmani 2017). Nucleic acid complex with polymers easily gets permeated through cell membrane due to the positive charge of biopolymer; further internalization of polyplexes generally follows endocytic pathways (Rafael et al. 2015).

Polyplex prevents endosomal degradation (pH 4.5–6.2) via promoting proton sponge effect in which cationic biopolymer prevents acidification of endosome so more proton is carried out by ATPase enzyme. Further influx of chloride ions to maintain proton concentration facilitates high ionic strength mediated osmotic swelling which is responsible for endosome rupture and escape of polyplex (Zhou et al. 2019). Additionally biocompatibility, antioxidant, and better cytotoxicity profile of marine biopolymers plays a significant role in gene therapy. The wide range applicability of different marine biopolymers for gene delivery is discussed.

5.4.1 DNA Delivery

Plasmid DNA delivery is introduced in the human body to treat inheritable disorders including severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID), tumor disease, cystic fibrosis, Lesch-Nyhan disease, and Gaucher disease associated with particular gene

Table 5.1 Marine biopolymer application in gene delivery

S. N.	Marine biopolymer-based nanosystem	Therapeutic DNA/RNA	Disease	Outcome/result	Reference
1.	Chitosan nanoparticle (CNP)	PKindling-Red-Mito pDNA	Cancer	CNP significantly enhances 2.8-fold of transfection efficiency than naked DNA and prevents stress	Bor et al. (2016)
2.	Lipid coated chitosan NP (lipochitoplex)	pDNA	—	Lipochitoplex (50–60 nm) having good transfection in HEK-293 cell and lipidic shield reduces the cytotoxicity and hemolysis	Baghdan et al. (2018)
3.	Chitosan-sodium deoxycholate NP	pDNA expressing Gaussia luciferase gene	Gastric carcinoma	NP exhibited good transfection in AGS, N87 cell line with >90% cell viability in N87 cell	Cadete et al. (2012)
4.	Alginate microsphere	PVAX-GFP pDNA	—	Microsphere having encapsulation efficiency 72.9–74.4% can efficiently load up to 6 μg/ml pDNA. In intestinal cells increasing the dose from 50 μg/ml to 100 μg/ml, expression of GEF was increased 13-fold	Nograles et al. (2012)
5.	Alginate nanoparticles	IL-10 pDNA	Arthritis	Reduction of IL-10 expression reduces the paw edema and also prevents other inflammatory mediators such as TNF-a, IL-1B, IL-6	Jain et al. (2015)
6.	Cholamine modified gelatin NP	AEG-1 gene target siRNA	Breast cancer	GNP with 96% loading capacity reveal the 77.25% metadherin protein inhibition after 72 h incubation	Abozeid et al. (2016)
7.	Glycidyltrimethylammonium pullulan	Calf thymus DNA	Liver disease	NP exhibited endocytotic hepatic internalization, >90% cell viability, and chain flexibility of pullulan making it hemocompatible	Rekha and Sharma (2009)
8	Pullulan hydrogel	pBUDLacZ plasmid	—	Pullulan NP having 80% and 70% cell viability on COS-7 and HEK cells, respectively, at 20 mg/ml. B-Gal high expression observed in COS-7 cells	Gupta and Gupta (2004)
9.	TMC chitosan NP	Snail specific siRNA	Prostate cancer	ChNP-CMD-SN38-siRNA NP administration exhibited sustained release up to 46 h, upregulation of E- cadherin and claudin-1 expression resulted in EMT pathway suppression, and SN38 enhances NF-KB. This nanosystem ultimately reduces the proliferation and migration of PC-3 cells	Afkham et al. (2017)

10.	Cholesterol-grafted chitosan micelles	Curcumin and siRNA	Lung cancer	Administration of micelles shows clathrin-mediated endocytosis, potential siRNA stability in serum until 30 days in lung cancer	Muddineti et al. (2018)
11.	Diethylaminoethyl chitosan ($DEAE_{15}$-CH_{230})	TNF-a siRNA delivery	Cancer	Nanoparticle effectively shows good condensation and significant 80–90% gene knockdown. MTT assay, cell viability assay performed in HELA cell reported low toxicity and 90% cell viability at concentration 1.0 μg/ml. Further PEG and folic acid conjugation completely inhibit TNF-a expression	De Souza et al. (2018)
12.	Carboxymethyl chitosan NP (CMC NP)	Anti-B-catenin siRNA	Colorectal cancer	CMC NP effectively load 70.7% siRNA and significantly 40.10% B-catenin expression reduction is observed in HT29 cells	Yan et al. (2020)
13.	Carboxymethyl dextran (CMD) chitosan NP	Doxorubicin (DOX) and IL17RB siRNA	Breast cancer	CMD-Ch-NP (particle size 114 nm) loaded with siRNA silence IL17RB gene ultimately decrease NF-KB and BCL2 expression. Synergistic effect of DOX and siRNA potentially reduces proliferation, migration, and apoptotic cell death in MDA-MB-361 cells	Alinejad et al. (2016)

deficiency (Patil et al. 2005). Chitosan is a naturally abundant biopolymer used as a nonviral vehicle for gene delivery having important properties, i.e., biocompatibility, nontoxicity, DNA condensation, and transfection efficiency. Liu et al. (2019) reported a ternary nanocomplex of folate-conjugated cis-aconitic amide-polyethylenimine with thiolated trimethyl chitosan/pDNA (187 nm) for efficient condensation of pDNA in treatment of cancer disease. In this nanocomplex quaternization, thiolation and folic acid (FA) addition improve solubility, stability, and delivery of pDNA in FA positive cells. Cis-aconitic acid (Aco) provides a protective shield to the binary complex of thiolated trimethylated chitosan (TMC-SH) conjugated with pDNA. Further charge reversible ability of FA-PEI-Aco in endosomal pH provides breakage of poor endosomal/lysosomal escape barrier due to proton sponge effect. Also, results obtained from various studies confirmed that FA-PEI-Aco/TMC-SS/pDNA exhibited low toxicity and more cellular uptake in HeLa cells. Confocal microscopy with YOYO-1 labeling demonstrated endosomal/lysosomal escape ability of chitosan NP for pDNA delivery (Liu et al. 2019).

Polyelectrolytes such as silk, hyaluronate, and dextran are used to enhance gelation properties. Chitosan nanoparticle complex with polyelectrolyte exhibited good efficacy in the delivery of human SET1 antisense (17mer DNA-based oligonucleotide) for downregulation of hSET1 gene expression which is overexpressed in malignant cells. Optimum formulation containing trimethylated chitosan (0.2–0.47 mg/ml) and hyaluronate (0.35 mg/ml), exhibited serum stability, no toxicity (up to 42 μm), and decrease in cell viability with 45% reduction in hSET1 expression in MCF-7 cell line. The scientist also reported that this nanosystem could be a good promising candidate in the colon and intestinal cancers (Baghaei et al. 2020). However delivery of pDNA is more difficult than siRNA delivery due to size and cell nucleus site of action. Co-assembled Ca^{+2} alginate sulfate nanoparticles having particle size of 270 nm and zeta potential approximately 14 mV is a suitable nanocarrier for delivery of pDNA in cancer therapy. Cytocompatibility of NP is carried out in different cells, i.e., CT26 cell, MDA-MB-231, HepG2, and neonatal rat isolated cardiac fibroblast. MDA-MB-231 cell line reveals better cytotoxicity profile, ~70% cellular uptake and ~ 30% GFP expression upon MTT assay and flow cytometer studies, respectively (Goldshtein et al. 2019). Hydrogel also has enormous potential in the delivery of pDNA which could be understood with alginate grafted PNIPAAm (Alg-g-PNIPAAm) hydrogel preparation. Hydrogel consists of 10% alginate and 90% thermoresponsive polymer PNIPAAm which provides stiffness and gelling property to the formulation, respectively. This hydrogel provides excellent pDNA release, stability, low degradation, and better toxicity profile in PC3 or MG3 cells and maintains DNA integrity. Evaluation of formulation shows the impact of molecular weight and M/G ratio of alginate on their characteristic properties. The evaluation of hydrogel demonstrates alginate 3001 grafted PNIPAAm hydrogel acts as a suitable vehicle for pDNA or RALA/pDNA complex delivery. RALA is a cell-penetrating peptide (CPP) that inhibits the direct interaction of pDNA with hydrogel. In vitro and stability studies revealed that delivery of

RLDA/pDNA is better than free pDNA due to their low burst release (~20%) and ability to maintain DNA integrity even up to 30 days (Chalanqui et al. 2019).

Oxidative stress is a major problem associated with the administration of foreign nanoparticle due to the activation of NADPH oxidase that ultimately enhances H_2O_2 level resulting in DNA degradation and cell death (Manke et al. 2013). Lignin marine biopolymer-based nanocarrier having additional antioxidant activity and their variability of functional groups (i.e., phenol, hydroxyl, carbonyl, methoxy, aliphatic hydroxyl) provides long range of new biopolymer. Lignin cored poly (glycidyl methacrylate)-co-poly(ethylene glycol) methacrylate (lignin-PGMA-PEGMA) polymer is prepared via atom transfer radical polymerization (ATRP) within the size ranging 150–250 nm at N/P ratio 10 or higher capable of efficient condensation of pDNA. ATRP enhances the lignin compatibility with other polymer, and the poly(ethylene glycol) methacrylate (PEGMA) enhances the solubility of lignin in the formulation. In vivo evaluation parameters such as relative cell viability (RCV) in H2O2 stimulated cell and the antioxidant activity in HEK293T and HepG2 cells performed, respectively. Lignin-PGMA-PEGMA graft copolymer (LG100) is most suitable due to high transfection efficiency in serum environment and antioxidant activity ($\geq$12 μg/ml), but different RCV is exhibited by nanoparticles around ~100–150% in HEK293T or 80–140% in HepG2 cells. LG100 long PGEA arm is responsible for the high binding potential of DNA and stability than LG50–30 (Jiang et al. 2015).

Polyethylenimine (PEI) polymer having excessive cationic nature is responsible for cytotoxicity, so the addition of marine biopolymer pullulan potentially reduces the cytotoxicity and modification of pullulan also enhances the transfection efficiency. Vinyl imidazole grafted pullulan PEI shows better cytocompatibility and transfection efficiency than the dextran derivative used for gene delivery. Flow cytometric analysis investigated in C6 and HeLa cells demonstrates 98.67 $\pm$ 0.32 and 94.37 $\pm$ 1.17 percentage cellular uptake and 92.6 $\pm$ 0.14 and 87.1 $\pm$ 3.11 percentage transfection efficiency, respectively. Pullulan flexibility property contributes to the efficient coating of the positive charge of PEI without affecting transfection efficiency (Caroline Diana and Rekha 2017). Furthermore, Sherly et al. (2020) grafted PEI cationized pullulan and dextran with diethyl aminoethyl methacrylate (DEAEM) ratios 10:0.01 and 10:0.005. Furthermore, studies performed demonstrate PEI cationized pullulan with DEAEM (10:0.005) exhibited efficient protection of DNA from enzymatic degradation, significant 85% cell viability, and endocytic cellular uptake in C6 and HeLa cell lines while poor internalization in L929 cells. In vivo biodistribution evaluation in BALB/c mice demonstrates no vital organs (lungs, heart, and brain) accumulation with good renal clearance within 24 h. Therefore, result expression confirmed pullulan as an efficient nonviral vector in cancer treatment (Sherly et al. 2020). So widespread applicability of DNA delivery using marine biopolymers (Table 5.1) provides effective treatment in various diseases.

5.4.2 RNA Delivery

RNA-based therapeutic agents are generally including siRNA, shRNA, microRNA (miRNA), and mRNA used for the knockdown, upregulation, or expression of a gene (Shin et al. 2018). siRNA is short double-stranded RNA ~20 bp which can silence mRNA-based expressions (Senapati et al. 2019). Sodium alginate addition in lipoplex for delivery of siRNA provides improved stability, siRNA integrity, and transfection efficiency with better cytotoxicity profile. Sodium alginate anionic part interacts with cationic lipid and the formation of auto assembly takes place. Sodium alginate containing lipoplex (Nalg-siLex) is having better particle size, zeta potential, and PDI (182 ± 9, 0.295 ± 0.049, 59 ± 1) than without alginate lipoplex (siLex) (268 ± 87, 0.747 ± 0.151, 63 ± 9) respectively. This siRNA-loaded alginate lipoplex nanocarrier administration in mice not only confirms nontoxicity but also demonstrates no significant alteration in cytokine induction and hepatotoxicity (Arruda et al. 2019).

Hypoxia-inducing factor (HIF-1α) and CD73 expression are recognized in cell proliferation and tumor vascularization, so the introduction of siRNA for the particular target could lead to efficacious treatment (Ziello et al. 2007). Hajizadeh et al. (2020) encapsulated the HIF-1α siRNA and CD73 siRNA in thiolated chitosan and trimethyl chitosan functionalized superparamagnetic iron oxide nanoparticle. Chitosan contributes in stabilization and functionalization of nanosystem; thereafter addition of HIV-1 TAT peptide (CPP) binding through S-S bond provides efficient cellular uptake of the nanoparticle. Nanoparticles are having average size of 133 nm, zeta potential +26 mV, and PDI <0.3 for effective siRNA delivery with a loading capacity of 20 μm siRNA and 50% drug release up to 36 h. The cell line used for further studies includes CT26, 4T1, B16, and F10 cells. The confocal microscopy study investigates that there is an uptake of nanoparticles by 4T1 cells and NP are able to penetrate >75% of cells. Reduction in CD73, VEGF, TGF, and FGF expression is observed after HIF-1α siRNA addition in CD73 siRNA than CD73 loaded NP alone. Angiogenesis and tumor reduction are demonstrated after chick chorioallantoic membrane assay (Hajzadeh et al. 2020).

AXL overexpression associated with non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) surface affects the PI3K/Akt signaling and EGFR mutation induction. Gelatin nanoparticle (quenched 208 ± 4.2 nm and non-quenched 201 ± 1.9 nm) is covalently attached with EGFR antibody, and AXL siRNA ultimately decreases the mTOR and EMT pathway with the significant enhancement in p53 expression. GAbsiAXL (antibody-functionalized gelatin nanoparticle loaded with AXL siRNA) has higher cytoplasm accumulation in HCC827 cells, serum stability up to 48 h, and ~ 70% knockdown of AXL expression with >25 nm transfected siRNA. AXL inhibition would reduce the p-AKT, p-4EBP1, and p-p7056K level and mTOR inhibition (Suresh et al. 2019).

Laminarins obtained from marine sources (algae) are natural abundant marine biopolymers. B-cell-specific Moloney leukemia (BMI) presence is observed in cellular proliferation and mammary epithelial immortality, so PEI (600 Da) functionalized laminarin nanoparticle was investigated to effectively deliver

BMI-2 siRNA. MTT assay performed confirmed nontoxicity of nanoparticle with higher cell viability (up to 96 μg/ml) and maximum transfection efficacy using NLP/siRNA mass ratio 8:1. Further investigation of the siBMI-1 to siBMI-3 revealed that siBMI-2 has a higher potential for downregulation of BMI-1 expression and apoptotic cell death than others. Remarkable loss in BMI-1 mRNA and BMI expression is observed for laminarin-based nanoparticle (Ren et al. 2015). Sadreddini et al. (2016) reported carboxymethyl dextran chitosan nanoparticle (CMD-ChNP) for codelivery of doxorubicin (DOX) and snail siRNA in HCT-116 cells for the effective treatment of colorectal cancer. Snail transcription factor (STF) is mainly responsible for the upregulation of MMP-2, MMP-9, and vimentin (EMT dependent tumor progression marker) and downregulation of E-cadherin responsible for cancerous growth inhibition. Gene silencing of STF reduces MMP-9 and vimentin, and significant cadherin enhancement ultimately leads to tumor reduction with concentration > 2.5 μg/ml of DOX-siRNA-CMD-ChNP administration within 48 h (Sadreddini et al. 2016). miRNA are smaller molecules (Collado-González et al. 2019; Coppola et al. 2020; Das et al. 2017; De Souza et al. 2018; Devillé et al. 2007; Diehl-Seifert et al. 1985) bp) regulating translation and transcription process (Ling et al. 2013).

Moraes et al. (2020) investigated modified pullulan grafted with glycidyl trimethyl ammonium chloride could be an effective vector for miRNA with significant loading efficiency (80%), cytocompatibility up to 1000 μg/mL, and good cellular uptake comparative to free miRNA or unmodified pullulan (Moraes et al. 2020). VEGF associated with age-related macular degeneration responsible for mitogenic, vascular permeability enhancement has a high binding affinity for VEGF receptor 2 (VEGFR2). VEGFR2 expression inhibitions through siRNA delivery via trimethyl chitosan and hyaluronic acid nanoparticle lead to the efficient treatment of AMD disease which is evident that marine polymer is not only limited to cancerous treatment. The addition of HA in the chitosan provides stability to the nanoplex from the anionic nature of vitreous humor. TMC-HA incorporated VEGFR2 siRNA shows no toxicity, significant cellular uptake in RPE cell (retinal tissue), 70% downregulation of VEGFR2, and retinal distribution of siRNA through intravitreal injection. CNV lesion (laser-induced) in rat reduced after administration of nanoplex. CNV lesion of control, free HA, naked VEGFR2 siRNA, and VEGFR2 siRNA loaded polyplex is estimated at 113,728.15 ± 32,289.53 μm^2, 71,346.97 ± 15.541.86 μm^2, 46,287.39 ± 19,398.42 μm^2, and 36,501.67 ± 21.739.19 μm^2, respectively (Chaharband et al. 2020).

Neurotoxicity, post middle cerebral artery occlusion, and brain injury due to iNOS-derived NO could efficiently be treated via iNOS knockdown siRNA delivery using gelatin nanoparticle (GNP). Gelatin nanoparticle having optimum particle size of 100–300 nm and cross-linked with 0.0667% glutaraldehyde follows nasal to brain delivery pathway. iNOS siRNA/GNP provides great neuroprotective potential, prolonged release up to 7 days, and cell toxicity than bare iNOS siRNA. iNOS in cortical penumbra, cortical core, and postischemic brain is responsible for the suppression of infarct volume and motor improvement (Kim et al. 2016). Therefore

studies and research work reveal that marine biopolymers have wide applicability (Table 5.1) in cancers or other diseases also.

5.4.3 CRISPR/Cas9 Delivery

CRISPR/Cas9 is pathogen-specific RNA-guided endonuclease (Lino et al. 2018). The complementary guide sequence of RNA (gRNA) binds to DNA sequence portion, and Cas9 nuclease causes cleavage of double-stranded DNA (Hussain et al. 2019). The replacement of gRNA with single guide RNA (sgRNA) also causes Cas9 directed breakage of duplex DNA strand in the presence of protospacer adjacent motif (first ~20 nucleotides of the sgRNA) where alteration and error are provoked via nonhomologous end-joining (NHEJ) or homology-directed repair (HDR) pathways mechanism (Li et al. 2018).

CRISPR/Cas9 delivery using marine polymer chitosan is a promising genome editing candidate vector for disease treatment. Surface modification of chitosan enhances the potential of CRISPR/Cas9 delivery. PEGylation of chitosan showed improved mucus penetration, no toxicity at concentration of 200–500 μg/ml, nebulization stress, and DNase protection in lung disease. PEG-C (PEGylated N-phthaloyl medium M.W. chitosan) is having a higher DNA loading capacity than PEG-OC (PEGylated N-phthaloyl oligosaccharide low M.W. chitosan) (Zhang et al. 2018). Further, Zhang et al. (2020) reported the lactobionic acid functionalized chitosan nanoparticle potentially loaded with paclitaxel and sg-VEGFR2/Cas9 plasmids represented as CLPV NP significant release at pH 7.4 and pH 5.5 sustained up to 12 h and stable until 7 days. This system relies in terms of biocompatibility and safety, no cytokine, IL-1B, and IL-6 induction reported after administration of CLPV NP. Cell lines, i.e., ASGPR positive cell and HepG2 cell, show higher cellular uptake of CLPV NP than Lipofectamine. CLPV NP exhibited >35% VEGFR2 gene silencing, alleviated side effect, reduction of neoplasm in H22-bearing mice model, and > 60% VEGFR2 protein reduction in HepG2 (Zhang et al. 2020).

Targeted delivery of the CRISPER/Cas9 has also been explored by conjugating aptamer. Liu et al. formulated biotinylated carboxymethyl chitosan NP attached with AS1411 aptamer that provides dual targeting in cancer. CRISPER/Cas9 plasmid for knockdown of CDK11 protein enhances cell apoptosis and reduction in migration or invasion. Biotinylated and aptamer functionalized CMC chitosan NP electrostatically bind to PS/CaCO3/CaP/Plasmid core and the specific binding of nanoparticle on biotin and nucleolin receptor facilitate localization of NP in biotin and nucleolin positive 492 cells without significant effect on HEK293T cells. Western blot study demonstrated inhibition of CDK11 protein expression with downregulation of VEGF, MMP-9, and survivin followed by upregulation of p53 (Liu et al. 2018).

5.5 Limitations

Naturally abundant marine biopolymer has certain limitations which became a hurdle on their applicability. The major challenge working with laminarin is that its variability in properties depends on the biological source and environmental factors. Laminaria obtained from *L. digitata* has significant water solubility, but *L. hyperborea*-derived laminarin is water insoluble in nature. Laminarin content measurement in different marine sources, e.g., *L. hyperborea*, *L. digitata*, *Saccharina latissima*, *Fucus serrate*, *Fucus vesiculosus*, *Fucus spiralis*, *Himanthalia elongata*, *Pelvetia canaliculata*, and *Dictyota dichotoma*, was found to be 0.86 ± 0.01, 0.75 ± 0.01, 0.09 ± 0.01, 0.38 ± 0.09, 0.26 ± 0.02, 0.04 ± 0.001, 0.05 ± 0.01, 0.03 ± 0.001, and 0.07 ± 0.002 percent, respectively, while lack of laminarin is detected in *C. tamariscifolia*, *A.* nodosum, and *H. siliquosa* (Graiff et al. 2016).

Alginate separation from seaweed residue is challenging because insoluble residue blocks filter and their physicochemical properties are also affected due to the use of chemicals for extraction. A large volume of water is required for alginate extraction because alginate solubility in water enhances the viscosity (Nagarajan et al. 2016). Gelatin marine biopolymer temperature and strength depend on the presence of imino acids (hydroxyproline and proline) concentration. Marine fish gelatin comprises lower imino content (22–17%) than mammalian gelatins (30%). Gelatin films of cold-water fish species have less water vapor permeability in comparison to that obtained from warm water fish and mammalian gelatins (Milovanoviand Hayes 2018). Gel strength property is investigated in marine gelatin obtained from sole, megrim, cod, hake, and squid reported to have maximum gel strength for the first two while minimum for squid (Gómez-Guillén et al. 2002). Although chitosan is most widely used marine biopolymer for gene delivery, their water insolubility limits widespread applicability and required surface modification to overcome this limitation (Zhao et al. 2018).

5.6 Conclusion

Marine crustacean, brown or red algae, fishes, and mushrooms are ubiquitous natural resources of marine biopolymers. Gene therapy including siRNA, pDNA, and CRISPER/Cas9 delivery exhibited intracellular and extracellular obstacles which limit the application and efficacious treatment of disease. Cationic biopolymer as a nonviral vector is major research exploring area having a huge potential for significant condensation and transfection of naked nucleic acid via electrostatic interaction. Proton sponge effect of cationic marine biopolymer protects from lysosomal trapped NP degradation. Marine biopolymer-based gene administration not only is limited to tumor therapy but also gives advantageous effects on neurotoxicity, age-related macular dystrophy, and lung disease. Marine source diversity is also responsible for content variation that limits its applicability in gene delivery. Moreover, specific chemical modification of marine biopolymer could be an important aspect for

properties improvement of biopolymers such as solubility and cytocompatibility and targetability upon addition of ligand or aptamer. However, the design of marine biopolymer-based nanoparticles is extensively researched by researchers with efforts to overcome limitations and improve gene delivery.

Acknowledgments Authors are thankful to the National Institute of Pharmaceutical Education and Research (NIPER), Raebareli, Lucknow, India, for extending the facilities to write this chapter. *Communication no.*: NIPER-R/Communication/.

References

Abozeid SM, Hathout RM, Abou-Aisha K (2016) Silencing of the metastasis-linked gene, AEG-1, using siRNA-loaded cholamine surface-modified gelatin nanoparticles in the breast carcinoma cell line MCF-7. Colloids Surf B: Biointerfaces 145:607–616

Afkham A, Aghebati-Maleki L, Siahmansouri H, Sadreddini S, Ahmadi M, Dolati S, Afkham NM, Akbarzadeh P, Jadidi-Niaragh F, Younesi V, Yousefi M (2017) Chitosan (CMD)-mediated co-delivery of SN38 and snail-specific siRNA as a useful anticancer approach against prostate cancer. Pharmacol Rep 70:418–442

Alinejad V, Hossein Somi M, Baradaran B, Akbarzadeh P, Atyabi F, Kazerooni H, SamadiKafil H, AghebatiMaleki L, Siah Mansouri H, Yousefi M (2016) Co-delivery of IL17RB siRNA and doxorubicin by chitosan-based nanoparticles for enhanced anticancer efficacy in breast cancer cells. Biomed Pharmacother 83:229–240

Arruda DC, Gonzalez IJ, Finet S, Cordova L, Trichet V, Andrade GF, Hoffmann C, Bigey P, de Almeida Macedo WA, Da Silva CA, Malachias de Souza A, Escriou V (2019) Modifying internal organization and surface morphology of siRNA lipoplexes by sodium alginate addition for efficient siRNA delivery. J Colloid Interface Sci 540:342–353

Baghaei M, Tekie FSM, Khoshayand MR, Varshochian R, Hajiramezanali M, Kachousangi MJ, Dinarvand R, Atyabi F (2020) Optimization of chitosan-based polyelectrolyte nanoparticles for gene delivery, using design of experiment: in vitro and in vivo study. Mater Sci Eng C:118–111036. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.msec.2020.111036

Baghdan E, Pinnapireddy SR, Strehlow B, Engelhardt KH, Schäfer J, Bakowsky U (2018) Lipid coated chitosan-DNA nanoparticles for enhanced gene delivery. Int J Pharm 535:473–479

Bender H, Lehmann J, Wallenfels K (1959) Pullulan, einextracelluläres Glucan von Pullularia pullulans. Biochim Biophys Acta 36:309–316

Bor G, Mytych J, Zebrowski J, Wnuk M, Şanlı-Mohamed G (2016) Cytotoxic and cytostatic side effects of chitosan nanoparticles as a non-viral gene carrier. Int J Pharm 513:431–437

Bozoudi D, Tsaltas D (2018) The multiple and versatile roles of *Aureobasidium pullulans* in the vitivinicultural sector. Fermentation 4(4):85. https://doi.org/10.3390/fermentation4040085

Buschmann MD, Merzouki A, Lavertu M, Thibault M, Jean M, Darras V (2013) Chitosans for delivery of nucleic acids. Adv Drug Del Rev 65(9):1234–1270. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.addr.2013.07.005

Cadete A, Figueiredo L, Lopes R, Calado CCR, Almeida AJ, Gonçalves LMD (2012) Development and characterization of a new plasmid delivery system based on chitosan–sodium deoxycholate nanoparticles. Eur J Pharm Sci 45:451–458

Caroline Diana SM, Rekha MR (2017) Efficacy of vinyl imidazole grafted cationized pullulan and dextran as gene delivery vectors: a comparative study. Int J Biol Macromol 105:947–955

Chaharband F, Daftarian N, Kanavi MR, Varshochian R, Hajiramezanali M, Norouzi P, Arefian E, Atyabi F, Dinarvand R (2020) Trimethyl chitosan-hyaluronic acid nano-polyplexes for intravitreal VEGFR-2 siRNA delivery: formulation and in vivo efficacy evaluation. Nanomedicine 26:102181. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nano.2020.102181

Chalanqui MJ, Pentlavalli S, McCrudden C, Chambers P, Ziminska M, Dunne N, McCarthy HO (2019) Influence of alginate backbone on efficacy of thermo-responsive alginate-g-P(NIPAAm) hydrogel as a vehicle for sustained and controlled gene delivery. Mater Sci Eng C 95:409–421

Chang K-L, Higuchi Y, Kawakami S, Yamashita F, Hashida M (2010) Efficient gene transfection by histidine-modified chitosan through enhancement of endosomal escape. Bioconjug Chem 21:1087–1095

Chen Y, Gao D-Y, Huang L (2015) In vivo delivery of miRNAs for cancer therapy: challenges and strategies. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 81:128–141

Choi J, Kim H-J, Lee J-W (2011) Structural feature and antioxidant activity of low molecular weight laminarin degraded by gamma irradiation. Food Chem 129:520–523

Collado-González M, González Espinosa Y, Goycoolea FM (2019) Interaction between chitosan and mucin: fundamentals and applications. Biomimetics 4(2):32. https://doi.org/10.3390/biomimetics4020032

Coppola D, Oliviero M, Vitale GA, Lauritano C, D'Ambra I, Iannace S, de Pascale D (2020) Marine collagen from alternative and sustainable sources: extraction. Process Applic Mar Drugs 18(4):214. https://doi.org/10.3390/md18040214

Das MP, Suguna PR, Prasad KA, Vijaylakshmi JV, Renuka M (2017) Extraction and characterization of gelatin: a functional biopolymer. Int J Pharm Pharm Sci 9(9):239–242

De Souza RHFV, Picola IPD, Shi Q, Petrônio MS, Benderdour M, Fernandes JC, Lima AMF, Martins GO, Martinez Junior AM, de Oliveira Tiera VA, Tiera MJ (2018) Diethylaminoethyl-chitosan as an efficient carrier for siRNA delivery: improving the condensation process and the nanoparticles properties. Int J Biol Macromol 119:186–197

Devillé C, Gharbi M, Dandrifosse G, Peulen O (2007) Study on the effects of laminarin, a polysaccharide from seaweed, on gut characteristics. J Sci Food Agric 87:1717–1725

Diehl-Seifert B, Kurelec B, Zahn RK, Dorn A, Jericevic B, Uhlenbruck G, Müller WE (1985) Attachment of sponge cells to collagen substrata: effect of a collagen assembly factor. J Cell Sci 79:271–285

Dobrincic A, Balbino S, Zorić Z, Pedisić S, BursaćKovačević D, ElezGarofulić I, Dragović-Uzelac V (2020) Advanced technologies for the extraction of marine brown algal polysaccharides. Mar Drugs 18(3):168

Duconseille A, Astruc T, Quintana N, Meersman F, Sante-Lhoutellier V (2015) Gelatin structure and composition linked to hard capsule dissolution: a review. Food Hydrocoll 43:360–376

Fu Y, Therkildsen M, Aluko RE, Lametsch R (2019) Exploration of collagen recovered from animal by-products as a precursor of bioactive peptides: successes and challenges. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 59:2011–2027

Gaspar-Pintiliescu A, Stefan LM, Anton ED, Berger D, Matei C, Negreanu-Pirjol T, Moldovan L (2019) Physicochemical and biological properties of gelatin extracted from marine snail *Rapana venosa*. Mar Drugs 17(10):589

Gibson LH, Coughlin RW (2002) Optimization of high molecular weight pullulan production by Aureobasidium pullulans in batch fermentations. Biotechnol Prog 18:675–678

Goldshtein M, Shamir S, Vinogradov E, Monsonego A, Cohen S (2019) Co-assembled Ca2+ alginate-sulfate nanoparticles for intracellular plasmid DNA delivery. Mol Ther Nucl Acids 16:378–390

Gómez-Guillén MC, Turnay J, Fernández-Díaz MD, Ulmo N, Lizarbe MA, Montero P (2002) Structural and physical properties of gelatin extracted from different marine species: a comparative study. Food Hydrocoll 16:25–34

Graiff A, Ruth W, Kragl U, Karsten U (2016) Chemical characterization and quantification of the brown algal storage compound laminarin -a new methodological approach. J Appl Phycol 28:533–543

Grøndahl L, Lawrie G, Anitha A, Shejwalkar A (2020) Applications of alginate biopolymer in drug delivery. In: Biointegration of medical implant materials. Elsevier, New York, pp 375–403

Gross J, Sokal Z, Rougvie M (1956) Structural and chemical studies on the connective tissue of marine sponges. J Histochem Cytochem 4:227–246

Gupta M, Gupta AK (2004) Hydrogel pullulan nanoparticles encapsulating pBUDLacZ plasmid as an efficient gene delivery carrier. J Control Release 99:157–166

Hajizadeh F, MoghadaszadehArdebili S, BaghiMoornani M, Masjedi A, Atyabi F, Kiani M, Namdar A, Karpisheh V, Izadi S, Baradaran B, Azizi G, Ghalamfarsa G, Sabz G, Yousefi M, Jadidi-Niaragh F (2020) Silencing of HIF-1α/CD73 axis by siRNA-loaded TAT-chitosan-spion nanoparticles robustly blocks cancer cell progression. Eur J Pharmacol. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejphar.2020.173235

Ho YK, Kai D, Tu GXE, Deen GR, Too HP, Loh XJ (2018) Enhanced transfection of a macromolecular lignin-based DNA complex with low cellular toxicity. Biosci Rep. https://doi.org/10.1042/BSR2018102

Hu W-W, Tsou S-L (2014) The effect of alginate on DNA delivery from layer-by-layer assembled films. Carbohydr Polym 101:240–248

Hussain W, Mahmood T, Hussain J, Ali N, Shah T, Qayyum S, Khan I (2019) CRISPR/Cas system: a game changing genome editing technology, to treat human genetic diseases. Gene 685:70–75

Ita K (2020) Polyplexes for gene and nucleic acid delivery: progress and bottlenecks. Eur J Pharm Sci 150:105358. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejps.2020.105358

Jain S, Tran TH, Amiji M (2015) Macrophage repolarization with targeted alginate nanoparticles containing IL-10 plasmid DNA for the treatment of experimental arthritis. Biomaterials 61:162–177

Ji C-F, Ji Y-B (2014) Laminarin-induced apoptosis in human colon cancer LoVo cells. Oncol Lett 7:1728–1732

Jiang S, Kai D, Dou QQ, Loh XJ (2015) Multi-arm carriers composed of an antioxidant lignin core and poly(glycidyl methacrylate-co-poly(ethylene glycol)methacrylate) derivative arms for highly efficient gene delivery. J Mater Chem B 3:6897–6904

Jinturkar KA, Misra A (2011) Challenges and opportunities in gene delivery. In: Challenges in delivery of therapeutic genomics and proteomics. Elsevier, New York, pp 45–82

Johannes L, Lucchino M (2018) Current challenges in delivery and cytosolic translocation of therapeutic RNAs. Nucl Acid Therap 28:178–193

Jonassen H, Kjøniksen A-L, Hiorth M (2012) Stability of chitosan nanoparticles cross-linked with tripolyphosphate. Biomacromolecules 13:3747–3756

Junqua S, Robert L, Garrone R, De Ceccatty MP, Vacelet J (1974) Biochemical and morphological studies on collagens of horny Sponges Ircinia filaments compared to Spongines. Connect Tissue Res 2:193–203

Kadam SU, Tiwari BK, O'Donnell CP (2014) Extraction, structure and biofunctional activities of laminarin from brown algae. Int J Food Sci Technol 50:24–31

Kadam S, O'Donnell C, Rai D, Hossain M, Burgess C, Walsh D, Tiwari B (2015) Laminarin from Irish Brown seaweeds *Ascophyllum nodosum* and *Laminaria hyperborea*: ultrasound assisted extraction, characterization and bioactivity. Mar Drugs 13:4270–4280

Kargaard A, Sluijter JPG, Klumperman B (2019) Polymeric siRNA gene delivery – transfection efficiency versus cytotoxicity. J Control Release 316:263–291

Kim ID, Sawicki E, Lee HK, Lee EH, Park HJ, Han PL, Kim K, Choi H, Lee JK (2016) Robust neuroprotective effects of intranasally delivered iNOS siRNA encapsulated in gelatin nanoparticles in the postischemic brain. Nanomedicine 12:1219–1229

Kimoto T, Shibuya T, Shiobara S (1997) Safety studies of a novel starch, pullulan: chronic toxicity in rats and bacterial mutagenicity. Food Chem Toxicol 35:323–329

Knott GJ, Doudna JA (2018) CRISPR-Cas guides the future of genetic engineering. Science 361:866–869

Kumar DP, Chandra MV, Elavarasan K, Shamasundar BA (2017) Structural properties of gelatin extracted from croaker fish (*Johnius sp*) skin waste. Int J Food Prop 20(Sup3):S2612–S2625. https://doi.org/10.1080/10942912.2017.1381702

Kurita K (2006) Chitin and chitosan: functional biopolymers from marine crustaceans. Mar Biotechnol 8(3):203–226. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10126-005-0097-5

Lai W-F, Wong W-T (2018) Design of Polymeric Gene Carriers for effective intracellular delivery. Trends Biotechnol 36:713–728
Lazzari S, Moscatelli D, Codari F, Salmona M, Morbdelli M, Diomede L (2012) Colloidal stability of polymeric nanoparticles in biological fluids. J Nanopart 14:920
Lee KY, Mooney DJ (2012) Alginate: properties and biomedical applications. Prog Polym Sci 37:106–126
Lee YE, Kim H, Seo C, Park T, Lee KB, Yoo SY, Hong SC, Kim JT, Lee J (2017) Marine polysaccharides: therapeutic efficacy and biomedical applications. Arch Pharm Res 40:1006–1020
Li X, Zhang T, Sun S, Lan H, Yu T (2012) Lignin in marine environment and its analysis-a review. J Ocean Univ China 11:501–506
Li L, Hu S, Chen X (2018) Non-viral delivery systems for CRISPR/Cas9-based genome editing: challenges and opportunities. Biomaterials 171:207–218
Lin L, Regenstein JM, Lv S, Lu J, Jiang S (2017) An overview of gelatin derived from aquatic animals: properties and modification. Trends Food Sci Technol 68:102–112
Ling H, Fabbri M, Calin GA (2013) MicroRNAs and other non-coding RNAs as targets for anticancer drug development. Nat Rev Drug Discov 12:847–865
Lino CA, Harper JC, Carney JP, Timlin JA (2018) Delivering CRISPR: a review of the challenges and approaches. Drug Deliv 25:1234–1257
Liu X, Yin H, Zhang Z, Diao B, Li J (2015) Functionalization of lignin through ATRP grafting of poly(2-dimethylaminoethyl methacrylate) for gene delivery. Colloids Surf B: Biointerfaces 125:230–237
Liu BY, He XY, Xu C, Xu L, Ai SL, Cheng SX, Zhuo RX (2018) A dual-targeting delivery system for effective genome editing and in situ detecting related protein expression in edited cells. Biomacromolecules 19:2957–2968
Liu Q, Jin Z, Huang W, Sheng Y, Wang Z, Guo S (2019) Tailor-made ternary nanopolyplexes of thiolated trimethylated chitosan with pDNA and folate conjugated cis-aconitic amide-polyethylenimine for efficient gene delivery. Int J Biol Macromol 152:948–956
Manivasagan P, Bharathiraja S, Moorthy MS, Oh YO, Seo H, Oh J (2017) Marine biopolymer-based nanomaterials as a novel platform for theranostic applications. Polym Rev 57:631–667
Manke A, Wang L, Rojanasakul Y (2013) Mechanisms of nanoparticle-induced oxidative stress and toxicity. Biomed Res Int. https://doi.org/10.1155/2013/942916
Martone PT, Estevez JM, Lu F, Ruel K, Denny MW, Somerville C, Ralph J (2009) Discovery of lignin in seaweed reveals convergent evolution of cell-wall architecture. Curr Biol 19:169–175
Massadeh S, Al Aamery M (2016) Nano-materials for gene therapy: an efficient way in overcoming challenges of gene delivery. J BiosensBioelectron 7(1):1–12
Milovanovic I, Hayes M (2018) Marine Gelatine from rest raw materials. Appl Sci 8(12):2407. https://doi.org/10.3390/app8122407
Mohammed MA, Syeda JTM, Wasan KM, Wasan EK (2017) An overview of chitosan nanoparticles and its application in non-parenteral drug delivery. Pharmaceutics 9(4):1–26
Moraes FC, Antunes JC, Forero Ramirez LM, Aprile P, Franck G, Chauvierre C, Chaubet F, Letourneur D (2020) Synthesis of cationic quaternized pullulan derivatives for miRNA delivery. Int J Pharm 577:119041. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2020.119041
Muddineti OS, Shah A, Rompicharla SVK, Ghosh B, Biswas S (2018) Cholesterol-grafted chitosan micelles as a nanocarrier system for drug-siRNA co-delivery to the lung cancer cells. Int J Biol Macromol 118:857–863
Nagarajan A, Shanmugam A, Zackaria A (2016) Mini review on alginate: scope and future perspectives. J Algal Biomass Utln 7(1):45–55
Nayerossadat N, Ali P, Maedeh T (2012) Viral and non-viral delivery systems for gene delivery. Adv Biomed Res 1(1):1–12
Negm NA, Hefni HHH, Abd-Elaal AAA, Badr EA, Abou Kana MTH (2020) Advancement on modification of chitosan biopolymer and its potential applications. Int J Biol Macromol 152:681–702

Nograles N, Abdullah S, Shamsudin MN, Billa N, Rosli R (2012) Formation and characterization of pDNA-loaded alginate microspheres for oral administration in mice. J Biosci Bioeng 113:133–140

Parlea L, Puri A, Kasprzak W, Bindewald E, Zakrevsky P, Satterwhite E, Joseph K, Afonin KA, Shapiro BA (2016) Cellular delivery of RNA nanoparticles. ACS Comb Sci 18:527–547

Patil SD, Rhodes DG, Burgess DJ (2005) DNA-based therapeutics and DNA delivery systems: a comprehensive review. AAPS J 7(1):E61–E77

Prabu SL, Ruckmani K (2017) Biopolymer in gene delivery. Adv Technol for Del Therap. https://doi.org/10.5772/65694

Prajapati VD, Jani GK, Khanda SM (2013) Pullulan: an exopolysaccharide and its various applications. Carbohydr Polym 95:540–549

Rafael D, Andrade F, Arranja A, Luís S, Videira M (2015) Lipoplexes and polyplexes: gene therapy. In: Encyclopedia of biomedical polymers and polymeric biomaterials. Taylor & Francis, London, pp 4335–4347

Rai R, Alwani S, Badea I (2019) Polymeric nanoparticles in gene therapy: new avenues of design and optimization for delivery applications. Polymers 11:745

Rai DB, Pooja D, Kulhari H (2020) Dendrimers in gene delivery. In: Pharmaceutical applications of dendrimers. Elsevier, New York, pp 211–231

Rajaonarivony M, Vauthier C, Couarraze G, Puisieux F, Couvreur P (1993) Development of a new drug carrier made from alginate. J Pharm Sci 82:912–917

Rehm BHA, Valla S (1997) Bacterial alginates: biosynthesis and applications. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 48:281–288

Rekha MR, Sharma CP (2009) Blood compatibility and in vitro transfection studies on cationically modified pullulan for liver cell targeted gene delivery. Biomaterials 30:6655–6664

Ren X, Liu L, Zhou Y, Zhu Y, Zhang H, Zhang Z, Li H (2015) Nanoparticle siRNA against BMI-1 with a polyethylenimine- laminarin conjugate for gene therapy in human breast cancer. Bioconjug Chem 27(1):66–73. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.bioconjchem.5b00650

Rumengan IFM, Suptijah P, Wullur S, Talumepa A (2017) Characterization of chitin extracted from fish scales of marine fish species purchased from local markets in North Sulawesi, Indonesia. IOP Conf Ser Earth Environ Sci 89:012028

Sadreddini S, Safaralizadeh R, Baradaran B, Aghebati-Maleki L, Hosseinpour-Feizi MA, Shanehbandi D, Jadidi-Niaragh F, Sadreddini S, Kafil HS, Younesi V, Yousefi M (2016) Chitosan nanoparticles as a dual drug/siRNA delivery system for treatment of colorectal cancer. Immunol Lett 181:79–86

Senapati D, Patra BC, Kar A, Chini DS, Ghosh S, Patra S, Bhattacharya M (2019) Promising approaches of small interfering RNAs (siRNAs) mediated cancer gene therapy. Gene 719:144071. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gene.2019.144071

Setiawati MR, Damayani M, Herdiyantoro D, Suryatmana P, Anggraini D, Khumairah FH (2018) The application dosage of Azolla pinnata in fresh and powder form as organic fertilizer on soil chemical properties, growth and yield of rice plant. Jatinangor, Indonesia, 2018

Shahabi-Ghahfarrokhi I, Almasi H, Babaei-Ghazvini A (2020) Characteristics of biopolymers from natural resources. In: Processing and development of polysaccharide-based biopolymers for packaging applications. Elsevier, New York, pp 49–95

Sherly MCD, Rekha MR, Harikrishnan VS (2020) Cationised dextran and pullulan modified with diethyl aminoethyl methacrylate for gene delivery in cancer cells. Carbohydr Polym 242:116426. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carbpol.2020.116426

Shin H, Park S-J, Yim Y, Kim J, Choi C, Won C, Min D-H (2018) Recent advances in RNA therapeutics and RNA delivery systems based on nanoparticles. Adv Therap 1(7):1800065. https://doi.org/10.1002/adtp.201800065

Singh R, Gaur R, Bansal S, Biswas P, Pandey PK, Jamal F, Tiwari S, Gaur MK (2015) Aureobasidium pullulans - an industrially important pullulan producing black yeast. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 4(10):605–622

Singh RS, Kaur N, Rana V, Kennedy JF (2017) Pullulan: a novel molecule for biomedical applications. Carbohydr Polym 171:102–121

Smidsrod O, Skjakbrk G (1990) Alginate as immobilization matrix for cells. Trends Biotechnol 8:71–78

Suresh D, Zambre A, Mukherjee S, Ghoshdastidar S, Jiang Y, Joshi T, Upendran A, Kannan R (2019) Silencing AXL by covalent siRNA-gelatin-antibody nanoconjugate inactivates mTOR/EMT pathway and stimulates p53 for TKI sensitization in NSCLC. Nanomedicine 20:102007. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nano.2019.04.010

Szekalska M, Puciłowska A, Szymańska E, Ciosek P, Winnicka K (2016) Alginate: current use and future perspectives in pharmaceutical and biomedical applications. Int J Polym Sci. https://doi.org/10.1155/2016/7697031

Ten E, Ling C, Wang Y, Srivastava A, Dempere LA, Vermerris W (2014) Lignin nanotubes as vehicles for gene delivery into human cells. Biomacromolecules 15:327–338

Tziveleka L-A, Ioannou E, Tsiourvas D, Berillis P, Foufa E, Roussis V (2017) Collagen from the marine sponges Axinella cannabina and Suberites carnosus: isolation and morphological, biochemical, and biophysical characterization. Mar Drugs 15(6):1–17

Venkatesan J, Anil S, Kim S-K, Shim M (2016) Seaweed polysaccharide-based nanoparticles: preparation and applications for drug delivery. Polymers 8(2):1–25

Wasswa J, Tang J, Gu X (2007) Utilization of fish processing by-products in the gelatin industry. Food Rev Intl 23(2):159–174

Weecharangsan W, Opanasopit P, Ngawhirunpat T, Apirakaramwong A, Rojanarata T, Ruktanonchai U, Lee R (2008) Evaluation of chitosan salts as non-viral gene vectors in CHO-K1 cells. Int J Pharm 348:161–168

Yadav D, Barbora L, Bora D, Mitra S, Rangan L, Mahanta P (2017) An assessment of duckweed as a potential lignocellulosic feedstock for biogas production. Int Biodeteriorat Biodegrad 119:253–259

Yan L, Gao S, Shui S, Liu S, Qu H, Liu C, Zheng L (2020) Small interfering RNA-loaded chitosan hydrochloride/carboxymethyl chitosan nanoparticles for ultrasound-triggered release to hamper colorectal cancer growth in vitro. Int J Biol Macromol 162:1303–1310

Younes I, Rinaudo M (2015) Chitin and chitosan preparation from marine sources: structure, properties and applications. Mar Drugs 13:1133–1174

Zargarzadeh M, Amaral AJR, Custódio CA, Mano JF (2020) Biomedical applications of laminarin. Carbohydr Polym 232:115774. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carbpol.2019.115774

Zhang Y, Satterlee A, Huang L (2012) In vivo gene delivery by nonviral vectors: overcoming hurdles? Mol Ther 20(7):1298–1304. https://doi.org/10.1038/mt.2012.79

Zhang H, Bahamondez-Canas TF, Zhang Y, Leal J, Smyth HDC (2018) PEGylated chitosan for non-viral aerosol and mucosal delivery of the CRISPR/Cas9 system in vitro. Mol Pharm 15:4814–4826

Zhang BC, Wu PY, Zou JJ, Jiang JL, Zhao RR, Luo B-Y, Liao YQ, Shao JW (2020) Efficient CRISPR/Cas9 gene-chemo synergistic cancer therapy via a stimuli-responsive chitosan-based nanocomplex elicits anti-tumorigenic pathway effect. Chem Eng J 393:124688. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cej.2020.124688

Zhao D, Yu S, Sun B, Gao S, Guo S, Zhao K (2018) Biomedical applications of chitosan and its derivative nanoparticles. Polymers 10(4):1–17

Zhou D, Zeng M, Gao Y, Sigen A, Lyu J, Wang W (2019) Advanced polymers for non-viral gene delivery. In: Nucleic acid nanotheranostics. Elsevier, New York, pp 311–364

Ziello JE, Jovin IS, Huang Y (2007) Hypoxia-inducible factor (HIF)-1 regulatory pathway and its potential for therapeutic intervention in malignancy and ischemia. Yale J Biol Med 80:51–60

Sheetal Yadav graduated from Pt. Ravishankar Shukla University, Raipur, in 2019 in the field of pharmaceutical sciences awarded with gold medal. Currently, she is working on development and comparison of dendrimer and polymeric nanoparticles for targeted delivery of anticancer drugs along with gene delivery as a Postgraduate Research Fellow at the National Institute of Pharmaceutical Education and Research (NIPER), Raebareli, Lucknow, India.

Vineet Kumar Jain has more than 5 years of industrial experience of working in pharmaceutical research and development department of leading pharma companies including Sentiss Pharma Pvt Ltd., Gurgaon; Sun Pharmaceutical Industries Limited, Vadodara (Gujarat); and Ipca Laboratories, Mumbai (Maharashtra). He also has teaching experience of more than 2 years as assistant professor. Currently he is pursuing Ph.D. at Pharmaceutics Department of Delhi Pharmaceutical Sciences and Research University (DPSRU), New Delhi. He earned his postgraduate degree [M.S. (Pharm) Pharmaceutics] from the National Institute of Pharmaceutical Education and Research (NIPER), Raebareli, and executed his postgraduation research project from CSIR-Central Drug Research Institute (CDRI), Lucknow. Including this he has also completed postgraduate diploma course in IPR and certificate and diploma course in Yoga. He has published research/review articles in high impact factor journals including *Drug Discovery Today*, *Current Pharmaceutical Design*, and *Applied Biochemistry and Biotechnology*. He has few book chapters in international books. He is proficient in handling different analytical instruments and scientific software like Empower Pro (Waters HPLC), Class VP software (Shimadzu HPLC), Chromeleon (Agilent HPLC), Nano ZS (Malvern Zetasizer), RheocalcT (Brookfield Viscometer), and UVProbe (UV-Visible Spectrophotometer) and scientific information retrieval using various internet portals like ScienceDirect, PubMed, Google Scholar, Google Patents, Scopus, etc. He also participated in various international and national symposium and conferences. His research interests include nanotechnology, lipidic nanoparticles, and targeted drug delivery for treatment of leishmaniasis and cancer.

Keerti Jain is working as Asst. Prof. and Scientist at the National Institute of Pharmaceutical Education and Research (NIPER), Raebareli. Dr. Jain earned her M. Pharm. and doctorate degree from Dr. H. S. Gour Central University, Sagar. She did her postdoctorate from M. S. University of Vadodara, India, as SERB National Postdoctoral Fellow. She has more than 11 years of research experience on nanomedicine-based drug delivery systems.

Dr. Jain has supervised M. Pharm., M.S. Pharm., Ph.D., and Pharm. D. students for their research works which have been published in quality journals with good impact factor. She is author of more than 60 international manuscripts in peer-reviewed high impact journals, including publications in *Progress in Polymer Science* having impact factor of 26.932, in *Biomaterials*, *Drug Discovery Today*, *Nanomedicine*, *Current Opinion in Pharmacology*, *Antimicrobial agents and chemotherapy*, and other high impact factors. Her review articles entitled "Dendrimer Toxicity: Let's Meet the Challenge" and "Dendrimers as Nanocarriers in Drug Delivery" published in *International Journal of Pharmaceutics* (2010) and *Progress in Polymer Science* (2014) were listed in top 25 articles. She has been an author of book and book chapters with international publishers. She has been awarded with research fellowships including SERB Postdoctoral Fellowship, Senior Research Fellowship (CSIR), Junior Research Fellowship (UGC), Fellowship for Training of Young Scientist (MPCST), Travel Grant Award (INSA), and International Travel Fellowship (ICMR and DBT) apart from several other prestigious grants, fellowships, and awards. She has been nominated for Ranbaxy Research Scholar Award 2012 and BioAsia Innovation Award 2015. She has also been awarded with many best research presentation awards in international conferences like NIPiCON-2014, International Science Congress-2012, APTI (Jaipur) 2018, SPER-Bangkok 2019, and so on. She has been recipient of Pharmaceutical Science Alumni Award 2006 at Dr. H. S. Gour University, Sagar (M.P.). She won most innovative Idea Award in ?LUFTHANSA? impact week, which is a reputed international platform. Till date she has been invited to present her research work at several national and seven international conferences including ICYRAM 2012 held in Singapore, Bioencapsulation 2016 held in Lisbon, Portugal, and International Conference 2019 held in Bangkok.

Hydrogel Scaffolds Based on Alginate, Gelatin, and 2-Hydroxyethyl Methacrylate for Tissue Regeneration

6

Simonida Lj. Tomić, Marija Vukomanović, Jasmina Nikodinović-Runić, Marija M. Babić, and Jovana S. Vuković

Abstract

The design of bioactive scaffolding materials with favorable properties is paramount for successful application in biomedical engineering. Polymeric hydrogels attract significant attention as leading candidates for scaffold engineering due to their specific compositional and structural similarities to the natural extracellular matrix. The ability to control porosity, surface morphology, and size of hydrogel scaffolds has created new approaches to overcome various issues in tissue engineering such as vascularization, tissue architecture, and simultaneous multiple cells seeding. This review imparts an overview of hydrogel scaffolds based on synthetic and natural polymeric components (alginate, gelatin, and 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate). We made hydrogel scaffolds with unique properties. Their in vitro and in vivo biological response, morphology, mechanical properties, porosity, hydrophilicity, and degradability were tested to find optimal patterns of tissue regeneration.

Keywords

Hydrogel scaffolds · Alginate · Gelatin · 2-Hydroxyethyl methacrylate · Tissue regeneration

S. L. Tomić (✉) · M. M. Babić · J. S. Vuković
Faculty of Technology and Metallurgy, University of Belgrade, Belgrade, Serbia
e-mail: simonida@tmf.bg.ac.rs

M. Vukomanović
Advanced Materials Department, Jožef Stefan Institute, Ljubljana, Slovenia

J. Nikodinović-Runić
Institute of Molecular Genetics and Genetic Engineering, University of Belgrade, Belgrade, Serbia

S. Jana, S. Jana (eds.), *Marine Biomaterials*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-5374-2_6

6.1 Tissue Regeneration Engineering and Polymeric Scaffolds

Tissue regeneration and engineering received significant scientific interest (curiosity) in the last decades and they can improve the levels of classical treatments. A biomaterial as a "temporary matrix that promotes a specific environment and architecture for tissue growth and development" is defined in the field of tissue engineering (Roseti et al. 2017).

The principal therapeutic platform for regenerative medicine is tissue engineering. The expansion of substitute products using biomaterials that can regenerate and repair diseased tissues and organs is a significant issue of new technological approaches. Therefore, these medical devices are fabricated to overcome the limited regeneration capacities of human tissues and organs.

The regenerative medicine field is dedicated to the general goal of damaged organs and tissues repairing and regenerating. Patient living cells isolation, their in vitro spreading inside polymeric scaffold, and reimplantation of tissue-mimick structures in the patient are the courses of the regenerative process (Langer and Vacanti 1993). The versatile properties of polymeric biomaterials, especially hydrogels, have found significant application in regenerative medicine as scaffolding materials into which cell cultures are introduced and serve as devices for the delivery of cells and genes (Slaughter et al. 2009). These biomaterials may be made biocompatible and exhibit adjustable mechanical properties and degradability. They are incorporated with biological signs to be able to carry out the processes of adhesion, migration, and proliferation of cells and growth factors, to enable the binding sites of peptides or cytokines. The biomimetic polymeric biomaterial thus created can mimic an extracellular matrix (ECM) environment.

Regenerative engineering aims to advance complex tissue revitalization processes and biological systems and encompasses the fields of stem cell science, advanced biomaterials, and developmental biology (Laurencin and Khan 2012). Polymeric hydrogels can be fabricated into 3D mimetic scaffolding for cell growth support thanks to their resemblance to a native extracellular matrix making them attractive biomaterials for regenerative engineering. The application of nano- and microtechnologies leads to the possibility of managing the properties and functionalities of hydrogel materials. This contributes to the biomimetic production of more refined patterns and architectures. Thus, our scientific perspectives expand to the level of nanoscale cellular interactions.

Most human tissues have a limited capacity for regeneration. Severe tissue damage due to trauma, degenerative diseases, or congenital abnormalities can lead to irreversible disability or death. Therefore, patients with serious tissue damage, in that case, depend on organ transplantation. Despite the increased volume of organ transplants, there is a limitation in the possibilities of recipients and donors of organs. Then tissue engineering and regenerative medicine take over the ″role″ (Amado et al. 2017; Vacanti and Langer 1999; Mason and Dunnill 2008).

The ideal scaffold should mimic a native extracellular matrix (ECM) and direct stem cells to regenerate functional tissues. In that sense, hydrogel materials are one of the most beneficial biomaterials with tunable water/fluid level, a high degree of

biocompatibility, and simple adjustability to restore ECM (Slaughter et al. 2009). Various kinds of hydrogels with favorable properties are created to fix different type of tissues (Huebsch et al. 2010; Engler et al. 2006). Biophysical cues, like porosity, elasticity, and degradability, can be introduced into hydrogel scaffolds in a specific spatiotemporally manner to systematically regulate the cell's behavior (Guvendiren and Burdick 2012; Yang et al. 2016). Advanced chemical strategies are used to improve biocompatibility and achieve hydrogel functionality (Amado et al. 2017; Phelps et al. 2012).

Spatially patterned hydrogel scaffolds with nanoscale biophysical and biochemical cues are used to evaluate cell behavior (Yang et al. 2016; Wade et al. 2015). Nanofiber-based hydrogel that mimics ECM with adaptable architecture and mechanics is synthesized in the interaction of advanced polymer processing technologies. In this way, the sensitivity of cells to mechanical stimuli as well as subsequent responses can be tested (Baker et al. 2015).

The potential of regenerative medicine is based on the regeneration and replacement ability of diseased tissues and organs (Atala 2008; Mendelson and Frenette 2014). Researches in the field of regenerative medicine have results that indicate that can be reported successful regeneration and replacement of many tissues and organs, including skin, heart, kidneys, and liver, as well as the potential to even improve some birth defects (Amado et al. 2017; Bailey et al. 2014; Knoepfler 2015; Tang et al. 2016).

Powerful biomaterials, mainly combinations of scaffolding, growth factors, and stem cells, have the function of replacing damaged tissue and showing that they function as original tissue or have the ability to stimulate native tissue regeneration to establish successful regenerative medicine platforms (Amado et al. 2017; Gao and Cui 2016; Guan et al. 2017). These platforms focus on tissue environmental changes due to the incorporation of exogenous materials and biological factors with the sole purpose of accelerating and promoting the body's healing process. Extracellular matrix materials and biomimetics have been used for more than a decade, more than just providing physical support (Amado et al. 2017; Alves da Silva et al. 2017; Goncalves et al. 2017; Pina et al. 2017). Materials and biomimetics can in their own way stimulate the regeneration process, but they can also be biomolecules on their own that affect cell growth (Guan et al. 2017). In addition to the necessary physical support to the cells, it is advantageous for the scaffolding biomaterial to include biological signs or signals that enhance or improve tissue regeneration and performance (Dzobo et al. 2016; Evans et al. 2010; Sadtler et al. 2016). Different tissues possess the different regenerative capacities. So, some do not need the addition of cells, but only biomaterial and biological agents. Other tissues have limited regeneration capacities and need biomaterial, biomolecules, and cells for regeneration. Cartilage and cornea are tissues and organs with limited or no regenerative capacity, while the liver and lungs have a high regenerative capacity (Amado et al. 2017; Atala 2008; Atala 2012; Kotton and Morrisey 2014).

Native tissues have a wide range of physical characteristics, of which elasticity and permeability stand out. For example, human tissue shows tissue-specific elasticity in the range of about seven orders of magnitude, starting at only 167 Pa for breast

tissue (Guan et al. 2017; Paszek et al. 2005), to as high as 54 GPa for hard tissue (Choi et al. 1990). There are also various optimum pore sizes of implants for inducing regeneration of different types of tissues: 5 μm in pore diameter for vascularization (Brauker et al. 1995), 5–15 μm for fibroblast ingrowth (Klawitter and Hulbert 1971), 20–125 μm for adult skin regeneration (Yannas et al. 1989), and 100–350 μm for bone regeneration (Annabi et al. 2010). Cells can recognize mechanical signals and through mechanical transduction reach further processes differentiated into different families (Guan et al. 2017; Huebsch et al. 2010; Engler et al. 2006). Hydrogel materials can contain biophysical responsiveness in a controlled way to control cellular manner, mimicking these physical characteristics on a micro and nano scale. This approach gives an obvious understanding of the mechanism of cell development and their reactions in various diseases (Guan et al. 2017).

One of the three most important elements in the basic concept of regenerative medicine is scaffolding materials. They form the basis of regenerative medicine engineering. Surgical procedures involving the use of scaffolds as medical devices are performed daily to replace or repair tissue damaged by disease or trauma. Highly porous scaffolding biomaterials combined with the body cells can form templates for tissue regeneration, which lead to the growth of new tissue. The scaffold has a prominent role in the design and fabrication of 2D and 3D models, including surface ligands and molecular architecture, nanoparticle-cell interactions (Amado et al. 2017).

Scaffold modeling is a crucial part of tissue engineering and regenerative medicine. A fundamental tool to guide tissue formation both in vitro and in vivo should be an optimal designed 3D scaffold. Properties like high surface-area-to-volume ratio, porosity, pore size, pore design, pore interconnectivity, permeability, and degradation should be taken under consideration when designing scaffold material for various and tailored applications. These permit a desirable biological network for cell migration, nutrient transportation, and therefore the mechanical stiffness, and strength are therefore obtained (Budama-Kilinc et al. 2017; Parker et al. 2002; Fang et al. 2005). Growth factors and drug release process should even be considered to attain optimized tissue growth as scaffold degraded. Moreover, some researches have shown the advantages for tissue regeneration of using curvature and concave surfaces compared to convex and planar ones (Zadpoor 2015). Two scaffolding design approaches may be used to fulfill the aforementioned demands. The first one is predicated on the native tissue. The second relies on the unit's digital cell model, both addressing tailored scaffolding geometry. The geometry obtained can then be applied to computer-aided engineering studies to optimize the performances of the tailored bioengineering scaffold (Amado et al. 2017).

The artificial scaffold is made and its properties are optimized according to the complex structure of the tissue. The scaffolding designed in this way should be suitable for cell adhesion, proliferation, and ECM formation. This is how the ECM recovers. Medical devices should be designed to create, induce or congest tissue reactions (Amado et al. 2017; Haycock 2011). The perfect scaffolding should have optimal and favorable biocompatibility, biodegradability, mechanics, interconnection of pores of appropriate sizes that will accommodate cells, as well as an optimal

exchange of nutrients and waste products with its three-dimensional space for cell growth in an organized manner (Amado et al. 2017; Seol et al. 2013). Tailoring biomaterials for enhanced biofunctionality can be accomplished by employing a kind of approaches that involve the introduction of chemical, topographical, or mechanical cues via top-down or bottom-up approaches (Camarero-Espinosa and Cooper-White 2016). It is very important to choose favorable biomaterials, as well as techniques and methods of obtaining them. There is a whole range of natural and synthetic components used for scaffold syntheses such as biometals, ceramics, bioactive glass, phosphates, and polymers. Bioactive ceramic scaffolds are favorable for bone tissue regeneration due to their biological functionality. However, ceramics as scaffolding materials is restricted owing to difficult processability and inherent brittleness (Seol et al. 2013). Rezwan's group (Rezwan et al. 2006) showed that conventional material processing methods are adapted and extended for the incorporation of inorganic bioactive part into porous and interconnected 3D polymeric networks (Amado et al. 2017). Advanced biomaterials are hybrids with adjustable bioactivity and biodegradability (Rezwan et al. 2006). Addressing these issues, research has focused on the mechanical testing of polymer-bioglass composites. Consequently, scaffolds of identical density are compared and it has been confirmed that the addition of bioglass reduces the elastic gradient and relieves tension. Therefore, the highest content of bioglass seems to have a beneficial effect because it does not significantly impair the mechanics of the scaffold and improves bioactivity (Fiedler et al. 2015). The creation of biodegradable, bioactive, "living" composite biomaterials loaded with biomolecules, which is characterized by great adaptability to the biological environment (Rezwan et al. 2006), is a promising approach. Biomolecules are added to speed up the healing process, and they are sensitive to elevated temperatures and extreme chemical conditions. Therefore, their loading during scaffolding production is not easy. Another interesting approach is the immobilization of proteins and growth factors by functionalizing the scaffold surface in the postprocessing phase (Amado et al. 2017; Cosson et al. 2015).

"Soft" material routes like sol-gel processing may be a platform to include biomolecules during scaffold fabrication. But, highly porous, interconnected pore structures for bioactive organic/inorganic hybrids have not yet been achieved, which is important for scaffolding application. Further, an important issue is a reason for the local impact of growth factors on the cell and tissue systems, especially long-term effects (Amado et al. 2017; Rezwan et al. 2006). The foremost, crucial parameters that determine the performance of a designed implant are mechanical characteristics which depend on the process and structural characteristics of the biomaterials. In such a way, desired mechanical properties can accomplish by modifying the structural characteristics of a biomaterial. Cell biological behavior testing is required to check biocompatibility and bioactivity after surface modifications (Amado et al. 2017; Haycock 2011). The study of the interactions of biochemical and geometrical cues on stem cell differentiation and alignment should be also considered. The potential to spatially control stem cell orientation and differentiation toward multiple phenotypes simultaneously, i.e., myocyte, tenocyte, and osteoblast allow in vitro cells grown to more closely mimic aspects of native

structure organization (Amado et al. 2017;Ker et al. 2011). Although the precise mechanism behind geometry-induced cell alignment is presently unknown, cells alignment observed on fibers may likely be attributed to a mix of factors including physical space constraint and relative stiffness of the underlying substrate; ultimately effecting changes in both cell spreading and cell stiffness, cells could also be predisposed toward a selected orientation through the modulation of mechanotransduction pathways via cytoskeletal rearrangements (Amado et al. 2017; Sun et al. 2004).

A more robust choice to create graded structures that resemble the biological interface is to form multilayer scaffolds as combinations of several biomaterials. The newest technologies deal with the development of multilayer scaffolds and the controlled release of bioactive agents to promote in situ regeneration of biological tissues and aim to perfect the available traditional treatments. Long-term evaluation is indispensable with a special focus on studying the biological and mechanical properties of the designed tissues to verify the potential of those novel approaches (Amado et al. 2017; López-Ruiz et al. 2016).

The scaffold design should enable the creation of a bioactive dynamic system, which will be a favorable environment for cells. One of the types of scaffolds is nanofibers that are obtained by the technique of surface modification, which contribute to an improved understanding of in vitro and in vivo cellular behavior. This approach implies the interconnection of knowledge of science and technology (Amado et al. 2017; Cheung et al. 2015; Kariduraganavar 2016).

In organ engineering, it is important to take care that the regeneration of functional tissue takes place, whereby it is necessary to achieve cell viability and differentiation, stimulate proliferation, the direction of modulation, and the rate of cell migration and cell adhesion regulation (Amado et al. 2017). Cell viability is determined through morphological changes or membrane permeability, as a physiological condition based on cell culture staining. Cells are cultured on a three-dimensional biocompatible scaffold. This is followed by a process of degradation and resorption at a projected rate whereby soft and hard tissues are regenerated in vitro or in vivo conditions (Amado et al. 2017; Hutmacher 2001).

The bioengineering approach in scaffolding design in vivo is guided by the conditions of oxygen diffusion and the flow of nutrient components so that the thickness of the scaffold is adjusted to several hundred microns (Amado et al. 2017; Cosson et al. 2015). Great care must be taken with scaling in the transition to clinical applications from in vivo testing. An important topic is the process of tissue vascularization. Good blood circulation to the tissues leads to a favorable flow of nutrients and other components and leads to the proper integration of cells and the healing process. The latest biocreation techniques, especially when it comes to bulkier medical devices scaffolds, lead to more advanced solutions to vascularization issues (Amado et al. 2017;Lim et al. 2017).

The most widespread biomaterials used for the design of scaffolding and medical devices in regenerative engineering are polymers (Budama-Kilinc et al. 2017; Piskin 1994; Ji et al. 2006). The properties of materials that recommend them to be used toward biomaterials are composition, hydrophilicity, swelling, surface energy,

adhesiveness, the possibility of degradation, and erosion mechanism. Polymeric scaffolds have emerged as the biomaterials of choice due to their specific properties that can be adjusted to different synthesis processes and techniques (the length of polymeric chains is a key factor that further determines all properties relevant to biomedical applications). Due to all the above, it is possible to very finely achieve the most favorable bioactivity and biocompatibility of scaffolds. Research on the development of artificial skin and cartilage has been conducted in that direction (Eaglstein and Falanga 1998), bone and cartilage (Boyan et al. 1999), liver (Mayer et al. 2000), heart valves and arteries (Mayer et al. 1997), bladder (Oberpenning et al. 1999), pancreas (Tziampazis and Sambanis 1995), nerves (Mohammad et al. 2000), corneas (Germain et al. 1999), and various other soft tissues (Diedwardo et al. 1999).

One of the scaffolding polymeric materials classifications is synthetic, biologic, degradable, or nondegradable concerning their application (Budama-Kilinc et al. 2017; Ramakrishna et al. 2001). The behavior of polymers results from their properties-composition, structure, conformation, and arrangement of basic repeating units.

Natural polymers are often reviewed as the first biodegradable biomaterials used clinically (Nair and Laurencin 2007). Natural materials are considered to be bioactive properties and thus lead to better interaction with cells. This leads to improved cell performance in the biological system. They are included in natural polymers proteins (silk, collagen, gelatin, fibrinogen, elastin, keratin, actin, and myosin), polysaccharides (cellulose and derivatives, amylose, dextran, chitin, and glycosaminoglycans), or polynucleotides (DNA, RNA) (Yannas 2004).

Synthetic polymeric materials have proven to be very favorable in the function of restoring the structure and performance of damaged tissues. Their properties essential for this purpose such as porosity, degradation time, and mechanical properties can be adjusted in various ways and adapted to specific applications. One of the advantages of synthetic polymers is that they are often cheaper than biological. Their production takes place in large uniform batches, and the shelf life is longer. Also, a wide range of commercially available synthetic polymers possesses physicochemical and mechanical properties that mimic the properties of biological tissues. Synthetic polymers represent the largest group of biodegradable polymers, and that they can be produced under controlled conditions. Their properties are predictable and repeatable, and they include strength to different types of loads, multiple module types, and degree of degradation (Gunatillake et al. 2006). Polylactides and polyglycolides (homo- and copolymers) are among the foremost commonly used synthetic polymers in tissue engineering (Ma 2004). Polyhydroxyalkanoates belong to a category of microbial polyesters and are widely investigated for tissue and regenerative engineering applications (Chen and Wang 2002).

Bioactive ceramics and specified silicate and phosphate glasses (bioactive glasses) and glass-ceramics (apatite-wollastonite) can react with physiological fluids and through cellular activity form firm interconnections to hard and in some cases soft tissue (Hench 1998). However, the biocompatibility and biodegradability of these compositions are often insufficient, diminishing their potential use within the clinical part. By combining synthetic and natural polymeric components in different

ways or by using composite materials that improve the properties of scaffolds, such phenomena are promoted and thus enable controlled degradation (Cascone et al. 2001) and improve biocompatibility in tissue engineering (Ciardelli et al. 2005). Especially, degradable polymers and bioactive inorganics in synergy represent the platform to achieve mechanical and biological performance in hard tissue (Roether et al. 2002).

In the last 10 years, hydrogels as three-dimensional polymer networks that have taken precedence as leading biomaterials in the field of tissue engineering, where they are used as scaffolding to guide the growth of new tissues. The potential impact of hydrogel materials in the biomedical field has been significantly increased based on the possibilities of tailored design, especially those of biodegradability. This is followed by a very important area of the system for the controlled release of active agents (Budama-Kilinc et al. 2017; Cabodi et al. 2005). When considering properties essential for tissue regeneration-biocompatibility, cell-controlled degradability, and internal cell interactions, naturally occurring polymer-based hydrogels have an advantage. As for obtaining this type of polymer, there is variation in batches, but their structure and functional properties are precisely controlled. Hydrogels possess a structural identity similar to the macromolecular based constituents within the body and highly biocompatible behavior (Jhon and Andrade 1973). Hydrogels are made of synthetic or natural polymers or combinations thereof, where covalent or noncovalent bonds are established by the cross-linking agent(s) (Hoffman 2001). For hydrogels to be used in tissue engineering, they must meet a whole range of standards to perform their role and contribute to the formation of new tissues. These criteria refer to the classical physical parameters (degradation and mechanics) similarly to biological parameters (cell adhesion). It is commonly presumed that the degradation rates of tissue scaffolds must be matched to the speed of varied cellular processes to optimize tissue regeneration (Hubbell 1999; Lee and Mooney 2001). Therefore, the degradation behavior of biodegradable hydrogels should be defined, reproducible, and tunable via hydrogel chemistry and structure. Biocompatible hydrogels are currently employed in cartilage healing, bone regeneration, wound dressings, and as drug delivery systems (Peppas and Khare 1993). Hydrogel loaded with growth factors can act to support the development and differentiation of cells within the newly formed tissues (Tabata 2003). Hydrogels are often favorable for promoting cell migration, angiogenesis, optimal water/fluid content, and rapid nutrient flow (Bryant and Anseth 2001). Hydrogel scaffolds are the subject of intensive research in the engineering of replacement connective tissues, primarily because of their biochemical similarity with the highly hydrophilic glycosaminoglycan components of connective tissues. Hydrogel-forming polymers of the natural source are collagen (Wallace and Rosenblatt 2003), gelatin (Kim et al. 2004), fibrin (Eyrich et al. 2007), hyaluronic acid (Solchaga et al. 2002), alginate (Kong et al. 2003), and chitosan (Francis Suh and Matthew 2000). Synthetic polymers are polylactides (Schmedlen et al. 2002), polypropylene fumarate-derived copolymers (Behravesh and Mikos 2003), polyethylene glycol derivatives, and polyvinyl alcohol (Bryant et al. 2004).

Alginate is a naturally derived macromolecule; polysaccharide extracted from brown algae, such as *Macrocystis pyrifera*, *Laminaria hyperborea*, *Ascophyllum nodosum*. Naturally, it has an anionic character and consists of β-D-mannuronic acid and α-L-guluronic acid repeating units (Das and Subuddhi 2020). It manifests vital properties like biocompatibility, biodegradability, nontoxicity, nonimmunogenicity, and transparency. Gelation is accomplished easily, which enables alginate to be widely used in biomedical applications such as drug delivery, cell encapsulation, wound healing, and tissue engineering (Das and Subuddhi 2020; Lee and Mooney 2012). A modified version of alginate is sodium alginate which is a salt of alginic acid. Alginate is polymeric material with good scaffold-forming properties that can be useful to treat the loss or failure of organs.

Alginate hydrogels are also being actively researched for their beneficial properties to mediate the regeneration and engineering of various tissues and organs, including skeletal muscle, nerve, pancreas, and liver (Lee and Mooney 2012). Current strategies for skeletal muscle regeneration apply to cell transplantation, growth factor delivery, or a fusion of both approaches (Saxena et al. 1999; Levenberg et al. 2005), and alginate hydrogels have found potential in these platforms. The combined delivery and release of vascular endothelial growth factor and insulin-like growth factor-1 from alginate hydrogels were used to regulate both angiogenesis and myogenesis (Lee and Mooney 2012). The localized and sustained delivery of both growth factors led to significant muscle regeneration and functional muscle formation, because of cell activation and proliferation, and cellular protection from apoptosis by the released factors (Borselli et al. 2010). Long-term survival and outward migration of primary myoblasts into damaged muscle tissue in vivo from RGD-alginate hydrogels were significantly improved by the sustained delivery of hepatocyte growth factor and fibroblast growth factor2 from the hydrogels (Hill et al. 2006a, b). This led to extensive repopulation of host muscle tissues and enhancement of the regeneration of muscle fibers at the wound site (Hill et al. 2006a, b).

Alginate hydrogels have also been tested as biomaterials that can act to repair the central and peripheral nervous system. Alginate-based highly anisotropic capillary gels, introduced into acute cervical spinal cord lesions in adult rats, were integrated into the spinal cord parenchyma without significant inflammatory responses and directed axonal regrowth (Prang et al. 2006). Alginate gels, covalently cross-linked with ethylenediamine, can be useful to restore a 50 mm gap in cat sciatic nerves (Lee and Mooney 2012; Hashimoto et al. 2005) and promote the outgrowth of regenerating axons and astrocyte reactions at the stump of transected spinal cords in young rats (Kataoka et al. 2004). Alginate gels are also used as glue for the repair of peripheral nerve gaps that could not be sutured (Suzuki et al. 2000).

Alginate has shown great use and potential as a biomaterial for several biomedical applications, for wound healing, drug delivery systems, in vitro cell culture, and tissue engineering (Lee and Mooney 2012). The foremost attractive features of alginate for these applications include biocompatibility, mild gelation conditions, and easy modifications to make alginate derivatives with new properties. There are documents on the safe clinical use of alginate as a wound healing and dressing, as well as pharmaceutical compositions. It can be safely implanted in a variety of

applications, including islet transplantation for type 1 diabetes (Soon-Shiong and Heintz 1994) and chondrocyte transplantation for urinary incontinence and vesicoureteral (Diamond and Caldamone 1999; Kershen et al. 2000). A chemically modified alginate can be also widely used as a carrier to advance periodontal regeneration (Sculean et al. 2001). However, alginate gels have limited mechanical stiffness and more general physical properties. An ongoing challenge is matching the physical properties of alginate gels to the necessity in an exceedingly particular application. Consideration of the range of various available cross-linking strategies, using molecules with various chemical structures, molecular weights, and cross-linking functionality will often yield gels suitable for every application. Determined research concepts evaluate cell encapsulation strategies (Lee and Mooney 2012). But, covalent cross-linking reactions can cause toxicity to the cells to be encapsulated, and an appropriate choice of cell-compatible chemical reagents (initiator, activator), and thorough removal of unreacted components and by-products will likely be needed in those applications (Lee and Mooney 2012; Smeds and Grinstaff 2001).

Dynamical control over delivery can potentially improve the drug's safety and effectiveness and assure new therapeutic platforms. On-demand drug release from alginate gels in response to external cues like mechanical signals (Lee et al. 2000) and magnetic fields (Lee and Mooney 2012; Zhao et al. 2011) can be exploited to design active depots of the many drugs, including therapeutic cells. The introduction of appropriate cell-interactive features to alginate is additionally crucial in many tissue engineering applications. The kind of adhesion ligands and their spatial organization in gels are key variables, as they can adjust cell phenotype and also the resultant function of regenerated tissues. While RGD peptides are extensively exploited thus far as a cell adhesion ligand, multiple ligands and/or a mix of ligands and soluble factors could also be required to properly produce replacement tissues and organs.

Gelatin is a natural polymer obtained by partial hydrolysis of collagen, which is considered to be nonimmunogenic, biodegradable, easy to process, and biocompatible for clinic use (Mohammadzadehmoghadam and Dong 2019; Lien et al. 2009; Aldana and Abraham 2017; Babitha et al. 2017). Most ECM is made of gelatin and carbohydrates. However, gelatin is rarely used as the sole constituent owing to its high brittleness, and thus needs to be functionalized using cross-linking, grafting, and blending methods (Mohammadzadehmoghadam and Dong 2019; Hersel et al. 2003; Zhang et al. 2006; Wongputtaraksa et al. 2012; Taddei et al. 2013; Poursamar et al. 2016).

Gelatin is often made through thermal and chemical denaturation of collagen with pronounced properties of nontoxic, nonirritant, and biodegradability, likewise nearly as good living body compatibility (Bigi et al. 1998; Bajpai and Kankane 2007). Gelatin contains an Arg-Gly-Asp (RGD) sequence which improved cell adhesion and migration (Huang et al. 2005). It possesses a high degree of biological functional groups and potential for tissue scaffolding applications. Gelatin can be used in pharmaceuticals, wound dressings, and adhesives in clinics because of its good

cell viability and lack of antigenicity. Improved formability and low costs allow selection and mass production (Kim et al. 2005).

Gelatin can be also used as a coating agent to enhance cell attachment as a technique of vascular tissue regeneration (Nair and Thottappillil 2015). Gelatin shows gel-forming, thickening, emulsifying, and foaming proprieties. The mechanical ones depend on the supramolecular structure (Kozlov and Burdygina 1983). Syntheses of anionic or cationic gelatin are based on extraction conditions and fundamentally for filling molecules through electrostatic interaction. Since gelatin stability at high temperatures and a wide range of pH allow synthetic polymers to be grafted on the gelatin backbone. The methods are known as "grafting from", polymerization on the functional surface of the substrate, "grafting to," grafting of a fully functionalized polymer to the substrate, or "grafting through" (Sadeghi and Heidari 2011).

Gelatin-based formulations are employed in biomedicine and therapeutic agent controlled delivery (Sajkiewicz and Kołbuk 2014). Polyethyleneimine-functionalized gelatin can increase transfection efficiency thanks to positive nanoparticles that facilitate DNA loading (Kuo et al. 2011). It indicates the possibility to use hydrogel as vectors for gene controlled delivery.

Methacryloyl group-grafted gelatin, also known as gelatin methacrylate (GelMA) had been used for the microfabricated blood vessel. Gelatin electrospun fibers loaded with antibiotic drugs show a strong antibacterial activity but this gelatin has to be reinforced with materials such as graphene oxide and boron nitride, to improve poor mechanical proprieties (Bakhsheshi-Rad et al. 2017; Nagarajan et al. 2017; Nagarajan et al. 2016a, b).

Gelatin copolymer acts as a natural cell surface that reacts under mechanical stimulation when the electrospinning process is used to create tubular scaffolding and allows obtaining a similar morphology as the native ECM structure (Thomas and Nair 2012). Panzavolta's group obtained electrospun gelatin nanofibers cross-linked with genipin (low-toxicity agent) which reduces the extensibility of the electrospun mats, producing appreciable improvements in elastic modulus and breaking stress (Panzavolta et al. 2011). Long-term studies on cross-linked electrospun gelatin are still in progress to confirm its efficacy as a biomaterial scaffold for blood vessel tissue engineering.

2-Hydroxyethyl methacrylate (HEMA) is a famous monomer due to its versatility for syntheses of polymeric biomaterials-hydrogels and hydrogel scaffolds. HEMA-based polymeric materials show favorable biocompatibility and tunable hydrophilicity. Therefore, they have multiple applications in pharmaceutical and biomedical fields such as coatings, intraocular lenses, scaffolds, and controlled drug release systems. To tune the biocompatibility, swelling, and mechanical properties of HEMA-based hydrogels, they can be combined with hydrophilic polymeric components (Prasitsilp et al. 2003; Hejcl et al. 2008; Kubinova et al. 2015; Babić and Tomić 2020; Tomić and Vuković 2020).

6.2 Design and Properties of Alginate/Gelatin/2-Hydroxyethyl Methacrylate Hydrogel Scaffolds

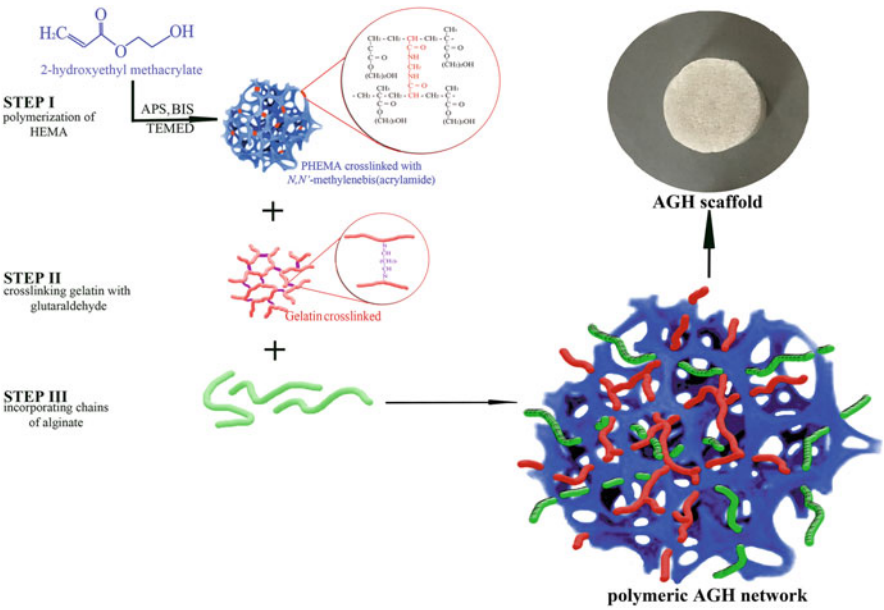
6.2.1 Alginate/Gelatin/2-Hydroxyethyl Methacrylate Polymeric Hydrogel Scaffolds

Two series of novel, porous, and degradable hydrogel scaffolds were successfully synthesized using a combination of natural polymers-alginate and gelatin, and synthetic monomer 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate (AGH), by cryogelation and porogenation. The synthesis path is shown in Scheme 6.1.

Hydrogel scaffolds were made in three steps.In the first step, porous and the mechanically strong polymeric network was obtained by free-radical cross-linking polymerization of 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate in the presence of an initiator, activator, and cross-linking agent. In the second step, an additional polymeric network was created by the cross-linking of gelatin. The third step is alginate chains are loaded to intertwine in the networks.

6.2.1.1 Biocompatibility of AGH Hydrogel Scaffolds

The main focus during the design of the scaffolding polymeric biomaterials which can be used in regenerative engineering and medicine is the first step related to in vitro and in vivo biocompatibility testing of the hydrogel matrices. The biocompatibility of AGH hydrogel scaffolds was evaluated in a cytotoxicity test on normal human fibroblasts (MRC5). The results of this assay for AGH samples are shown in Fig. 6.1. A50G50Hcryo, A30G70Hcryo, AHcryo, A50G50Hpor, and A30G70Hpor



Scheme 6.1 Scheme hydrogel scaffolds formation by cryogelation and porogenation

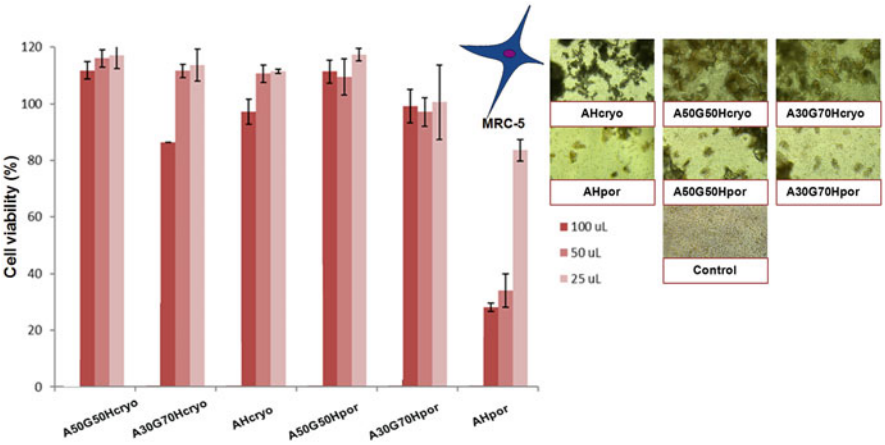


Fig. 6.1 Cell viability of AGH hydrogel scaffolds and accumulation of cells on its surface

samples showed very favorable cellular viability in contact with cell culture. The AHpor sample showed a lower level of cell survival (for higher extract concentration). It has been shown that all scaffolds, when delivered directly to cells, support the accumulation of cells on their surface (Fig. 6.1). The obtained data confirm that AGH hydrogel scaffolds demonstrate favorable level of cytocompatibility. Therefore, these scaffolding materials are suitable for applications as biomaterials in tissue regeneration.

To address whether the alginate/gelatin/methacrylate hydrogels could be used for human use, we assessed their in vivo toxicity using the zebrafish model. The zebrafish model was accepted as a valid alternative to mammalian models (rats mice) for toxicity and biocompatibility evaluation of novel biomaterial sowing to the high molecular, genetic, physiological, and immunological similarity to humans, and good correlation in response to pharmaceuticals and bioactive agents (Lieschke and Currie 2007; MacRae and Peterson 2015), simplifying thus the route to clinical trials and reducing the failure at later stages of testing (Barros et al. 2008; MacRae and Peterson 2015).

Given that the organisms at embryonic developmental stages are more sensitive to the chemical insults than as an adult, we subjected zebrafish embryos at the 6 hpf stage indirectly, to the material's extracts (embryo water in which the ground materials were extracted over 72 h at 37 °C and 180 rpm and applied as 100%, 50%, 25%, and 10% suspensions) and to the ground material (200 μg/mL) for 5 days. Obtained data showed that all AGHcryo and AGHpor scaffolding biomaterials tested, regardless of the method was no toxic to the zebrafish embryos, since there were no lethality, developmental malformation, cardiovascular disorders, or signs of hepatotoxicity (the liver necrosis and the yolk retention) (Fig. 6.2), indicating the safety of the tested materials. We showed the safety and biocompatibility (no inflammation and no immunosuppression) of 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate hydrogels using the zebrafish model (Tomić et al. 2020). In this study, we showed

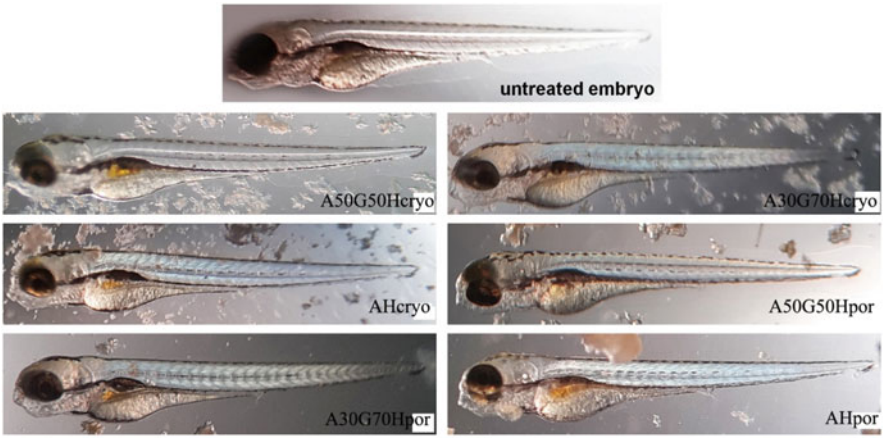


Fig. 6.2 Morphology of zebrafish embryos exposed to AGH hydrogel scaffolds (200 μg/mL) at 104 hpf

that AGH hydrogel scaffolds present also nontoxic materials, indicating their favorable potential in biomedical applications. Otherwise, the alginate-based materials have been applied as safe biomaterials for the food packing and oral delivery to zebrafish larvae or adults (Onal and Langdon 2000; Lin et al. 2016) and more recently as the carriers of drugs to improve their therapeutic outcome (controlled release, reduced toxicity, increase in efficacy) (Tzankova et al. 2017; Gao et al. 2017).

6.2.1.2 Structural Properties of AGH Hydrogel Scaffolds

Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy (FTIR) gives information about the structural characteristics of created scaffolds. FTIR spectra are tracked to find the most important bands indicating the presence of functional groups originated from scaffold components (alginate, gelatin, and 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate). Peaks indicating the presence of HEMA in the polymeric network are on the following wavenumbers 3360 cm^{-1}, 2940 cm^{-1}, 1640 cm^{-1}, and 1710 cm^{-1} and are assigned to asymmetric and symmetric stretching vibrations (terminal hydroxyl group), methylene stretching, and terminal vinyl, and a carbonyl group. The peak at 1640 cm^{-1} can be assigned to the asymmetric stretching of COO^{-} of alginate (Wang et al. 2016). Also, the FTIR spectra show characteristic bands for alginate at 1027 cm^{-1} and 1086 cm^{-1} for its glucuronic (G) and manuronic (M) acid units. The bands at 879 cm^{-1} and 822 cm^{-1} demonstrate β-glycosidic linkages between G and M units of alginate. Besides these, characteristic bands of gelatin at 1620 cm^{-1} and 1536 cm^{-1} were observed, which correspond to amide I and amide II groups (Sharma et al. 2016). The peak at about 1150 cm^{-1}, related to C-O vibration, indicates cross-linking of gelatin, and confirms its successful incorporation into the polymeric structure. Also, the broad peak from 2900 cm^{-1} to 3600 cm^{-1} illustrates a

strong -OH bond resulting from the interaction between alginate and gelatin (Wang et al. 2016).

6.2.1.3 Water Uptake Capacity of AGH Hydrogel Scaffolds

AGH hydrogel scaffold water uptake capacity shows the hydration of dry scaffold. The AGH matrices swell up to 90% within 10 min, reaching equilibrium within 30 min. Once the scaffold was water equilibrated, further, it remains at equilibrium for a longer period. In that way shows their capacity for water uptake and the ability to retain water over a long period. AGH hydrogel scaffolds show a time-favorable hydration profile which is suitable for use in tissue regeneration.

6.2.2 Alginate/Gelatin/2-Hydroxyethyl Methacrylate Hydrogel Scaffolds Made by Cryogelation

6.2.2.1 Morphology of AGHcryo Hydrogel Scaffolds

The demands that scaffolds need to meet for proper cell attachment are to easily deliver oxygen, nutrients, water-soluble metabolites, and waste products between the inside and outside of the hydrogel scaffold. To fulfill these demands, the scaffold must exhibit a large number of interconnected pores. To examine the morphology of created scaffolds based on alginate, gelatin, and 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate, prepared by cryogelation (AGHcryo), a scanning electron microscopy (SEM) was performed. The obtained SEM micrographs are displayed in Fig. 6.3. As can be seen, the interior of the scaffolds is highly porous, with open, interconnected pores, with spherical to elliptical shapes. The pore size was found to vary between 10 and 100 μm, which can provide efficient vascularization, proliferation, and differentiation of cells.

The surface morphology of AGHcryo scaffolds can be described as rough and porous, similar to the interior architecture of the tested scaffolds. When compared to the scaffolding materials with smooth and nonporous walls, AGHcryo scaffolds are expected to enhance the attachment of cells and their mutual interaction. The internal and surface morphology of scaffolds with different gelatin content shows different patterns that can be attributed to the more cross-links of gelatin. Obtained data for morphological testing indicate that AGHcryo scaffolds are suitable for tissue regeneration and biomedical applications.

6.2.2.2 Mechanical Properties of AGHcryo Hydrogel Scaffolds

Mechanical properties are very valuable properties of the scaffolds for tissue engineering. Therefore, the scaffold should possess good strength. To evaluate the mechanical properties of hydrogel scaffolds based on alginate, gelatin, and 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate, prepared by cryogelation (AGHcryo), Young's modulus (E) was determined. The results revealed E values of AGHcryo samples in the range of 1.251–9.755 MPa, thus clearly indicating that scaffold composition determines their mechanical properties. The lowest E value exhibited the AHcryo sample (1.251 MPa), while A50G50Hcryo showed the highest value (9.755 MPa).

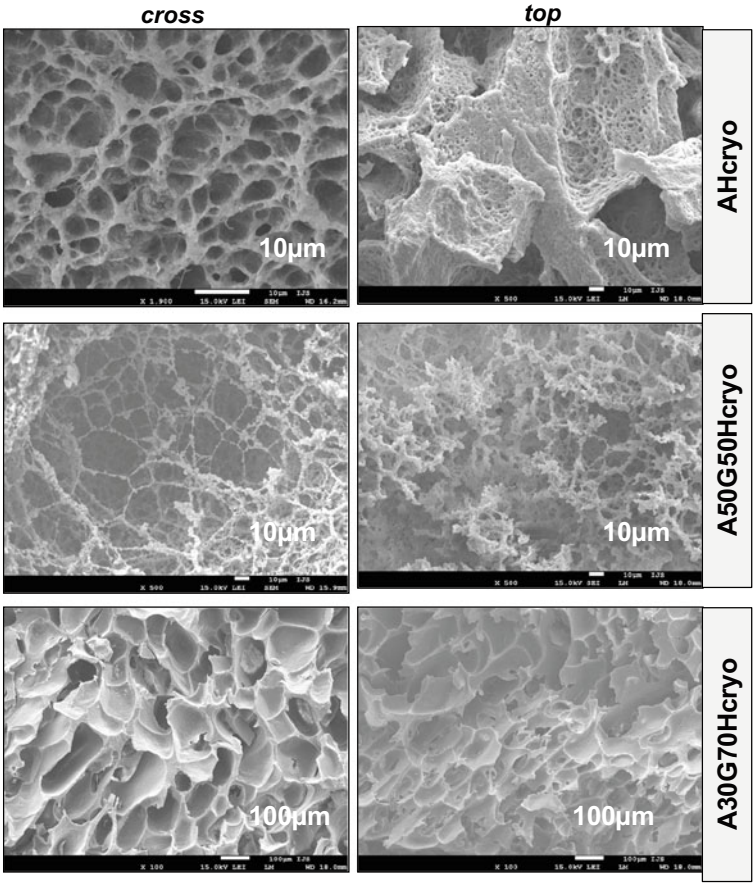


Fig. 6.3 SEM micrographs of AGHcryo hydrogels

The presence of gelatin resulted in a more compact, mechanically stronger structure, but with the further increase of gelatin content value of Young's modulus was decreased. Certainly, according to known data related to the mechanical characteristics of native tissues, AGHcryo scaffolds possess great potential for tissue regeneration application, especially for soft tissues and skin. The desired mechanical strength can be adjusted by synthesis optimization and adjusting the component ratios.

6.2.2.3 Porosity of AGHcryo Hydrogel Scaffolds

The porosity of hydrogel scaffolds based on alginate, gelatin, and 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate, prepared by cryogelation (AGHcryo) was evaluated by the bulk density method. The porosity values of hydrogel scaffolds depend on the composition of scaffolds. The results obtained reveal a high level of porosity of all tested samples, over 80%. The highest porosity showed the AHcryo sample (84.63%),

while the lowest value has an A50G50Hcryo sample (82.26%). The presence of gelatin slightly decreased the porosity, most probably due to the more cross-links of gelatin. Results indicate that the porosity of the AGHcryo hydrogel scaffolds obtained by cryogelation can be adjusted and adapted by modifications of scaffold composition and variations of components ratio. Generally, there is no change in porosity due to the increased surface area and hydrophilicity of gelatin and alginate.

6.2.2.4 Hydrophilicity of AGHcryo Hydrogel Scaffolds

The surface hydrophilicity of the alginate/gelatin/2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate hydrogel scaffolds, prepared by cryogelation was assessed by the contact angle measuring through droplet water spread on a surface. As it is well known, the hydrophilicity of material is reflected in contact angle low values. The results obtained from the static water contact angle are presented in Fig. 6.4. A50G50Hcryo hydrogel scaffold was found to be fully hydrophilic, due to the completely wet surface and disappearance of the water drop. The contact angle values for A30G70Hcryo and AHcryo samples are 81.55 and 81.20. The surface hydrophilicity of AGHcryo scaffolds certainly depends on the composition and ratio of natural polymers used for the syntheses. Obtained data showed favorable hydrophilicity of

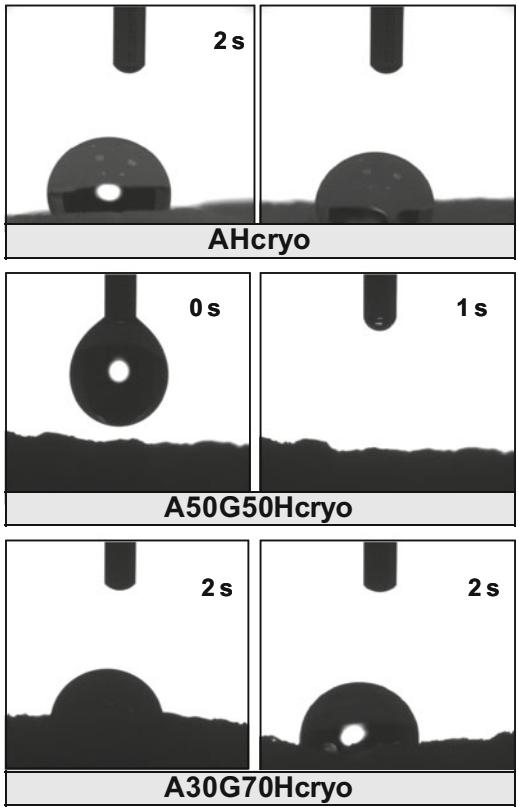


Fig. 6.4 The water contact angle of AGHcryo hydrogel scaffolds

AGHcryo hydrogel scaffolds. Thus the hydrophilic character of hydrogels based on alginate, gelatin, and 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate, prepared by cryogelation can provide efficient attachment, proliferation, and further growth of the cells.

6.2.2.5 In Vitro Degradation Properties of AGHcryo Hydrogel Scaffolds

The in vitro degradation process was monitored in controlled, physiologically conditions-simulated buffer fluid of pH 7.40 and at a temperature of 37 °C. The weight loss, as an indicator of degradation of alginate/gelatin/2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate hydrogel scaffolds, prepared using cryogelation was investigated for 3 months. The tested scaffolds degraded up to 11% after 3 months. The highest weight loss was detected for the AHcryo scaffold (11.33%), while the lowest weight loss exhibited A30G70Hpor (3.41%). The decrease of alginate content and the increase of gelatin in scaffolds resulted in decreased biodegradability. As it is assumed, the degree of cross-linking of gelatin has a prominent influence on the scaffolds biodegradability.

6.2.3 Alginate/Gelatin/2-Hydroxyethyl Methacrylate Hydrogel Scaffolds Made by Porogenation

6.2.3.1 Morphology of AGHpor Hydrogel Scaffolds

Hydrogel scaffolds designed for tissue regeneration must be highly porous with an open interconnected pore, to permit a large surface area relative to the scaffold's volume. The porosity is directly coherent to the function of the scaffold. Pronounced and interconnected porosity will promote cell growth, uniform cell distribution, and assist the neovascularization of the matrix. According to the latest studies, scaffolds should have a distribution of pores ranging from micrometers to 100 μm, improving the capillarity of the scaffolds and enabling the ingrowth of cells (Kim et al. 2019). Morphological properties of the alginate/gelatin/2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate hydrogel scaffolds, prepared by porogenation (AGHpor) were tested using scanning electron microscopy (SEM) (Fig. 6.5). SEM micrographs of the cross-sections revealed a uniform porous structure with interconnected pores. No phase separation and occurrence of crystalline regions phenomena were detected, which indicate the compactness and compatibility between components of the resulting polymeric network scaffolds. The addition and increase of gelatin content in the scaffolds reflected in a more porous, almost like a honeycomb, structure with the smaller pores finely distributed in larger pores. Scaffold's architecture can be depicted as the interior is porous, with open, interconnected pores, with spherical to elliptical shapes, thus providing efficient nutrient flow and distribution, the proper vascularization, proliferation, and differentiation support for the cells.

Also, micrographs of the scaffold's surfaces revealed a range of pore sizes from a few microns to 200 μm, as well as their interconnections. The larger ones are filled with small pores, which indicate that the surface porosity can contribute to the interactions between these scaffolding materials and the cells, which implies their faster attachment.

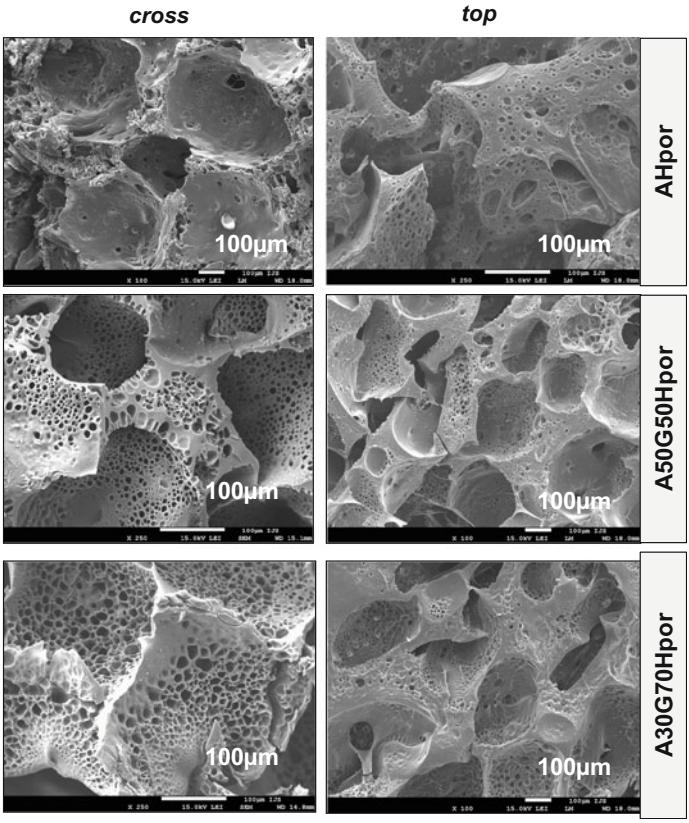


Fig. 6.5 SEM micrographs of AGHpor hydrogel scaffolds

6.2.3.2 Mechanical Properties of AGHpor Hydrogel Scaffolds

Mechanical properties are a very valuable parameter for scaffolding engineering because scaffolding must withstand handling and should show initial load-bearing capacity. To achieve this, the challenge is to combine hydrogel scaffolding of natural/synthetic origin. Strength tests were performed to assess the mechanical performance of the scaffolds. The focus of current researches in tissue engineering is to make a porous scaffold that mimics the native extracellular matrix (ECM). Among the demands, mechanical properties are essential factors to consider in scaffolds production. Mechanical strength is defined by the impact resistance of final products to maintain the integrity of the scaffold during implantation (Tran et al. 2018). The material application for tissue engineering requires the resemblance of deformable characteristics between the biomaterial and the analog tissue. The cell attachment, growth, and function in such a 3D structure depend on the scaffold mechanical properties (Lim et al. 2019). Elastic modulus, as a representative of the stiffness of the biomaterial, is an indicator of similarity between the biomaterial aimed to replace or repair particular tissue.

Young's modulus (E) of hydrogel alginate/gelatin/2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate scaffolds, prepared by porogenation was determined and the obtained values depend on the composition of the scaffolds. As was expected, the reverse trend of calculated E values was noticed compared to the determined porosity of the hydrogel scaffolds. The lowest E value exhibited A50G50Hpor (0.988 MPa), the scaffold with the highest level of porosity. The increase of gelatin content resulted in a more compact, mechanically stronger structure, thus the A30G70Hpor sample showed the highest value of Young's modulus (4.056 MPa). AHpor scaffold has E value near the highest calculated (3.102 MPa).

The obtained data indicate that the mechanical properties can be tuned through control of the scaffold's composition. According to known data, the native skin has Young's modulus in a range of 4.6–20.0 MPa, while the E value of cartilage is 12.0 MPa (Joodaki and Panzer 2018; Żak et al. 2011). Thus, alginate/gelatin/2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate scaffolds, prepared by porogenation can realize the requirements for the specific biomedical application. Additionally, by altering scaffold composition and the ratio of components, favorable mechanical strength could be reached.

6.2.3.3 Porosity of AGHpor hydrogel Scaffolds

The specifically defined porosity of the scaffolding materials is certainly one of the crucial requests that must be fulfilled to create an adequate 3D matrix for cell attachment, viability, and growth to successfully regenerate damaged tissue. The level of porosity of a biomaterial can be evaluated by the bulk density method, as it was performed in this study. The results obtained for AGHpor hydrogel scaffolds show that AGHpor tested scaffolds exhibited values of porosity in the range of 28–70%, thus confirming the results of the morphological study. The presence of gelatin increased the porosity of the hydrogels. The minimum value showed AHpor (28.48%), due to the intertwined chains of alginate in the polymeric matrix which decreases available free space. The highest porosity exhibited for the A50G50Hpor sample (69.92%). Further increase of gelatin content slightly decreased the porosity of the hydrogel scaffolds, probably due to the more cross-links of gelatin. Thus, scaffold composition and component variations play a notable role in tailoring the specific and targeted porosity of these biomaterials.

6.2.3.4 Hydrophilicity of AGHpor Hydrogel Scaffolds

The extracellular matrix hydrophilicity is a valuable parameter affecting cell adhesion processes in tissue engineering. Low surface wettability influences the attachment, colonization, and growth of cells (Cho et al. 2015). Focal adhesion represents the interaction between cells and scaffold or the specific sites of their contacts. When the scaffold surface has a hydrophobic character, it disables the focal adhesion. Nowadays, the development of scaffolding materials is focused on surface modifications to achieve desirable hydrophilicity (Chang and Wang 2011).

The surface hydrophilicity of hydrogel scaffolds is assessed by measuring the contact angle through the water droplet spread on a surface. A lower contact angle indicates higher surface hydrophilicity. Figure 6.6 shows the static water contact

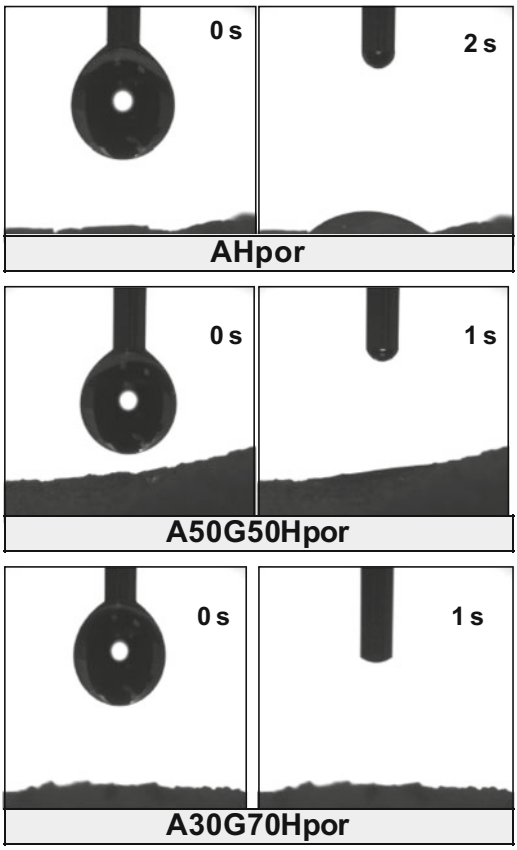


Fig. 6.6 The water contact angle of AGHpor hydrogels

angle results obtained reveal the hydrophilic character of AGHpor hydrogel scaffolds. As can be observed, A50G50Hpor and A30G70Hpor hydrogel scaffolds are completely hydrophilic, where water has completely wetted their surface, with the drop disappearing immediately after being placed on the surface of the hydrogel. AHpor sample shows a slightly small wetting angle. The obtained results suggest that the AGHpor hydrogel scaffolds are suitable as scaffolding biomaterials to enable favorable adhesion, proliferation, and differentiation of various types of cells.

6.2.3.5 In Vitro Degradation Properties of AGHpor Hydrogel Scaffolds

Scaffold degradation and the matching rate between scaffold degradation and new tissue growth are crucial factors for advanced tissue regeneration (Zhang et al. 2014). Synthetic biodegradable polymers can be used extensively for scaffold fabrication due to desirable mechanical support to the 3D matrix, and the possibility to control the degradation (Sung et al. 2004). Natural polymers, biopolymers, e.g., alginate and gelatin, are suitable candidates for porous ECM-mimicking scaffolds, owing to their biodegradable and biocompatible nature (Bettinger et al. 2007).

The weight loss, as an indicator of degradation, for alginate/gelatin/2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate hydrogel scaffolds is investigated during 3 months, in simulated buffer fluid of pH 7.40, at 37 °C. The scaffolds are degraded up to 3% after 3 months. The highest weight loss exhibited A30G70Hpor (3.07%), suggesting that the increase of gelatin content contributed to the biodegradability of the hydrogels. AHpor and A50G50Hpor degraded at a similar rate, with weight loss of around 1.60%.

From the obtained data for the rate of weight loss of AGHpor scaffolding biomaterials, it can be said that the composition of the scaffolds affects the degradation process in such a way that the desired degradation rate can be achieved by varying and fine adjustment of the component ratio.

6.3 Summary and Future Perspectives

In our researches, two series of scaffolding biomaterials, based on alginate/gelatin/methacrylate, were synthesized by free-radical polymerization/cross-linking reaction using special methods of cryogelation and porogenaion. All samples showed favorable properties thus suitable for tissue regeneration and engineering-biocompatibility, water uptake, morphology, mechanical properties, porosity, hydrophilicity, and degradation.

6.3.1 AGHcryo Hydrogel Scaffolds

We have successfully developed hydrogel scaffolds of alginate, gelatin, and 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate by free-radical cross-linking polymerization using cryogelation. Results obtained for cytotoxicity, it can see that AGHcryo hydrogel scaffolds do not show significant changes in cell viability with the composition scaffold, and are exceptionally cytocompatible, and therefore suitable as polymeric biomaterials for tissue regeneration. The in vivo zebrafish embryos assay test showed that the AGHcryo scaffolding materials tested were no toxic effects, since there was no lethality, developmental malformation, cardiovascular disorders, or signs of hepatotoxicity, which means they are safe to use in tissue regeneration. The spectroscopic characteristics of the AGHcryo scaffolding materials demonstrated the presence of bands indicating that the polymeric networks were constructed of alginate, gelatin, and 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate components. Water uptake behavior for AGHcryo hydrogel scaffolds demonstrated a time-favorable hydration profile which is suitable for use in tissue regeneration. The morphology of AGHcryo hydrogel scaffolds is highly porous, with open, spherical to elliptical shapes, interconnected pores, with pore size in the range of 10–100 μm, which can provide efficient vascularization, proliferation, and differentiation of cells that meet the requirements to be used for tissue regeneration. The mechanical properties of AGHcryo scaffold samples, represented by the modulus of elasticity, are in the range of 1.251–9.755 MPa, and depend on the composition of the scaffolds. These

values indicate the great potential of AGHcryo scaffolding materials for tissue regeneration, especially for soft tissues and skin. The porosity data of AGHcryo scaffold samples are in the range of 80–85%. This parameter can be adjusted and adapted by modifications of scaffold composition and variations of components ratio. A50G50Hcryo hydrogel scaffold was found to be fully hydrophilic. The contact angle values for A30G70Hcryo and AHcryo samples are 81.55 and 81.20. Obtained data showed favorable hydrophilicity of AGHcryo hydrogel scaffolds. Thus the hydrophilic character of alginate/gelatin/2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate hydrogels, prepared by cryogelation can provide efficient cell attachment, proliferation, and further growth. The in vitro degradation process was monitored for 3 months. The tested AGHcryo hydrogel scaffolds degraded up to 11% after 3 months. The highest weight loss was detected for the AHcryo scaffold, while the lowest weight loss exhibited A30G70Hpor.

6.3.2 AGHpor Hydrogel Scaffolds

We have designed alginate/gelatin/2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate hydrogel scaffolds by free-radical polymerization/cross-linking using porogenation. The cytotoxicity assay for AGHpor hydrogel scaffolds shows satisfied cell viability (only AHpor for higher extract concentration shows lower cell viability). In vivo zebrafish embryos assay test showed that the AGHpor scaffolding materials were no toxic effects since there was no lethality, developmental malformation, cardiovascular disorders, or signs of hepatotoxicity. Therefore, AGHpor scaffolding materials are safe to use in tissue regeneration applications as polymeric biomaterials. The spectroscopic characteristics of the AGHpor scaffolding materials demonstrated the presence of bands indicating that the polymeric networks were built of alginate, gelatin, and 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate components. Water uptake behavior for AGHpor hydrogel scaffolds displayed a time-favorable hydration profile which is suitable for use in tissue regeneration. Morphology of AGHpor hydrogel scaffolds indicates highly porous structures, with open, spherical to elliptical shapes, interconnected pores. Pore size is in the range of 10–100 μm. This morphology pattern can provide efficient vascularization, proliferation, and differentiation of cells, which are prerequisites for tissue regeneration. The modulus of elasticity of AGHpor scaffolds is in the range of 0.988–4.056 MPa and depends on the scaffold composition. These values indicate the good potential of AGHpor hydrogel scaffolds for tissue regeneration, particularly for soft tissues. The porosity data of AGHpor scaffold samples is in the range of 28–70%. This feature can be tuned and adapted by modifications of scaffold composition and variations of components ratio. A50G50Hpor and A30G70Hpor hydrogel scaffolds were found to be fully hydrophilic. AHpor sample showed a slightly small wetting angle. The obtained results suggest that AGHpor hydrogels are favorable scaffolding biomaterials for cell adhesion, proliferation, and differentiation. The tested AGHpor hydrogel scaffolds degraded up to 3% after 3 months. The highest weight loss exhibited A30G70Hpor (3.07%), suggesting that the increase of gelatin content contributed to the biodegradability of the

hydrogels. AHpor and A50G50Hpor degraded at a similar rate, with weight loss of around 1.60%.

As the most important achievements of these extensive researches, it can be stated that AGH hydrogel scaffolds created by cryogelation showed slightly more favorable properties for tissue regeneration compared to AGH hydrogel scaffolds created by porogenation. Another important fact is that more advantageous properties for tissue regeneration are achieved when the polymeric chains of alginate are intermingled into polymeric networks of gelatin and 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate than into a polymeric network of 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate. Thanks to the significant progress already made, along with others that will be made in the near future. The safe and effective clinical application of alginate/gelatin/methacrylate polymeric scaffolding systems is expected to accelerate and expand soon.

Hydrogel scaffolding materials have a significant role in regenerative medicine and tissue engineering. The future advances and success of hydrogel scaffolds are based on the new classes of polymers syntheses or the modification of natural polymers to solve certain biological and medical obstacles. Most scientific research shows that hydrogel scaffolding studies have a great future. New aspects to hydrogel scaffold design are increased in the investigation of these biomaterials, with an emphasis on rapid response, self-assembly, high and good mechanical properties, and super-porosity.

Acknowledgments This research is supported by the SCOPES program of the Swiss National Science Foundation and the Swiss Agency for Development and Cooperation [Grant No IZ73ZO_152327]. This work is supported by the Ministry for Education, Science, and Technological Development of the Republic of Serbia (Contracts Nos. 451-03-9/2021-14/172062 and 451-03-9/2021-14/172026).

References

Aldana AA, Abraham GA (2017) Current advances in electrospun gelatin-based scaffolds for tissue engineering applications. Int J Pharm 523:441–453

Alves da Silva M, Martins A, Costa-Pinto AR, Monteiro N, Faria S, Reis RL, Neves NM (2017) Electrospun nanofibrous meshes cultured with Wharton's jelly stem cell: an alternative for cartilage regeneration, without the need of growth factors. Biotechnol J. https://doi.org/10.1002/biot.201700073

Amado S, Morouço P, Pascoal-Faria P, Alves N (2017) Tailoring Bioengineered scaffolds for regenerative medicine. In: Dobrzański LA (ed) Biomaterials in regenerative medicine. IntechOpen, London. https://doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.69857. Available from: https://www.intechopen.com/chapters/56531

Annabi N, Nichol JW, Zhong X, Ji C et al (2010) Controlling the porosity and microarchitecture of hydrogels for tissue engineering. Tissue Eng Part B16:371–383

Atala A (2008) Advances in tissue and organ replacement. Curr Stem Cell Res Ther 3:21–31

Atala A (2012) Regenerative medicine strategies. J Pediatr Surg 47:17–28

Babić MM, Tomić SLj (2020) Semi-interpenetrating networks based on (Meth)acrylate, itaconic acid, and poly(vinyl Pyrrolidone) hydrogels for biomedical applications. In: Jana S, Jana S (eds) Interpenetrating polymer network: biomedical applications. Springer, Singapore, pp 263–288

Babitha S, Rachita L, Karthikeyan K, Shoba E, Janani I, Poornima B et al (2017) Electrospun protein nanofibers in healthcare: a review. Int J Pharm 523:52–90

Bailey AM, Mendicino M, Au P (2014) An FDA perspective on preclinical development of cell-based regenerative medicine products. Nat Biotechnol 32:721–723

Bajpai AK, Kankane S (2007) Preparation and characterization of macroporous poly (2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate)-based biomaterials: water sorption property and in vitro blood compatibility. J Appl Polym Sci 104:1559–1571

Baker BM, Trappmann B, Wang WY, Sakar MS, Kim IL, Shenoy VB, Burdick JA, Chen CS (2015) Cell-mediated fibre recruitment drives extracellular matrix mechanosensing in engineered fibrillar microenvironments. Nat Mater 14:1262–1268

Bakhsheshi-Rad HR, Hadisi Z, Hamzah E, Ismail AF, Aziz M, Kashefian M (2017) Drug delivery and cytocompatibility of ciprofloxacin loaded gelatin nanofibers-coated Mg alloy. Mater Lett 207:179–182

Barros TP, Alderton WK, Reynolds HM, Roach AG, Berghmans S (2008) Zebrafish: an emerging technology for in vivo pharmacological assessment to identify potential safety liabilities in early drug discovery. Br J Pharmacol 154:1400–1413

Behravesh E, Mikos AG (2003) Three-dimensional culture of differentiating marrow stromal osteoblasts in biomimetic poly(propylene fumarate-co-ethylene glycol)-based macroporous hydrogels. J Biomed Mater Res A 66:698–706

Bettinger CJ, Borenstein JT, Langer R (2007) Micro- and nanofabricated scaffolds. In: Lanza R, Langer R, Vacanti J (eds) Principles of tissue engineering, 3rd edn. Elsevier Academic Press, San Diego, CA, pp 341–358

Bigi A, Panzavolta S, Rovery N (1998) Hydroxyapatite-gelatin films: a structural and mechanical characterization. Biomaterials 19:739–744

Borselli C, Storrie H, Benesch-Lee F, Shvartsman D, Cezar C, Lichtman JW, Vandenburgh HH, Mooney DJ (2010) Functional muscle regeneration with combined delivery of angiogenesis and myogenesis factors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107:3287–3292

Boyan BD, Lohmann CH, Romero J, Schwartz Z (1999) Bone and cartilage tissue engineering. Clin Plast Surg 26:629–645

Brauker JH, Carr-Brendel VE, Martinson LA, Crudele J, Johnston WD, Johnson RC (1995) Neovascularization of synthetic membranes directed by membrane microarchitecture. J Biomed Mater Res 29:1517–1524

Bryant SJ, Anseth KS (2001) The effects of scaffold thickness on tissue engineered cartilage in photocrosslinked poly(ethylene oxide) hydrogels. Biomaterials 22:619–626

Bryant SJ, Davis-Arehart KA, Luo N, Shoemaker RK, Arthur JA, Anseth KS (2004) Synthesis and characterization of photopolymerized multifunctional hydrogels: water-soluble poly(vinyl alcohol) and chondroitin sulfate macromers for chondrocyte encapsulation. Macromolecules 37: 6726–6733

Budama-Kilinc Y, Cakir-Koc R, Aslan B, Özkan B, Mutlu H, Üstün E (2017) Hydrogels in regenerative medicine. In: Dobrzański LA (ed) Biomaterials in regenerative medicine. IntechOpen. https://doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.70409

Cabodi M, Choi NW, Gleghorn JP, Lee CSD, Bonassar LJ, Stroock AD (2005) A microfluidic biomaterial. J Am Chem Soc 127:13788–13789

Camarero-Espinosa S, Cooper-White J (2016) Tailoring biomaterial scaffolds for osteochondral repair. Int J Pharm 523:476–489

Cascone MG, Barbani N, Cristallini C, Giusti P, Ciardelli G, Lazzeri L (2001) Bioartificial polymeric materials based on polysaccharides. Aust J Biol Sci 12:267–281

Chang H-I and Wang Y (2011) Cell responses to surface and architecture of tissue engineering scaffolds. In: Eberli D (ed) Regenerative medicine and tissue engineering-cells and biomaterials, BoD – books on demand. https://doi.org/10.5772/21983

Chen LJ, Wang M (2002) Production and evaluation of biodegradable composites based on PHB-PHV copolymer. Biomaterials 23:2631–2639

Cheung DYC, Duan B, Butcher JT (2015) Bioprinting of cardiac tissues. In: Atala A, Yoo JJ (eds) Essentials of 3D biofabrication and translation. Academic Press, Elsevier Science, London, pp 351–370

Cho SJ, Jung SM, Kang M, Shin HS, Youk JH (2015) Preparation of hydrophilic PCL nanofiber scaffolds via electrospinning of PCL/PVP-b-PCL block copolymers for enhanced cell biocompatibility. Polymer 69:95–102. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.polymer.2015.05.037

Choi K, Kuhn J, Ciarelli M, Goldstein S (1990) The elastic moduli of human subchondral, trabecular, and cortical bone tissue and the size-dependency of cortical bone modulus. J Biomech 23:1103–1113

Ciardelli G, Chiono V, Vozzi G, Pracella M, Ahluwalia A, Barbani N, Cristallini C, Giusti P (2005) Blends of poly(ε-caprolactone) and polysaccharides in tissue engineering applications. Biomacromolecules 6:1961–1976

Cosson S, Otte EA, Hezaveh H, Cooper-White JJ (2015) Concise review: tailoring bioengineered scaffolds for stem cell applications in tissue engineering and regenerative medicine. Stem Cells Transl Med 4:156–164

Das S, Subuddhi U (2020) Alginate-based interpenetrating network carriers for biomedical applications. In: Jana S, Jana S (eds) Interpenetrating polymer network: biomedical applications. Springer, Singapore, pp 79–118

Diamond DA, Caldamone AA (1999) Endoscopic treatment of vesicoureteric reflux in children using autologous chondrocytes-preliminary results. J Urol 162:1185–1188

Diedwardo CA, Petrosko P, Acarturk TO, Dimilia PA, Laframboise WA, Johnson PC (1999) Muscle tissue engineering. Clin Plast Surg 26:647–656

Dzobo K, Turnley T, Wishart A et al (2016) Fibroblast-derived extracellular matrix induces chondrogenic differentiation in human adipose-derived mesenchymal stromal/stem cells in vitro. Int J Mol Sci. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms17081259

Eaglstein WH, Falanga V (1998) Tissue engineering and the development of Apligraf a human skin equivalent. AdvWound Care 11:1–8

Engler AJ, Sen S, Sweeney HL, Discher DE (2006) Matrix elasticity directs stem cell lineage specification. Cell 126:677–689

Evans ND, Gentleman E, Chen X, Roberts CJ, Polak JM, Stevens MM (2010) Extracellular matrix-mediated osteogenic differentiation of murine embryonic stem cells. Biomaterials 31:3244–3252

Eyrich D, Brandl F, Appel B et al (2007) Long-term stable fibrin gels for cartilage engineering. Biomaterials 28:55–65

Fang Z, Starly B, Sun W (2005) Computer-aided characterization for effective mechanical properties of porous tissue scaffolds. CAD Comput Aided Design 37:65–72

Fiedler T, Videira AC, Bártolo P, Strauch M, Murch GE, Ferreira JMF (2015) On the mechanical properties of PLC-bioactive glass scaffolds fabricated via BioExtrusion. Mater Sci Eng C 57:288–293

Gao G, Cui X (2016) Three-dimensional bioprinting in tissue engineering and regenerative medicine. Biotechnol Lett 38:203–211

Gao C, Tang F, Gong G, Zhang J, Hoi MPM, Lee SMY, Wang R (2017) pH-responsive prodrug nanoparticles based on a sodium alginate derivative for selective co-release of doxorubicin and curcumin into tumor cells. Nanoscale 9:12533–12542

Germain L, Auger FA, Grandbois E et al (1999) Reconstructed human cornea produced in vitro by tissue engineering. Pathobiology 67:140–147

Goncalves AI, Rodrigues MT, Gomes ME (2017) Tissue engineered magnetic cell sheet patches for advanced strategies in tendon regeneration. Acta Biomater 63:110–122

Guan X, Avci-Adali M, Alarcin E et al (2017) Development of hydrogels for regenerative engineering. Biotechnol J 12(5):1600394. https://doi.org/10.1002/biot.201600394

Gunatillake P, Mayadunne R, Adhikari R (2006) Recent developments in biodegradable synthetic polymers. Biotechnol Annu Rev 12:301–347

Guvendiren M, Burdick JA (2012) Stiffening hydrogels to probe short- and long-term cellular responses to dynamic mechanics. Nat Commun 3:792

Hashimoto T, Suzuki Y, Suzuki K, Nakashima T, Tanihara M, Ide C (2005) Peripheral nerve regeneration using non-tubular alginate gel crosslinked with covalent bonds. J Mater Sci Mater Med 16:503–509

Haycock JW (2011) 3D cell culture: a review of current approaches and techniques. Methods Mol Biol 695:1–15

Hejcl A, Urdzikova L, Sedy J, Lesny P, Pradny M, Michalek J, Burian M, Hajek M, Zamecnik J, Jendelova P, Sykova E (2008) Acute and delayed implantation of positively charged 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate scaffolds in spinal cord injury in the rat. J Neurosurg Spine 8: 67–73

Hench LL (1998) Bioceramics. J Am Ceram Soc 81:1705–1727

Hersel U, Dahmen C, Kessler H (2003) RGD modified polymers: biomaterials for stimulated cell adhesion and beyond. Biomaterials 24:4385–4415

Hill E, Boontheekul T, Mooney DJ (2006a) Designing scaffolds to enhance transplanted myoblast survival and migration. Tissue Eng 12:1295–1304

Hill E, Boontheekul T, Mooney DJ (2006b) Regulating activation of transplanted cells controls tissue regeneration. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:2494–2499

Hoffman AS (2001) Hydrogels for biomedical applications. Ann N Y Acad Sci 944:62–73

Huang Y, Onyeri S, Siewe M, Moshfeghian A, Madihally SV (2005) In vitro characterization of chitosan–gelatin scaffolds for tissue engineering. Biomaterials 26:7616–7627

Hubbell JA (1999) Bioactive biomaterials. Curr Opin Biotechnol 10:123–129

Huebsch N, Arany PR, Mao AS, Shvartsman D, Ali OA, Bencherif SA, Rivera-Feliciano J, Mooney DJ (2010) Harnessing traction-mediated manipulation of the cell/matrix interface to control stem-cell fate. Nat Mater 9:518–526

Hutmacher DW (2001) Scaffold design and fabrication technologies for engineering tissues-state of the art and future perspectives. J Biomat Sci Polym E 12:107–124

Jhon MS, Andrade JD (1973) Water and hydrogels. J Biomed Mater Res 7:509–522

Ji Y, Ghosh K, Shu XZ, Li B, Sokolov JC, Prestwich GD, Clark RAF, Rafailovich MH (2006) Electrospun three-dimensional hyaluronic acid nanofibrous scaffolds. Biomaterials 27:3782–3792

Joodaki H, Panzer MB (2018) Skin mechanical properties and modeling: a review. Proc Inst Mech Eng H. https://doi.org/10.1177/0954411918759801

Kariduraganavar MY (2016) Advances in polymers and tissue engineering scaffolds. In: Inamuddin (ed) Green polymer composites technology properties and applications. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 343–354

Kataoka K, Suzuki Y, Kitada M, Hashimoto T, Chou H, Bai HL, Ohta M, Wu S, Suzuki K, Ide C (2004) Alginate enhances elongation of early regenerating axons in spinal cord of young rats. Tissue Eng 10:493–504

Ker EDF, Nain AS, Weiss LE, Wang J, Suhan J, Amon CH et al (2011) Bioprinting of growth factors onto aligned sub-micron fibrous scaffolds for simultaneous control of cell differentiation and alignment. Biomaterials 32:8097–8107

Kershen RT, Fefer SD, Atala A (2000) Tissue-engineered therapies for the treatment of urinary incontinence and vesicoureteral reflux. World J Urol 18:51–55

Khang G (2017) Biomaterials and manufacturing methods for scaffolds in regenerative medicine: update 2015. In: Khang G (ed) Handbook of intelligent scaffolds for tissue engineering and regenerative medicine. Taylor & Francis Group, Singapore, pp 1–53

Kim UJ, Park J, Li C, Jin HJ, Valluzzi R, Kaplan DL (2004) Structure and properties of silk hydrogels. Biomacromolecules 5:786–792

Kim H-W, Kim H-E, Salih V (2005) Stimulation of osteoblast responses to biomimetic nanocomposites of gelatin-hydroxyapatite for tissue engineering scaffolds. Biomaterials 26: 5221–5230

Kim T-R, Kim M-S, Goh TS, Lee JS, Kim YH, Yoon S-Y, Lee C-S (2019) Evaluation of structural and mechanical properties of porous artificial bone scaffolds fabricated via advanced TBA-based freeze-gel casting technique. Appl Sci 9(9):1965. https://doi.org/10.3390/app9091965

Klawitter J, Hulbert S (1971) Application of porous ceramics for the attachment of load bearing internal orthopedic applications. J Biomed Mater Res 5:161–229

Knoepfler PS (2015) From bench to FDA to bedside: us regulatory trends for new stem cell therapies. Adv Drug Del Rev 82-83:192–196

Kong HJ, Smith MK, Mooney DJ (2003) Designing alginate hydrogels to maintain viability of immobilized cells. Biomaterials 24:4023–4029

Kotton DN, Morrisey EE (2014) Lung regeneration: mechanisms, applications and emerging stem cell populations. Nat Med 20:822–832

Kozlov PV, Burdygina GI (1983) The structure and properties of solid gelatin and the principles of their modification. Polymer 24:651–666

Kubinova S, Horak D, Hejcl A, Plichta Z, Kotek J, Proks V, Forostyak S, Sykova E (2015) SIKVAV-modified highly superporous PHEMA scaffolds with oriented pores for spinal cord injury repair. J Tissue Eng Regen Med 9:1298–1309

Kuo W-T, Huang H-Y, Chou M-J, Wu M-C, Huang Y-Y (2011) Surface modification of gelatin nanoparticles with polyethyleneimine as gene vector. J Nanomater 2011:1–5

Langer R, Vacanti J (1993) Tissue engineering. Science 260:920–926

Laurencin CT, Khan Y (2012) Regenerative engineering. Sci Transl Med 4:160ed9

Lee KY, Mooney DJ (2001) Hydrogels for tissue engineering. Chem Rev 101:1869–1879

Lee KY, Mooney DJ (2012) Alginate: properties and biomedical applications. Prog Polym Sci 37:106–126

Lee KY, Peters MC, Anderson KW, Mooney DJ (2000) Controlled growth factor release from synthetic extracellular matrices. Nature 408:998–1000

Levenberg S, Rouwkema J, Macdonald M, Garfein ES, Kohane DS, Darland DC, Marini R, van Blitterswijk CA, Mulligan RC, D'Amore PA, Langer R (2005) Engineering vascularized skeletal muscle tissue. Nat Biotechnol 23:879–884

Lien SM, Ko LY, Huang TJ (2009) Effect of pore size on ECM secretion and cell growth in gelatin scaffold for articular cartilage tissue engineering. Acta Biomater 5:670–679

Lieschke GJ, Currie PD (2007) Animal models of human disease: zebrafish swim into view. Nat Rev Genet 8:353–367

Lim K, Morouço P, Levato R, Melchels F, Malda J (2017) Organ biofabrication. Comprehen Biomater II 5:236–266

Lim Y-S, Ok Y-J, Hwang S-Y, Kwak J-Y, Yoon S (2019) Marine collagen as a promising biomaterial for biomedical applications. Mar Drugs 17:467

Lin LJ, Chiang CJ, Chao YP, Wang SD, Chiou YT, Wang HY et al (2016) Development of alginate microspheres containing chuanxiong for oral administration to adult zebrafish. BioMed Res Int. https://doi.org/10.1155/2016/4013071

López-Ruiz E, Jiménez G, García MÁ, Antich C, Boulaiz H, Marchal JA, Peran M (2016) Polymers, scaffolds and bioactive molecules with therapeutic properties in osteochondral pathologies: what's new? Expert Opin Ther Pat 26:877–890

Ma PX (2004) Scaffolds for tissue fabrication. Mater Today 7:30–40

MacRae CA, Peterson RT (2015) Zebrafish as tools for drug discovery. Nat Rev Drug Discov 14:721–731

Mason C, Dunnill P (2008) A brief definition of regenerative medicine. Regen Med 3:1–5

Mayer JE, Shin'oka T, Shum-Tim D (1997) Tissue engineering of cardiovascular structures. Curr Opin Cardiol 12:528–532

Mayer J, Karamuk E, Akaike T, Wintermantel E (2000) Matrices for tissue engineering-scaffold structure for a bioartificial liver support system. J Control Release 64:81–90

Mendelson A, Frenette PS (2014) Hematopoietic stem cell niche maintenance during homeostasis and regeneration. Nat Med 20:833–846

Mohammad J, Shenaq J, Rabinovsky E, Shenaq S (2000) Modulation of peripheral nerve regeneration: a tissue engineering approach. The role of amnion tube nerve conduit across a 1-centimeter nerve gap. Plast Reconstr Surg 105:660–666

Mohammadzadehmoghadam S, Dong Y (2019) Fabrication and characterization of electrospun silk fibroin/gelatin scaffolds crosslinked with glutaraldehyde vapor. Front Mater 6:91. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmats.2019.00091

Nagarajan S, Pochat-Bohatier C, Teyssier C, Balme S, Miele P, Kalkura N, Cavaillès V, Bechelany M (2016a) Design of graphene oxide/gelatin electrospun nanocomposite fibers for tissue engineering applications. RSC Adv 6:109150–109156

Nagarajan S, Soussan L, Bechelany M, Teyssier C, Cavaillès V, Pochat-Bohatier C, Miele P, Kalkura N, Janot JM, Balme S (2016b) Novel biocompatible electrospun gelatin fiber mats with antibiotic drug delivery properties. J Mater Chem B 4:1134–1141

Nagarajan S, Belaid H, Pochat-Bohatier C, Teyssier C, Iatsunskyi I, Coy E, Balme S, Cornu D, Miele P, Kalkura NS, Cavailles V, Bechelany M (2017) Design of boron nitride/gelatin electrospun nanofibers for bone tissue engineering. ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 9:33695–33706

Nair LS, Laurencin CT (2007) Biodegradable polymers as biomaterials. Prog Polym Sci 32:762–798

Nair P, Thottappillil N (2015) Scaffolds in vascular regeneration: current status. Vasc Health Risk Manag 11:79–91

Oberpenning F, Meng J, Yoo JJ, Atala A (1999) De novo reconstitution of a functional mammalian urinary bladder by tissue engineering. Nat Biotechnol 17:149–155

OECD, OECD Guidelines for the Testing of Chemicals (2013) Test No 236

Onal U, Langdon C (2000) Characterization of two microparticle types for delivery of food to altricial fish larvae. Aquac Nutr 6:159–170

Panzavolta S, Gioffrè M, Focarete ML, Gualandi C, Foroni L, Bigi A (2011) Electrospun gelatin nanofibers: optimization of genipin cross-linking to preserve fiber morphology after exposure to water. Acta Biomater 7:1702–1709

Parker GJM, Wheeler-Kingshott CAM, Barker GJ (2002) Diffusion tensor imaging. IEEE T Med Imaging 21:505–512

Paszek MJ, Zahir N, Johnson KR, Lakins JN, Rozenberg GI, Gefen A, Reinhart-King CA, Margulies SS, Dembo M, Boettiger D, Hammer DA, WeaverVM (2005) Tensional homeostasis and the malignant phenotype. Cancer Cell 8:241–254

Peppas NA, Khare AR (1993) Preparation, structure and diffusional behavior of hydrogels in controlled release. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 11:1–35

Phelps EA, Enemchukwu NO, Fiore VF, Sy JC, Murty N, Sulchek TA, Barker TH, Garcia AJ (2012) Maleimide cross-linked bioactive peg hydrogel exhibits improved reaction kinetics and cross-linking for cell encapsulation and in situ delivery. Adv Mater 24:64–70

Pina S, Canadas RF, Jimenez G, Peran M, Marchal JA, Reis RL, Oliveira JM (2017) Biofunctional ionic-doped calcium phosphates: silk fibroin composites for bone tissue engineering scaffolding. Cells Tissues Organs 204:150–163

Piskin E (1994) Biodegradable polymers as biomaterials. J Biomat Sci Polym E 6:775–795

Poursamar SA, Lehner AN, Azami M, Ebrahimi-Barough S, Samadikuchaksaraei A, Antunes APM (2016) The effects of crosslinkers on physical, mechanical, and cytotoxic properties of gelatin sponge prepared via in-situ gas foaming method as a tissue engineering scaffold. Mater Sci Eng C 63:1–9

Prang P, Muller R, Eljaouhari A, Heckmann K, Kunz W, Weber T, Faber C, Vroemen M, Bogdahn U, Weidner N (2006) The promotion of oriented axonal regrowth in the injured spinal cord by alginate-based anisotropic capillary hydrogels. Biomaterials 27:3560–3569

Prasitsilp M, Siriwittayakorn T, Molloy R, Suebsanit N, Siriwittayakorn P, Veeranondha S (2003) Cytotoxicity study of homopolymers and copolymers of 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate and some alkyl acrylates for potential use as temporary skin substitutes. J Mater Sci Mater Med 14:595–600

Ramakrishna S, Mayer J, Wintermantel E, Leong KW (2001) Biomedical applications of polymer-composite materials: a review. Compos Sci Technol 61:1189–1224

Rezwan K, Chen QZ, Blaker JJ, Boccaccini AR (2006) Biodegradable and bioactive porous polymer/inorganic composite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Biomaterials 27:3413–3431

Roether JA, Boccaccini AR, Hench LL, Maquet V, Gautier S, Jerome R (2002) Development and in vitro characterization of novel bioresorbable and bioactive composite materials based on polylactide foams and bioglass® for tissue engineering applications. Biomaterials 23:3871–3878

Roseti L, Parisi V, Petretta M, Cavallo C, Desando G, Bartolotti I, Grigolo B (2017) Scaffolds for bone tissue engineering: state of the art and new perspectives. Mat Sci Eng C Bio S 78:1246–1262

Sadeghi M, Heidari B (2011) Crosslinked graft copolymer of methacrylic acid and gelatin as a novel hydrogel with pHresponsiveness properties. Materials 4:543–552

Sadtler K, Singh A, Wolf MT, Wang T, Pardoll DM, Elisseeff JH (2016) Design, clinical translation and immunological response of biomaterials in regenerative medicine. Nat Rev Mater 1:16040

Sajkiewicz P, Kołbuk D (2014) Electrospinning of gelatin for tissue engineering-molecular conformation as one of the overlooked problems. J Biomater Sci Polym Ed 25:2009–2022

Saxena AK, Marler J, Benvenuto M, Willital GH, Vacanti JP (1999) Skeletal muscle tissue engineering using isolated myoblasts on synthetic biodegradable polymers: preliminary studies. Tissue Eng 5:525–532

Schmedlen RH, Masters KS, West JL (2002) Photocrosslinkable polyvinyl alcohol hydrogels that can be modified with cell adhesion peptides for use in tissue engineering. Biomaterials 23:4325–4332

Sculean A, Auschill TM, Donos N, Brecx M, Arweiler NB (2001) Effect of an enamel matrix protein (Emdogain®) on ex vivo dental plaque vitality. J Clin Periodontol 28:1074–1078

Seol YJ, Park DY, Park JY, Kim SW, Park SJ, Cho DW (2013) A new method of fabricating robust freeform 3D ceramic scaffolds for bone tissue regeneration. Biotechnol Bioeng 110:1444–1455

Sharma C, Dinda AK, Potdar PD, Chou CF, Mishra NC (2016) Fabrication and characterization of novel nano-biocomposite scaffold of chitosan-gelatin-alginate-hydroxyapatite for bone tissue engineering. Mater Sci Eng 64:416–427

Slaughter BV, Khurshid SS, Fisher OZ, Khademhosseini A, Peppas NA (2009) Hydrogels in regenerative medicine. Adv Mater 21:3307–3329

Smeds KA, Grinstaff MW (2001) Photocrosslinkable polysaccharides for in situ hydrogel formation. J Biomed Mater Res 54:115–121

Solchaga LA, Gao J, Dennis JE et al (2002) Treatment of osteochondral defects with autologous bone marrow in a hyaluronan-based delivery vehicle. Tissue Eng 8:333–347

Soon-Shiong P, Heintz RE (1994) Insulin independence in a type 1 diabetic patient after encapsulated islet transplantation. Lancet 343:950–951

Suh JKF, Matthew HWT (2000) Application of chitosan-based polysaccharide biomaterials in cartilage tissue engineering: a review. Biomaterials 21:2589–2598

Sun W, Darling A, Starly B, Nam J (2004) Computer-aided tissue engineering: overview, scope and challenges. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 39:29–47

Sung H-J, Meredith C, Johnso C, Galis ZS (2004) The effect of scaffold degradation rate on three-dimensional cell growth and angiogenesis. Biomaterials 25:5735–5742

Suzuki K, Suzuki Y, Tanihara M, Ohnishi K, Hashimoto T, Endo K, Nishimura Y (2000) Reconstruction of rat peripheral nerve gap without sutures using freeze-dried alginate gel. J Biomed Mater Res 49:528–533

Tabata Y (2003) Tissue regeneration based on growth factor release. Tissue Eng 9:5–15

Taddei P, Chiono V, Anghileri A, Vozzi G, Freddi G, Ciardelli G (2013) Silk fibroin/gelatin blend films crosslinked with enzymes for biomedical applications. Macromol Biosci 13:1492–1510

Tang XL, Li Q, Rokosh G, Sanganalmath SH, Chen N, Ou Q, Stowers H, Hunt G, Bolli R (2016) Long-term outcome of administration of c-kitPOS cardiac progenitor cells after acute myocardial infarction: transplanted cells do not become cardiomyocytes, but structural and

functional improvement and proliferation of endogenous cells persist for at least one year. Circ Res 118:1091–1105
Thomas LV, Nair PD (2012) Influence of mechanical stimulation in the development of a medial equivalent tissue-engineered vascular construct using a gelatin-g-vinyl acetate co-polymer scaffold. J Biomater Sci Polym Ed 23:2069–2087
Tomić SLj, Vuković JS (2020) Antimicrobial properties of (meth)acrylate-based hydrogels. In: Paquette N (ed) An introduction to antibacterial properties. Nova Science Publishers, New York. https://novapublishers.com/shop/an-introduction-to-antibacterialproperties/
Tomić SLj, Babić MM, Djokić L, Pavić A, Nikodinović-Runić J (2020) Effect of composition and method of preparation of 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate/gelatin hydrogels on biological in vitro (cell line) and in vivo (zebrafish) properties. J Polym Res 27(10):1–8. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10965-020-02219-w
Tran TT, Hamid ZA, Cheong KY (2018) A review of mechanical properties of scaffold in tissue engineering: Aloe vera composites. J Phys Conf Ser 1082:012080
Tzankova V, Aluani D, Kondeva-Burdina M, Yordanov Y, Odzhakov F, Apostolov A, Yoncheva K (2017) Hepatoprotective and antioxidant activity of quercetin- loaded chitosan/alginate particles in vitro and in vivo in a model of paracetamol-induced toxicity. Biomed Pharmacother 92:569–579
Tziampazis E, Sambanis A (1995) Tissue engineering of a bioartificial pancreas: modeling the cell environment and device function. Biotechnol Prog 11:115–126
Vacanti JP, Langer R (1999) Tissue engineering: the design and fabrication of living replacement devices for surgical reconstruction and transplantation. Lancet 354:S32–S34
Wade RJ, Bassin EJ, Gramlich WM, Burdick JA (2015) Nanofibrous hydrogels with spatially patterned biochemical signals to control cell behavior. Adv Mater 27:1356–1362
Wallace DG, Rosenblatt J (2003) Collagen gel systems for sustained delivery and tissue engineering. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 55:1631–1649
Wang K, Nune KC, Misra RDK (2016) The functional response of alginate-gelatin- nanocrystalline cellulose injectable hydrogels toward delivery of cells and bioactive molecules. Acta Biomater 36:143–151
Wongputtaraksa T, Ratanavaraporn J, Pichyangkura R, Damrongsakkul S (2012) Surface modification of Thai silk fibroin scaffolds with gelatin and chitooligosaccharide for enhanced osteogenic differentiation of bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells. J Biomed Mater Res Part B Appl Biomater 100:2307–2315
Yang C, DelRio FW, Ma H, Killaars AR, Basta LP, Kyburz KA, Anseth KS (2016) Spatially patterned matrix elasticity directs stem cell fate. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 113:E4439–E4445
Yannas IV (2004) Classes of materials used in medicine: natural materials. In: Ratner BD, Hoffman AS, Schoen FJ, Lemons J (eds) Biomaterials science-an introduction to materialsin medicine. Elsevier Academic Press, San Diego, CA, pp 127–136
Yannas I, Lee E, Orgill D, Skrabut E, Murphy G (1989) Synthesis and characterization of a model extracellular matrix that induces partial regeneration of adult mammalian skin. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 86:933–937
Zadpoor AA (2015) Bone tissue regeneration: the role of scaffold geometry. Biomater Sci UK 3:231–245
Żak M, Kuropka P, Kobielarz M, Dudek A, Kaleta-Kuratewicz K, Szotek S (2011) Determination of the mechanical properties of the skin of pig foetuses with respect to its structure. Acta Bioeng Biomech 13:37–43
Zhang YZ, Venugopal J, Huang ZM, Lim CT, Ramakrishna S (2006) Crosslinking of the electrospun gelatin nanofibers. Polymer 47:2911–2917
Zhang H, Zhou L, Zhang W (2014) Control of scaffold degradation in tissue engineering: a review. Tissue Eng Part B Rev 20(5):492–502. https://doi.org/10.1089/ten.TEB.2013.0452
Zhao XH, Kim J, Cezar CA, Huebsch N, Lee K, Bouhadir K, Mooney DJ (2011) Active scaffolds for on-demand drug and cell delivery. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:67–72

Simonida L. J. Tomić is a full professor at the Department of Organic Chemical Technology, Faculty of Technology and Metallurgy, University of Belgrade, Belgrade, Serbia. She is an expert in the field of polymeric biomaterials and engineering with a special interest in syntheses and characterization of polymeric biomaterials, especially hydrogel and scaffolding materials for biomedical applications. She coordinated and was involved in 11 scientific research projects. She published more than 150 scientific papers and has been cited 758 times, h-index 14. She published a prominent monograph of national importance, three chapters in books of eminent world publisher. She was a mentor of 27 graduate and 14 final graduate theses, seven master theses, and four PhD theses at Faculty of Technology and Metallurgy, University of Belgrade, Belgrade, Serbia. Dr Tomić is a reviewer for the European Science Foundation, Guest editor in Polymers-MDPI, and invited reviewer in 53 international journals.

Marija Vukomanović is a research associate at the Advanced Materials Department of Jozef Stefan Institute and a leader of the Biomaterials team. Her main expertise is in biomaterials science, antimicrobial nanotechnology, and piezoelectric polymers. She is an author of 35 full-length articles, two book chapters, and two patents (Scopus source: total citation 599 and h-index 12). As a project PI, she has been leading seven national and international research projects on tissue engineering and designing novel antimicrobials. She serves as an Editorial board member in Scientific Reports and Guest associated editor in Frontiers in Materials. So far she has been presenting her work at different national and international conferences including several presentations as an invited lecturer. For her work, she received eminent national and international awards including Special price for innovations for the economy (13th ITTC, JSI, Slovenia, 2020), Silver medal for invention (16th IEI, ARCA, Croatia, 2018), Mothers of Science grant (BIST, Spain, 2018), Achievement of the year 2011 (ARRS, SAZU, Slovenia, 2013), and Award for the best oral presentation (MRS, Serbia, 2011).

Jasmina Nikodinović-Runić is a principal research scientist at the Institute of Molecular Genetics and Genetic Engineering, University of Belgrade, Serbia. She received a PhD in Molecular Genetics and Biochemistry from the University of New South Wales (UNSW), Sydney, Australia, in 2004. She has been a postdoctoral research scientist in the Department of Chemistry, University of Montana (UoM), MT, USA in the period from 2004 to 2006, and a senior postdoctoral fellow at University College Dublin (UCD), Dublin, Ireland from 2006 to 2010. She is also an author of more than 120 articles in leading peer-reviewed journals, two book chapters, and four patents (*h*-index 22). Currently, Dr Nikodinović-Runić is a principal research scientist and a group leader in the Laboratory for microbial molecular genetics and ecology. Dr Nikodinovic-Runic has been a supervisor of ten PhD students, eight MSc students, and ten diploma students and involved in the establishment of spin-off company Bioplastech Ltd. (Dublin, Ireland). Her research interest encompasses all aspects of microbial biotechnology including biopolymers, bioactive secondary metabolites, and biocatalysis.

Marija M. Babić is a research associate at Innovation Center, Faculty of Technology and Metallurgy, University of Belgrade, Belgrade, Serbia. She has been engaged in researches with topics related to the development of advanced polymeric biomaterials-hydrogel matrices and scaffolds for tissue engineering, wound healing, and controlled release systems. She authored and coauthored more than 30 publications in international and national journals and conferences. Dr Babić participated in several national projects and one international project. She is an invited reviewer in several scientific journals.

Jovana S. Vuković is a research associate at Innovation Center, Faculty of Technology and Metallurgy, University of Belgrade, Belgrade, Serbia. Her fields of interest are developing advanced polymeric biomaterials as hydrogel matrices and scaffolds for tissue engineering wound healing, and controlled release systems of bioactive agents. She authored and coauthored more than 30 publications in international and national journals and conferences. Dr Vuković participated in several national projects and one international project. She is an invited reviewer in several scientific journals.

Tissue Engineering Applications of Marine-Based Materials

7

Hurriyet Polat, Nuket Zeybek, and Mehmet Polat

Abstract

Tissue engineering is a promising approach in replacing or improving tissues lost or has become nonviable due to disease or trauma by the use of scaffold materials by combining engineering and biochemical/physicochemical methods. Its purpose is to create suitable matrices that support cell differentiation and proliferation toward the formation of new and functional tissue.

Marine-based natural compounds are potential scaffold feedstock material in tissue engineering owing to their biocompatibility and biodegradability while providing excellent biochemical/physicochemical properties. Numerous application areas and various fabrication routes techniques described in the literature attest to the importance of these materials in tissue regeneration. This review has been carried to merge the information from a large number of studies on the marine-based scaffold materials in tissue engineering into a coherent summary.

Keywords

Marine · Biomaterial(s) · Tissue engineering · Scaffold(s)

H. Polat (✉)
Department of Chemistry, Izmir Institute of Technology, Urla, Izmir, Turkey
e-mail: hurriyetpolat@iyte.edu.tr

N. Zeybek
Department of Bioengineering, Izmir Institute of Technology, Urla, Izmir, Turkey

M. Polat
Department of Chemical Engineering, Izmir Institute of Technology, Urla, Izmir, Turkey

S. Jana, S. Jana (eds.), *Marine Biomaterials*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-5374-2_7

7.1 Introduction

7.1.1 Tissue Engineering

When tissues or organs have been seriously diseased or lost as a result of disease or trauma, artificial transplantation may need to be employed to reconstruct damaged structures (Mandrycky et al. 2017) using tissues from the patient, another person, or different species (Ikada 2006). Although life-saving, the process needs to overcome the difficulties such as anatomical limitations presented by autografts, shortage of organ donations, rejection by the immune system, donor site morbidity, and infection risks.

Tissue engineering aims to create suitable matrices called scaffolds that support cell differentiation and proliferation toward the formation of new and functional tissue. It takes advantage of engineering methods for the formation of new viable biological substitute tissues to restore, maintain, or improve functionality while overcoming tissue biocompatibility and rejection problems (Atala 2004). The interplay among the cells, biological factors (cell signals which initiate growth or growth factors and signal pathways or extracellular matrix) and the scaffold material is called

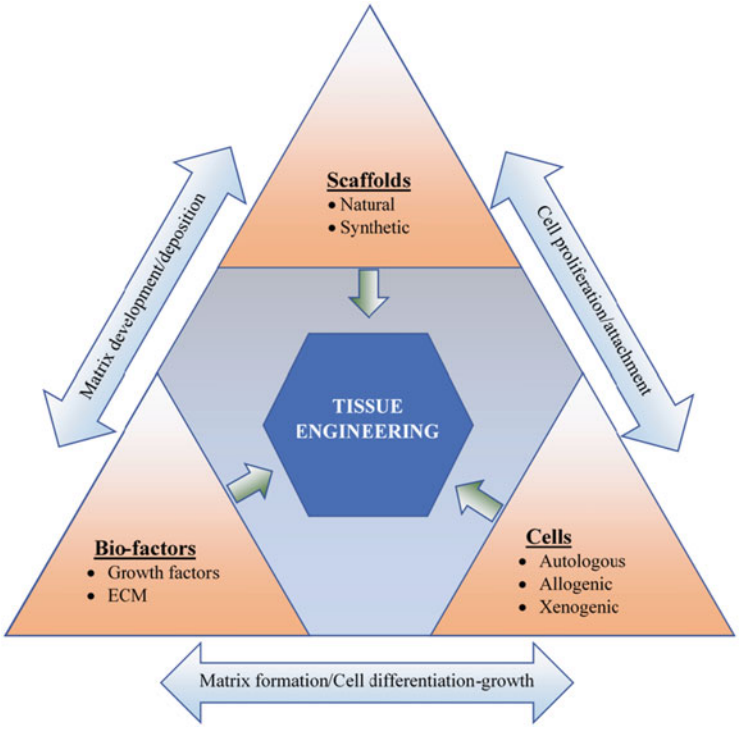


Fig. 7.1 Tissue engineering triad

the tissue engineering triad and determines the outcome of any tissue engineering attempt (Fig. 7.1) (Jagur-Grodzinski 2010; Eltom et al. 2019; Celikkin et al. 2017).

Cells of biological tissues, which are the primary ingredients of any tissue engineering attempt (Briquez and Hubbell 2020), can be classified into three categories: autologous (patient's own), allogeneic (human other than the patient), and xenogeneic (animal origin). Autologous cells are most suitable for transplantation since allogeneic and xenogenic cells may pose infection risks and immunogenic reactions (Ikada 2006; Fishman et al. 2012). Differentiated cells of the same tissue type, stem cells, and some other cell types such as dermal cells, may be preferred depending on the specifics of the application. The cells selected must be co-cultured to encourage tissue level variability and should withstand the mechanical stresses when inserted into the body.

Cells do not divide under normal conditions unless they are stimulated by signals from other cells. Signaling among the cells is achieved by diffusible ligands (in the form of naturally secreted cytokines or steroid hormones), which bind to their receptors on the surface of the target cells. These signal-transducing molecules, called the growth factors, are responsible for initiating and promoting cell proliferation, differentiation, and maturation. The concentration of the growth factor affects the response of a target cell to a specific growth factor. Extracellular matrix (ECM) is a network of noncellular macromolecules such as collagen, enzymes, and glycoproteins and acts as a signaling pathway and providing structural support to surrounding cells. ECM is generated during the development of any tissue or organ and is responsible for regulating almost all of the cellular functions. It is mainly composed of water, proteins, and polysaccharides though its composition and topology are unique for each tissue. ECM components and the cell adhesion receptors interact with each other forming a complex network in which cells reside in all tissues and organs (Humphries et al. 2006; Leitinger and Hohenester 2007; Harburger and Calderwood 2009; Xian et al. 2010; Frantz et al. 2010). Besides providing essential physical scaffolding for attachment for the cellular constituents, ECM also initiates crucial biochemical and biomechanical cues that are required for tissue morphogenesis, differentiation, and homeostasis.

7.1.2 Scaffold Design

In tissue engineering, a synthetic three-dimensional scaffold made up of either man-made or natural materials is seeded with suitable living cells and growth factors. The cells secrete their ECM and provide a framework within the scaffold for cell proliferation, differentiation, and attachment (Briquez and Hubbell 2020; Howard et al. 2008). Regardless of the tissue type, three main factors influence scaffold design and manufacturing: i) biological factors, ii) structural factors, and iii) chemical and physicochemical properties of scaffold surfaces (O'brien 2011; Hutmacher 2000; O'brien 2011; Loh and Choong 2013; Declercq et al. 2014; Velasco et al. 2015). These factors that form another triad for scaffold design (Fig. 7.2) are discussed below in more detail.

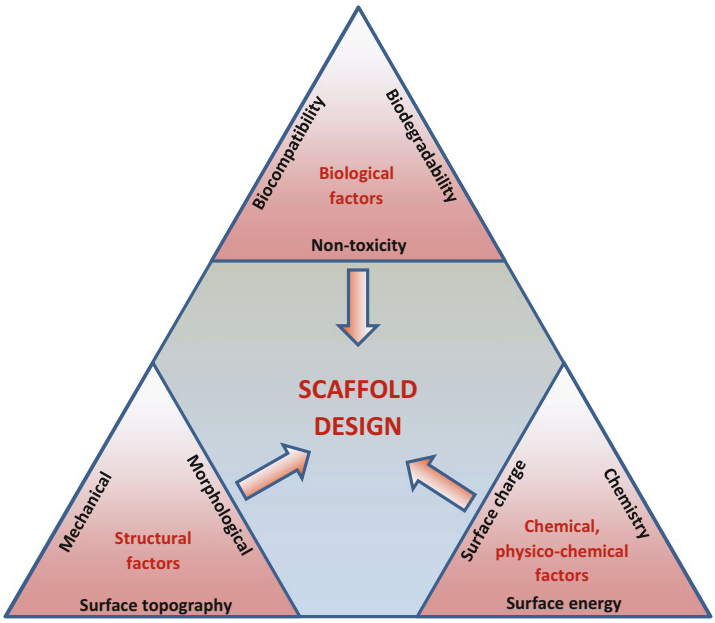


Fig. 7.2 Scaffold design triad

Biological factors: The biological factors can be broadly grouped under biocompatibility and biodegradability. Biocompatibility that defines the proper microenvironment for the cells to adhere, multiply, migrate, and function normally to create new tissue within a scaffold (Naahidi et al. 2017; Kohane and Langer 2010) is the foremost criterion of scaffold manufacturing. Biocompatibility does not presume an absolutely inert matrix, which may lead to poor vascularization and deceleration of regeneration (Ivanov et al. 2019). It has been demonstrated that the presence of moderate inflammatory reactions has a stimulating impact on cell settlement and vascularization (Santos et al. 2013; Spiller et al. 2014; Crupi et al. 2015).

Biodegradability is another important factor since scaffolds are not aimed to be permanent structures; they should degrade gradually and be replaced as the cells produce their ECM. matrix. By-products of biodegradation should not be toxic and harm other organs. Since an inflammatory response caused by macrophages is required for degradation, the field of immunology is important in tissue engineering (Lyons et al. 2010; Asghari et al. 2017; Liu and Czernuszka 2007).

Structural factors: A scaffold should possess certain physical characteristics, which can be grouped under mechanical and structural properties. Mechanical properties such as strength, elasticity, and durability, which define the limits for the scaffold for maintaining its integrity during implantation or use and for mimicking the anatomical structure and behavior of the native implantation region, are very important considerations in scaffold design. Some of the common parameters

employed in quantifying mechanical properties are Young's modulus, compressive/tensile strengths, and breaking strain (elongation at break) values.

Young's modulus or the modulus of elasticity, which is the ratio of stress (the compressive or tensile force applied per unit area) to strain (the relative deformation of the material resulting from the applied stress) measures a material's resistance to being deformed elastically under stress. Stiff materials resist changing their shape under elastic loads and have high Young's moduli, whereas flexible materials that deform easily have low Young's modulus. For example, Young's moduli of various tissues are 0.5-1 kPa for fat, 20-40 kPa for intestine, 1-1.5 MPa for cartilage, and 5 KPa-140 MPa for skin and 15-20 MPa for bone (Zahouani et al. 2009; Liu et al. 2015a; Handorf et al. 2015; Kalra et al. 2016; Ceccaldi et al. 2017). Note that the same biological material such as skin may display a large variation in Young's modulus due to anisotropy.

The strength of the material measures the amount of stress it can withstand before it fails. Some example compression strength values are 2-12 MPa for cancellous (spongy) bone and 5 to 30 MPa for skin (Boccardi et al. 2015; Tran et al. 2018; Prasadh and Wong 2018). Breaking strain (or elongation at break or fracture strain) is the ratio between final and initial lengths at the breaking point. Some example breaking strain values are 10% for human myocardium, 10% for human cardiac cells, 60% for human cornea, and 35–115% for native skin depending on the direction (Tran et al. 2018; Ozcelik et al. 2013; Kalishwaralal et al. 2018).

Porosity and pore interconnectivity are important morphological properties and allow the diffusion of nutrients and oxygen to cells and removal of waste products are critical for tissue vascularization and new tissue formation (Declercq et al. 2014; Hollister 2005; Causa et al. 2007; Loh and Choong 2013; Kang and Chang 2018). Surface topography regulates cell adhesion, migration, proliferation, differentiation, and ECM secretion and plays an active role in cell and tissue organization along with scaffold-cell interactions (Miyoshi and Adachi 2014; Mansouri and Bagheri 2016; Xiong et al. 2020).

Chemical and physicochemical properties: Cell attachment, migration, proliferation, and contraction proceed as a result of the signaling among the cells, which is achieved by diffusible ligands (the growth factors), which bind to their receptors on the surface of target cells. Therefore, the chemical composition of the scaffold, which defines the molecules displayed on its surface, will determine the eventual success of the scaffold design. Harley and Yannas (2014) report that several synthetic polymers, which cannot express the necessary ligands on their surface, have not induced regeneration and the scaffold surface may need to be modified chemically to display appropriate ligands in these cases.

Cells do not directly interact with the surface, but rather with the surface-attached proteins through direct binding to receptors within the cellular membrane, whose charges are predominantly negative due to the presence of phospholipids, proteins, and polysaccharide conjugates (Bondar et al. 2012; Wei et al. 2014; Schulz et al. 2018). Hence, wettability (i.e., surface energy) and surface charge are the two most critical parameters in initiating and maintaining cell proliferation by favoring interactions between the scaffold surface molecules and the cells and ECM proteins

(Bartis and Pongrácz 2011; Katti et al. 2008; Schaap-Oziemlak et al. 2014; Dhowre et al. 2015). It has been reported that while an increased surface charge promotes cell attachment (de Rosa et al. 2004; Schneider et al. 2004; Chang et al. 2016; Tan et al. 2017; Schulz et al. 2018), positively charged surfaces induce differentiation processes of stem cells (Liu et al. 2010; Tan et al. 2012; Zhang et al. 2015; de Luca et al. 2016). The charge in some common marine-based scaffold materials may show significant variations. For example, chitosan is positively charged up to a pH of 7, whereas alginate is negatively charged at all pH values (Zeeb et al. 2015; Schulz et al. 2018). Considering that the magnitude and sign of this charge can be regulated by modulating pH or ionic strength of the medium to some extent, it is clear that a good understanding of the surface physicochemical properties offers various avenues for scaffold design.

7.1.3 Scaffold Materials Frequently Used in Tissue Engineering

An ideal scaffold is expected to mimic the biomechanical function, and topological and microstructural characteristics of the native ECM . This requires some essential features such as high surface/volume ratio, high porosity, pore interconnection (to support cell tissue penetration), suitable pore size, proper morphology, and proper surface physicochemical properties. Therefore, material selection should be carried out very carefully.

Human-originated biomaterials created by the elimination of cellular and nuclear materials from natural tissues or organs stand out as the first choice. Since they are rich in growth factors, they can imitate critical aspects of the natural ECM and show excellent biocompatibility (Tiitu et al. 2008). However, the sources of this type of biomaterials are limited. Therefore, a wide range of natural or synthetic polymers and ceramic materials have been considered as alternative biomaterials (Yang et al. 2001, 2002; Ma 2004; Singh et al. 2016; Ahmed et al. 2018; Abbasian et al. 2019; Nikolova and Chavali 2019). Natural materials can be grouped into polysaccharides and protein origin and microbially fermented (Salerno and Pascual 2015). The synthetic materials can be divided into polymeric- and ceramic-based biomaterials (Hutmacher et al. 2001; Willerth and Sakiyama-Elbert 2019). The listing of specific materials under these groups is presented in Table 7.1 with some most recent related studies. Recent papers by O'brien (2011), Garg et al. (2015), Nikolova and Chavali (2019), Qu et al. (2019), Shick et al. (2019), and Williams (2019) provide extensive reviews of the natural or synthetic scaffold materials, their fabrication methods, and applications.

Synthetic polymers and ceramics, which have longer shelf lives, can be produced on larger scales and can be tailored to have controllable mechanical, chemical, and physicochemical properties during synthesis. However, these materials have some disadvantages that limit their applications in the biomedical field such as limited biocompatibility, biodegradability, lack of biologically active sites for cell viability and growth, and inconsistency in composition. In addition, the degradation by-products of some synthetic polymers can negatively affect the surrounding

Table 7.1 Classification of scaffold raw biomaterials

Type	Origin	Examples	Ref
Natural biomaterials	Polysaccharide origin	Agar/agaroseAlginate Carrageenan Chitin/chitosan Hyaluronan Fucoidan	Feng et al. (2020), Zhou et al. (2018), Bagheri et al. (2019), Felfel et al. (2019), Kozlowska et al. (2019), Balagangadharan et al. (2018), Zhuo et al. (2017), Schwab et al. (2020)
	Protein origin	Collagen Gelatin Fibrin Silk	Govindharaj et al. (2019), Fernández-Cervantes et al. (2020), Coelho et al. (2017), Ali et al. (2020), Chawla et al. 2020), Luetchford et al. (2020), Bonhome-Espinosa et al. (2020), Deepthi and Jayakumar (2018), Du et al. (2018), Zhang et al. (2017a)
	Microbial fermented	Polyhydroxyalkanoates	Zhao et al. (2003), You et al. (2011)
Synthetic biomaterials	Polymer biomaterials	Poly(dioxanone) Poly(caprolactone) Poly(glycolic acid) Poly(lactic acid) Poly(butylene succinate)	Cheng and Chen (2017), Kalitheertha Thevar et al. (2019), Chen et al. (2020a), Mironov et al. (2019), Chuan et al. (2020), Shirazi et al. 2016), Huang et al. (2018)
	Ceramic biomaterials	Alumina Bioactive glass Hydroxyapatite Calcium phosphate	Abbasian et al. (2019), Mondal et al. (2020), Milovac et al. (2014), Kolan et al. (2017), Pandey et al. (2020)

tissues and cause inflammatory reactions (Asti and Gioglio 2014; Abbasian et al. 2019).

Natural-based polymers (biomaterials) offer an advantage similar to biological macromolecules, where the biological environment is prepared to recognize and to deal with metabolically. Owing to their similarity with the extracellular matrix, natural polymers may also avoid the stimulation of chronic inflammation or immunological reactions and toxicity, often detected with synthetic polymers (O'brien 2011; Silva et al. 2012). These materials are also biodegradable, allowing host cells to produce their own extracellular matrix in time and replace the degraded scaffold. Therefore, they are promising candidate materials for tissue engineering applications owing to these biophysical and biochemical properties that can induce the correct biological response for both in vitro and in vivo tests. In addition, the environmental impact of these materials, both during production and application, is minimal, which leads to decreased plastic waste formation and carbon dioxide emissions (Salerno and Pascual 2015; Hutmacher et al. 2001). Despite these advantages, the problems encountered in manufacturing consistent (homogeneous and reproducible) structures and obtaining satisfactory mechanical strengths and durabilities are the challenges, which must be overcome for these materials to find a wide application area in

scaffold engineering (Märtson et al. 1999; Zhou et al. 2013; Wang and Drzal 2012; Rao et al. 2018; Ullah and Chen 2020). As a result, the use of composite scaffolds comprised of different phases is becoming increasingly common (Jayakumar et al. 2011; Kumar et al. 2011; Sheik et al. 2018; Zeimaran et al. 2017; O'brien 2011).

7.2 Biomaterials of Marine Origin

Nature presents a huge potential for technological breakthroughs through two fundamental ways: Firstly, it provides wonderful examples of function and compatibility precipitated through millions of years of trial and error for solving the intricate problems encountered in designing functional products basically. There are numerous examples of inspired biomimicry from the very large (fins of wind turbines after humpback whales or noses of bullet trains after kingfisher birds) to the very small (swimsuits after shark skins or self-cleaning surfaces after leaves of lotus plant). Secondly, the nature offers a plethora of natural, ready-made compounds from simple molecules to very complicated molecular assemblies in the form of proteins, polymers, and inorganic matrices or composites.

The oceans, which comprise about 70% of the earth's surface and 90–95% of the biosphere, offer a tremendous source of a broad range of economical, biocompatible, and biodegradable natural materials for potential use in biotechnological applications owing to their immense volume and biodiversity. The skins, scales, fins, and bones of marine animals, as well as sponges and seaweeds, are feedstocks for an enormous variety of biomaterials ranging from proteins (collagen) and polysaccharides (alginate, carrageenan, gelatin, fucoidan, and chitin) to bioceramics (hydroxyapatite) (Kim 2015; Choi and Ben-Nissan 2019).

Up to recent years, these materials have been mainly employed for the production of low economic value products such as pet food, fish silage, fertilizer, and fish oil (Mondal et al. 2019; Nagai and Suzuki 2000; Senaratne et al. 2006). Recently, however, they have been enjoying interest from researchers for developing value-added advanced materials each with significant potential for use in bone, skin, cardiovascular, liver, and other tissue engineering and drug delivery applications (Clarke et al. 2011; Komalakrishna et al. 2017; Jovic et al. 2019).

Hence, the global marine biotechnology market is expected to grow from USD 3.5 billion in 2017 to USD 6.5 billion in 2024, at a compound annual growth rate of 9.61% mainly due to the rising production and usage of these high-end products in various industries and growing expenditure in R&D activities (Energias Market Research 2019). In the following sections, a concise review of selected biomaterials of marine origin will be presented *with special emphasis on synthesis, characterization, and application*.

7.2.1 Polysaccharides

Polysaccharides are polymeric carbohydrate structures, usually composed of various monosaccharides linked with different glucosidic bonds. They widely exist in

animals, plants, microorganisms, and algae (Yang and Zhang 2009; Jeon et al. 2011). Chitin or chitosan is an example of animal-based polysaccharides, while agarose, alginate, carrageenan, and fucoidan are nonanimal groups of polysaccharides extracted from algae. These polysaccharides that have been subject to significant interest in tissue engineering applications in recent years are described in more detail in the following paragraphs.

Agar/agarose: Agar that is a gelatin-like polysaccharide made primarily from the red algae is used as a solidifying component of bacteriological culture media and canning meat, fish, and poultry. It is also used in cosmetics, medicines, and dentistry. Agarose, the main component of agar, is extracted by the extraction of agaropectin from agar (Scionti et al. 2014; Shin et al. 2010). It is another natural carbohydrate polymer with excellent characteristics though it has received relatively less attention in biomedical applications compared to other polysaccharides such as alginate and chitosan (Rahmati et al. 2016; Xia et al. 2017; Zarrintaj et al. 2018). Agarose is released on boiling at temperatures around 80 to 90 °C, forming a thermally reversible gel upon cooling to around 30 to 40°C as a result of extensive hydrogen bonding between the agarose chains. Both the release and gelling temperatures vary depending on the molecular weight and monomer compositions (methoxyl content) (Gustavsson and Larsson 2003).

Owing to the time-dependent mechanical properties of the formed gel, the stress relaxation behavior of agarose gel is similar to native tissue (Buschmann et al. 1992). Therefore, agarose has been used extensively for the encapsulation of cells for cartilage tissue engineering (Xiong et al. 2005; Roach et al. 2016). Other tissue engineering applications of agarose are in bone regeneration (Lopez-Heredia et al. 2017), wound healing (Awadhiya et al. 2017a), artificial pancreas (Iwata et al. 1992), and cardiac regeneration (Mayfield et al. 2014). Also, since the gel-forming proceeds through hydrogen bonding, agarose is a good biocompatible polymer candidate since there is no need for use of toxic cross-linking agents like genipin (Sarem et al. 2013; Cecilia et al. 2017; Campos et al. 2018). Zarrintaj et al. (2018) provide an extensive review of the applications of agarose-based biomaterials in tissue engineering.

Agarose has few drawbacks in tissue engineering applications; however, one of which is the less-than-optimal degradation behavior since it forms very stable hydrogels in vitro and in vivo. Another is the lack of receptors in mammalian cells to bind to the agarose, which leads to a lack of interaction between agarose and encapsulated cells (Roberts and Martens 2016). Although agarose exhibits the poor cell attachment, it has been reported by Zarrintaj et al. (2018) that blending or coupling agarose with other polymers and proteins such as collagen, chitosan, and bacterial cellulose increases cell affinity to agarose (Miguel et al. 2014; Annamalai et al. 2016; Awadhiya et al. 2017b).

Alginate: One of the most abundant marine biopolymers, alginate, is extracted from the cell walls and intracellular spaces of brown seaweeds. Alginate is an unbranched block copolymer containing mannuronic acid and guluronic acid residues in different proportions. Critical factors affecting the physical properties of alginate are the ratio and arrangement of mannuronic and guluronic acid residues

and molecular weight. For example, alginates with higher guluronic block ratios form rigid gels with increased Ca2 + ion. However, calcium alginate gels with higher mannuronic blocks are soft and elastic.

Alginate can form a physical gel by hydrogen bonding at low pH or by ionic interactions with polyvalent ions like Ca, Sr, and Al. Guluronic blocks, which are mainly responsible for such ionic interactions, selectively couple with Ca2+ to form a row of reversible and strong electrostatic cross-links and so form egg-box type aggregates (Grant et al. 1973; Li et al. 2007; Cao et al. 2020; Goh et al. 2012).

Alginate is used in many industrial applications owing to its attractive chemical and physical properties. For example, it is used as a thickener and stabilizer agent in the food and beverage industry (drinks, jelly, ice-cream), fabrics, paper, paint, and toothpaste industries; as an encapsulation material in cell culture and transplantation application and ethanol production; and as a mold in a dental application. It is also widely used in tissue engineering and drug delivery application due to its chemical and physical modifiability. It could be produced as microspheres, microcapsules, hydrogels, sponges, foams, and fibers and can be combined with active molecules such as growth factor or peptides for the specific tissue applications (Goh et al. 2012; Venkatesan et al. 2015; Fernando et al. 2019; Chen et al. 2020b).

Alginate has been combined with many other natural and synthetic polymers, ceramics, and bioglass to produce composite scaffolds in bone tissue engineering application (Marsich et al. 2013; Sajesh et al. 2013; Sowjanya et al. 2013; Venkatesan et al. 2014a). Among these, chitosan is most commonly used to produce composite alginate scaffolds for bone regeneration. Venkatesan et al. (2014b) have presented an excellent review of the classification of composite alginate scaffolds based on the type of natural polymers.

Alginate is also considered a promising material for wound healing and skin tissue regeneration due to its advantageous properties, such as protecting from bacterial infection, low toxicity, gelling properties maintaining a moist microenvironment, facilitating wound healing, and combinability with biologically active molecules (Pereira et al. 2013; Aduba and Yang 2017; Zhou et al. 2018; Feng et al. 2020). It can form hydrogels under very mild conditions, at room temperature, and in the absence of toxic solvents, especially calcium alginate hydrogels stand out in wound healing. Ionic cross-linking, covalent cross-linking, thermal gelation, and cell cross-linking are typical methods to form hydrogels. The properties of hydrogels largely depend on the molecular weight and chemical composition of the polymers, cross-linking type, and density (Lee and Mooney 2012). In addition, alginate is among the most promising matrices for use as bio-ink for 3D printers.

Carrageenan: Carrageenans are another family of linear sulfated polysaccharides extracted from red edible Chondrus crispus species of seaweed, also known as Carrageen Moss or Irish Moss. They have been used as a home remedy for coughs and cold and in food preparation since 400 AD. They are ingredients in many organic and vegan foods and are widely used in the food industry for their gelling, thickening, and stabilizing properties and have been patented in the USA as a food additive since the 1930s. Since they strongly bind to food proteins, carrageenans are also widely employed by the dairy and meat industries. Carrageenans are also used

in experimental medicine, pharmaceutical formulations, cosmetics, and industrial applications (Necas and Bartosikova 2013). They have been used as a laxative, as a treatment for peptic ulcer disease, and as a component of pharmaceuticals, toothpaste, aerosol sprays, and other products (Tobacman 2001).

Carrageenan is produced by one of the two main methods: The first method had been used late 1980s where the carrageenan was extracted from the seaweed into an aqueous solution, the seaweed residue was removed by filtration, and then the carrageenan is recovered from the solution, eventually, as a dry solid containing little else than carrageenan. In the second method, the seaweed is treated in an alkaline solution in order to dissolve everything else other than carrageenan and other insoluble matrices, which is mostly cellulose. The insoluble residue that consists largely of carrageenan is then dried and sold as semi-refined carrageenan. This method is more practical and economical since it does not involve dissolution and recovery steps for the carrageenan.

The three main varieties of carrageenan are kappa, iota, and lambda carrageenans. These compounds differ in their degree of sulfation extent of branching, solubility, cation binding, and ability to form gels under different conditions though they all have similar D-galactose backbones (alternating α1,3 to β-1,4 linkages). Kappa-carrageenan has one sulfate group per disaccharide, iota-carrageenan has two, and lambda-carrageenan has three (Klose and Glicksman 1968).

There has been an increasing interest in the use of carrageenan in drug delivery and tissue engineering applications (Yegappan et al. 2018). Carrageenan has been employed in recent studies as a scaffold to produce a macroporous cryogel matrix with good mechanical strength and viscoelastic behavior (Sharma et al. 2013), as a scaffold for in vitro culture of human skin-derived multipotent stromal cells (Rode et al. 2018), for soft tissue repair in breast cancer (Tytgat et al. 2019), as bone repair material (Daniel-Da-Silva et al. 2007; Kim et al. 2011; Feng et al. 2017), and in cartilage tissue engineering (Bhattacharyya et al. 2010; Popa et al. 2015).

It should be mentioned that there has been a controversy on the use of carrageenans as a food additive since there have been indications that carrageenan is highly inflammatory and toxic to the digestive tract and that it may be responsible for colitis, IBS, rheumatoid arthritis, and even colon cancer (Tobacman 2001). The International Agency for Research on Cancer (ARC, 1883) designated degraded carrageenan as group 2B based on animal models, which prompted several researchers advising the use of carrageenan in food (Watt and Marcus 1981; Ekström et al. 1983; Ekström 1985).

Chitosan: This is a biopolymer, which is a deacetylated derivative of chitin, which is the main source of chitosan, and is available in the shells of crustaceans, insects, and fungi (Ali and Ahmed 2018; Ahmed and Ikram 2015). Chitosan is flexible for chemical modifications due to the presence of reactive amino and hydroxyl group in the molecular chain; therefore, its structural versatility allows it to be applicable for tissue engineering-centered applications (Rodríguez-Vázquez et al. 2015; Ahmed et al. 2018). Being easily processable, chitosan can be chemically or physically modified to manufacture tailor-made functional forms such as gels, nanofibers, membranes, beads, nanofibrils, nanoparticles, microparticles, scaffolds,

and sponge-like structure with desired properties (Subramanian et al. 2005; Sanyakamdhorn et al. 2013; Tang et al. 2014). Also, both chitin and chitosan show high bioactivity, biodegradability, biocompatibility, nontoxicity, and antimicrobial characters similar to the other biopolymers.

Chitosan-based materials are used in many different applications in tissue engineering. They are the preferred materials in cartilage tissue engineering because of chitosan's similarity with glycosaminoglycans found in ECM, which can stimulate cartilage chondrogenesis. Chitosan can interact electrostatically with negatively charged glycosaminoglycans and contribute to their synthesis. Chitosan has also be added to other materials such as collagen, hydroxyapatite (Kaviani et al. 2019), gelatin (Shen et al. 2015; Kuo et al. 2015), and silk fibroin (Li et al. 2019) to produce composite structures, which are preferred for cartilage tissue engineering.

Though it is one of the most commonly used natural polymers in bone tissue engineering applications, chitosan scaffolds, which have lower mechanical strengths than the normal bone, cannot satisfy the load-bearing requirements for such structures. Also, similar to copper or silver-doped bone cement implants (Albrektsson and Johansson 2001), chitosan scaffolds do not have favorable osteoconductive properties (Zhang et al. 2003; Rodríguez-Vázquez et al. 2015; Islam et al. 2020). Hence, there have been attempts to increase the mechanical strength and structural integrity of chitosan scaffolds by creating composite structured with other materials. Many researchers created chitosan composites with hydroxyapatite to mimic natural bone by improving its mechanical properties and osteoconductivity (Li et al. 2002; Kong et al. 2005; Frohbergh et al. 2012; Venkatesan et al. 2012; Lima et al. 2013; Lei et al. 2017; Balagangadharan et al. 2018). Kar et al. (2016) have included Montmorillonite to the hydroxyapatite / chitosan composite scaffold to eliminate the brittleness caused by hydroxyapatite and improve the mechanical strength. Shavandi et al. (2015) produced chitosan/hydroxyapatite/β-tricalcium phosphate composite scaffolds with chitosan from squid and crab and hydroxyapatite and β-tricalcium phosphate from waste green mussel shells. Some other materials employed to form composite structures with chitosan are collagen, polyethylene glycol, polycaprolactone, poly(propylene carbonate) polylactic acid, alginate, fucoidan, and silk fibroin (Bhardwaj and Kundu 2011; Jing et al. 2015; Shakir et al. 2015; Puvaneswary et al. 2015; Kozlowska et al. 2019). There are also more recent studies that produced pure chitosan foams with much better mechanical behavior (Polat et al. 2020a, b).

Besides bone tissue engineering, chitosan with its excellent antimicrobial properties is also used in forming protective coatings on dental implants and in drug delivery in bioidentical applications (Husain et al. 2017). In addition, 3D chitinous scaffolds have been produced via decellularization and demineralization of the demosponge exoskeleton as an attractive approach for designing tissue engineering scaffolds via biomimetic strategies (Mutsenko et al. 2017a; Mutsenko et al. 2017b; Binnewerg et al. 2020). Demosponge that belongs to the Aplysinidae family is of interest as the producer of bromotyrosine (bioactive secondary metabolites) and chitinous scaffolds (Kunze et al. 2013; Wysokowski et al. 2013). Demosponges, which have highly porous and complex canal systems that allow the

diffusion of nutrients, oxygen, and the removal of waste products and pose as a potentially renewable resource due to the ability to grow under marine farming conditions, provide a suitable structure necessary for the adhesion and proliferation of cells (Rohde and Schupp 2011). The recent reviews by Saravanan et al. (2016), Ahmed et al. (2018), and Islam et al. (2020) describe extensively the many different applications of chitosan in biomedical applications.

Fucoidan: Another marine source material, which plays a vital role in biomedical applications is fucoidan (Jeon et al. 2011), which is a class of sulfated polysaccharides, mainly composed of fucose. They can be found in various species of brown algae and brown seaweed (Cunha and Grenha 2016) and are already used in the food and dietary supplements and cosmetic industry. Their application in various biomedical areas is increasing because of their water solubility, biological activities, and negatively charged sulfate groups, which impart them with features such as inhibition of acute and chronic inflammation, anticancer, antitumor, anticoagulant, and antioxidant activities, supporting angiogenesis, and promoting the proliferation of fibroblasts (Kannan et al. 2018; Oliveira et al. 2020).

Fucoidan can also be a promising candidate for artificial bone development. Cho et al. (2009) have shown that the fucoidan extracted from the marine brown algae induces osteoblastic cell differentiation and affects bone formation, remodeling, and mineralization positively. Many other studies have also shown that fucoidan and composite fucoidan materials facilitate the proliferation and migration of fibroblast cells, promote angiogenesis, and affect therapeutic revascularization positively (Luyt et al. 2003; Changotade et al. 2008; Park et al. 2012; Kim et al. 2018; Chaves Filho et al. 2018; Perumal et al. 2018). For bone tissue engineering, fucoidan has been combined with different materials such as poly(3-caprolactone) (Jin and Kim 2011) and collagen (Perumal et al. 2018). The particularly prominent composite material, however, is the combination of fucoidan with chitosan and/or hydroxyapatite (Nakamura et al. 2008; Jeong et al. 2013; Puvaneswary et al. 2015; Lowe et al. 2016; Lu et al. 2018; Lu et al. 2019; Chen et al. 2019).

7.2.2 Proteins (Collagen)

Collagen, the most abundant structural protein of connective tissues in mammals, already finds use in cosmeceuticals, nutraceuticals, pharmaceuticals, and functional food. It is also widely used in the biomedical area, especially in bone-related diseases (Asghari et al. 2017; Fernando et al. 2019) in the forms from injectable collagen solutions to bone regeneration scaffolds (Pallela et al. 2013). Collagen interacts with a large number of molecules and ECM components and contributes to regulating many cellular processes including adhesion, proliferation, migration, and also plays a critical role in a matrix structure and remodeling (An et al. 2016; Leitinger and Hohenester 2007).

Industrial collagen production mostly relies on extraction from animal tissues of cows, pigs, and sheep due to high sequence homology with human collagen. However, the use of collagen derived from mammals and recombinant production

systems is limited since it poses a risk to trigger an immune reaction (in about 3% of the population) and spread the infectious diseases dangerous to humans (Avila Rodríguez et al. 2018). Specifically, collagen from a bovine source carries a high risk of encephalopathy or transmissible spongiform encephalopathy. In addition, the utilization of porcine and bovine collagen leads to cultural or religious concerns in some populations (Salvatore et al. 2020). The production of collagen with recombinant technology is also limited since the full-length collagen cannot be obtained with native amounts of post-translational modifications for prokaryotic and eukaryotic hosts (Wang et al. 2017a).

Collagen extracted from discards or by-products of fish processing (such as skin, bones, heads, guts, and scales) (Nagai and Suzuki 2000), jellyfish (Nagai and Suzuki 2002; Kittiphattanabawon et al. 2005; Song et al. 2006), sea urchin (Benedetto et al. 2014), starfish (Lee et al. 2009), muscles and skins of marine animals (Sikorski and Borderias 1994), squid skins (Kołodziejska 1999), and sponges (Swatschek et al. 2002; Tziveleka et al. 2017; Garrone et al. 1975; Pallela et al. 2011; Swatschek et al. 2002) display the same properties as the mammal-extracted collagen but have a much superior bioavailability (Kim and Mendis 2006). These sources provide abundant, cost-effective, and eco-friendly sources of collagen extraction (Liu et al. 2015b; Senaratne et al. 2006).

Fish collagen that finds use in pharmaceutics, cosmetics, food industry, and edible coatings because of its biocompatible, easily accessible, and very low or no possibility of zoonosis (Jeevithan et al. 2013; Yamada et al. 2014) has been extensively studied for use in tissue engineering applications in the literature (Yamamoto et al. 2015; Sun et al. 2017; Salvatore et al. 2020). Some specific examples of its use can be found in bone (Sugiura et al. 2009; Mansouri et al. 2019) and skin (Fernández-Cervantes et al. 2020) replacement and wound dressing (Cao et al. 2015; Zhou et al. 2015; Jridi et al. 2015; Zhou et al. 2016). Also, hybrid/composite scaffolds were produced to overcome the limiting weak mechanical properties of collagen and improve the biological properties of the scaffolds (Chandika et al. 2015; Raftery et al. 2016; Coelho et al. 2017; Ullah et al. 2018; Govindharaj et al. 2019). The skeletons of marine sponges, especially demosponges, are also used for the production of bone tissue grafts due to their highly porous structure and supporting growth of human osteoprogenitor cells (Green et al. 2003; Zheng et al. 2007; Nandi et al. 2015; Clarke et al. 2016; Lin et al. 2011).

7.2.3 Bioceramics (Hydroxyapatite)

Hydroxyapatite (HAp) is a naturally occurring mineral, belongs to the apatite family, and can be derived from plants (reefs, algae, leaves, stalks), animals (bovine bone), biogenic (eggshells, snail, and seashells), and marine sources (corals, fish, crustaceans). In terms of HAp production from plants, the leaves, stalks, and flowers of mint, green tea, khat, drumstick tree, clover, and basil and from the orange and potato peels and effluents from fruit processing plants are primary sources (Nayar and Guha 2009; Tampieri et al. 2009; Shaltout et al. 2011; Akram et al. 2014;

Govindaraj and Rajan 2016). Marine algae are also used for the synthesis of hydroxyapatite through pyrolysis and hydrothermal synthesis due to their calcite ($CaCO_3$) content, which is similar to human bones with their interconnectivity and porosity (Walsh et al. 2008; Teymouri et al. 2018).

Marine sources include fishbone (Mondal et al. 2019), sponge and corals (Kusmanto et al. 2008), shells (Pal et al. 2017), and cuttlefish (Milovac et al. 2014) and also offer a lot of variety for HAp extraction. Different methods are used to produce HAp depending on the source, calcination, polymer-assisted methods, subsequent alkaline hydrolysis, and thermal treatment being the common routes (Lalzawmliana et al. 2019).

Biogenic sources can include inexpensive and easily accessible egg shells, snail shells, and seashells. Marine-derived seashells, for example, mollusk shells, have high mechanical strength compared to other biogenic sources (Agbeboh et al. 2020; Mondal et al. 2019).

Though HAp can be synthesized chemically through precipitation, hydrolysis, sol–gel, emulsification, mechanochemical, and hydrothermal synthesis (Agbeboh et al. 2020), HAp produced from natural sources has better biochemical properties (Shi et al. 2018). HAp of biological origin is enriched in elements such as Mg^{2+}, K^{+}, and Na^{+}, which play a role in bone repair, and has a relatively lower crystallinity than synthetic ones (Leventouri 2006). Large quantities of calcium- and hydroxyapatite-rich discards resulting from increasing fish and crustacean consumption also make HAp from marine sources more environmentally friendly and economical. The HAp synthesis from crude blue shark jawbone is an example of an environmentally friendly production method (López-Álvarez et al. 2020).

The human bone is composed of mineral (60 to 70% hydroxyapatite) and an organic (primarily collagen) phase where the collagen serves as a matrix in the organic phase for the precipitation of HAp (Constantz et al. 1995; Felício-Fernandes and Laranjeira 2000). Hence, HAp is considered to be the most suitable bone replacement element in bone tissue engineering applications (Sun et al. 2011; Shi et al. 2018). At physiological pH and temperature, HAp facilitates the formation of new bones by deposition of calcium and phosphate ions on new bone tissues and promotes the biological activities of osteoblasts.

In bone tissue engineering, the material should be designed in accordance with the type and mechanical properties of the bone and should have similar mechanical and biological properties. Although HAp has excellent osteoconductivity, its brittleness and relatively slow degradation rate are restrictive features for its use in this area. To overcome these disadvantages, the production of composite materials using synthetic or natural polymers has come forward where HAp helps to improve mineralization, and increases cellular activity and differentiation in these composites (Juhasz et al. 2010; Kim et al. 2015). Considering that bone is composed of 70% minerals (HAp crystals) and 30% organic matter like collagen, glycoproteins, and proteoglycans, collagen and Hap composites should have a very close compositional similarity to natural bone (Salgado et al. 2004). The studies by Villa et al. (2015), Chen et al. (2016), and Tien et al. (2012) can be given as examples of HAp/collagen composite scaffolds. Another example is the HAp-polylactic acid composite

scaffolds to facilitate cell attachment and proliferation on the surface of the material (Mondal et al. 2020). Milovac et al. (2014) showed that the coating of cuttlefish-derived HAp with poly(ε-caprolactone) improved the mechanical properties of the scaffold. In addition to this study, PCL/HAp composite materials obtained through different synthesis routes were also investigated in some other studies (Kim et al. 2004; Kusmanto et al. 2008; Zhao et al. 2010). Chitosan is also widely used in a blend with HAp to create composite scaffolds in bone tissue engineering. These studies are discussed above under the title of chitosan.

7.3 Typical Scaffold Fabrication Methods

A proper scaffold material in any tissue engineering application should support cell proliferation, vascularization, migration, and tissue formation, and should degrade naturally during or after the healing process. Considering that the scaffold material should also be biocompatible and nontoxic, display desired durability when necessary, and evade the immune response of the host, it is expected to possess certain biological, structural, and chemical properties as mentioned previously (see Fig. 7.2). It is a priori that the path to achieving these properties starts with choosing the appropriate material for the system in question. However, it should be stressed that the synthesis method employed to create the scaffold material is as important as the selection of the material to attaine the features required.

The various methods and techniques developed to create scaffolds pose different advantages or disadvantages. It is important to realize that many of these methods are actually variations of one of the main routes to creating scaffolds. A good example is a template–polymerization route that employs nano- or micron-sized template particles dispersed in an organic solvent–polymer solution. The template materials can be gas, liquid, or solid. Polymerization can be achieved through solvent removal by freeze-drying or evaporation, or by use of a cross-linking agent. The leftover polymer–porogen matrix is then treated with weak acid, hot water, or by other means to reach out (in case of a solid porogen) or evaporate (in case of a liquid porogen) the porogen to obtain a porous scaffold structure. If the porogen is gas, no porogen removal may be necessary.

The methods for scaffold synthesis for tissue engineering described below have been grouped as conventional and advanced fabrication techniques, and their discussion has been carried out without a change in the terminology in order to make comparison with the literature easier. Two excellent recent reviews on these techniques are provided by Eltom et al. (2019) and Mabrouk et al. (2020). A summary of these techniques and advantages/disadvantages is also presented in Table 7.2.

Table 7.2 A summary of the techniques used for manufacturing tissue engineering scaffolds

Fabrication technique	Advantages	Disadvantages
Solvent casting/particulate leaching	• Controlled pore size/ porosity • Wide material diversity	• Limited membrane thickness • Residual solventLack of mechanical strength
Fiber bonding	• Highly porous/ interconnected pores • Large surface area • Easy processing	• Limited applicability • Residual solvent • Lack of mechanical strength
Rapid prototyping	• Pore size gradient • Rapid production	• Expensive equipment • Lack of material diversity • Limited mechanical strength
Melt molding	• Limited control of pore size/porosity	• High temperature
Freeze-drying (lyophilization)	• Manageable pore size • Wide applicability	• Irregular pore size • Residual solvent • Small production amounts
Gas foaming	• Solvent-free	• Disordered porosity • Limited mechanical strength
Electrospinning	• Simple/cheap processing • Large surface area	• Limited mechanical strength • Residual solvent

7.3.1 Conventional Techniques

Solvent casting and particulate leaching (solid templating): The solvent casting/particle leaching technique depends on initially dissolving the polymer in an organic solvent. Then, water-soluble solid porogen particles of some salt such as sodium chloride, tartrate, or citrate of certain diameters are added into this solution (Yang et al. 2006; Bartis and Pongrácz 2011; Sampath et al. 2016; Mabrouk et al. 2020). The polymer mixture is then poured into a mold, and the solvent is removed through freeze-drying or evaporation allowing the material to form a composite matrix of porogen particles and polymer. The porogen particles are then dissolved away from the matrix by immersion in weak acid or water, leaving behind a porous polymeric structure. The pore sizes range from 5 to 600 μm with irregular microstructures, pore size, and its interconnectivity depending on the size of the porogen particles. Though it is inexpensive, easily applicable, and does not require additional special equipment, the method has the disadvantages that removing the porogen from the core of the material can be difficult and the solvent residues, which may remain in the structure, may be detrimental to the cells. Different porogen, polymers, composites, and combinations with other techniques have been tested to overcome the stated problems (Fonseca-Santos and Chorilli 2017; Jahed et al. 2017; Agrawal et al. 2017; Preethi et al. 2017; Thadavirul et al. 2013). For bone engineering applications, different concentrations of ammonium bicarbonate were tested as porogen in polylactic acid/hydroxyapatite/surfactant (polyethylene oxide) mixture to obtain a porous nanocomposite. However, in the presence of ammonium bicarbonate, the

increase in the porosity of the nanocomposite was associated with decreases in the mechanical properties (Thanh et al. 2016).

Melt molding (solid templating): In this technique, gelatin microspheres are mixed with a specific polymer powder (such as polylactic glycolic acid due to its lower glass transition temperature) in a mold and the mixture is heated above the polymer glass transition temperature. The resulting composite is placed in water after heating to dissolve the water-soluble microspheres resulting in a porous structure. Although the pore size and porosity can be easily controlled with the porogen concentration and diameter, respectively, the lack the uniform arrangement of gelatin microspheres through the polymer solution is the disadvantage of this method. On the other hand, this technique does not require the use of toxic solvents and it is suitable for combining with other methods. (Mao et al. 2018).

Emulsification polymerization/freeze-drying (liquid templating): This method is based on the homogenization of a polymer-organic solvent solution in water to create an emulsion. The resulting mix is then rapidly cooled and the water/solvent is removed by freeze-drying. The scaffold formed this way has high porosity, interconnectivity, various sizes, and shapes. The pore size of the scaffold ranges from 20 to 200 μm and may have more than 90% porosity. In this method, water and solvent act as the porogen. The pore sizes are controlled by changing such parameters as the freezing rate, solution pH, polymer amount in solution, and temperature.

In another variation of this technique, an oil-in-water emulsion of hexane is created in the acetic acid–chitosan solution. Chitosan is polymerized by the addition of a cross-linking agent, locking the hexane droplets in the polymer matrix. The system is then frozen rapidly in a lyophilizer and the oil is removed by freeze-drying, leaving a porous structure with good interconnectivity (Polat and Polat 2020; Polat et al. 2020a; Cihan et al. 2017)

The advantage of this technique is that it does not require high temperatures or separate leaching steps. This prevents the effects of integrated biological factors that come from high temperatures. Eltom et al. (2019) state that the techniques may have some disadvantages such as having some solvent residue in the foam structure, irregularly sized pores, and restriction to small quantities of production. It should be noted that Polat et al. (2020a) could determine no hexane in the structure of the residual chitosan foam in FTIR analyses following the freeze-drying step.

Gas foaming (gas templating): In this technique, a high-pressure gas (such as N_2 or CO_2) is applied to a chamber filled with scaffolding material for a certain time to saturate the polymers with gas. Intermolecular interactions between CO_2 and polymer molecules increase, and rapid depressurization causes thermodynamic imbalance. This causes the gas molecules to clump together and act as templates for the pores, which form in the polymer matrix. The pressure of gas determines the porosity, swelling ratio, compression properties, and elastic modulus (Annabi et al. 2010). A scaffold with approximately 100 μm pore diameter and up to 93% porosity can be formed.

The main advantage of this method is the elimination of the use of a solvent. However, the method yields heterogeneous pore structure, and controlling the pore

connectivity and pore size is also very difficult (Poursamar et al. 2015; Sampath et al. 2016). To eliminate the associated problems and create pores with different sizes, salt particles at different concentrations and sizes have been also used as porogen in the polymer solutions (Bak et al. 2014).

Natural or synthetic polymers and their composites with inorganic biomaterials such as hydroxyapatite and bioactive glass have been widely used in the freeze-drying techniques (Tohamy et al. 2018; Boulila et al. 2017). In some studies, this technique was combined with other methods to increase the biomedical potential of biomaterials such as gas foaming (Kazimierczak et al. 2020), high-speed stirring (Maji et al. 2018), and electrospinning (Yuanyuan and Song 2012; Kim et al. 2013).

Thermally induced phase separation: The method is based on liquid–liquid phase separation and is the most promising, flexible, and tunable route for the preparation of 3D interconnected polymeric porous structures (Liverani et al. 2019). In this method, a polymer is dissolved at elevated temperatures in a low molecular weight solvent with a high boiling point to form a homogeneous solution. When the hot polymer solution is cast onto a mold and cooled, the system goes through phase separation and is solidified into distinct polymer-rich and polymer-poor phases. Then extraction, dissipation, and sublimation steps are followed in order to eliminate the solvent used, which produces a 3D microporous polymer matrix (Mabrouk et al. 2020). If solid bioactive particles are also included in the system, the porous structure is also impregnated with these particles.

The structure may be adjusted by controlling several factors including the polymer characteristics and solvent. It is claimed that the advantage of this method is to produce structures with good mechanical properties and controlled pore morphology (Garg et al. 2012; Sampath et al. 2016; Mabrouk et al. 2020). The kinetics of the phase separation controls the morphology and pore distribution of the foam. The resulting pore diameters range from 50 to 100 μm. The polymer concentration affects the porosity percentage that can reach up to 87%. The usage of organic solvents that might have a toxic effect on cells, on the other hand, is the limitation of this technique.

7.3.2 Advanced Fabrication Techniques

Electrospinning: Electrospinning is a versatile technique, which can employ a variety of natural polymers and composites and abundant synthetic polymers. Scaffolds with high porosity and surface area can be manufactured by electrospinning. It is suitable for different material combinations and thickness, porosity, and aspect ratio of the scaffold that can be easily controlled. An electrospinning assembly consists of a high voltage control source, a nozzle, and a metallic collector (for electrospun fibers). The polymers are mixed in a suitable solvent homogeneously, and this solution is brought into the metal nozzle and a high electric field is applied. When the voltage reaches a critical value, the jet droplet of the solution in the tip of the syringe is electrically charged and collected as continuous fibers on the grounded collector plate. The properties of nanofibers depend on

several critical parameters such as solution parameters (viscosity/concentration, conductivity/solution charge density, surface tension, and polymer molecular weight), process parameters (feed rate, voltage, a distance of tip and collector, needle tip design and placement, collector composition, and geometry), and ambient conditions (temperature, humidity). For example, solution concentration and feed rate are factors that determine the diameter and morphology of the fibers. Smaller diameter fibers can be obtained as the solution concentration and feed rate are reduced or the applied voltage, solution conductivity, and distance between the tip and the plate are increased (Pham et al. 2006; Mabrouk et al. 2020; Sill and Von Recum 2008). Many different types of collector systems such as parallel plates (Fridrikh et al. 2003), cylindrical drums (Chew et al. 2005), and modified rotating disk (Yee et al. 2008) have been used in the literature.

Rapid prototyping: Rapid prototyping (RP) (freeform fabrication or additive manufacturing) is the common name for several advanced techniques that produce objects from computer-aided design data in a layer-by-layer manner. This technology is widely used industrially and in tissue engineering to produce fast and consistent scaffolds. Scaffold production stages can be categorized under 3 main steps with RP techniques: three-dimensional scaffold design, two-dimensional slicing, and RP fabrication.

The main advantage of the RP technique is its ability for rapid scaffolding production with consistent quality, texture, and structure. However, the technology requires special and expensive equipment, high processing temperatures, and multidisciplinary collaboration. Common RP techniques for tissue engineering scaffolds fabrication are extrusion-based RP techniques, three-dimensional printing, selective laser sintering, three-dimensional bioprinting, stereolithography, melt deposition, electron beam melting, and selective laser melting. Among these, stereolithography is one of the oldest techniques and is based on obtaining a solidified 3D model of a photocurable liquid polymer using a laser beam guided by a computer. Many research groups have used this technique to produce scaffolds with desired mechanical properties and porosity (Arcaute et al. 2010; Melchels et al. 2009; Melchels et al. 2010; Martínez-Vázquez et al. 2015). There are excellent review papers by Abdelaal and Darwish (2013), and Yeong et al. (2004) classify rapid prototyping techniques and summarize the details and compare their advantages and disadvantages.

3D Printing: The basic processing principle of 3D bioprinting for biomedical and tissue engineering applications is the same as traditional 3D printers employing an inkjet printing approach with the main difference that a combination of cells, biomaterials, and/or growth factors is employed as ink. A digitally created model is transformed into a 3D object by layer-by-layer rasterizing. The major bioprinting methods are extrusion-based, inkjet, stereolithography-based, and laser-assisted bioprinting methods (Derakhshanfar et al. 2018). Alginate and collagen have been employed as bio-inks in cartilage (Yang et al. 2018), bone (Kim et al. 2016; Ojansivu et al. 2019) and nerve (Gu et al. 2016; Ning et al. 2018), and general tissue engineering (Irvine et al. 2015; Kesti et al. 2015; Wu et al. 2016; Lee et al. 2016; Colosi et al. 2016) since it mimics natural ECM, low cytotoxicity, high water content, biodegradability, printability, and cross-linkability. The study of Jakus

and Shah (2017), Senatov et al. (2016), and Trachtenberg et al. (2017) can be given as examples of HAp composites produced by 3D printing for tissue engineering applications. The state of art in 3D printing can be found in the reviews by Li et al. (2014) and Wang et al. (2020).

7.4 Marine-Based Scaffold Systems

Scaffolds are engineered forms or structures, which provide an environment for desired cellular interactions to proceed toward the formation of new three-dimensional functional tissues in regenerative medicine. Owing to the diversity, availability, and sustainability of the sources it offers, marine sources are attractive candidates for scaffolding applications in biotechnology, specifically in tissue engineering. Numerous organisms present in the marine environment also exhibit tested and tried forms and functionalities, which inspire the development of novel ideas and products. Hence, an increasing number of compounds have been isolated from marine organisms, especially in recent years for the purpose of developing products, which can be employed to substitute the synthetic ones traditionally employed in regenerative medicine. The process of development requires the production of highly proficient structures, which will be able to function at the nano-, micro-, and macroscopic levels for eventual clinical success. These structures should be able to be transformed into scaffold systems, which satisfy the requirements summarized in Fig. 7.2, and should interact properly with the components presented in Fig. 7.1. Since there is an immense amount of diversity of both raw materials and structures, the most reasonable strategy is to copy from the existing designs in the marine environment and modify it as necessary to obtain the desired functionality (Ben-Nissan and Green 2013; Ben-Nissan 2015).

There are numerous studies that describe scaffolds in tissue engineering, which forces classifications of these structures which can be done based on the starting raw materials, the fabrication method employed, or depending on the form of the resulting scaffold structure (Dhandayuthapani et al. 2011).

Since the types of the starting materials are described in Sect 7.2 and the types of synthesis techniques are given in Sect. 7.3, the most common forms (hydrogels and porous matrix or foams) will be presented in the following paragraphs.

Hydrogel Scaffolds: Hydrogels are a three-dimensional network of hydrophilic polymers used in a wide variety of applications in the biomedical fields including drug delivery, wound healing, cosmetics, and tissue engineering. The most prominent property of a hydrogel is its ability to swell and hold a large amount of water (>10%) while maintaining its structure through chemical or physical cross-linking of the hydrophilic amino, carboxyl, and hydroxyl groups in its polymer chains (Singh et al. 2016).

Hydrophilic polymers are termed either physically or chemically cross-linked hydrogels depending on whether the cross-linking is through intermolecular attractions or covalent bonding. Physically cross-linked, or self-assembly, hydrogels are formed when they self-assemble through noncovalent secondary molecular

interactions and through extended linkage regions of several laterally related polymer chains. Different methods such as ionic interactions, crystallization, heating or cooling a polymer solution, hydrogen bonding, complex coacervation, and protein interactions are employed to manufacture physically cross-linked gels (Singhal and Gupta 2016; Ranganathan et al. 2018; Xiang et al. 2020). The absence of cross-linking agents and the relative ease of manufacture are the advantages of physical cross-linking (Hunt et al. 2014; Maitra and Shukla 2014). On the other hand, the network formation is random and physical interactions that can be reversed under different physical conditions or stress, thus causing structural deterioration of the hydrogels.

Chemical hydrogels contain covalent bonds between different polymer chains, in this way hydrogels with a wide range in network structures and good mechanical stability can be produced. Methods like radical polymerization, chemical reaction of complementary groups, using enzymes, and high energy irradiation are employed to synthesize chemically cross-linked hydrogels (Hennink and van Nostrum 2012). However, toxic cross-linking agents that are harmful to human health must be completely removed from hydrogels in biomedical applications (Ranganathan et al. 2018; Hennink and van Nostrum 2012).

It should be noted that hydrogels may be assigned different names in the literature depending on their source, polymeric composition, physical appearance, and network electrical charge (Ahmed 2015; Elsayed 2019; Singhal and Gupta 2016). For example, a classification based on their physical appearance, which results from the polymerization technique used in their production, may lead to structures named "matrices, films, or microspheres."

Hydrogels provide unique advantages compared to other polymeric scaffold types since they are very biocompatible, possess flexibility very similar to natural tissue, and have excellent permeability for the transfer of oxygen, nutrients, and other water-soluble metabolites due to their high water content (Hunt et al. 2014; Caló and Khutoryanskiy 2015; Pan et al. 2015; Koehler et al. 2018; Mantha et al. 2019; Aswathy et al. 2020). They act as a space-filling agent and function as a biological glue, providing bulking, preventing adhesion, and maintaining the desired structural integrity and volume during healing (Drury and Mooney 2003). Drug-loaded hydrogels are often used to prevent the side effects of high-dose drugs and to increase local treatment efficiency (Mantha et al. 2019). Hydrogels can also be employed as encapsulation and stabilization agents for such bioactive molecules as growth factors, secretory cells, and stem cells in addition to drug loading (Lee and Shin 2007; Koehler et al. 2018). The collagen/gelatin sponge that encapsulates a basic fibroblast growth factor for sustained release to promote wound healing (Kanda et al. 2014) and treatment of chronic skin ulcers (Morimoto et al. 2015) is a good example of this type of application. Another is the hydrogel developed by Wang et al. (2008) in the form of a chitosan cross-linked collagen sponge containing recombinant human acidic fibroblast growth factor to increase diabetic wound healing. The review of Singh et al. (2016) provides an extensive listing of studies on the delivery of various bioactive materials using hydrogel scaffolds.

Both synthetic and natural materials are used to create hydrogels in tissue engineering. Polyethylene oxide, polyvinyl alcohol, and polyacrylic acid are examples of commonly used synthetic materials (Naahidi et al. 2017). Agarose, alginate, chitosan, collagen, fibrin, gelatin, pectin, lignin, and hyaluronic acid are naturally derived gel-forming biomaterials (Mohammadinejad et al. 2019; Kalai Selvan et al. 2020; Samadian et al. 2020). Using marine-derived biomaterials together with synthetic/natural materials or bioactive molecules, several hydrogel scaffolds have been developed for different applications. Some examples are chitosan/sodium alginate (Wang et al. 2017b), chitosan/hydroxyapatite (Nawrotek et al. 2016) and collagen (Hsiao et al. 2015) hydrogels for the nervous system; alginate (Valentin et al. 2017), chitosan/gold nanoparticle (Nezhad-Mokhtari et al. 2020), and hydroxyapatite-alginate-chitosan-fucoidan (Sumayya and Kurup 2017) hydrogels for tissue engineering applications; and collagen/alginate (Hahn et al. 2006), collagen/PEG/hyaluronic acid (Hardy et al. 2015), collagen/alginate/nano-hydroxyapatite (Zheng et al. 2014), chitosan/hyaluronic acid (Miranda et al. 2016), fucoidan/hyaluronic acid/gelatin (Lu et al. 2019) hydrogels for the vocal cord, soft tissue, osteochondral tissue, periodontal tissue, cartilage repair applications, respectively. However, hydrogels suffer from insufficient mechanical properties due to high water content, irregular spreading of cross-linking per unit volume, and varying polymer chain lengths (Costa and Mano 2015). For example, alginate hydrogels, which have been developed for cartilage repair and regeneration (Rubert et al. 2012; Farokhi et al. 2020), have limited use due to unfavorable mechanical properties (Igarashi et al. 2010).

Porous Scaffolds and Foams: The three-dimensional polymeric or ceramic porous scaffolds or foams with interconnected pore networks are excellent environments for host tissue or bone growth or organ vascularization in tissue engineering applications (Zhang and Ma 1999). The network of pores in the solid structure of a porous matrix or a foam offers an environment for a very effective adhesion and proliferation area for cells by:

- Providing large physical surfaces for cells to lay their own ECM,
- Inhibiting cell growth of adherent contact-inhibited cells,
- Improving nutrient transport through the interconnecting channel network, and
- Limiting cluster size and eliminating very large clusters that can potentially develop a necrotic center (Dhandayuthapani et al. 2011).

Polymeric porous or foam scaffolds are mainly manufactured by the thermally induced phase separation or one of the gas, liquid, or solid templating methods or the described above. Though the pore size and interconnectivity control are limited, these methods are the most promising, flexible, and tunable route for the preparation of 3D interconnected polymeric porous structures. Depending on the choice of solvent and phase separating conditions, the foams can be controlled to form either random or oriented pore architectures (Ma and Zhang 2001).

Among the marine biomaterials, alginate attracts attention in the foam production due to its flexibility and pliability that preserves the structural integrity, tensile

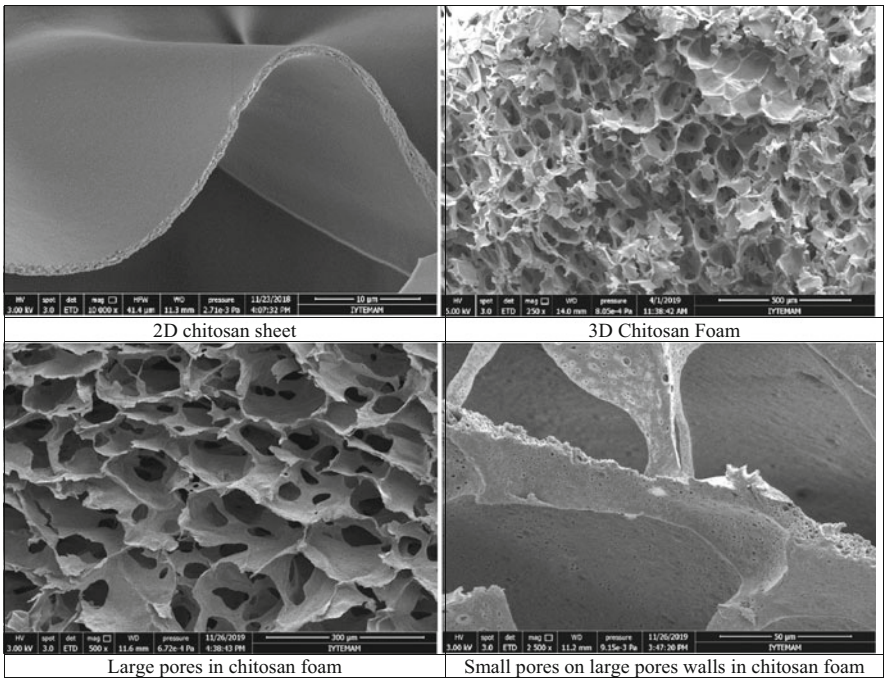


Fig. 7.3 Chitosan sheets and foams

strength, nonfragility in processing, and ease of sterilization (Guarino and Ambrosio 2014; Catanzano et al. 2018). Among the different techniques, freeze-drying is the most used technique to produce alginate foams (Ceccaldi et al. 2017). At the same time, alginate foams are used as a matrix that can trap drugs, cells, or bioactive substances in their pores. Alginate has been also used as an injectable gel in its pure form and in a blend with chitosan for bone tissue (Park et al. 2005; Li et al. 2005) and cardiac tissue (Radhakrishnan et al. 2014) as an example.

Polat and Polat (2020) and Polat et al. (2020a) produced 2D chitosan sheets and 3D chitosan foams using the emulsion polymerization method by the addition of a negatively charged cross-linking agent (Fig. 7.3). They were able to merge the gas and liquid templating methods in the same system, which yielded a double pore structure. The foam displayed very large pores with sizes in the order of 100 micrometers whose walls contained a much smaller pores with sizes in the order of 10 nanometers. The foams manufactured displayed very high compressive strengths (up to 250 kPa) and high prosities (up to 10 m^2/gram) compared to the other chitosan-based scaffolds produced in the literature (Xu et al. 2017). The authors were able to incorporate a low molecular weight hydrophilic model antibiotic vancomycin hydrochloride in the nanopores of the chitosan matrix walls. They found that the drug release mechanism of the chitosan foams depended on the conditions used for foam development. The released amount of vancomycin was

found to be higher at pH 5.6 than pH 8.2 due to the higher solubility of chitosan under acidic conditions suggesting that the drug release was proceeding in parallel with foam (chitosan dissolution).

Inorganic porous biomaterials, like hydroxyapatite, are also commonly used for bone tissue engineering applications because of their bioactivity, in particular for bone-tissue-related applications (Ahmed et al. 2019; Kumar et al. 2011; Bose et al. 2012), but they could also find other applications in contact with soft tissues (Miguez-Pacheco et al. 2015). The use of bioactive glasses is also valuable for tissue engineering applications because of their angiogenic, osteogenic, and antibacterial properties (Hoppe et al. 2013; Jones et al. 2006). Despite these properties, these inorganic biomaterials showed also low mechanical strength and low fracture toughness, limiting their applications in load-bearing tissue regeneration (Gerhardt and Boccaccini 2010). Inorganic porous scaffolds can be manufactured by incorporating the inorganic particles in a polymeric matrix and subsequently process it to fabricate porous composite scaffolds by using electrospinning or thermally induced phase separation (Liverani et al. 2019).

7.5 Loading of Marine-Based Scaffolds with Bioactive Molecules

The aims of delivery systems are to protect the bioactive molecules until they reach and are released at the targeted tissue and to keep them at optimal therapeutic levels in the body during treatment. Polymeric scaffolds, which are specifically planted at the intended site, are ideal delivery systems for targeted and controlled release (Ardeshirzadeh et al. 2015; Calori et al. 2020). Drug or bioactive molecule-loaded scaffold materials in the form of foams, sheets, or films are excellent antimicrobials, antifungal, anti-inflammatory, and tissue repair vehicles. Hence, it is very important to provide tissue therapy by taking advantage of the synergistic effects of drug delivery and the scaffolding system.

Bioactive molecules can be loaded into polymeric scaffolds in different ways. The suitable method should be chosen or designed according to the structure of the scaffold and the active molecule, the desired release rate, and the environment to be applied. The common methods for loading the scaffolds with active molecules are listed below.

Blend loading: Blend loading is one of the most common methods where polymers and active molecules are blended before fabrication (Calori et al. 2020). However, the interactions of the polymer and the active molecules should be considered. Except for specific binding or molecule–polymer conjugation, unsuitable physical/chemical interactions between the active molecules and the polymer cause phase separation, heterogeneous distribution and aggregation of the active molecules on the surface, and crystal structure (Seif et al. 2015; Perumal et al. 2008). The dissolution of the polymer and active molecules in the same solvent can also be

problematic, similar to the difficulties encountered when dissolving a water-soluble active ingredient together with a hydrophobic polymer.

Soak loading: In this method, the scaffold is prefabricated and then dipped in a solution containing the active molecules. Similar to blend loading, matrix wettability, pore size, and molecule–polymer interactions play a role in loading efficiency (Sriamornsak et al. 2010; Zhu and Mao 2019).

Site-specific binding loading: Unfavorable solvent or molecule–polymer interaction problems can be solved by covalent binding of the active molecules to the polymer or by site-specific binding of the active molecules through surface functional groups.

Encapsulation loading: In this approach, the active molecules may be encapsulated in nano- or microparticles before its introduction into the polymer solution or the scaffold material to prevent unfavorable molecule–polymer interactions. This method may allow more favorable molecule–polymer interactions by modifying the particle surfaces or more controllable release by modifying the structure and chemistry of the encapsulating particles (Calori et al. 2020; Polat et al. 2020b; Cihan et al. 2017; Çevik Eren et al. 2019; Zeybek et al. 2019; Polat et al. 2017; Sop et al. 2017).

The details of these methods and their applications can be found in an excellent review by Calori et al. (2020). In literature, there are several types of drugs and many different synthetic/natural polymers used for these kinds of applications. For example, chitosan/collagen/poly(N, N′-dimethylacrylamide) composite scaffold (Barroso et al. 2014); chitosan-based hydrogel (Yang et al. 2017); polycaprolactone/chitosan (Shi et al. 2020); and chitosan/gelatin films (Tejada et al. 2017) were loaded with ibuprofen, taxol, meloxicam–mitomycin-C, and miconazole by blend method, respectively. Mesoporous microspheres of carbonate-substituted hydroxyapatite (prepared by abalone shells) were used as a carrier for doxorubicin in a drug delivery system by using soaking loading (Huang et al. 2020). Hematite-doped bioglass/chitosan scaffolds were developed as a multifunctional alternative implant system for delivering chlorhexidine gluconate for endodontic therapy (El-Sayed et al. 2020). A summary of biomaterial scaffold-based local drug delivery systems for cancer immunotherapy can be found in a review by Yang et al. (2020).

7.6 Controlled Release of Bioactive Molecules From Scaffolds

The objective of the controlled release of bioactive molecules is to keep the drug concentration in the blood between the therapeutically minimum effective and minimum toxicity concentration and to provide effective treatment without causing side effects. Many studies have been conducted to design scaffolds as drug delivery platforms capable of controlled and sustained release of therapeutic agents (Rai et al. 2005; Hu et al. 2014; Calafi et al. 2014; Zhang et al. 2017b; Li et al. 2017; Ong et al. 2018; Kim et al. 2004; Álvarez et al. 2020; Wei et al. 2020; Obayemi et al. 2020;

Mandal and Kundu 2009). The release mechanisms, mathematical models, and related polymers are summarized in a review paper by Moradi Kashkooli et al. (2020).

The factors affecting the release of bioactive molecules from scaffolds are quite diverse and there are many approaches used to modulate them. The release rate can be controlled by:

- Structural features and physicochemical properties of the scaffolds,
- Chemical structures of drugs,
- Active molecule–scaffold interactions,
- The environment into which the release will take place.

The drug-loaded scaffolding should be designed for considering the release kinetics. For example, if drug molecules are placed in the core of nonbiodegradable scaffolds they may not be desorbable, leading to low release rates. Low release rates will also be the case if the scaffolds do not have sufficient porosity (Zupančič et al. 2015). In the case of hydrogels, the mesh size that regulates the diffusion of active ingredients in hydrogels is the critical parameter for release. The mesh size, which can be regulated by the polymer and cross-linking agent ratios during hydrogel production, should be compared against the size of the molecules to be released. Another important issue is the physical and chemical interactions between the polymers (matrix) and the active molecules. The rate of drug release can be achieved by accurate modulation of these parameters (Fig. 7.4).

As an example, the chitosan-graft-β-cyclodextrin composite scaffold was produced as a potential active filling material with controlled drug release that enhances tissue regeneration. It was shown that the drug release properties of the scaffold depend on the intensity of the cross-linking (Prabaharan and Jayakumar 2009). In another study, the release rate of poly (L-lactic acid)-chitosan hybrid scaffold produced has been controlled by chitosan content and the cross-linking densities (Prabaharan et al. 2007).

In addition, on-demand drug release can be performed by biological or external stimuli (Davoodi et al. 2018). There are polymeric substances such as chitosan, which respond to such stimuli. In addition, different approaches such as surface modifications of scaffolds, coating, forming composite structures with alternative sensitive materials, or the introduction of nanoparticles can give these polymers the ability to respond to stimuli. Light (attached with photosensitive functional groups like derivatives of azobenzene and nitrobenzene) (Vivero-Escoto et al. 2009), pH (Anna and Katarina 2018), reducing agent, temperature (Coughlan et al. 2004; Lindner et al. 2008), ultrasound, electrical (Pierce 2010), and magnetic fields (incorporating inorganic materials such as iron, cobalt, and nickel) (Pirmoradi et al. 2011) can be given as examples of internal or external triggers in this approach.

Another example release data has been obtained with a hydrophilic antibiotic drug (vancomycin hydrochloride as a model drug) loaded into chitosan foam by Polat et al. (2020a). They found that the drug release mechanism of the chitosan foams depended on the conditions used for foam development. The released amount

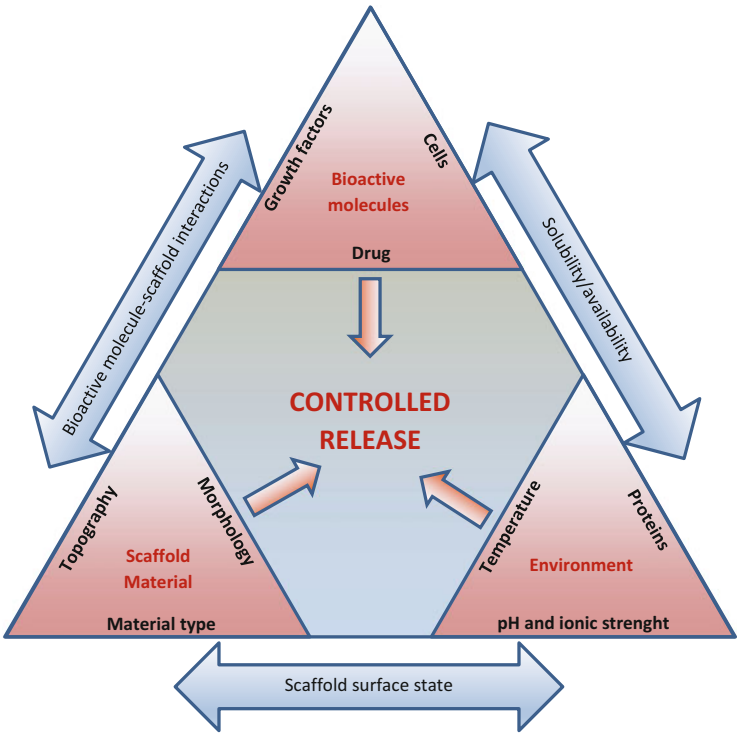


Fig. 7.4 Parameters that control the release of bioactive molecules

of vancomycin was found to be higher at pH 5.6 than pH 8.2 due to the higher solubility of chitosan under acidic conditions.

7.7 Physical and Chemical Characterization of Scaffold Systems

The important physical, chemical, and biological properties of solids, porous structures, fibers, or gels, which should be characterized as part of scaffold design, have been summarized in Fig. 7.5 along with the techniques, which can be employed exclusively for the study of a particular property. The purpose, operational details, and the analysis principles of each technique cannot be presented here for sake of brevity but can be easily obtained from the literature.

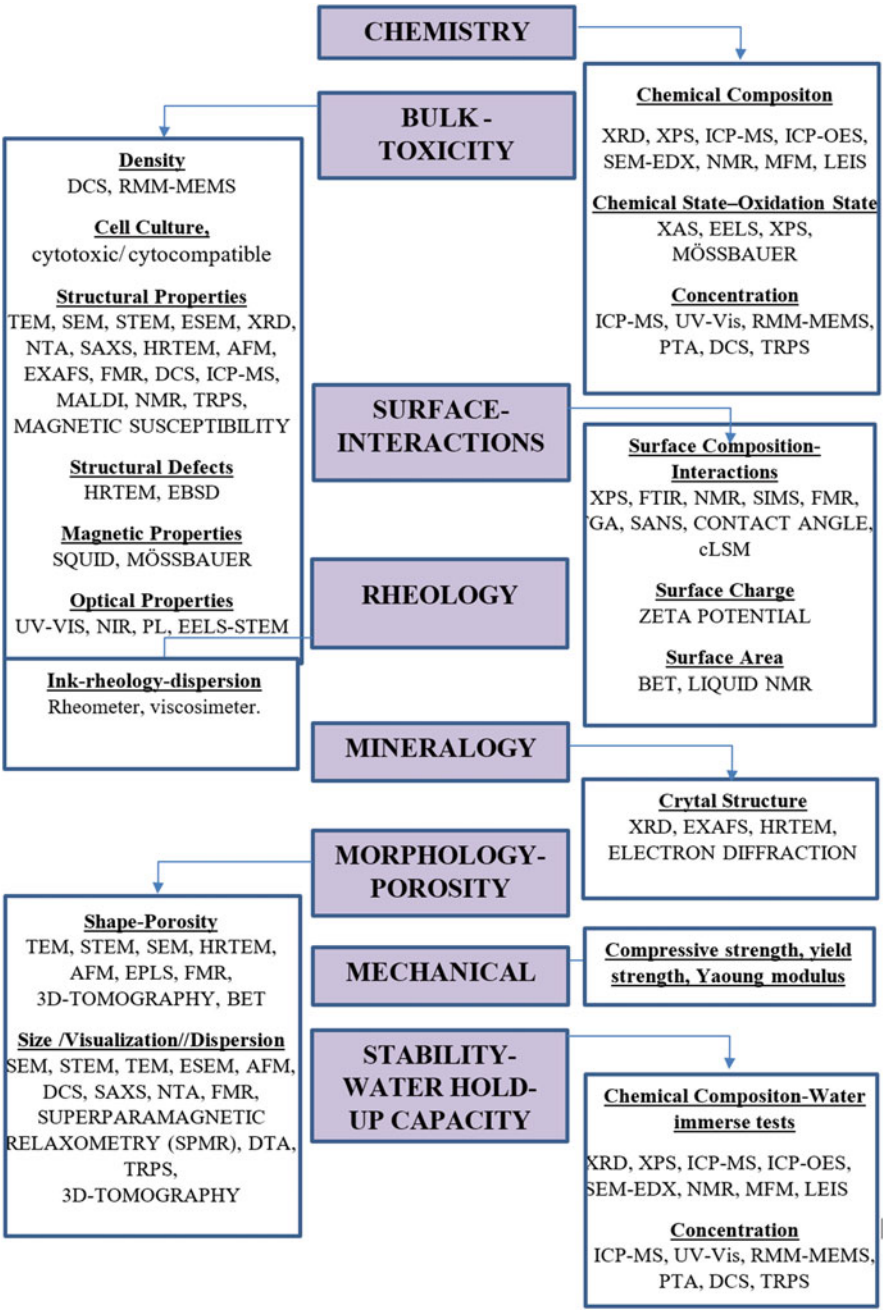


Fig. 7.5 Common methods which can be employed to characterize scaffolds (modified from Mourdikoudis et al. 2018; Polat and Polat 2020).

References

Abbasian M, Massoumi B, Mohammad-Rezaei R et al (2019) Scaffolding polymeric biomaterials: Are naturally occurring biological macromolecules more appropriate for tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 134:673–694

Abdelaal OA, Darwish SM (2013) Review of rapid prototyping techniques for tissue engineering scaffolds fabrication. In: Öchsner A (ed) Characterization and development of biosystems and biomaterials, Advanced Structured Materials, vol 29. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 33–54

Aduba D, Yang H (2017) Polysaccharide fabrication platforms and biocompatibility assessment as candidate wound dressing materials. Bioeng 4:1–16

Agbeboh N, Oladele I, Daramola O et al (2020) Environmentally sustainable processes for the synthesis of hydroxyapatite. Heliyon. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.heliyon.2020.e03765

Agrawal P, Sonali RP, Singh RP et al (2017) Bioadhesive micelles of d -α-tocopherol polyethylene glycol succinate 1000: synergism of chitosan and transferrin in targeted drug delivery. Colloids and Surf B Biointerfaces 152:277–288

Ahmed EM (2015) Hydrogel: preparation, characterization, and applications: a review. J Adv Res 6:105–121

Ahmed S, Ikram S (2015) Chitosan & its derivatives: a review in recent innovations. Int J Pharm Sci Res 6:14–30

Ahmed S, Ali A, Sheikh J (2018) A review on chitosan centred scaffolds and their applications in tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 116:849–862

Ahmed M, Ramadan R, El-dek S, Uskoković V (2019) Complex relationship between alumina and selenium-doped carbonated hydroxyapatite as the ceramic additives to electrospun polycaprolactone scaffolds for tissue engineering applications. J Alloys Compounds 801:70–81

Akram M, Ahmed R, Shakir I et al (2014) Extracting hydroxyapatite and its precursors from natural resources. J Mater Sci 49:1461–1475

Albrektsson T, Johansson C (2001) Osteoinduction, osteoconduction and osseointegration. Eur Spine J 10:S96–S101

Ali A, Ahmed S (2018) A review on chitosan and its nanocomposites in drug delivery. Int J Biol Macromol 109:273–286

Ali M, Mousa H, Blaudez F et al (2020) Dual nanofiber scaffolds composed of polyurethane-gelatin/nylon 6- gelatin for bone tissue engineering. Colloids Surf A: Physicochem Eng Aspects. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.colsurfa.2020.124817

Álvarez I, Gutiérrez C, Rodríguez J et al (2020) Production of drug-releasing biodegradable microporous scaffold impregnated with gemcitabine using a CO2 foaming process. J CO2 Utilization. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jcou.2020.101227

An B, Lin Y, Brodsky B (2016) Collagen interactions: drug design and delivery. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 97:69–84

Anna I, Katarina N (2018) Correction: Pulsatile release from a flat self-oscillating chitosan macrogel. J Mater Chem B 6:5314–5314

Annabi N, Mithieux SM, Weiss AS, Dehghani F (2010) Cross-linked open-pore elastic hydrogels based on tropoelastin, elastin and high pressure CO2. Biomaterials 31:1655–1665

Annamalai R, Mertz D, Daley E, Stegemann J (2016) Collagen Type II enhances chondrogenic differentiation in agarose-based modular microtissues. Cytotherapy 18:263–277

Arcaute K, Mann B, Wicker R (2010) Stereolithography of spatially controlled multi-material bioactive poly (ethylene glycol) scaffolds. Acta Biomaterialia 6:1047–1054

Ardeshirzadeh B, Anaraki NA, Irani M et al (2015) Controlled release of doxorubicin from electrospun PEO/chitosan/graphene oxide nanocomposite nanofibrous scaffolds. Mater Sci Eng C 48:384–390

Asghari F, Samiei M, Adibkia K et al (2017) Biodegradable and biocompatible polymers for tissue engineering application: a review. Artif Cells Nanomed Biotechnol 45:185–192

Asti A, Gioglio L (2014) Natural and synthetic biodegradable polymers: different scaffolds for cell expansion and tissue formation. Int J Artif Organs 37:187–205

Aswathy SH, Narendrakumar U, Manjubala I (2020) Commercial hydrogels for biomedical applications. Heliyon. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.heliyon.2020.e03719
Atala A (2004) Tissue engineering and regenerative medicine: concepts for clinical application. Rejuvenation Res 7:15–31
Avila Rodríguez M, Rodríguez Barroso L, Sánchez M (2018) Collagen: a review on its sources and potential cosmetic applications. J Cosmet Dermatol 17:20–26
Awadhiya A, Kumar D, Rathore K et al (2017a) Synthesis and characterization of agarose-bacterial cellulose biodegradable composites. Polym Bull 74:2887–2903
Awadhiya A, Tyeb S, Rathore K, Verma V (2017b) Agarose bioplastic-based drug delivery system for surgical and wound dressings. Eng Life Sci 17:204–214
Bagheri B, Zarrintaj P, Surwase S et al (2019) Self-gelling electroactive hydrogels based on chitosan-aniline oligomers/agarose for neural tissue engineering with on-demand drug release. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 184:1–10
Bak T, Kook M, Jung S, Kim B (2014) Biological Effect of Gas Plasma Treatment on CO_2Gas Foaming/Salt Leaching Fabricated Porous Polycaprolactone Scaffolds in Bone Tissue Engineering. J Nanomater 2014:1–6
Balagangadharan K, Chandran SV, Arumugam B et al (2018) Chitosan/nano-hydroxyapatite/nano-zirconium dioxide scaffolds with miR-590-5p for bone regeneration. Int J Biol Macromol 111:953–958
Barroso T, Viveiros R, Casimiro T, Aguiar-Ricardo A (2014) Development of dual-responsive chitosan-collagen scaffolds for pulsatile release of bioactive molecules. J Supercrit Fluids 94:102–112
Bartis D, Pongrácz J (2011) Three dimensional tissue cultures and tissue engineering. University of Pécs, Hungary
Benedetto C, Barbaglio A, Martinello T et al (2014) Production, characterization and biocompatibility of marine collagen matrices from an alternative and sustainable source: the Sea Urchin Paracentrotus lividus. Mar Drugs 12:4912–4933
Ben-Nissan B (2015) Discovery and development of marine biomaterials. In: Kim SK (ed) Functional marine biomaterials. Woodhead Publishing, pp 3–32
Ben-Nissan B, Green DW (2013) Marine materials in drug delivery and tissue engineering: from natural role models to bone regeneration and repair and slow delivery of therapeutic drugs, proteins, and genes. In: Kim SK (ed) Marine biomaterials. CRC Press, pp 598–625
Bhardwaj N, Kundu SC (2011) Silk fibroin protein and chitosan polyelectrolyte complex porous scaffolds for tissue engineering applications. Carbohydr Polym 85:325–333
Bhattacharyya S, Liu H, Zhang Z et al (2010) Carrageenan-induced innate immune response is modified by enzymes that hydrolyze distinct galactosidic bonds. J Nutr Biochem 21:906–913
Binnewerg B, Schubert M, Voronkina A et al (2020) Marine biomaterials: biomimetic and pharmacological potential of cultivated Aplysina aerophoba marine demosponge. Mater Sci Eng C 109:110566. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.msec.2019.110566
Boccardi E, Philippart A, Juhasz-Bortuzzo J et al (2015) Characterisation of bioglass based foams developed via replication of natural marine sponges. Adv Appl Ceramics 114:S56–S62
Bondar O, Saifullina D, Shakhmaeva I et al (2012) Monitoring of the zeta potential of human cells upon reduction in their viability and interaction with polymers. Acta Naturae 4:78–81
Bonhome-Espinosa AB, Campos F, Durand-Herrera D et al (2020) In vitro characterization of a novel magnetic fibrin-agarose hydrogel for cartilage tissue engineering. J Mech Behav of Biomed Mater 104:103619
Bose S, Roy M, Bandyopadhyay A (2012) Recent advances in bone tissue engineering scaffolds. Trends Biotechnol 30:546–554
Boulila S, Oudadesse H, Kallel R et al (2017) In vivo study of hybrid biomaterial scaffold bioactive glass-chitosan after incorporation of Ciprofloxacin. Polym Bull 74:4153–4173
Briquez PS, Hubbell JA (2020) Morphogenesis and tissue engineering. In: Lanza R et al (eds) Principles of tissue engineering, 5th edn. Academic Press, pp 133–144

Buschmann MD, Gluzband YA, Grodzinsky AJ et al (1992) Chondrocytes in agarose culture synthesize a mechanically functional extracellular matrix. J Orthop Res 10:745–758
Calafi A, Bormann N, Scharnweber D et al (2014) A new concept for a drug releasing modular scaffold. Mater Lett 119:119–122
Caló E, Khutoryanskiy VV (2015) Biomedical applications of hydrogels: A review of patents and commercial products. Eur Polym J 65:252–267
Calori IR, Braga G, de Jesus PDCC et al (2020) Polymer scaffolds as drug delivery systems. Eur Polym J. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.eurpolymj.2020.109621
Campos F, Bonhome-Espinosa A, Vizcaino G et al (2018) Generation of genipin cross-linked fibrin-agarose hydrogel tissue-like models for tissue engineering applications. Biomed Mater 13:1–12
Cao H, Chen M, Liu Y et al (2015) Fish collagen-based scaffold containing PLGA microspheres for controlled growth factor delivery in skin tissue engineering. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 136:1098–1106
Cao L, Lu W, Mata A et al (2020) Egg-box model-based gelation of alginate and pectin: A review. Carbohydr Polym. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carbpol.2020.116389
Catanzano O, Soriente A, La Gatta A et al (2018) Macroporous alginate foams crosslinked with strontium for bone tissue engineering. Carbohydr Polym 202:72–83
Causa F, Netti PA, Ambrosio L (2007) A multi-functional scaffold for tissue regeneration: the need to engineer a tissue analogue. Biomaterials 28:5093–5099
Ceccaldi C, Bushkalova R, Cussac D et al (2017) Elaboration and evaluation of alginate foam scaffolds for soft tissue engineering. Int J Pharm 524:433–442
Cecilia A, Baecker A, Hamann E et al (2017) Optimizing structural and mechanical properties of cryogel scaffolds for use in prostate cancer cell culturing. Mater Sci Eng C 71:465–472
Celikkin N, Rinoldi C, Costantini M et al (2017) Naturally derived proteins and glycosaminoglycan scaffolds for tissue engineering applications. Mater Sci Eng C 78:1277–1299
Çevik Eren M, Dal M, Polat M, Polat H (2019) Design of drug-bearing mesoporous silica nano particles with chitosan shells for controlled release. In: Yelken G, Polat M, Tanoglu M (eds) The Proceedings of the 4th International Porous and Powder Materials Symposium and Exhibition 2019, pp 14-17
Chandika P, Ko S, Oh G et al (2015) Fish collagen/alginate/chitooligosaccharides integrated scaffold for skin tissue regeneration application. Int J Biol Macromol 81:504–513
Chang H, Kao W, You Y et al (2016) Effect of surface potential on epithelial cell adhesion, proliferation and morphology. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 141:179–186
Changotade S, Korb G, Bassil J et al (2008) Potential effects of a low-molecular-weight fucoidan extracted from brown algae on bone biomaterial osteoconductive properties. J Biomed Mater Res A 87A:666–675
Chaves Filho G, de Sousa A, Câmara R et al (2018) Genotoxicity and osteogenic potential of sulfated polysaccharides from Caulerpa prolifera seaweed. Int J Biol Macromol 114:565–571
Chawla D, Kaur T, Joshi A, Singh N (2020) 3D bioprinted alginate-gelatin based scaffolds for soft tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 144:560–567
Chen L, Hu J, Ran J et al (2016) Synthesis and cytocompatibility of collagen/hydroxyapatite nanocomposite scaffold for bone tissue engineering. Polym Composites 37:81–90
Chen P, Liu L, Pan J et al (2019) Biomimetic composite scaffold of hydroxyapatite/gelatin-chitosan core-shell nanofibers for bone tissue engineering. Mater Sci Eng C 97:325–335
Chen J, Zhang T, Hua W et al (2020a) 3D Porous poly(lactic acid)/regenerated cellulose composite scaffolds based on electrospun nanofibers for biomineralization. Colloids Surf A Physicochem Eng Aspects. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.colsurfa.2019.124048
Chen X, Zhao X, Wang G (2020b) Review on marine carbohydrate-based gold nanoparticles represented by alginate and chitosan for biomedical application. Carbohydr Polym. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carbpol.2020.116311

Cheng Y, Chen F (2017) Preparation and characterization of photocured poly (ε-caprolactone) diacrylate/poly (ethylene glycol) diacrylate/chitosan for photopolymerization-type 3D printing tissue engineering scaffold application. Mater Sci Eng C 81:66–73
Chew SY, Wen J, Yim EK, Leong KW (2005) Sustained release of proteins from electrospun biodegradable fibers. Biomacromol 6:2017–2024
Cho Y, Jung W, Kim J et al (2009) Beneficial effects of fucoidan on osteoblastic MG-63 cell differentiation. Food Chem 116:990–994
Choi AH, Ben-Nissan B (eds) (2019) Marine-derived biomaterials for tissue engineering applications. Springer, Singapore
Chuan D, Fan R, Wang Y et al (2020) Stereocomplex poly(lactic acid)-based composite nanofiber membranes with highly dispersed hydroxyapatite for potential bone tissue engineering. Composites Sci Tech. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compscitech.2020.108107
Cihan E, Polat M, Polat H (2017) Designing of spherical chitosan nano-shells with micellar cores for solvation and safeguarded delivery of strongly lipophilic drugs. Colloids Surf A Physicochem Eng Aspects 529:815–823
Clarke S, Walsh P, Maggs C, Buchanan F (2011) Designs from the deep: Marine organisms for bone tissue engineering. Biotechnol Adv 29:610–617
Clarke S, Choi S, McKechnie M et al (2016) Osteogenic cell response to 3-D hydroxyapatite scaffolds developed via replication of natural marine sponges. J Mater Sci Mater Med 27:1–22
Coelho R, Marques A, Oliveira S et al (2017) Extraction and characterization of collagen from antarctic and sub-antarctic squid and its potential application in hybrid scaffolds for tissue engineering. Mater Sci Eng C 78:787–795
Colosi C, Shin SR, Manoharan V et al (2016) Microfluidic bioprinting of heterogeneous 3D tissue constructs using low-viscosity bioink. Adv Mater 28:677–684
Constantz B, Ison I, Fulmer M et al (1995) Skeletal repair by in situ formation of the mineral phase of bone. Science 267:1796–1799
Costa AM, Mano JF (2015) Extremely strong and tough hydrogels as prospective candidates for tissue repair-A review. Eur Polym J 72:344–364
Coughlan DC, Quilty FP, Corrigan OI (2004) Effect of drug physicochemical properties on swelling/deswelling kinetics and pulsatile drug release from thermoresponsive poly (N-isopropylacrylamide) hydrogels. J Control Rel 98:97–114
Crupi A, Costa A, Tarnok A et al (2015) Inflammation in tissue engineering: The Janus between engraftment and rejection. Eur J Immunol 45:3222–3236
Cunha L, Grenha A (2016) Sulfated seaweed polysaccharides as multifunctional materials in drug delivery applications. Mar Drugs 14:1–42
Daniel-da-Silva A, Lopes A, Gil A, Correia R (2007) Synthesis and characterization of porous κ-carrageenan/calcium phosphate nanocomposite scaffolds. J Mater Sci 42:8581–8591
Davoodi P, Lee LY, Xu Q et al (2018) Drug delivery systems for programmed and on-demand release. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 132:104–138
De Luca I, Di Salle A, Alessio N et al (2016) Positively charged polymers modulate the fate of human mesenchymal stromal cells via ephrinB2/EphB4 signaling. Stem Cell Res 17:248–255
De Rosa M, Carteni' M, Petillo O et al (2004) Cationic polyelectrolyte hydrogel fosters fibroblast spreading, proliferation, and extracellular matrix production: Implications for tissue engineering. J Cell Physiol 198:133–143
Declercq HA, Desmet T, Dubruel P, Cornelissen MJ (2014) The role of scaffold architecture and composition on the bone formation by adipose-derived stem cells. Tissue Eng Part A 20:434–444
Deepthi S, Jayakumar R (2018) Alginate nanobeads interspersed fibrin network as in situ forming hydrogel for soft tissue engineering. Bioactive Mater 3:194–200
Derakhshanfar S, Mbeleck R, Xu K et al (2018) 3D bioprinting for biomedical devices and tissue engineering: a review of recent trends and advances. Bioactive Mater 3:144–156
Dhandayuthapani B, Yoshida Y, Maekawa T, Kumar D (2011) Polymeric scaffolds in tissue engineering application: a review. Int J Polym Sci 2011:1–19

Dhowre H, Rajput S, Russell N, Zelzer M (2015) Responsive cell-material interfaces. Nanomed 10:849–871
Drury JL, Mooney DJ (2003) Hydrogels for tissue engineering: scaffold design variables and applications. Biomaterials 24:4337
Du J, Zhu T, Yu H et al (2018) Potential applications of three-dimensional structure of silk fibroin/poly(ester-urethane) urea nanofibrous scaffold in heart valve tissue engineering. Appl Surface Sci 447:269–278
Ekström L (1985) Molecular-weight-distribution and the behaviour of kappa-carrageenan on hydrolysis. Carbohydr Res 135:283–289
Ekström L, Kuivinen J, Johansson G (1983) Molecular weight distribution and hydrolysis behaviour of carrageenans. Carbohydr Res 116:89–94
Elsayed MM (2019) Hydrogel preparation technologies: relevance kinetics, thermodynamics and scaling up aspects. J Poly Env 27:871–891
El-Sayed S, Mabrouk M, Khallaf M et al (2020) Antibacterial, drug delivery, and osteoinduction abilities of bioglass/chitosan scaffolds for dental applications. J Drug Deliv Sci Technol. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jddst.2020.101757
Eltom A, Zhong G, Muhammad A (2019) Scaffold techniques and designs in tissue engineering functions and purposes: a review. Adv Mater Sci Eng 2019:1–13
Farokhi M, Jonidi Shariatzadeh F, Solouk A, Mirzadeh H (2020) Alginate based scaffolds for cartilage tissue engineering: a review. Int J Polym Mater Polym Biomaterials 69:230–247
Felfel R, Gideon-Adeniyi M, Zakir Hossain K et al (2019) Structural, mechanical and swelling characteristics of 3D scaffolds from chitosan-agarose blends. Carbohydr Polym 204:59–67
Felício-Fernandes G, Laranjeira M (2000) Calcium phosphate biomaterials from marine algae. Hydrothermal synthesis and characterisation. Química Nova 23:441–446
Feng W, Feng S, Tang K et al (2017) A novel composite of collagen-hydroxyapatite/kappa-carrageenan. J Alloys Compounds 693:482–489
Feng X, Zhang X, Li S et al (2020) Preparation of aminated fish scale collagen and oxidized sodium alginate hybrid hydrogel for enhanced full-thickness wound healing. Int J Biol Macromol 164:626–637
Fernández-Cervantes I, Rodríguez-Fuentes N, León-Deniz L et al (2020) Cell-free scaffold from jellyfish Cassiopea andromeda (Cnidaria; Scyphozoa) for skin tissue engineering. Mater Sci Eng C. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.msec.2020.110748
Fernando I, Kim D, Nah J, Jeon Y (2019) Advances in functionalizing fucoidans and alginates (bio)polymers by structural modifications: a review. Chem Eng J 355:33–48
Fishman J, Scobie L, Takeuchi Y (2012) Xenotransplantation-associated infectious risk: a WHO consultation. Xenotransplantation 19:72–81
Fonseca-Santos B, Chorilli M (2017) An overview of carboxymethyl derivatives of chitosan: their use as biomaterials and drug delivery systems. Mater Sci and Eng C 77:1349–1362
Frantz C, Stewart K, Weaver V (2010) The extracellular matrix at a glance. J Cell Sci 123:4195–4200
Fridrikh S, Yu J, Brenner M, Rutledge G (2003) Controlling the fiber diameter during electrospinning. Phys Rev Lett. https://doi.org/10.1103/physrevlett.90.144502
Frohbergh ME, Katsman A, Botta GP et al (2012) Electrospun hydroxyapatite-containing chitosan nanofibers crosslinked with genipin for bone tissue engineering. Biomater 33:9167–9178
Garg T, Singh O, Arora S, Murthy RSR (2012) Scaffold: a novel carrier for cell and drug delivery. In: Sachdeva (ed) Critical Reviews™ in Therapeutic Drug Carrier Systems, vol 36. Begell, New York, pp 1–63
Garg T, Rath G, Goyal AK (2015) Biomaterials-based nanofiber scaffold: targeted and controlled carrier for cell and drug delivery. J Drug Target 23:202–221
Garrone R, Huc A, Junqua S (1975) Fine structure and physicochemical studies on the collagen of the marine sponge Chondrosia reniformis Nardo. J Ultrast Res 52:261–275
Gerhardt L, Boccaccini A (2010) Bioactive glass and glass-ceramic scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Materials 3:3867–3910

Goh CH, Heng PWS, Chan LW (2012) Alginates as a useful natural polymer for microencapsulation and therapeutic applications. Carbohydr Polym 88:1–12
Govindaraj D, Rajan M (2016) Synthesis and spectral characterization of novel nano-hydroxyapatite from Moringaoleifera leaves. Mater Today Proc 3:2394–2398
Govindharaj M, Roopavath U, Rath S (2019) Valorization of discarded Marine Eel fish skin for collagen extraction as a 3D printable blue biomaterial for tissue engineering. J Cleaner Prod 230:412–419
Grant GT, Morris ER, Rees DA et al (1973) Biological interactions between polysaccharides and divalent cations: the egg-box model. FEBS Lett 32:195–198
Green D, Howard D, Yang X et al (2003) Natural marine sponge fiber skeleton: a biomimetic scaffold for human osteoprogenitor cell attachment, growth, and differentiation. Tissue Eng 9:1159–1166
Gu Q, Tomaskovic-Crook E, Lozano R et al (2016) Stem cell bioprinting: functional 3D neural mini-tissues from printed gel-based bioink and human neural stem cells. Adv Healthc Mater 5:1428–1428
Guarino V, Ambrosio L (2014) Properties of biomedical foams for tissue engineering applications. In: Netti PA (ed) Biomedical foams for tissue engineering applications. Woodhead Publishing, p 40-70
Gustavsson E, Larsson O (2003) Monolithic polysaccharide materials. In: Svec F, Tennikova TB, Deyl Z (eds) Monolithic materials journal of chromatography library, vol 67. Elsevier Science, pp 121–141
Hahn MS, Teply BA, Stevens MM et al (2006) Collagen composite hydrogels for vocal fold lamina propria restoration. Biomaterials 27:1104–1109
Handorf A, Zhou Y, Halanski M, Li W (2015) Tissue stiffness dictates development, homeostasis, and disease progression. Organogenesis 11:1–15
Harburger D, Calderwood D (2009) Integrin signalling at a glance. J Cell Sci 122:1472–1472
Hardy JG, Lin P, Schmidt CE (2015) Biodegradable hydrogels composed of oxime crosslinked poly (ethylene glycol), hyaluronic acid and collagen: a tunable platform for soft tissue engineering. J Biomater Sci Polym Ed 26:143–161
Harley BA, Yannas IV (2014) In vivo synthesis of tissues and organs. In: Lanza R, Langer R, Vacanti J (eds) Principles of tissue engineering, 4th edn. Academic Press, pp 325–355
Hennink WE, van Nostrum CF (2012) Novel crosslinking methods to design hydrogels. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 64:223–236
Hollister SJ (2005) Porous scaffold design for tissue engineering. Nature Mat 4:518–524
Hoppe A, Meszaros R, Stähli C et al (2013) In vitro reactivity of Cu doped 45S5 Bioglass® derived scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. J Mater Chem B 1:5659–5674
Howard D, Buttery LD, Shakesheff KM, Roberts SJ (2008) Tissue engineering: strategies, stem cells and scaffolds. J Anat 213:66–72
Hsiao TW, Tresco PA, Hlady V (2015) Astrocytes alignment and reactivity on collagen hydrogels patterned with ECM proteins. Biomaterials 39:124–130
Hu Y, Zou S, Chen W et al (2014) Mineralization and drug release of hydroxyapatite/poly (l-lactic acid) nanocomposite scaffolds prepared by Pickering emulsion templating. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 122:559–565
Huang A, Peng X, Geng L et al (2018) Electrospun poly (butylene succinate)/cellulose nanocrystals bio-nanocomposite scaffolds for tissue engineering: Preparation, characterization and in vitro evaluation. Polym Testing 71:101–109
Huang H, Du M, Chen J et al (2020) Preparation and characterization of abalone shells derived biological mesoporous hydroxyapatite microspheres for drug delivery. Mater Sc Eng C. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.msec.2020.110969
Humphries JD, Byron A, Humphries MJ (2006) Integrin ligands at a glance. J Cell Sci 119:3901–3903
Hunt JA, Chen R, van Veen T, Bryan N (2014) Hydrogels for tissue engineering and regenerative medicine. J Mater Chem B 2:5319–5338

Husain S, Al-Samadani K, Najeeb S et al (2017) Chitosan biomaterials for current and potential dental applications. Materials 10:1–20

Hutmacher D (2000) Scaffolds in tissue engineering bone and cartilage. Biomaterials 21:2529–2543

Hutmacher DW, Goh JCH, Teoh SH (2001) An introduction to biodegradable materials for tissue engineering applications. Ann Acad Med Singap 30:183–191

Igarashi T, Iwasaki N, Kasahara Y, Minami A (2010) A cellular implantation system using an injectable ultra-purified alginate gel for repair of osteochondral defects in a rabbit model. J Biomed Mater Res Part A 94:844–855

Ikada Y (2006) Challenges in tissue engineering. J R Soc Interface 3:589–601

Irvine S, Agrawal A, Lee B et al (2015) Printing cell-laden gelatin constructs by free-form fabrication and enzymatic protein crosslinking. Biomed Microdevices. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10544-014-9915-8

Islam M, Shahruzzaman M, Biswas S et al (2020) Chitosan based bioactive materials in tissue engineering applications-a review. Bioactive Mater 5:164–183

Ivanov A, Saveleva M, Kozadaev M et al (2019) New approaches to scaffold biocompatibility assessment. BioNanoScience 9:395–405

Iwata H, Takagi T, Amemiya H et al (1992) Agarose for a bioartificial pancreas. J Biomed Mater Res 26:967–977

Jagur-Grodzinski J (2010) Polymeric gels and hydrogels for biomedical and pharmaceutical applications. Polym Adv Technol 21:27–47

Jahed E, Khaledabad M, Almasi H, Hasanzadeh R (2017) Physicochemical properties of Carum copticum essential oil loaded chitosan films containing organic nanoreinforcements. Carbohydr Polym 164:325–338

Jakus AE, Shah RN (2017) Multi and mixed 3 D-printing of graphene-hydroxyapatite hybrid materials for complex tissue engineering. J Biomed Mater Res Part A 105:274–283

Jayakumar R, Ramachandran R, Sudheesh Kumar P et al (2011) Fabrication of chitin-chitosan/nano ZrO_2 composite scaffolds for tissue engineering applications. Int J Biol Macromol 49:274–280

Jeevithan E, Qingbo Z, Bao B, Wu W (2013) Biomedical and pharmaceutical application of fish collagen and gelatin: a review. J Nutr Ther 2:218–227

Jeon YJ, Wijesinghe WAJP, Kim SK (2011) Functional properties of brown algal sulfated polysaccharides, fucoidans. In: Kim SK (ed) Advances in food and nutrition research, vol 64. Academic Press, pp 163–178

Jeong H, Venkatesan J, Kim S (2013) Hydroxyapatite-fucoidan nanocomposites for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 57:138–141

Jin G, Kim G (2011) Rapid-prototyped PCL/fucoidan composite scaffolds for bone tissue regeneration: design, fabrication, and physical/biological properties. J Mater Chem 21 (44):17710–17718. https://doi.org/10.1039/c1jm12915e

Jing X, Mi HY, Peng J et al (2015) Electrospun aligned poly (propylene carbonate) microfibers with chitosan nanofibers as tissue engineering scaffolds. Carbohydr Polym 117:941–949

Jones J, Ehrenfried L, Saravanapavan P, Hench L (2006) Controlling ion release from bioactive glass foam scaffolds with antibacterial properties. J Mater Sci Mater Med 17:989–996

Jovic T, Kungwengwe G, Mills A, Whitaker I (2019) Plant-derived biomaterials: a review of 3D bioprinting and biomedical applications. Front Mech Eng 5:1–18

Jridi M, Bardaa S, Moalla D et al (2015) Microstructure, rheological and wound healing properties of collagen-based gel from cuttlefish skin. Int J Biol Macromol 77:369–374

Juhasz J, Best S, Bonfield W (2010) Preparation of novel bioactive nano-calcium phosphate–hydrogel composites. Sci Technol Adv Mater 11(1):014103. https://doi.org/10.1088/1468-6996/11/1/014103

Kalai Selvan N, Shanmugarajan T, Uppuluri V (2020) Hydrogel based scaffolding polymeric biomaterials: approaches towards skin tissue regeneration. J Drug Deliv Sci Tech 55:101456. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jddst.2019.101456

Kalishwaralal K, Jeyabharathi S, Sundar K et al (2018) A novel biocompatible chitosan-Selenium nanoparticles (SeNPs) film with electrical conductivity for cardiac tissue engineering application. Mater Sci Eng C 92:151–160

Kalitheertha Thevar J, Nik Malek N, Abdul Kadir M (2019) In vitro degradation of triple layered poly (lactic-co-glycolic acid) composite membrane composed of nanoapatite and lauric acid for guided bone regeneration applications. Mater Chem Phys 221:501–514

Kalra A, Lowe A, Al-Jumaily AM (2016) Mechanical behaviour of skin: a review. J Mater Sci Eng 5:1–7

Kanda N, Morimoto N, Ayvazyan AA et al (2014) Evaluation of a novel collagen-gelatin scaffold for achieving the sustained release of basic fibroblast growth factor in a diabetic mouse model. J Tissue Eng Regen Med 8:29–40

Kang Y, Chang J (2018) Channels in a porous scaffold: a new player for vascularization. Regen Med 13:705–715

Kannan R, Perumal S, Thangam R, Gopinath A (2018) Collagen-fucoidan blend film with the potential to induce fibroblast proliferation for regenerative applications. Int J Biol Macromol 106:1032–1040

Kar S, Kaur T, Thirugnanam A (2016) Microwave-assisted synthesis of porous chitosan–modified montmorillonite–hydroxyapatite composite scaffolds. Int J Biol Macromol 82:628–636

Katti DS, Vasita R, Shanmugam K (2008) Improved biomaterials for tissue engineering applications: surface modification of polymers. Curr Top Med Chem 8:341–353

Kaviani A, Zebarjad S, Javadpour S et al (2019) Fabrication and characterization of low-cost freeze-gelated chitosan/collagen/hydroxyapatite hydrogel nanocomposite scaffold. Int J Polymer Anal Char 24:191–203

Kazimierczak P, Benko A, Palka K et al (2020) Novel synthesis method combining a foaming agent with freeze-drying to obtain hybrid highly macroporous bone scaffolds. J Mater Sci Tech 43:52–63

Kesti M, Eberhardt C, Pagliccia G et al (2015) Bioprinting complex cartilaginous structures with clinically compliant biomaterials. Adv Funct Mater 25:7406–7417

Kim SK (ed) (2015) Functional marine biomaterials: properties and applications. Elsevier

Kim SK, Mendis E (2006) Bioactive compounds from marine processing byproducts–a review. Food Res Int 39:383–393

Kim H, Knowles J, Kim H (2004) Development of hydroxyapatite bone scaffold for controlled drug release via poly(ε-caprolactone) and hydroxyapatite hybrid coatings. J Biomed Mater Res 70B:240–249

Kim I, Iwatsuki R, Kikuta K et al (2011) Thermoreversible behavior of κ-carrageenan and its apatite-forming ability in simulated body fluid. Mater Sci Eng C 31:1472–1476

Kim S, Yang D, Chun H et al (2013) Evaluations of chitosan/poly(D,L-lactic-co-glycolic acid) composite fibrous scaffold for tissue engineering applications. Macromol Res 21:931–939

Kim HL, Jung GY, Yoon JH et al (2015) Preparation and characterization of nano-sized hydroxyapatite/alginate/chitosan composite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Mater Sci Eng C 54:20–25

Kim YB, Lee H, Yang GH et al (2016) Mechanically reinforced cell-laden scaffolds formed using alginate-based bioink printed onto the surface of a PCL/alginate mesh structure for regeneration of hard tissue. J Colloid Interface Sci 461:359–368

Kim B, Yang S, You H et al (2018) Fucoidan-induced osteogenic differentiation promotes angiogenesis by inducing vascular endothelial growth factor secretion and accelerates bone repair. J Tissue Eng Regen Med 12(3):e1311–e1324

Kittiphattanabawon P, Benjakul S, Visessanguan W et al (2005) Characterisation of acid-soluble collagen from skin and bone of bigeye snapper (Priacanthus tayenus). Food Chem 89:363–372

Klose RE, Glicksman M (1968) Gums. In: Furia TE (ed) Handbook of food additives, vol 2. The Chemical Rubber Co., pp 313–375

Koehler J, Brandl FP, Goepferich AM (2018) Hydrogel wound dressings for bioactive treatment of acute and chronic wounds. Eur Polym J 100:1–11

Kohane DS, Langer R (2010) Biocompatibility and drug delivery systems. Chem Sci 1:441–446
Kolan K, Liu Y, Baldridge J et al (2017) Solvent based 3D printing of biopolymer/bioactive glass composite and hydrogel for tissue engineering applications. Procedia CIRP 65:38–43
Kołodziejska I (1999) Parameters affecting the isolation of collagen from squid (Illex argentinus) skins. Food Chem 66:153–157
Komalakrishna H, Shine Jyoth T, Kundu B, Mandal S (2017) Low temperature development of nano-hydroxyapatite from Austromegabalanus psittacus, Star fish and Sea urchin. Mater Today Proc 4:11933–11938
Kong L, Gao Y, Cao W et al (2005) Preparation and characterization of nano-hydroxyapatite/chitosan composite scaffolds. J Biomed Mater Res A 75A:275–282
Kozlowska J, Stachowiak N, Sionkowska A (2019) Preparation and characterization of collagen/chitosan poly (ethylene glycol)/nanohydroxyapatite composite scaffolds. Polym Adv Technol 30:799–803
Kumar P, Srinivasan S, Lakshmanan V et al (2011) Synthesis, characterization and cytocompatibility studies of α-chitin hydrogel/nano hydroxyapatite composite scaffolds. Int J Biol Macromol 49:20–31
Kunze K, Niemann H, Ueberlein S et al (2013) Brominated skeletal components of the marine demosponges, aplysina cavernicola and ianthella basta: analytical and biochemical investigations. Mar Drugs 11:1271–1287
Kuo C, Chen C, Hsiao C, Chen J (2015) Incorporation of chitosan in biomimetic gelatin/chondroitin-6-sulfate/hyaluronan cryogel for cartilage tissue engineering. Carbohydr Polym 117:722–730
Kusmanto F, Walker G, Gan Q et al (2008) Development of composite tissue scaffolds containing naturally sourced microporous hydroxyapatite. Chem Eng J 139:398–407
Lalzawmliana V, Anand A, Mukherjee P et al (2019) Marine organisms as a source of natural matrix for bone tissue engineering. Ceramics Int 45:1469–1481
Lee K, Mooney D (2012) Alginate: properties and biomedical applications. Prog Poly Sci 37:106–126
Lee S, Shin H (2007) Matrices and scaffolds for delivery of bioactive molecules in bone and cartilage tissue engineering. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 59:339–359
Lee KJ, Park HY, Kim YK et al (2009) Biochemical characterization of collagen from the starfish Asterias amurensis. J Korean Soc Appl Biol Chem 52:221–226
Lee DY, Lee H, Kim Y et al (2016) Phage as versatile nanoink for printing 3-D cell-laden scaffolds. Acta Biomater 29:112–124
Lei Y, Xu Z, Ke Q et al (2017) Strontium hydroxyapatite/chitosan nanohybrid scaffolds with enhanced osteoinductivity for bone tissue engineering. Mater Sci Eng C 72:134–142
Leitinger B, Hohenester E (2007) Mammalian collagen receptors. Matrix Biol 26:146–155
Leventouri T (2006) Synthetic and biological hydroxyapatites: crystal structure questions. Biomaterials 27:3339–3342
Li B, Hu Q, Qian X et al (2002) Bioabsorbable chitosan/hydroxyapatite composite rod prepared by in situ precipitation for internal fixation of bone fracture. Acta Polym Sin 6:828–833
Li Z, Ramay HR, Hauch KD et al (2005) Chitosan-alginate hybrid scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Biomaterials 26:3919–3928
Li L, Fang Y, Vreeker R et al (2007) Reexamining the Egg-Box Model in Calcium-Alginate Gels with X-ray Diffraction. Biomacromol 8:464–468
Li X, Cui R, Sun L et al (2014) 3D-printed biopolymers for tissue engineering application. Int J Polym Sci 2014:1–13
Li R, Pang Z, He H et al (2017) Drug depot-anchoring hydrogel: a self-assembling scaffold for localized drug release and enhanced stem cell differentiation. J Control Release 261:234–245
Li T, Song X, Weng C et al (2019) Silk fibroin/carboxymethyl chitosan hydrogel with tunable biomechanical properties has application potential as cartilage scaffold. Int J Biol Macromol 137:382–391

Lima PAL, Resende CX, de Almeida Soares GD et al (2013) Preparation, characterization and biological test of 3D-scaffolds based on chitosan, fibroin and hydroxyapatite for bone tissue engineering. Mater Sci Eng C 33:3389–3395
Lin Z, Solomon KL, Zhang X et al (2011) In vitro evaluation of natural marine sponge collagen as a scaffold for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Sci 7:968–977
Lindner LH, Hossann M, Vogeser M et al (2008) Dual role of hexadecylphosphocholine (miltefosine) in thermosensitive liposomes: active ingredient and mediator of drug release. J Control Release 125:112–120
Liu C, Czernuszka J (2007) Development of biodegradable scaffolds for tissue engineering: a perspective on emerging technology. Mater Sci Technol 23:379–391
Liu Z, Gu Q, Xu Z, Groth T (2010) Synergistic effect of polyelectrolyte multilayers and osteogenic growth medium on differentiation of human mesenchymal stem cells. Macromol Biosci 10:1043–1054
Liu J, Zheng H, Poh P et al (2015a) Hydrogels for engineering of perfusable vascular networks. International Journal of Molecular Sciences 16:15997–16016
Liu D, Zhang X, Li T et al (2015b) Extraction and characterization of acid-and pepsin-soluble collagens from the scales, skins and swim-bladders of grass carp (Ctenopharyngodon idella). Food Biosci 9:68–74
Liverani L, Guarino V, La Carrubba V, Boccaccini AR (2019) Porous biomaterials and scaffolds for tissue engineering. In: Narayan R (ed) Encyclopedia of biomedical engineering, vol 1, pp 188–202
Loh QL, Choong C (2013) Three-dimensional scaffolds for tissue engineering applications: role of porosity and pore size. Tissue Eng Part B Rev 19:485–502
López-Álvarez M, González P, Serra J et al (2020) Chondroitin sulfate and hydroxyapatite from Prionace glauca shark jaw: Physicochemical and structural characterization. Int J Biol Macromol 156:329–339
Lopez-Heredia MA, Łapa A, Mendes AC et al (2017) Bioinspired, biomimetic, double-enzymatic mineralization of hydrogels for bone regeneration with calcium carbonate. Mater Lett 190:13–16
Lowe B, Venkatesan J, Anil S et al (2016) Preparation and characterization of chitosan-natural nano hydroxyapatite-fucoidan nanocomposites for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 93:1479–1487
Lu H, Lu T, Chen C et al (2018) Development of nanocomposite scaffolds based on biomineralization of N,O-carboxymethyl chitosan/fucoidan conjugates for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 120:2335–2345
Lu H, Lu T, Chen C, Mi F (2019) Development of genipin-crosslinked and fucoidan-adsorbed nano-hydroxyapatite/hydroxypropyl chitosan composite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 128:973–984
Luetchford K, Chaudhuri J, De Bank P (2020) Silk fibroin/gelatin microcarriers as scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Mater Sci Eng C. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.msec.2019.110116
Luyt C, Meddahi-Pellé A, Ho-Tin-Noe B et al (2003) Low-molecular-weight fucoidan promotes therapeutic revascularization in a rat model of critical hindlimb ischemia. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 305:24–30
Lyons FG, Al-Munajjed AA, Kieran SM et al (2010) The healing of bony defects by cell-free collagen-based scaffolds compared to stem cell-seeded tissue engineered constructs. Biomaterials 31:9232–9243
Ma P (2004) Scaffolds for tissue fabrication. Mater Today 7:30–40
Ma P, Zhang R (2001) Microtubular architecture of biodegradable polymer scaffolds. J Biomed Mater Res 56:469–477
Mabrouk M, Beherei H, Das D (2020) Recent progress in the fabrication techniques of 3D scaffolds for tissue engineering. Mater Sci and Eng C 110:110716
Maitra J, Shukla VK (2014) Cross-linking in hydrogels-a review. Am J Polym Sci 4:25–31

Maji S, Agarwal T, Maiti T (2018) Generation of macroporosity in 3D scaffold using a combined approach of high-speed stirring and freeze-drying method: potentials in bone tissue engineering application. New Biotechnol. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nbt.2018.05.1236
Mandal BB, Kundu SC (2009) Calcium alginate beads embedded in silk fibroin as 3D dual drug releasing scaffolds. Biomaterials 30:5170–5177
Mandrycky C, Phong K, Zheng Y (2017) Tissue engineering toward organ-specific regeneration and disease modeling. MRS Commun 7:332–347
Mansouri N, Bagheri S (2016) The influence of topography on tissue engineering perspective. Mater Sci and Eng C 61:906–921
Mansouri N, Fattahian H, Mansouri K et al (2019) The role of fish scale derived scaffold and platelet rich plasma in healing of rabbit tibial defect: an experimental study. Acta Vet Brno 87:363–370
Mantha S, Pillai S, Khayambashi P et al (2019) Smart hydrogels in tissue engineering and regenerative medicine. Materials 12:3323
Mao D, Li Q, Li D et al (2018) 3D porous poly (ε-caprolactone)/58S bioactive glass-sodium alginate/gelatin hybrid scaffolds prepared by a modified melt molding method for bone tissue engineering. MaterDes 160:1–8
Marsich E, Bellomo F, Turco G et al (2013) Nano-composite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering containing silver nanoparticles: preparation, characterization and biological properties. J Mater Sci Mater Med 24:1799–1807
Martínez-Vázquez FJ, Cabañas MV, Paris JL et al (2015) Fabrication of novel Si-doped hydroxyapatite/gelatine scaffolds by rapid prototyping for drug delivery and bone regeneration. Acta Biomater 15:200–209
Märtson M, Viljanto J, Hurme T et al (1999) Is cellulose sponge degradable or stable as implantation material? An in vivo subcutaneous study in the rat. Biomaterials 20:1989–1995
Mayfield A, Tilokee E, Latham N et al (2014) The effect of encapsulation of cardiac stem cells within matrix-enriched hydrogel capsules on cell survival, post-ischemic cell retention and cardiac function. Biomaterials 35:133–142
Melchels FP, Feijen J, Grijpma DW (2009) A poly (D, L-lactide) resin for the preparation of tissue engineering scaffolds by stereolithography. Biomaterials 30:3801–3809
Melchels FP, Bertoldi K, Gabbrielli R et al (2010) Mathematically defined tissue engineering scaffold architectures prepared by stereolithography. Biomaterials 31:6909–6916
Miguel S, Ribeiro M, Brancal H et al (2014) Thermoresponsive chitosan–agarose hydrogel for skin regeneration. Carbohydr Polym 111:366–373
Miguez-Pacheco V, Hench L, Boccaccini A (2015) Bioactive glasses beyond bone and teeth: Emerging applications in contact with soft tissues. Acta Biomater 13:1–15
Milovac D, Gallego G, Ivankovic M, Ivankovic H (2014) PCL-coated hydroxyapatite scaffold derived from cuttle fish bone: morphology, mechanical properties and bioactivity. Mater Sci Eng C 34:437–445
Miranda DG, Malmonge SM, Campos DM et al (2016) A chitosan-hyaluronic acid hydrogel scaffold for periodontal tissue engineering. J Biomed Mater Res Part B Appl Biomater 104:1691–1702
Mironov A, Mironova O, Syachina M, Popov V (2019) 3D printing of polylactic-co-glycolic acid fiber scaffolds using an antisolvent phase separation process. Polymer 182:1–7
Miyoshi H, Adachi T (2014) Topography design concept of a tissue engineering scaffold for controlling cell function and fate through actin cytoskeletal modulation. Tissue Eng Part B Rev 20:609–627
Mohammadinejad R, Maleki H, Larrañeta E et al (2019) Status and future scope of plant-based green hydrogels in biomedical engineering. Appl Mater Today 16:213–246
Mondal S, Hoang G, Manivasagan P et al (2019) Comparative characterization of biogenic and chemical synthesized hydroxyapatite biomaterials for potential biomedical application. Mater Chem and Phys 228:344–356

Mondal S, Nguyen TP, Hoang G et al (2020) Hydroxyapatite nano bioceramics optimized 3D printed poly lactic acid scaffold for bone tissue engineering application. Ceramics Int 46:3443–3455

Moradi Kashkooli F, Soltani M, Souri M (2020) Controlled anti-cancer drug release through advanced nano-drug delivery systems: static and dynamic targeting strategies. J Control Release 327:316–349

Morimoto N, Kakudo N, Matsui M et al (2015) Exploratory clinical trial of combination wound therapy with a gelatin sheet and platelet-rich plasma in patients with chronic skin ulcers: study protocol. BMJ Open. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjopen-2015-007733

Mourdikoudis S, Pallares R, Thanh N (2018) Characterization techniques for nanoparticles: comparison and complementarity upon studying nanoparticle properties. Nanoscale 10:12871–12934

Mutsenko VV, Gryshkov O, Lauterboeck L et al (2017a) Novel chitin scaffolds derived from marine sponge Ianthella basta for tissue engineering approaches based on human mesenchymal stromal cells: biocompatibility and cryopreservation. Int J Biol Macromol 104:1955–1965

Mutsenko VV, Bazhenov VV, Rogulska O et al (2017b) 3D chitinous scaffolds derived from cultivated marine demosponge Aplysina aerophoba for tissue engineering approaches based on human mesenchymal stromal cells. Int J Biol Macromol 104:1966–1974

Naahidi S, Jafari M, Logan M et al (2017) Biocompatibility of hydrogel-based scaffolds for tissue engineering applications. Biotechnol Adv 35:530–544

Nagai T, Suzuki N (2000) Isolation of collagen from fish waste material-skin, bone and fins. Food Chem 68:277–281

Nagai T, Suzuki N (2002) Preparation and partial characterization of collagen from paper nautilus (Argonauta argo, Linnaeus) outer skin. Food Chem 76:149–153

Nakamura S, Nambu M, Ishizuka T et al (2008) Effect of controlled release of fibroblast growth factor-2 from chitosan/fucoidan micro complex-hydrogel on in vitro and in vivo vascularization. J Biomed Mater Res A 85A:619–627

Nandi S, Kundu B, Mahato A et al (2015) In vitro and in vivo evaluation of the marine sponge skeleton as a bone mimicking biomaterial. Integr Biol 7:250–262

Nawrotek K, Tylman M, Rudnicka K et al (2016) Chitosan-based hydrogel implants enriched with calcium ions intended for peripheral nervous tissue regeneration. Carbohydr Polym 136:764–771

Nayar S, Guha A (2009) Waste utilization for the controlled synthesis of nanosized hydroxyapatite. Mater Sci Eng C 29:1326–1329

Necas J, Bartosikova L (2013) Carrageenan: a review. Veterinarni Med 58:187–205

Nezhad-Mokhtari P, Akrami-Hasan-Kohal M, Ghorbani M (2020) An injectable chitosan-based hydrogel scaffold containing gold nanoparticles for tissue engineering applications. Int J Biol Macromol 154:198–205

Nikolova MP, Chavali MS (2019) Recent advances in biomaterials for 3D scaffolds: a review. Bioactive Mater 4:271–292

Ning L, Sun H, Lelong T et al (2018) 3D bioprinting of scaffolds with living Schwann cells for potential nerve tissue engineering applications. Biofabrication. https://doi.org/10.1088/1758-5090/aacd30

Obayemi J, Jusu S, Salifu A et al (2020) Degradable porous drug-loaded polymer scaffolds for localized cancer drug delivery and breast cell/tissue growth. Mater Sci Eng. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.msec.2020.110794

O'brien FJ (2011) Biomaterials & scaffolds for tissue engineering. Mater Today 14:88–95

Ojansivu M, Rashad A, Ahlinder A et al (2019) Wood-based nanocellulose and bioactive glass modified gelatin–alginate bioinks for 3D bioprinting of bone cells. Biofabrication. https://doi.org/10.1088/1758-5090/ab0692

Oliveira C, Neves N, Reis R et al (2020) A review on fucoidan antitumor strategies: from a biological active agent to a structural component of fucoidan-based systems. Carbohydr Polym. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carbpol.2020.116131

Ong YXJ, Lee LY, Davoodi P, Wang CH (2018) Production of drug-releasing biodegradable microporous scaffold using a two-step micro-encapsulation/supercritical foaming process. J Supercritical Fluids 133:263–269

Ozcelik B, Brown KD, Blencowe A et al (2013) Ultrathin chitosan–poly (ethylene glycol) hydrogel films for corneal tissue engineering. Acta Biomaterialia 9:6594–6605

Pal A, Maity S, Chabri S et al (2017) Mechanochemical synthesis of nanocrystalline hydroxyapatite from Mercenaria clam shells and phosphoric acid. Biomed Phys Eng Express 3:1–8

Pallela R, Bojja S, Janapala V (2011) Biochemical and biophysical characterization of collagens of marine sponge, Ircinia fusca (Porifera: Demospongiae: Irciniidae). Int J Biol Macromol 49:85–92

Pallela R, Venkatesan J, Bhatnagar I et al (2013) Applications of marine collagen-based scaffolds in bone tissue engineering. In: Kim KS (ed) Marine biomaterials: characterization, isolation and applications. CRC Press, pp 519–528

Pan JF, Yuan HF, Guo CA et al (2015) One-step cross-linked injectable hydrogels with tunable properties for space-filling scaffolds in tissue engineering. RSC Adv 5:40820–40830

Pandey A, Kuo C, Liang C et al (2020) 3D pore-interconnected calcium phosphate bone blocks for bone tissue engineering. Ceramics Int 46:16465–16471

Park D, Choi B, Zhu S et al (2005) Injectable bone using chitosan-alginate gel/mesenchymal stem cells/BMP-2 composites. J Craniomaxillofac Surg 33:50–54

Park S, Lee K, Lim D, Lee S (2012) The sulfated polysaccharide fucoidan stimulates osteogenic differentiation of human adipose-derived stem cells. Stem Cells Dev 21:2204–2211

Pereira R, Carvalho A, Vaz D et al (2013) Development of novel alginate based hydrogel films for wound healing applications. Int J Biol Macromol 52:221–230

Perumal VA, Govender T, Lutchman D, Mackraj I (2008) Investigating a new approach to film casting for enhanced drug content uniformity in polymeric films. Drug Dev Ind Pharm 34:1036–1047

Perumal R, Perumal S, Thangam R et al (2018) Collagen-fucoidan blend film with the potential to induce fibroblast proliferation for regenerative applications. Int J Biol Macromol 106:1032–1040

Pham QP, Sharma U, Mikos AG (2006) Electrospinning of polymeric nanofibers for tissue engineering applications: a review. Tissue Eng 12:1197–1211

Pierce MW (2010) Transdermal delivery of sumatriptan for the treatment of acute migraine. Neurotherapeutics 7:159–163

Pirmoradi FN, Jackson JK, Burt HM, Chiao M (2011) On-demand controlled release of docetaxel from a battery-less MEMS drug delivery device. Lab Chip 11:2744–2752

Polat M, Polat H (2020) Recent advances of chitosan-based systems for delivery of anticancer drugs. In: Jana S, Jana S (eds) Functional chitosan: drug delivery and biomedical applications. Springer Nature, pp 191–228

Polat H, Cihan E, Polat M (2017) Comparing the morphology of chitosan nanoparticles manufactured by different type of methods. In: Duvarcı OC, Polat M, Tanoğlu M (eds) The Proceedings of the 3rd International Porous and Powder Materials Symposium and Exhibition 2017, pp. 178–182

Polat M, Olcay Kurt AN, Polat H (2020a) Synthesis of mechanically durable-antibiotic embedded-dual porosity pure chitosan foams for controlled drug release in tissue engineering. (to be submitted to Carbohydr Polym)

Polat H, Kutluay G, Polat M (2020b) Analysis of dilution induced disintegration of micellar drug carriers in the presence of inter and intra micellar species. Colloids Surf A Physicochem Eng Aspects 601:1–9

Popa E, Caridade S, Mano J et al (2015) Chondrogenic potential of injectable κ-carrageenan hydrogel with encapsulated adipose stem cells for cartilage tissue-engineering applications. J Tissue Eng Reg Med 9:550–563

Poursamar SA, Hatami J, Lehner A et al (2015) Gelatin porous scaffolds fabricated using a modified gas foaming technique: Characterisation and cytotoxicity assessment. Mater Sci and Eng C 48:63–70

Prabaharan M, Jayakumar R (2009) Chitosan-graft-β-cyclodextrin scaffolds with controlled drug release capability for tissue engineering applications. Int J Biol Macromol 44:320–325

Prabaharan M, Rodriguez-Perez M, de Saja J, Mano J (2007) Preparation and characterization of poly(L-lactic acid)-chitosan hybrid scaffolds with drug release capability. J Biomed Mater Res Part B Appl Biomater 81B:427–434

Prasadh S, Wong R (2018) Unraveling the mechanical strength of biomaterials used as a bone scaffold in oral and maxillofacial defects. Oral Sci Int 15:48–55

Preethi SS, Sanjay V, Haritha MA et al (2017) Effects of flavonoids incorporated biological macromolecules based scaffolds in bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 10:74–87

Puvaneswary S, Talebian S, Raghavendran H et al (2015) Fabrication and in vitro biological activity of βTCP-Chitosan-Fucoidan composite for bone tissue engineering. Carbohydr Polym 134:799–807

Qu H, Fu H, Han Z, Sun Y (2019) Biomaterials for bone tissue engineering scaffolds: a review. RSC Adv 9:26252–26262

Radhakrishnan J, Krishnan UM, Sethuraman S (2014) Hydrogel based injectable scaffolds for cardiac tissue regeneration. Biotechnol Adv 32:449–461

Raftery R, Woods B, Marques A et al (2016) Multifunctional biomaterials from the sea: Assessing the effects of chitosan incorporation into collagen scaffolds on mechanical and biological functionality. Acta Biomaterialia 43:160–169

Rahmati M, Samadikuchaksaraei A, Mozafari M (2016) Insight into the interactive effects of β-glycerophosphate molecules on thermosensitive chitosan-based hydrogels. Bioinspired Biomimet Nanobiomater 5:67–73

Rai B, Teoh SH, Hutmacher DW et al (2005) Novel PCL-based honeycomb scaffolds as drug delivery systems for rhBMP-2. Biomaterials 26:3739–3748

Ranganathan N, Joseph Bensingh R, Abdul Kader M, Nayak SK (2018) Synthesis and properties of hydrogels prepared by various polymerization reaction systems. In: Mondal H (ed) Cellulose-based superabsorbent hydrogels, Polymers and Polymeric Composites: A Reference Series. Springer, Switzerland, pp 1–25

Rao S, Harini B, Shadamarshan R et al (2018) Natural and synthetic polymers/bioceramics/bioactive compounds-mediated cell signalling in bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 110:88–96

Roach BL, Nover AB, Ateshian GA, Hung CT (2016) Agarose hydrogel characterization for regenerative medicine applications: focus on engineering cartilage. In: Neves NM, Reis RL (eds) Biomaterials from nature for advanced devices and therapies, vol 20. John Wiley & Sons, Hoboken, NJ, p 20

Roberts JJ, Martens PJ (2016) Engineering biosynthetic cell encapsulation systems. In: Poole-Warren L, Martens P, Green R (eds) Biosynthetic polymers for medical applications. Woodhead Publishing, pp 205–239

Rode M, Batti Angulski A, Gomes F et al (2018) Carrageenan hydrogel as a scaffold for skin-derived multipotent stromal cells delivery. J Biomater Appl 33:422–434

Rodríguez-Vázquez M, Vega-Ruiz B, Ramos-Zúñiga R et al (2015) Chitosan and its potential use as a scaffold for tissue engineering in regenerative medicine. BioMed Res Int 2015:1–15

Rohde S, Schupp PJ (2011) Growth and regeneration of the elephant ear sponge Ianthella basta (Porifera). In: Maldonado M (ed) Ancient, new challenges. Developments in Hydrobiology Animals, vol 219. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 219–226

Rubert M, Alonso-Sande M, Monjo M, Ramis J (2012) Evaluation of alginate and hyaluronic acid for their use in bone tissue engineering. Biointerphases 7:44

Sajesh K, Jayakumar R, Nair S, Chennazhi K (2013) Biocompatible conducting chitosan/polypyrrole–alginate composite scaffold for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 62:465–471

Salerno A, Pascual C (2015) Bio-based polymers, supercritical fluids and tissue engineering. Process Biochem 50:826–838
Salgado A, Coutinho O, Reis R (2004) Bone tissue engineering: state of the art and future trends. Macromol Biosci 4:743–765
Salvatore L, Gallo N, Natali M et al (2020) Marine collagen and its derivatives: Versatile and sustainable bio-resources for healthcare. Mater Sci Eng. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.msec.2020.110963
Samadian H, Maleki H, Fathollahi A et al (2020) Naturally occurring biological macromolecules-based hydrogels: potential biomaterials for peripheral nerve regeneration. Int J Biol Macromol 154:795–817
Sampath U, Ching Y, Chuah C et al (2016) Fabrication of porous materials from natural/synthetic biopolymers and their composites. Materials 9:1–32
Santos S, Lamghari M, Almeida C et al (2013) Adsorbed fibrinogen leads to improved bone regeneration and correlates with differences in the systemic immune response. Acta Biomaterialia 9:7209–7217
Sanyakamdhorn S, Agudelo D, Tajmir-Riahi H (2013) Encapsulation of antitumor drug doxorubicin and its analogue by chitosan nanoparticles. Biomacromolecules 14:557–563
Saravanan S, Leena RS, Selvamurugan N (2016) Chitosan based biocomposite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 93:1354–1365
Sarem M, Moztarzadeh F, Mozafari M (2013) How can genipin assist gelatin/carbohydrate chitosan scaffolds to act as replacements of load-bearing soft tissues? Carbohydr Polym 93:635–643
Schaap-Oziemlak A, Kühn P, van Kooten T, van Rijn P (2014) Biomaterial-stem cell interactions and their impact on stem cell response. RSC Adv 4:53307–53320
Schneider G, English A, Abraham M et al (2004) The effect of hydrogel charge density on cell attachment. Biomater 25:3023–3028
Schulz A, Katsen-Globa A, Huber E et al (2018) Poly(amidoamine)-alginate hydrogels: directing the behavior of mesenchymal stem cells with charged hydrogel surfaces. J Mater Sci Mater Med 29:105
Schwab A, Hélary C, Richards R et al (2020) Tissue mimetic hyaluronan bioink containing collagen fibers with controlled orientation modulating cell migration and alignment. Mater Today Bio. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mtbio.2020.100058
Scionti G, Moral M, Toledano M et al (2014) Effect of the hydration on the biomechanical properties in a fibrin-agarose tissue-like model. J Biomed Mater Res Part A 102:2573–2582
Seif S, Franzen L, Windbergs M (2015) Overcoming drug crystallization in electrospun fibers-elucidating key parameters and developing strategies for drug delivery. Int J Pharm 478:390–397
Senaratne LS, Park PJ, Kim SK (2006) Isolation and characterization of collagen from brown backed toadfish (Lagocephalus gloveri) skin. Bioresour Technol 97:191–197
Senatov FS, Niaza KV, Zadorozhnyy MY et al (2016) Mechanical properties and shape memory effect of 3D-printed PLA-based porous scaffolds. J Mech Behav Biomed Mater 57:139–148
Shakir M, Jolly R, Khan M et al (2015) Synthesis and characterization of a nano-hydroxyapatite/chitosan/polyethylene glycol nanocomposite for bone tissue engineering. Polym Adv Technol 26:41–48
Shaltout A, Allam M, Moharram M (2011) FTIR spectroscopic, thermal and XRD characterization of hydroxyapatite from new natural sources. Spectrochim Acta A Mol Biomol Spectrosc 83:56–60
Sharma A, Bhat S, Vishnoi T et al (2013) Three-dimensional supermacroporous carrageenan-gelatin cryogel matrix for tissue engineering applications. BioMed Res Int 2013:1–15
Shavandi A, Bekhit AE, Ali MA, Sun Z (2015) Bio-mimetic composite scaffold from mussel shells, squid pen and crab chitosan for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 80:445–454
Sheik S, Sheik S, Nairy R et al (2018) Study on the morphological and biocompatible properties of chitosan grafted silk fibre reinforced PVA films for tissue engineering applications. Int J Biol Macromol 116:45–53

Shen Z, Cui X, Hou R et al (2015) Tough biodegradable chitosan–gelatin hydrogels via in situ precipitation for potential cartilage tissue engineering. RSC Adv 5:55640–55647
Shi P, Liu M, Fan F et al (2018) Characterization of natural hydroxyapatite originated from fish bone and its biocompatibility with osteoblasts. Mater Sci Eng C 90:706–712
Shi R, Huang Y, Zhang J et al (2020) Effective delivery of mitomycin-C and meloxicam by double-layer electrospun membranes for the prevention of epidural adhesions. J Biomed Mater Res Part B Appl Biomater 108:353–366
Shick T, Abdul Kadir A, Ngadiman N, Ma'aram A (2019) A review of biomaterials scaffold fabrication in additive manufacturing for tissue engineering. J Bioactive Compatible Polym 34:415–435
Shin M, Lee D, Wohlgemuth G et al (2010) Global metabolite profiling of agarose degradation by Saccharophagus degradans 2-40. New Biotechnol 27:156–168
Shirazi R, Ronan W, Rochev Y, McHugh P (2016) Modelling the degradation and elastic properties of poly(lactic-co-glycolic acid) films and regular open-cell tissue engineering scaffolds. J Mech Behav Biomed Mater 54:48–59
Sikorski ZE, Borderias JA (1994) Collagen in the muscles and skin of marine animals. In: Sikorski ZE, Pan BS, Shahidi F (eds) Seafood proteins. Springer, New York, pp 58–70
Sill TJ, Von Recum HA (2008) Electrospinning: applications in drug delivery and tissue engineering. Biomaterials 29:1989–2006
Silva T, Alves A, Ferreira B et al (2012) Materials of marine origin: a review on polymers and ceramics of biomedical interest. Int Mater Rev 57:276–306
Singh MR, Patel S, Singh D (2016) Natural polymer-based hydrogels as scaffolds for tissue engineering. In: Grumezescu AM (ed) Nanobiomaterials in soft tissue engineering. applications of nanobiomaterials, vol 5. Elsevier Inc., pp 231–260
Singhal R, Gupta K (2016) A review: tailor-made hydrogel structures (classifications and synthesis parameters). Poly-Plastics Tech Eng 55:54–70
Song E, Yeon Kim S, Chun T et al (2006) Collagen scaffolds derived from a marine source and their biocompatibility. Biomaterials 27:2951–2961
Sop ES, Cihan E, Polat M (2017) Production of nano-sized silica particles with controlled size distribution using seed particles. In: Duvarcı OC, Polat M, Tanoğlu M (eds) The Proceedings of the 3rd International Porous and Powder Materials Symposium and Exhibition 2017, pp. 412–417
Sowjanya J, Singh J, Mohita T et al (2013) Biocomposite scaffolds containing chitosan/alginate/nano-silica for bone tissue engineering. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 109:294–300
Spiller K, Anfang R, Spiller K et al (2014) The role of macrophage phenotype in vascularization of tissue engineering scaffolds. Biomaterials 35:4477–4488
Sriamornsak P, Nunthanid J, Cheewatanakornkool K, Manchun S (2010) Effect of drug loading method on drug content and drug release from calcium pectinate gel beads. AAPS Pharm Sci Technol 11:1315–1319
Subramanian A, Vu D, Larsen G, Lin H (2005) Preparation and evaluation of the electrospun chitosan/PEO fibers for potential applications in cartilage tissue engineering. J Biomater Sci Polym Ed 16:861–873
Sugiura H, Yunoki S, Kondo E et al (2009) In vivo biological responses and bioresorption of tilapia scale collagen as a potential biomaterial. J Biomater Sci Polym Ed 20:1353–1368
Sumayya AS, Kurup G (2017) Marine macromolecules cross-linked hydrogel scaffolds as physiochemically and biologically favorable entities for tissue engineering applications. J Biomater Sci Polym Ed 28:807–825
Sun F, Zhou H, Lee J (2011) Various preparation methods of highly porous hydroxyapatite/polymer nanoscale biocomposites for bone regeneration. Acta Biomaterialia 7:3813–3828
Sun L, Li B, Song W et al (2017) Characterization of Pacific cod (Gadus macrocephalus) skin collagen and fabrication of collagen sponge as a good biocompatible biomedical material. Process Biochem 63:229–235

Swatschek D, Schatton W, Kellermann J et al (2002) Marine sponge collagen: isolation, characterization and effects on the skin parameters surface-pH, moisture and sebum. Eur J Pharm Biopharm 53:107–113

Tampieri A, Sprio S, Ruffini A et al (2009) From wood to bone: multi-step process to convert wood hierarchical structures into biomimetic hydroxyapatite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. J Mater Chem 19:4973–4980

Tan F, Xu X, Deng T et al (2012) Fabrication of positively charged poly(ethylene glycol)-diacrylate hydrogel as a bone tissue engineering scaffold. Biomed Mater 7:1–10

Tan F, Liu J, Liu M, Wang J (2017) Charge density is more important than charge polarity in enhancing osteoblast-like cell attachment on poly(ethylene glycol)-diacrylate hydrogel. Mater Sci Eng C 76:330–339

Tang C, Guan Y, Yao S, Zhu Z (2014) Preparation of ibuprofen-loaded chitosan films for oral mucosal drug delivery using supercritical solution impregnation. Int J Pharm 473:434–441

Tejada G, Piccirilli G, Sortino M et al (2017) Formulation and in-vitro efficacy of antifungal mucoadhesive polymeric matrices for the delivery of miconazole nitrate. Mater Sci Eng C 79:140–150

Teymouri A, Stuart BJ, Kumar S (2018) Hydroxyapatite and dittmarite precipitation from algae hydrolysate. Algal Res 29:202–211

Thadavirul N, Pavasant P, Supaphol P (2013) Development of polycaprolactone porous scaffolds by combining solvent casting, particulate leaching, and polymer leaching techniques for bone tissue engineering. J Biomed Mater Res Part A 102:3379–3392

Thanh D, Trang P, Thom N et al (2016) Effects of porogen on structure and properties of poly lactic acid/hydroxyapatite nanocomposites (PLA/HAp). J Nanosci Nanotechnol 16:9450–9459

Tien WB, Chen MT, Yao PC (2012) Effects of pH and temperature on microstructure and morphology of hydroxyapatite/collagen composites synthesized in vitro. Mater Sci and Eng C 32:2096–2102

Tiitu V, Pulkkinen H, Valonen P et al (2008) Recombinant human collagens as scaffold materials for chondrocyte cultures. Biomed Mater Eng 18:225–229

Tobacman J (2001) Review of harmful gastrointestinal effects of carrageenan in animal experiments. Environ Health Perspect 109:983–994

Tohamy KM, Soliman IE, Mabrouk M et al (2018) Novel polysaccharide hybrid scaffold loaded with hydroxyapatite: fabrication, bioactivity, and in vivo study. Mater Sci Eng C 93:1–11

Trachtenberg JE, Placone JK, Smith BT et al (2017) Extrusion-based 3D printing of poly (propylene fumarate) scaffolds with hydroxyapatite gradients. J Biomater Sci, Polym Ed 28:532–554

Tran T, Hamid Z, Cheong K (2018) A review of mechanical properties of scaffold in tissue engineering: aloe vera composites. In: Jaafar M, Razak KA (eds) Regional Conference on Materials and ASEAN Microscopy Conference, Penang, December 2017, Journal of Physics: Conference Series, vol 1082. IOP Publishing, p 012080

Tytgat L, Van Damme L, Ortega Arevalo M et al (2019) Extrusion-based 3D printing of photocrosslinkable gelatin and κ-carrageenan hydrogel blends for adipose tissue regeneration. Int J Biol Macromol 140:929–938

Tziveleka L, Ioannou E, Tsiourvas D et al (2017) Collagen from the marine sponges axinella cannabina and suberites carnosus: isolation and morphological, biochemical, and biophysical characterization. Mar Drugs 15:152

Ullah S, Chen X (2020) Fabrication, applications and challenges of natural biomaterials in tissue engineering. Appl Mater Today. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apmt.2020.100656

Ullah S, Zainol I, Chowdhury S, Fauzi M (2018) Development of various composition multicomponent chitosan/fish collagen/glycerin 3D porous scaffolds: Effect on morphology, mechanical strength, biostability and cytocompatibility. Int J Biol Macromol 111:158–168

Valentin T, Leggett S, Chen P et al (2017) Stereolithographic printing of ionically-crosslinked alginate hydrogels for degradable biomaterials and microfluidics. Lab Chip 17:3474–3488

Velasco M, Narváez-Tovar C, Garzón-Alvarado D (2015) Design, materials, and mechanobiology of biodegradable scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. BioMed Res Int 2015:1–21

Venkatesan J, Pallela R, Bhatnagar I, Kim SK (2012) Chitosan-amylopectin/hydroxyapatite and chitosan-chondroitin sulphate/hydroxyapatite composite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 51:1033–1042
Venkatesan J, Bhatnagar I, Kim S (2014a) Chitosan-alginate biocomposite containing fucoidan for bone tissue engineering. Mar Drugs 12:300–316
Venkatesan J, Nithya R, Sudha PN, Kim SK (2014b) Role of alginate in bone tissue engineering. In: Kim SK (ed) Marine carbohydrates: fundamentals and applications, Part B in advances in food and nutrition research, vol 73. Academic Press, pp 45–57
Venkatesan J, Bhatnagar I, Manivasagan P et al (2015) Alginate composites for bone tissue engineering: a review. Int J Biol Macromol 72:269–281
Villa MM, Wang L, Huang J et al (2015) Bone tissue engineering with a collagen–hydroxyapatite scaffold and culture expanded bone marrow stromal cells. J Biomed Mater Res Part B: Appl Biomater 103:243–253
Vivero-Escoto JL, Slowing II, Wu CW, Lin VSY (2009) Photoinduced intracellular controlled release drug delivery in human cells by gold-capped mesoporous silica nanosphere. J Am Chem Soc 131:3462–3463
Walsh P, Buchanan F, Dring M et al (2008) Low-pressure synthesis and characterisation of hydroxyapatite derived from mineralise red algae. Chem Eng J 137:173–179
Wang T, Drzal LT (2012) Cellulose-nanofiber-reinforced poly (lactic acid) composites prepared by a water-based approach. ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 4:5079–5085
Wang W, Lin S, Xiao Y et al (2008) Acceleration of diabetic wound healing with chitosan-crosslinked collagen sponge containing recombinant human acidic fibroblast growth factor in healing-impaired STZ diabetic rats. Life Sci 82:190–204
Wang T, Lew J, Premkumar J et al (2017a) Production of recombinant collagen: state of the art and challenges. Eng Biol 1:18–23
Wang G, Wang X, Huang L (2017b) Feasibility of chitosan-alginate (Chi-Alg) hydrogel used as scaffold for neural tissue engineering: a pilot study in vitro. Biotechnol Biotechnol Equip 31:766–773
Wang C, Huang W, Zhou Y et al (2020) 3D printing of bone tissue engineering scaffolds. Bioactive Mater 5:82–91
Watt J, Marcus R (1981) Harmful effects of carrageenan fed to animals. Cancer Detect Prev 4:129–134
Wei Q, Becherer T, Angioletti-Uberti S et al (2014) Protein interactions with polymer coatings and biomaterials. Angew Chem Int Ed 53:8004–8031
Wei X, Liu C, Wang Z, Luo Y (2020) 3D printed core-shell hydrogel fiber scaffolds with NIR-triggered drug release for localized therapy of breast cancer. Int J Pharm. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpharm.2020.119219
Willerth S, Sakiyama-Elbert S (2019) Combining Stem Cells and Biomaterial Scaffolds for Constructing Tissues and Cell Delivery. StemJournal 1:1–25
Williams DF (2019) Challenges with the development of biomaterials for sustainable tissue engineering. Front Bioeng Biotechnol 7:1–10
Wu Z, Su X, Xu Y et al (2016) Bioprinting three-dimensional cell-laden tissue constructs with controllable degradation. Sci Rep. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep24474
Wysokowski M, Bazhenov V, Tsurkan M et al (2013) Isolation and identification of chitin in three-dimensional skeleton of Aplysina fistularis marine sponge. Int J Biol Macromol 62:94–100
Xia T, Liu W, Yang L (2017) A review of gradient stiffness hydrogels used in tissue engineering and regenerative medicine. J Biomed Mater Res Part A 105:1799–1812
Xian X, Gopal S, Couchman J (2010) Syndecans as receptors and organizers of the extracellular matrix. Cell Tissue Res 339:31–46
Xiang J, Shen L, Hong Y (2020) Status and future scope of hydrogels in wound healing: Synthesis, materials and evaluation. Eur Polym J. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.eurpolymj.2020.109609
Xiong J, Narayanan J, Liu X et al (2005) Topology evolution and gelation mechanism of agarose gel. J Phys Chem B 109:5638–5643

Xiong S, Gao H, Qin L et al (2020) Engineering topography: Effects on corneal cell behavior and integration into corneal tissue engineering. Bioactive Mater 4:293–302
Xu Y, Xia D, Han J et al (2017) Design and fabrication of porous chitosan scaffolds with tunable structures and mechanical properties. CarbohydrPolym 177:210–216
Yamada S, Yamamoto K, Ikeda T et al (2014) Potency of fish collagen as a scaffold for regenerative medicine. BioMed Res Int 2014:1–8
Yamamoto K, Yoshizawa Y, Yanagiguchi K et al (2015) The characterization of fish (Tilapia) collagen sponge as a biomaterial. Int J Polym Sci 2015:1–5
Yang L, Zhang LM (2009) Chemical structural and chain conformational characterization of some bioactive polysaccharides isolated from natural sources. Carbohydr Polym 76:349–361
Yang S, Leong K, Du Z, Chua C (2001) The Design of Scaffolds for Use in Tissue Engineering. Part I. Traditional Factors. Tissue Eng 7:679–689
Yang S, Leong K, Du Z, Chua C (2002) The design of scaffolds for use in tissue engineering. Part II. Rapid prototyping techniques. Tissue Eng 8:1–11
Yang Q, Chen L, Shen X, Tan Z (2006) Preparation of polycaprolactone tissue engineering scaffolds by improved solvent casting/particulate leaching method. J Macromol Sci Part B 45:1171–1181
Yang L, Li Y, Gou Y et al (2017) Improving tumor chemotherapy effect using an injectable self-healing hydrogel as drug carrier. Polym Chem 8:5071–5076
Yang X, Lu Z, Wu H et al (2018) Collagen-alginate as bioink for three-dimensional (3D) cell printing based cartilage tissue engineering. Mater Sci Eng: C 83:195–201
Yang C, Blum N, Lin J et al (2020) Biomaterial scaffold-based local drug delivery systems for cancer immunotherapy. Sci Bul 65:1489–1504
Yee WA, Nguyen AC, Lee PS et al (2008) Stress-induced structural changes in electrospun polyvinylidene difluoride nanofibers collected using a modified rotating disk. Polymer 49:4196–4203
Yegappan R, Selvaprithiviraj V, Amirthalingam S, Jayakumar R (2018) Carrageenan based hydrogels for drug delivery, tissue engineering and wound healing. Carbohydr Polym 198:385–400
Yeong W, Chua C, Leong K, Chandrasekaran M (2004) Rapid prototyping in tissue engineering: challenges and potential. Trends Biotechnol 22:643–652
You M, Peng G, Li J et al (2011) Chondrogenic differentiation of human bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells on polyhydroxyalkanoate (PHA) scaffolds coated with PHA granule binding protein PhaP fused with RGD peptide. Biomaterials 32:2305–2313
Yuanyuan Z, Song L (2012) Preparation of chitosan/poly (lactic-co glycolic acid)(PLGA) nanocomposite for tissue engineering scaffold. Opt Adv Mater Rapid Commun 6:516–519
Zahouani H, Pailler-Mattei C, Sohm B et al (2009) Characterization of the mechanical properties of a dermal equivalent compared with human skin in vivo by indentation and static friction tests. Skin Res Technol 15:68–76
Zarrintaj P, Manouchehri S, Ahmadi Z et al (2018) Agarose-based biomaterials for tissue engineering. Carbohydr Polym 187:66–84
Zeeb B, Saberi AH, Weiss J, McClements DJ (2015) Retention and release of oil-in-water emulsions from filled hydrogel beads composed of calcium alginate: impact of emulsifier type and pH. Soft Matter 11:2228–2236
Zeimaran E, Pourshahrestani S, Pingguan-Murphy B et al (2017) Development of poly (1,8-octanediol citrate)/chitosan blend films for tissue engineering applications. Carbohydr Polym 175:618–627
Zeybek N, Polat M, Polat H (2019) Synthesis of curcumin loaded xylan-chitosan composite nanoparticles. In: Yelken G, Polat M, Tanoglu M (eds) The Proceedings of the 4th International Porous and Powder Materials Symposium and Exhibition 2019, pp 46–50
Zhang R, Ma PX (1999) Porous poly (l-lactic acid)/apatite composites created by biomimetic process. J Biomed Mater Res 45:285–293

Zhang Y, Ni M, Zhang M, Ratner B (2003) Calcium phosphate—chitosan composite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Tissue Eng 9:337–345
Zhang W, Liu N, Shi H et al (2015) Upregulation of BMSCs osteogenesis by positively-charged tertiary amines on polymeric implants via charge/iNOS signaling pathway. Sci Rep 5:1–10
Zhang X, Jia C, Qiao X et al (2017a) Silk fibroin microfibers and chitosan modified poly (glycerol sebacate) composite scaffolds for skin tissue engineering. Polym Testing 62:88–95
Zhang Q, Li Y, Lin ZYW, Wong KK et al (2017b) Electrospun polymeric micro/nanofibrous scaffolds for long-term drug release and their biomedical applications. Drug Discov Today 22:1351–1366
Zhao K, Deng Y, Chun Chen J, Chen G (2003) Polyhydroxyalkanoate (PHA) scaffolds with good mechanical properties and biocompatibility. Biomaterials 24:1041–1045
Zhao J, Duan K, Zhang J et al (2010) The influence of polymer concentrations on the structure and mechanical properties of porous polycaprolactone-coated hydroxyapatite scaffolds. Appl Surf Sci 256:4586–4590
Zheng M, Hinterkeuser K, Solomon K et al (2007) Collagen-derived biomaterials in bone and cartilage repair. Macromol Symp 253:179–185
Zheng L, Jiang X, Chen X et al (2014) Evaluation of novel in situ synthesized nano-hydroxyapatite/collagen/alginate hydrogels for osteochondral tissue engineering. Biomed Mater 9:1–11
Zhou C, Shi Q, Guo W et al (2013) Electrospun bio-nanocomposite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering by cellulose nanocrystals reinforcing maleic anhydride grafted PLA. ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 5:3847–3854
Zhou T, Wang N, Xue Y et al (2015) Retraction of "development of biomimetic tilapia collagen nanofibers for skin regeneration through inducing keratinocytes differentiation and collagen synthesis of dermal fibroblasts". ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 7:19863–19863
Zhou T, Wang N, Xue Y et al (2016) Electrospun tilapia collagen nanofibers accelerating wound healing via inducing keratinocytes proliferation and differentiation. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 143:415–422
Zhou Q, Kang H, Bielec M et al (2018) Influence of different divalent ions cross-linking sodium alginate-polyacrylamide hydrogels on antibacterial properties and wound healing. Carbohydr Polym 197:292–304
Zhu Q, Mao S (2019) Enhanced drug loading efficiency of contact lenses via salt-induced modulation. Asian J Pharm Sci 14:204–215
Zhuo F, Liu X, Gao Q et al (2017) Injectable hyaluronan-methylcellulose composite hydrogel crosslinked by polyethylene glycol for central nervous system tissue engineering. Mater Sci Eng C 81:1–7
Zupančič Š, Sinha-Ray S, Sinha-Ray S et al (2015) Long-term sustained ciprofloxacin release from PMMA and hydrophilic polymer blended nanofibers. Mol Pharm 13:295–305

Hurriyet Polat completed her Ph.D. in Mineral Processing Engineering in 1996 at the Pennsylvania State University, USA. Currently, her research group in the Department of Chemistry at Izmir Institute of Technology (IZTECH-Turkey) is pursuing various research projects in the area of colloid chemistry, surfactant science, and interfacial phenomena on the design and development of advanced nanomaterials and smart drug delivery systems for several types of anticancer drugs, antibiotics, and anti-inflammatory drugs. She has over 70 full articles (31 in peer-reviewed publications in high-impact international journals) and 2 book chapters to her credit. She has already guided 15 master's theses. Currently, she is advising two Ph.D. student and one master's student. Prof. Polat serves as invited reviewer of several international journals.

Nuket Zeybek is a PhD student in the Bioengineering Department in Izmır Institute of Technology. Her doctoral research is biomaterials, tissue engineering, and smart drug delivery systems.

She has master's degree in Biotechnology from Izmır Institute of Technology. Her thesis was concerned with explaining the xylan, a polysaccharide obtained from waste products abundant in nature, fermentation mechanism by colon bacteria. Her study was published in carbohydrate polymers.

Mehmet Polat completed his Ph.D. in Mineral Processing Engineering in 1996 from the Pennsylvania State University, USA. Currently, he is a Faculty Member in the Department of Chemical Engineering and is the Director of the Integrated Research Centers in Izmir Institute of Technology (IZTECH-Turkey). His research is focusing on various aspects of particle technology, mathematical modeling, and colloid chemistry, specifically on the design and development of advanced nanomaterials. He has over 110 full articles (43 in peer-reviewed publications in high-impact international journals) and 3 book chapters and 3 books (as editor) to his credit. He was the Chair of the four International Porous and Powder Materials Symposia, which was held biannually since 2013. He is also the co-founder of the company MINPRO in IZTECH Techno Park. He has supervised and is currently supervising several master's and Ph.D. theses. He serves as invited reviewer of several international journals focusing on green technology and polymer-based composites.

Marine Biopolymer for Theranostic Applications

8

Gopal Kannan, Jaydeb Pal, Seshen Sivasankar, and Ayyavu Mahesh

Abstract

Recently, there is a wide synthesis of nanomaterial using marine-based biopolymers for the biomedical application because of their vital properties such as biodegradability and biocompatibility. The polymeric nanoparticles of high therapeutic efficacy play a major role in various types of cancer treatment including chemotherapeutics and theranostics. Notably, the polymeric nanoparticle helps to diagnose and treat numerous types of cancer where polymer provides good biocompatibility to therapeutic and theranostic agent; moreover, inorganic nanoparticle provides excellent absorption in NIR zone which is appropriate for clinical and biomedical application. Theranostics is the combined approach of therapeutic and diagnostic imaging techniques in which the drugs are delivered to the target site and NIR laser was used to penetrate the tissue. In the chapter, we have outlined the mechanism and efficacy of marine biopolymer-based nanomaterial as well as described both in vitro and in vivo studies of theranostic applications.

G. Kannan · J. Pal
Centre for Stem Cell and Cancer Genomics, AM Institute of Bioscience, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

S. Sivasankar
Department of Microbial Biotechnology, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

A. Mahesh (✉)
Centre for Stem Cell and Cancer Genomics, AM Institute of Bioscience, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

AMIOmics, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

S. Jana, S. Jana (eds.), *Marine Biomaterials*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-5374-2_8

Keywords

Marine biopolymer · Cancer therapy · Diagnostic · Inorganic nanoparticle · Theranostics

8.1 Introduction

Marine-based biopolymers are available in abundant and composed of long chains of repeating monomer units which are linked via glycosidic bonds. Especially, the fucoidan, alginate, carrageenan, and porphyran biopolymers were isolated from seaweed whereas chitosan and chitosan oligosaccharide (COS) biopolymers were derived from marine crustaceans (Manivasagan and Oh 2016). Marine biopolymers possess storage and structural functions and contribute to biological system including glycocalyx and extracellular matrices. Marine biopolymers are highly stable, more renewable, abundantly available, very cheap, good biodegradable, strong biocompatible, and nontoxic. In recent years, biopolymers are used in various fields including cosmeceuticals, nutraceuticals, and pharmaceuticals (Aider 2010). Until, more than 3000 new substances have been identified and isolated from marine organism among which few of them are commercialized and many compounds are under preclinical trials (Altmann 2017). Theranostics approach, helped to identify the characteristics of cancer such as cellular phenotype, tumor heterogeneity, and imaging for diagnostic purpose (Funkhouser 2002; Sumer and Gao 2008), where the high penetrating capacity of Near Infrared (NIR) lights is used to target blood and tissues (Muddineti et al. 2015).

8.1.1 Application of Theranostics in Cancer Treatment

Approximately, more than 250 types of cancer have been identified, among which prostate, breast, lung, colon, rectum, bronchus, and urinary bladder cancer are predominant (Wogan et al. 2004). Still, we have inefficient treatment method (radiotherapy and chemotherapy) with side effects and complication in receiving the timely diagnosis. The shortage of treatment option, emerging novel nanomedicine tends to offer new platform for biomedical application (Yang and Yu 2016; Kemp et al. 2016). The hydrophobic drugs are encapsulated with aqueous nanoparticle structure in order to deliver and release the drug to target site in cancer treatment (Kumar 2000). The comparative studies suggested the polymeric nanoparticles have a high potential of drug encapsulation, drug delivery, prolonged circulation, half-life, and sustained drug release than free drugs (Petros and DeSimone 2010; Wang et al. 2012). In active mode of targeting, the polymeric nanoparticles are incorporated with desired target moieties such as receptor or cell surface ligand whereas in passive targeting, polymeric nanoparticle aggregates at the target site because of their Enhanced Permeability and Retention (EPR) (Farokhzad and Langer 2009; Timko et al. 2011; Fang et al. 2013).

The various phases of clinical trials are carried out with 35,000 biological samples and dozens of candidates to treat the different type of cancers. (Haefner 2003). Theranostics have shown potential application in cancer treatment especially photoablation therapy, hyperthermia therapy, photoacoustic imaging (PAI), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and computed tomography (CT) (Mondal et al. 2013).

8.1.2 Polymeric Nanoparticle-Based Theranostic Material

Marine biopolymers are recognized as a flexible biomaterial and possess good biocompatibility, biodegradability, inexpensive, abundance, ease of surface modification, and nontoxic in nature (Sundar et al. 2010). In addition, the inorganic nanoparticles (NPs) including gold NPs (AuNPs), silver NPs (AgNPs), magnetic NPs (MNPs), mesoporous silica NPs (MSNs), copper sulfide NPs (CuSNPs), and upconversion NPs (UCNPs) are confirmed to exhibit strong scattering and absorption of light in NIR zone (700–1100 nm), which serves as good transparency media in biological tissue and blood (Wang et al. 2014). The cytotoxic nature of synthesized inorganic NPs is the major drawback for direct clinical application; hence few surface modifications and nontoxic polymer coating are required for enclosing the NPs surface to enhance biocompatibility (Dickerson et al. 2008; Liu et al. 2014).

The polymeric nanoparticle consists of three main components which are (1) polymers—to provide stabilization and biocompatibility, (2) therapeutic agent—may contain small molecule drugs, and (3) imaging agent such as MRI contrast agent, radionuclide, fluorophore, etc. Some therapeutic compounds itself serve as the imaging component, e.g., doxorubicin emits inherent fluorescence (Mohan and Rapoport 2010). The polymer-conjugated drug molecules offer efficient drug loading capacity and prolonged drug release (Aryal et al. 2011).

8.2 Role of Marine Biopolymers in Photoablation Therapy

Photoablation therapy is classified into two types: Photothermal therapy (PTT) and Photodynamic therapy (PDT) which are used in surgery and chemotherapy (Kim et al. 2013). PTT is the method of photo-induced heat to kill the cancer cells (Wang et al. 2014) whereas PDT, used the Photosensitizer (PS) drug with visible light irradiation at certain wavelength, which triggers the reactive oxygen species (ROS) that destroy the cancer cells (Mondal et al. 2013).

8.2.1 Marine Biopolymers in Photothermal Therapy

PTT received more attention due to the minimum invasion, continuous recovery, less complication, and no damage to the adjacent tissue (Bao et al. 2016). The

hyperthermia (temperature) used in PTT treatment is whole body and localized hyperthermia, in which the localized hyperthermia has higher potential than whole body hyperthermia. In localized hyperthermia, the externally tunable control device produces the desired hyperthermic temperature (>43 °C) at target region to kill the cancer cells (Fig. 8.1). PTT requires high power laser to penetrate human cells and tissue in order to destroy cancer cells, which is considered as major drawback (Jabeen et al. 2014; Huang et al. 2011). Together with the immune-targeted Au, Ag and Cus were employed to generate heat-mediated destruction of cancer cells (Huang et al. 2011).

The photothermal efficiency of gold nanostructure when combined with chitosan performs as a best theranostic and therapeutic agent for anticancer treatment. The study suggested the combination of chemo and photothermal therapy could be the best therapeutic strategy ever. The NIR laser (808 nm) was used to target tumor sites with cisplatin hybrid nanosphere (CS-AuNR-Pt NSs), where the chitosan-conjugated gold nanorod is loaded with cisplatin to execute photothermal treatment. The hybrid nanocomposites target tumor sites, further externally produced localized hyperthermia temperature (49 °C) suppresses the multiple tumors and inhibits entire tumor growth by increasing the effectiveness of cisplatin (Chen et al. 2013).

In vitro cancer treatment revealed NIR-guided chitosan-coated Ag nanotriangle serves as good biocompatible photothermal transducers. In human embryonic Kidney cell (HEK), it exhibits cytotoxic activities whereas in human nonsmall lung cancer cells, it shows the dose- dependent activity (Boca et al. 2011).

The chitosan-conjugated nanocarrier is chemically cross-linked with pluronic F 68 and loaded with gold nanorocks (AuNRs) to develop functional nanocarriers with soft, flexible, and good reservoir characteristics for biological macromolecules and cancer therapy. In vivo studies of cancer treatment shown that the surrounding healthy cells and tissues were left undamaged, when NIR light operated with chitosan-conjugated gold nanorocks (AuNRs), which elucidates that AuNRs are suitable agents for photo-based therapeutic applications (Choi et al. 2011).

The reverse microemulsion (water in oil) approach to develop the polyethylene glycol modified chitosan (CG-PEG) NPs by using genipin as a linker to produce nanocarriers of indocyanine green (ICG) for PTT in mice. The CG-PEG-ICG NPs possess high in vitro photothermal toxicity as they wipe off 15% of cancer cell population when irradiated under in vitro whereas in vivo studies show the concentration higher than 100 mg/ml of CG-PEG-ICG NPs exhibited irreversible tissue damages which represent that NPs could be an excellent nanocarrier for PTT (Song et al. 2015).

The Fe_3O_4-P (St/MAA)-Chitosan-Au core/shell nanoparticles for dual imaging and photothermal therapy. The nanoparticle comprises the iron oxide, Poly styrene-co-methacrylic acid (P(St-MAA)), chitosan (CHI), and gold (Au). The core region of Fe_3O_4 is covered by gold nanoshell for MRI, CHI present in the middle layer for biocompatibility, and Au provides photothermal activity. Furthermore, the CHI is shown good biocompatibility in WST-1 assay of HepG2 and L929 cells (Wang et al. 2013).

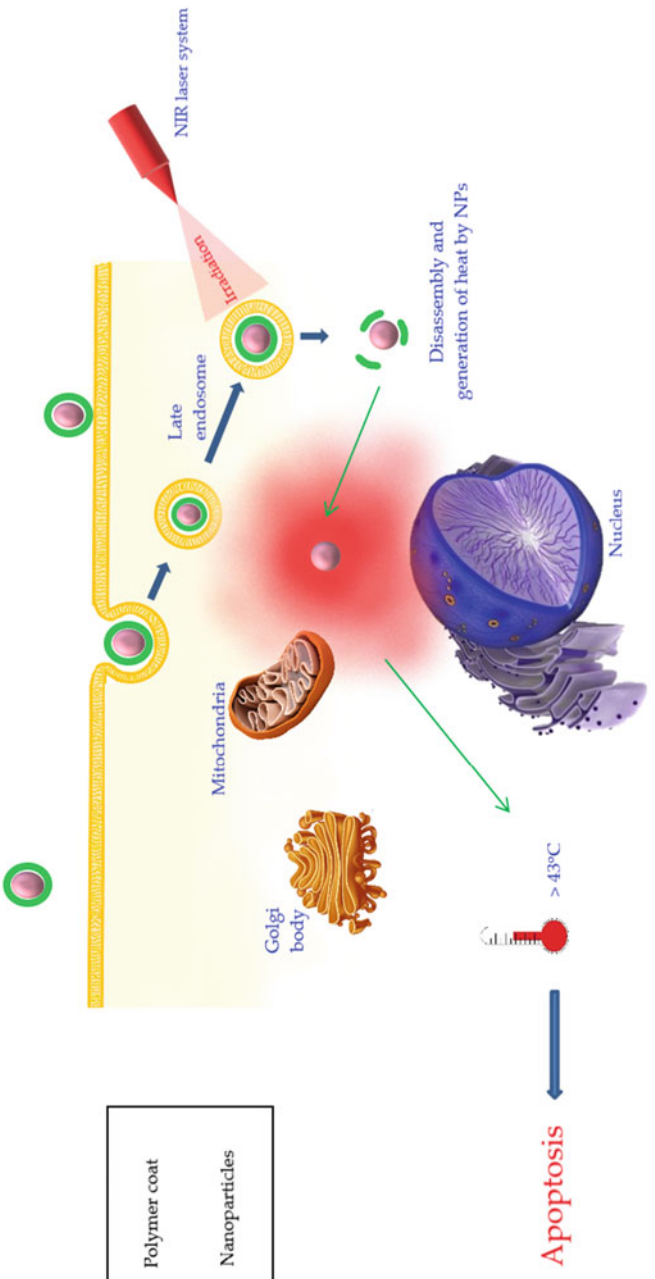


Fig. 8.1 Mechanism of cytotoxic effect of PTT-mediated cancer cell destruction. NIR radiation breaks the biopolymer coat and releases the NPs which initiate heat-mediated cell death by localized hyperthermic temperature 43 °C

Zhang et al. (2012) have been synthesized the AuNPs-coated chitosan nanocomposites through the reaction of HAuCl4 and sodium thiosulfate. Au NPs were coated with three different types of biopolymers such as chitosan (CS), O-carboxymethyl chitosan (CMCS), and the combination of CS and CMCS to develop the therapeutic agents for PTT. The in vitro studies of hepatocellular carcinoma (HepG2) and human dermal fibroblast cells indicate that the AuNPs-coated chitosan nanocomposites could be used as Photothermal agents because they exhibit stability, surface properties, low dosage, low power NIR light, continuous ablation, and photothermal effect on cell. Additionally, the CS- and CMCS-coated nanoparticles have a immense potential to differentiate the normal cells and cancer cells.

The HT-29 cells have shown the ease internalization of Folic acid-thiolated chitosan-modified gold nanorods (FA-CGNRs), when agitated with NIR laser. Furthermore, the FA-CGNRs act as excellent photothermal nano absorbers to target the desired region and kill cancer cells. The nanorods consist of thiolated chitosan to maintain the long stability and providing good biocompatibility to gold nanorod (AuNRs). The outer surface of chitosan-modified gold nanorods (CGNR) is connected by folic acid which links the amine group of chitosan and performs as a linker (Wang et al. 2011a, b).

The Doxorubicin (DOX)—conjugated chitosan-coated gold nanorod (DOX–CSGNR) provides more therapeutic efficiency than chitosan gold nanorod due to the good biocompatibility, short time of exposure, stability, and response to low intensity of light. In PTT, the DOX-CSGNR binds to the anticancer drug, and serves as an anticancer agent that expresses less cytotoxicity (Duan et al. 2014).

8.2.2 Marine Biopolymers in Photodynamic Therapeutic Role

Photodynamic therapy (PDT) is an excellent modern target therapy that has minimal invasiveness potential and produces cytotoxic effect on target cells and tissues. The photosensitizers (PS) were administered followed by the irradiation of the target site with corresponding wavelength to initiate photochemical reaction. The series of processes leads to the conversion of free oxygen and other free radicals to reactive oxygen species (ROS). The Reactive Singlet oxygen molecules ($^1O_2$) can cause the apoptosis and necrotic cell death in tumor tissue (Fig. 8.2). PDT can exclusively inhibit cancer by damaging the tumor vasculature, direct cytotoxic effects and induction of systemic immunity on tumor cells (Agostinis et al. 2011). Since, PDT offers less side effects or no toxicity to the adjacent tissues (Detty and Gibson 2004), the technique would be more specific than conventional therapies associated with adverse side effects. The properties of PS such as poor solubility in water, accumulation, and low reactive Oxygen Species (ROS) production, limit medical usage and so PS alternatives are being developed to improve efficacy (Bechet et al. 2008). The drawback of using PDT is photosensitizer gets aggregated in patient's body therefore making them light-sensitive after treatment (Huang et al. 2008).

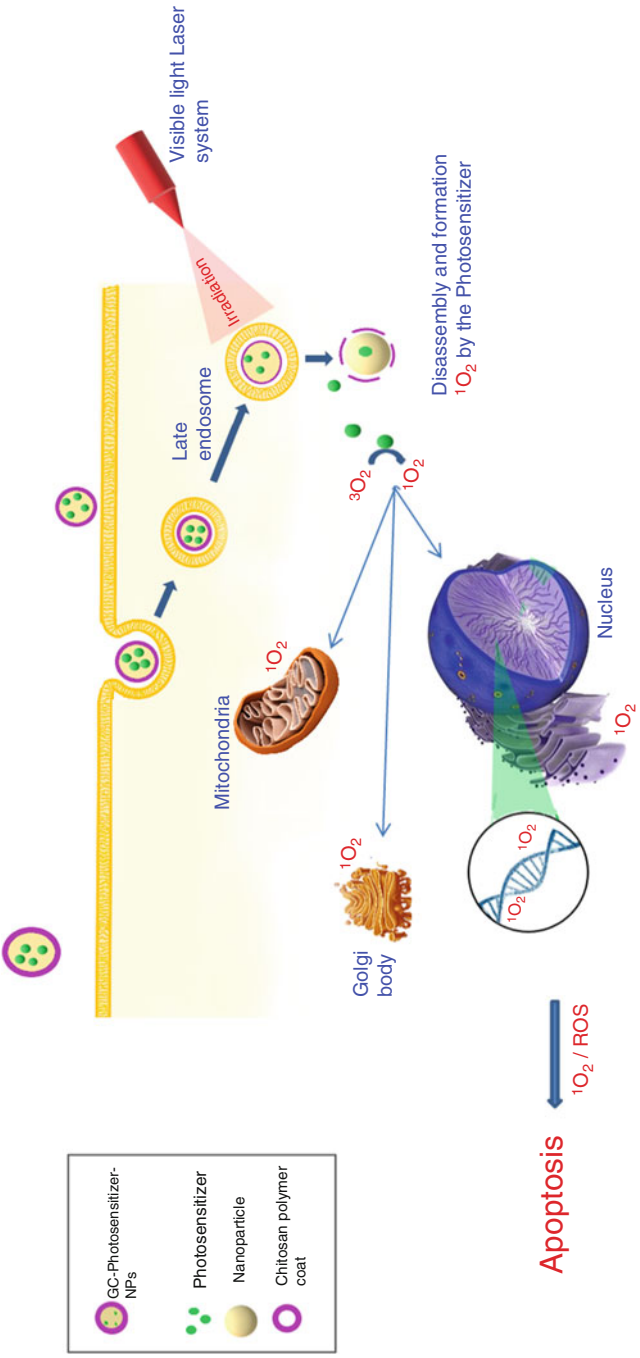


Fig. 8.2 Mechanism of cytotoxic effect of PDT-mediated cancer cell destruction. The Marine biopolymer coat breaks and releases the photosensitizer into the cell when irradiated followed by the ROS-mediated cell death by photosensitizer bound to NPs

The Protoporphyrin IX-conjugated glycol chitosan nanoparticles (PpIX-GC-Nps) are extensively used as drug carrier owing to the excellent tumor homing ability and cell-mediated on/off system in photodynamic therapy. The PpIX-GC-Nps are spherical nanostructures with average diameter of 280 nm. When cell encounters the PPI-GC—NPs, intracellular environment turns the nanoparticle "on," subsequently the therapeutic ability gets restored. Further, the nanoparticles are shown to reduce unintended cytotoxicity, increase the therapeutic efficiency. Moreover, the nanoparticle possesses tumor harboring ability, prolonged blood circulation, good in-vivo therapeutic efficacy on tumor, and found to have great applications in PDT (Lee et al. 2011a, b).

The magnetic chitosan nanoparticles are developed as drug carrier and imaging system for MRI scan, where Photosensitizer 2,7,12,18-tetramethyl-3,8-di-(1-propoxyethyl)-13,17-bis-(3-hydroxypropyl) porphyrin (PHPP) is conjugated for therapeutic purposes. The MTCNP-PHPP complex is used in MRI-monitored targeting of PDT for its excellent targeting and imaging ability. The nanoparticle is quasi-spherical shaped with average diameter ranges from 15.5 to 25.7 nm. MTCNP-PHPP has 5.08% of drug loading and 65.4% of drug encapsulation capacity which is required for an effective PDT. In vivo and in vitro studies revealed the polymer exhibited nontoxicity and high photodynamic efficiency at a range of 0–100 μM. The theranostic-mediated treatment, PHPP is eliminated by the body thereby after treatment photosensitivity was reduced in patients (Sun et al. 2009).

O-carboxymethylated chitosan upconversion nanocrystal NaYF4:Yb/Er is comodified with pyropheophorbide a (Ppa) and RGD peptide C (RGDyK) to yield the final nanoparticle (CMC-UCNP-Ppa-RGD). The nanoparticles show enhanced water solubility, biocompatibility, stability, and resistance to PS self-aggregation during drug delivery. UCNP-Ppa-RGDs can target integrin $\alpha_v\beta_3$ positive tumor cells selectively and induce cell death when irradiated with Near-Infrared laser Radiation (NIR). Moreover, the nanostructure shows great potential for targeted NIR-based PDT (Zhou et al. 2012). Similarly, Amphiphilic N-succinyl-N-octyl chitosan-modified Oleic Acid capped UCNPs (SOC-UCNP) are conjugated with PS like zinc (II) phthalocyanine (ZnPc). The SOC-associated UCNPs improve bio compatibility, reduced toxicity, and provide layer for carrying the hydrophobic drug molecules. The intracellular colocalization of the UCNPs and ZnPc can be ensured by the fluorescence of the UCNPs. Attachment of nanoparticles to Photosensitizer facilitates the activation of PS and establishes ROS-mediated cell death in presence of NIR light. ZnPc-SOC-UCNPs possess potential PDT property such as deep penetration into tissues (Cui et al. 2012).

The folic acid-conjugated chitosan-based nanoparticles were integrated with alginate and loaded with 5-aminolevulinic acid (5-ALA). Remarkably, the nanoparticles loaded 5-aminolevulinic acid (5-ALA) binds selectively to the colorectal cancer cells via folate receptor-mediated endocytosis and shows great specificity toward colorectal cancer. The nanoparticles are internalized; 5-ALA molecules were released into the lysozyme because of less affinity between the NPs and 5-ALA due to the presence of deprotonated alginate where accumulation of protophyrin IX allows successful photodynamic detection (Yang et al. 2011).

Hydrophobic glycol chitosan (HGC) or glycol chitosan (GC)-conjugated chlorin e6 (photosensitizer) loaded nanoparticles were used for PDT, where the HGC polymers release Ce6 into the cells in a time-dependent manner. The HGC-Ce6-associated drug shows less aggregation in the tumor tissue and enhanced tumor target drug delivery, whereas GC-Ce6 possesses prolonged circulation, efficiently accumulated in the tumor tissue and shows excellent PDT potential than HGC-Ce6 (Lee et al. 2011a, b).

Pheophorbide A (PheoA), a glycol chitosan (GC) with reducible disulfide bonds (PheoA-ss-GC) bound with core–shell NPs (200 nm) was evaluated with nonreducible Pheo-GC. The photoactivity of both NPs is greatly inhibited by the quenching effect; however, the bio reducible NPs overcome the quenching effect by instant dissociation of the compound by the cleavage of the disulfide bond that is facilitated through the intracellular reductive nature. The rapid cellular uptake of reducible NPs and their high phototoxicity makes it more compatible for PDT than the nonreducible NPs. Further, in vivo studies showed the bioreducible NPs get accumulated specifically in tumor tissue and have prolonged circulation in the blood (Oh et al. 2013).

8.3 Marine Biopolymers in Hyperthermia Therapy

Hyperthermia therapy (HTT) is an excellent method to target specific tissues, exclusively used to monitor, and treat cancer patients. HT acts on tissues by increasing the temperature greater than 40 °C at specific sites; moreover, a temperature of 43°c causes enzyme denaturation, cell necrosis, and functional changes in DNA (Fig. 8.3). Furthermore, the hyperthermic condition breaches the cell membrane resulting in cell death (Westermann et al. 2005).

The combined action of Magnetic Nano Particles (MNPs) and Hyperthermia therapy is a novel strategy which allows controlled heating on the tumor tissue where MNPs reside in the target tissue, increases the local temperature by transforming the electromagnetic energy into heat by the oscillation of the external magnetic field, thereby helping to get rid of damages to the adjacent normal tissues (Lima-Tenorio et al. 2015).

The coprecipitation of Fe^{3+} and Fe^{2+} with aqueous NaOH solution yields Fe_3O_4-chitosan MNPs. The temperatures of Fe_3O_4 NPs and Fe_3O_4-Chitosan nanocomposites were found to be 95.5 and 53.7 °C when exposed to alternate current magnetic field for 20 min. The temperature produced by nanocomposites is good enough to destroy the cells and an excellent thermo seeds for the localized hyperthermia therapy (Zhao et al. 2009). Relatively, Fe_3O_4 MNPs could be significant agent for hyperthermia therapy. The nanoparticles are synthesized with alkaline precipitation of ferrous chloride and coated with chitosan by ultrasonification (Patil et al. 2014).

Alginate magnetic nanoparticle is synthesized by two step process: Initially magnetite was distributed in the alginate sodium solution by ultrasonification and homogenization process followed by reticulation with calcium ions. The yielded

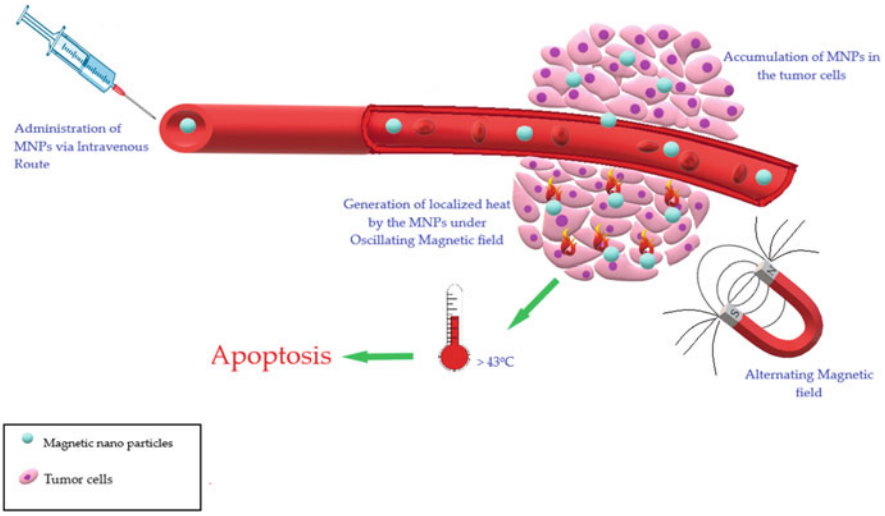


Fig. 8.3 Mechanism of HT-mediated destruction of cancer cells. Administered MNP selectively binds to the tumor cell and generates heat with the help of external AC magnetic field leading to the apoptosis/necrotic cell death

NPs are 400 nm in diameter, more stable, have good magnetic properties, capable of entrapping, and release of drug to the desired site due to external magnetic manipulation (Ciofani et al. 2009).

Chitosan oligosaccharide-stabilized ferrimagnetic iron oxide nanocubes (Chito-FIONs) are made up of multiple FIONs that are encapsulated in chitosan-L-3,4-dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA) polymeric shell. The nanoparticles are magnetically monitored to target the site and activated via remotely through external alternating current magnetic field to initiate cytotoxicity by increasing localized temperature and induce caspase-mediated apoptosis in certain type of tumor cells (Bae et al. 2012).

The Iron oxide (Fe_3O_4)-encapsulated chitosan NPs was cross-linked with Sodium tripolyphosphate (TPP) to obtain magnetic core–shell chitosan nanoparticles containing approximately 5.6% (w/w) of Magnetite. The 259 nm sized nanoparticle was found to increase the temperature when agitated by external alternating current magnetic field and considered to be good in hyperthermia-based therapy (Zamora-Mora et al. 2014). Similarly, the Fe_3O_4– chitosan NPs produced by facile method showed the magnetic property and excellent hyperthermic property (Qu et al. 2010). Starch-coated MNPs and chitosan-coated MNPs were analyzed for their cytotoxicity in L929 cells, where chitosan-coated MNPs were capable of generating 23 °C more than the starch-coated MNPs under AC magnetic field. Moreover, chitosan plays an important role in cell adhesion of hyperthermic thermo seeds and shown biocompatibility of the magnetic nanoparticles. Chitosan-coated nanoparticles are expected to be more suitable polymer for wide range of cancer therapies (Kim et al. 2009).

Li et al. (2018) have been developed the PEGylated indocyanine green (ICG)—loaded Polypyrole Nanoparticles (PPI NPs) and used the polydopamine as a linker. The in vitro and in vivo assay proved PPI NPs were internalized in Hela cells and retained in the tumor due to its biocompatibility which was also confirmed by in vitro *flow* cytometry/confocal studies and in vivo photoacoustic imaging. The photoacoustic imaging revealed the photothermal destruction of tumor was achieved when PPI NPs are operated with laser. PPI NPs offer high photothermal, photoacoustic effect where PPI NPs play a main role by increasing the retention time and accumulation at tumor site efficiently.

Chitosan-polypyrrole nanocomposites (CS-PPY NCs) were used as novel agents for photoacoustic imaging-guided photothermal destruction of cancer cells, because NCs shown high stability, conductivity, biocompatibility, and extremely high absorbance in the near-infrared region (NIR). In vivo studies revealed the mice-bearing tumor cells are completely recovered when CS-PPy NCs are irradiated with (NIR 808-nm) laser (Manivasagan et al. 2017).

8.4 Marine Polymer Role in Photoacoustic Imaging

Photoacoustic imaging (PAI) is also known as optoacoustic imaging, which enhances the ultrasound with high optical contrast and can be used as an inexpensive portable instrument for visualizing blood vessels and body organs. PAI has major advantages including high spatial resolution, high imaging depth (Wang 2009); moreover, PAI has immense potential to image the endogenous chromophores such as oxyhemoglobin (HbO_2), deoxyhemoglobin (Hb), melanin, lipids, and water (both free and bound state). Besides, PAI can also image exogeneous chromophores—indocyanine green (ICG), methylene blue dye (MBD), nanoparticles, and reporter gene agents (Ntziachristos and Razansky 2010; Jacques 2013; Wu et al. 2014; Weber et al. 2016; Brunker et al. 2017).

Since smaller dosage of doxorubicin provides better effectiveness, doxorubicin-fucoidan- conjugated gold nanoparticles (DOX-Fu AuNPs) used as a contrast agent for PAI-mediated cancer therapy. DOX-Fu AuNPs facilitate the in vitro noninvasive detection and diagnosis of cancerous cells when irradiated with visible light laser system (532 nm) and the NPs treated MDA-MB-231 cells showed high amplitude of photoacoustic signal (Manivasagan et al. 2016). Paclitaxel-loaded chitosan oligosaccharide gold nanoparticles have also been implemented as a novel contrast agent for photoacoustic imaging (Manivasagan et al. 2016).

8.5 Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)

Iron oxide nanoparticles have been used as a tool for magnetic resonance imaging of stem cells (Mahmoudi et al. 2011). Biopolymers made from polysaccharides are used in synthesis of iron oxide nanoparticles to promote size distribution and prevention of clustering (Villaraza et al. 2010; Wang et al. 2011a, b; Somsook

et al. 2005; Bhattarai et al. 2007; Saboktakin et al. 2009; Tsai et al. 2010). The iron oxide nanoparticles-conjugated chitosan polyacrylic acid (CS-PAA) template offers super paramagnetic properties thereby used for enhancement of magnetic resonance contrast by altering proton relaxation in the tissue microenvironment (Feng et al. 2009). Chitosan is being used to develop CS-PAA templates for MRI due to its outstanding biodegradability, biocompatibility, and making it useful for a large number of applications (Chen et al. 2011).

8.6 Computed Tomography

The AuNPs eliminated the drawbacks of Iodine-based CT agents which cause renal toxicity and fast excretion (Krause 2002). Furthermore, AuNps offer high X-ray absorption coefficient, low toxicity, and slow clearance in the body (Hainfeld et al. 2006). Gold nanoparticles bounded glycol chitosan ~~are~~ used in CT for tumor imaging, where injected nanoparticles (GC–AuNPs) are accumulated in tumor tissue within 30 min. Further the three dimensional image can be created with CT to reveal the stages of tumor across different regions of the tissue (Sun et al. 2014).

8.6.1 Theranostic Application in Bacteriology

The streptomycin loaded chitosan-coated magnetic nanocomposite (Strep-CS-MNP) to evaluate the antimicrobial activity against both gram-positive and gram-negative microorganisms. Initially, the Fe^{2+} and Fe^{3+} iron salts are coprecipitated in alkali media to produce the magnetic nanoparticles (MNP) and the MNPs were covered with chitosan in order to synthesize CS-MNP and Streptomycin was coated on the surface of CS-MNPs. The magnetic nature of nanoparticle follows the direction of magnetic field which can be exploited to detect the presence of microorganisms therefore possessing antimicrobial and antituberculosis applications. The sensitivity of imaging techniques such as MRI can be enhanced by using MNPs, hence (Strept-CS-MNP) can be used to diagnose the presence of harmful microorganism and treat the various type of microbial and tuberculosis infections (El Zowalaty et al. 2015).

8.7 Conclusion

The marine biopolymer-based nanomaterial has high potential than free drugs and provided numerous theranostic applications in cancer. In theranostic, marine biopolymer-conjugated nanomaterial can target the cell via either active or passive mode. Marine biopolymer offers surface modification and nontoxic polymer coating of nanoparticle to enhance the biocompatibility. Furthermore, polymeric nanoparticle offers the drug encapsulation, drug delivery, prolonged circulation, half-life, and sustained drug release than free drugs. Several studies revealed the combined imaging and therapeutic technique. Theranostics has a high efficiency than other

therapeutics strategy due to the early detection and diagnosis of cancerous cells. The in vivo and in vitro studies suggested that the marine biopolymer-conjugated nanomaterials exhibit cytotoxic, photothermal toxicity, increase the therapeutic efficiency, and excellent biodegradability. Marine biopolymer-mediated theranostic treatment could be a better approach to reduce the side effect of life threatening treatment including chemotherapy, radiation therapy, and nucleic acid therapy.

References

Agostinis P, Berg K, Cengel KA et al (2011) Photodynamic therapy of cancer: an update. CA Cancer J Clin 61(4):250–281

Aider M (2010) Chitosan application for active bio-based films production and potential in the food industry: a review. LWT-Food Sci Technol 43(6):837–842

Altmann KH (2017) Drugs from the oceans: marine natural products as leads for drug discovery. Chimia 71(10):646–652

Aryal S, Hu CMJ, Zhang L (2011) Polymeric nanoparticles with precise ratiometric control over drug loading for combination therapy. Mol Pharm 8(4):1401–1407

Bae KH, Park M, Do MJ et al (2012) Chitosan oligosaccharide-stabilized ferrimagnetic iron oxide nanocubes for magnetically modulated cancer hyperthermia. ACS Nano 6(6):5266–5273

Bao Z, Liu X, Liu Y et al (2016) Near-infrared light-responsive inorganic nanomaterials for photothermal therapy. Asian J Pharm Sci 11(3):349–364

Bechet D, Couleaud P, Frochot C et al (2008) Nanoparticles as vehicles for delivery of photodynamic therapy agents. Trends Biotechnol 26(11):612–621

Bhattarai SR, KCR B, Aryal S et al (2007) N-Acylated chitosan stabilized iron oxide nanoparticles as a novel nano-matrix and ceramic modification. Carbohydr Polym 69(3):467–477

Boca SC, Potara M, Gabudean AM (2011) Chitosan-coated triangular silver nanoparticles as a novel class of biocompatible, highly effective photothermal transducers for in vitro cancer cell therapy. Cancer Lett 311(2):131–140

Brunker J, Yao J, Laufer J et al (2017) Photoacoustic imaging using genetically encoded reporters: a review. J Biomed Opt 22(7):070901

Chen JK, Yeh CH, Wang LC et al (2011) Chitosan, the marine functional food, is a potent adsorbent of humic acid. Mar Drugs 9(12):2488–2498

Chen R, Zheng X, Qian H (2013) Combined near-IR photothermal therapy and chemotherapy using gold-nanorod/chitosan hybrid nanospheres to enhance the antitumor effect. Biomater Sci 1 (3):285–293

Choi WI, Kim JY, Kang C (2011) Tumor regression in vivo by photothermal therapy based on gold-nanorod-loaded, functional nanocarriers. ACS Nano 5(3):1995–2003

Ciofani G, Riggio C, Raffa V et al (2009) A bi-modal approach against cancer: magnetic alginate nanoparticles for combined chemotherapy and hyperthermia. Med Hypotheses 73(1):80–82

Cui S, Chen H, Zhu H et al (2012) Amphiphilic chitosan-modified upconversion nanoparticles for in vivo photodynamic therapy induced by near-infra red light. J Mater Chem 22(11):4861–4873

Detty M. R, Gibson S. L, Wagner S.J (2004) Current clinical and preclinical photosensitizers for use in photodynamic therapy. J Med Chem 47(16): 3897–3915

Dickerson EB, Dreaden EC, Huang X (2008) Gold nanorod assisted near-infrared plasmonic photothermal therapy (PPTT) of squamous cell carcinoma in mice. Cancer Lett 269(1):57–66

Duan R, Zhou Z, Su G (2014) Chitosan-coated gold nanorods for cancer therapy combining chemical and photothermal effects. Macromol Biosci 14(8):1160–1169

El Zowalaty M, Hussein Al Ali S, Hussieny MI et al (2015) The ability of streptomycin-loaded chitosan-coated magnetic nanocomposites to possess antimicrobial and antituberculosis activities. Int J Nanomedicine 10:3269–3274

Fang RH, Hu CM, Chen KN et al (2013) Lipid-insertion enables targeting functionalization of erythrocyte membrane-cloaked nanoparticles. Nanoscale 5(19):8884–8888
Farokhzad OC, Langer R (2009) Impact of nanotechnology on drug delivery. ACS Nano 3 (1):16–20
Feng B, Hong RY, Wu YJ et al (2009) Synthesis of monodisperse magnetite nanoparticles via chitosan–poly(acrylic acid) template and their application in MRI. J Alloys Compd 473 (1–2):356–362
Funkhouser J (2002) Reinventing pharma: the theranostic revolution. Curr Drug Discovery 2:17–19
Haefner B (2003) Drugs from the deep: marine natural products as drug candidates. Drug Discov Today 8(12):536–544
Hainfeld JF, Slatkin DN, Focella TM et al (2006) Gold nanoparticles: a new X-ray contrastagent. Br J Radiol 79(939):248–253
Huang X, Jain PK, El-Sayed IH (2008) Plasmonic photothermal therapy (PPTT) using gold nanoparticles. Lasers Med Sci 23(3):217–228
Huang HC, Barua S, Sharma G (2011) Inorganic nanoparticles for cancer imaging and therapy. J Control Release 155(3):344–357
Jabeen F, Najam-ul-Haq M, Javeed R (2014) Au-nanomaterials as a superior choice for near-infrared photothermal therapy. Molecules 19(12):20580–20593
Jacques SL (2013) Optical properties of biological tissues: a review. Phys Med Biol 58(11):R37–R61
Kemp JA, Shim MS, Heo CY et al (2016) Combo nanomedicine: co-delivery of multimodal therapeutics for efficient, targeted, and safe cancer therapy. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 98:3–18
Kim DH, Kim KN, Kim KM et al (2009) Targeting to carcinoma cells with chitosan and starch-coated magnetic nanoparticles for magnetic hyperthermia. J Biomed Mater Res A 88(1):1–11
Kim JY, Choi WI, Kim M et al (2013) Tumor-targeting nanogel that can function independently for both photodynamic and photothermal therapy and its synergy from the procedure of PDT followed by PTT. J Control Release 171(2):113–121
Krause W (2002) Liver-specific X-ray contrast agents. In: Krause W (ed) Contrast agents II: optical ultrasound, X-Ray and radiopharmaceutical imaging. Springer, Berlin, pp 173–200
Kumar M (2000) Nano and microparticles as controlled drug delivery devices. J Pharm Pharm Sci 3 (2):234–258
Lee SJ, Koo H, Jeong H et al (2011a) Comparative study of photosensitizer loaded and conjugated glycol chitosan nanoparticles for cancer therapy. J Control Release 152(1):21–29
Lee SJ, Koo H, Lee DE et al (2011b) Tumor-homing photosensitizer-conjugated glycol chitosan nanoparticles for synchronous photodynamic imaging and therapy based on cellular on/off system. Biomaterials 32(16):4021–4029
Li W, Wang X, Wang J et al (2018) Enhanced photoacoustic and photothermal effect of functionalized polypyrrole nanoparticles for near-infrared theranostic treatment of tumor. Biomacromolecules 1:401–411
Lima-Tenorio MK, Pineda EAG, Ahmad NM et al (2015) Magnetic nanoparticles: in vivo cancer diagnosis and therapy. Int J Pharm 493(1–2):313–327
Liu X, Huang N, Li H et al (2014) Multidentate polyethylene glycol-modified gold nanorods for in vivo near-infrared photothermal cancer therapy. ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 6(8):5657–5668
Mahmoudi M, Hosseinkhani H, Hosseinkhani M et al (2011) Magnetic resonance imaging tracking of stem cells in vivo using iron oxide nanoparticles as a tool for the advancement of clinical regenerative medicine. Chem Rev 111(2):253–280
Manivasagan P, Oh J (2016) Marine polysaccharide-based nanomaterials as a novel source of nanobiotechnological applications. Int J Biol Macromol 82:315–327
Manivasagan P, Bharathiraja S, Bui NQ et al (2016) Doxorubicin-loaded fucoidan-capped gold nanoparticles for drug delivery and photoacoustic imaging. Int J Biol Macromol 91:578–588
Manivasagan P, Quang Bui N, Bharathiraja S et al (2017) Multifunctional biocompatible chitosan-polypyrrole nanocomposites as novel agents for photoacoustic imaging-guided photothermal ablation of cancer. Sci Rep 7(1):43593

Mohan P, Rapoport N (2010) Doxorubicin as a molecular nanotheranostic agent: effect of doxorubicin encapsulation in micelles or nanoemulsions on the ultrasound-mediated intracellular delivery and nuclear trafficking. Mol Pharm 7(6):1959–1973

Mondal S, Dumur F, Barbarat B (2013) Photoactivated cyclization of aryl-containing enediynes-coated gold nanoparticles: enhancement of the DNA cleavage ability of enediynes. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 112:513–520

Muddineti OS, Ghosh B, Biswas S (2015) Current trends in using polymer-coated gold nanoparticles for cancer therapy. Int J Pharm 484(1–2):252–267

Ntziachristos V, Razansky D (2010) Molecular imaging by means of multispectral optoacoustic tomography (MSOT). Chem Rev 110(5):2783–2794

Oh IH, Min HS, Li L et al (2013) Cancer cell-specific photoactivity of pheophorbide a–glycol chitosan nanoparticles for photodynamic therapy in tumor-bearing mice. Biomaterials 34 (27):6454–6463

Patil RM, Shete PB, Thorat ND et al (2014) Superparamagnetic iron oxide/chitosan core/shells for hyperthermia application: improved colloidal stability and biocompatibility. J Magn Magn Mater 355:22–30

Petros RA, DeSimone JM (2010) Strategies in the design of nanoparticles for therapeutic applications. Nat Rev Drug Discov 9(8):615–627

Qu J, Liu G, Wang Y et al (2010) Preparation of Fe3O4–chitosan nanoparticles used for hyperthermia. Adv Powder Technol 21(4):461–467

Saboktakin MR, Maharramov A, Ramazanov MA (2009) Synthesis and characterization of superparamagnetic nanoparticles coated with carboxymethyl starch (CMS) for magnetic resonance imaging technique. Carbohydr Polym 78(2):292–295

Somsook E, Hinsin D, Buakhrong P et al (2005) Interactions between iron (III) and sucrose, dextran, or starch in complexes. Carbohydr Polym 61(3):281–287

Song X, Wu H, Li S (2015) Ultrasmall chitosan–genipin nanocarriers fabricated from reverse microemulsion process for tumor photothermal therapy in mice. Biomacromolecules 16 (7):2080–2090

Sumer B, Gao J (2008) Theranostic nanomedicine for cancer. Nanomedicine (Lond) 3(2):137–140

Sun Y, Chen Z, Yang XX et al (2009) Magnetic chitosan nanoparticles as a drug delivery system for targeting photodynamic therapy. Nanotechnology 20(13):135102–135108

Sun IC, Na JH, Jeong SY et al (2014) Biocompatible glycol chitosan-coated gold nanoparticles for tumor-targeting CT imaging. Pharm Res 31(6):1418–1425

Sundar S, Kundu J, Kundu SC (2010) Biopolymeric nanoparticles. Sci Technol Adv Mater 11 (1):1–13

Timko BP, Whitehead K, Gao WW et al (2011) Advances in drug delivery. Annu Rev Mater Res 41:1–20

Tsai ZT, Wang JF, Kuo HY et al (2010) In situ preparation of high relaxivity iron oxide nanoparticles by coating with chitosan: a potential MRI contrast agent useful for cell tracking. J Magn Magn Mater 322(2):208–213

Villaraza AJ, Bumb A, Brechbiel MW (2010) Macromolecules, dendrimers, and nanomaterials in magnetic resonance imaging: the interplay between size, function, and pharmacokinetics. Chem Rev 110(5):2921–2959

Wang LV (2009) Multiscale photoacoustic microscopy and computed tomography. Nat Photonics 3 (9):503–509

Wang CH, Chang CW, Peng CA (2011a) Gold nanorod stabilized by thiolated chitosan as photothermal absorber for cancer cell treatment. J Nanopart Res 13(7):2749–2758

Wang YXJ, Quercy JT, Wang HH et al (2011b) Efficacy and durability in direct labeling of mesenchymal stem cells using ultrasmall superparamagnetic iron oxide nanoparticles with organosilica, dextran, and PEG coatings. Materials (Basel) 4(4):703–715

Wang AZ, Langer R, Farokhzad OC (2012) Nanoparticle delivery of cancer drugs. Annu Rev Med 63:185–198

Wang X, Liu H, Chen D (2013) Multifunctional Fe3O4@ P (St/MAA)@ Chitosan@ Au core/shell nanoparticles for dual imaging and photothermal therapy. ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 5 (11):4966–4971

Wang S, Dai Z, Ke H (2014) Contrast ultrasound-guided photothermal therapy using gold nanoshelled microcapsules in breast cancer. Eur J Radiol 83(1):117–122

Weber J, Beard PC, Bohndiek SE (2016) Contrast agents for molecular photoacoustic imaging. Nat Methods 13(8):639–650

Westermann AM, Jones EL, Schem BC et al (2005) First results of triple modality treatment combining radiotherapy, chemotherapy, and hyperthermia for the treatment of patients with stage IIB, III, and IVA cervical carcinoma. Cancer 104(4):763–770

Wogan GN, Hecht SS, Felton JS (2004) Environmental and chemical carcinogenesis. Semin Cancer Biol 14(6):473–486

Wu D, Huang L, Jiang MS et al (2014) Contrast agents for photoacoustic and thermoacoustic imaging: a review. Int J Mol Sci 15(12):23616–23639

Yang Y, Yu C (2016) Advances in silica-based nanoparticles for targeted cancer therapy. Nanomedicine 12(2):317–332

Yang SJ, Lin FH, Tsai HM et al (2011) Alginate-folicacid-modified chitosan nanoparticles for photodynamic detection of intestinal neoplasms. Biomaterials 32(8):2174–2182

Zamora-Mora V, Fernández-Gutiérrez M, Román JS et al (2014) Magnetic core–shell chitosan nanoparticles: rheological characterization and hyperthermia application. Carbohydr Polym 102:691–698

Zhang G, Sun X, Jasinski J (2012) Gold/chitosan nanocomposites with specific near infrared absorption for photothermal therapy applications. J Nanomater 2012:1–9

Zhao DL, Wang XX, Zeng XW et al (2009) Preparation and inductive heating property of Fe 3O4–chitosan composite nanoparticles in an AC magnetic field for localized hyperthermia. J Alloys Compd 477(1–2):739–743

Zhou A, Wei Y, Wu B et al (2012) Pyropheophorbide a and C (RGDyK) comodified chitosan-wrapped upconversion nanoparticle for targeted near-infrared photodynamic therapy. Mol Pharm 9(6):1580–1589

9 Marine Biomaterials as Carrier of Drugs/Biomolecules for Management of Bone Disorders

Prasenjit Mukherjee, Subhasis Roy, Biswanath Kundu, and Samit Kumar Nandi

Abstract

Orthopedic disorders in human are the major concerns for the surgeons and medical specialties to treat in effective way. Various disorders of bone, such as osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, osteoporosis, and bone cancer, arise with time. Bone defects and nonunions need over 1,000,000 bone repair procedures annually worldwide. Osteoporosis is one of the major bone disorders according to World Health Organization (WHO). Osteoporosis is also known as "silent disease" as it does not give any sign of increase in bone fragility. Similarly, over 15,000 new bone cancers are cropped up every year with 3–5% of childhood cancers and $\leq$1% of cancers in adults of localized osteosarcoma have an average 5-year survival of about 80% but those with metastatic disease have much worse outcomes. Osteomyelitis is a severe and challenging setback in bone surgery. To address the above situations, various antibiotics, anticancerous drugs, bone growth factors, and usual treatment packages have been used. Conventional therapy in solving these situations does not always yield satisfactory results due to many reasons including lack of understanding of the challenges related to these bone disorders, lack of traditional treatment options available, high cost related to

Prasenjit Mukherjee and Subhasis Roy contributed equally to this work.

P. Mukherjee · S. Roy
Department of Veterinary Clinical Complex, West Bengal University of Animal and Fishery Sciences, Mohanpur, Nadia, India

B. Kundu
Bioceramic and Coating Division, CSIR—Central Glass & Ceramic Research Institute, Jadavpur, Kolkata, India

S. K. Nandi (✉)
Department of Veterinary Surgery and Radiology, West Bengal University of Animal and Fishery Sciences, Mohanpur, Nadia, India

S. Jana, S. Jana (eds.), *Marine Biomaterials*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-5374-2_9

long hospitalization, and potential side effects from current treatment options. Specific and targeted delivery of drugs is an upcoming and alternative option to ensure safe and efficacious treatment with such bone disorders.

Due to abundance availability and suitable properties, marine organisms show its potential in biomedical applications for the management of various diseases. Owing to various complications and futility related to systemic drug administrations, marine materials can be utilized and developed as carrier of drugs/biomolecules for management of bone disorders. The effectiveness of drug delivery system will depend on the suitable properties and characteristics of carrier materials. In this chapter, we will highlight the marine materials as potential drug delivery carriers for management of various bone disorders. This chapter will also provide an overview of presently used marine materials as bone graft substitute vis-à-vis as carriers in local drug delivery systems.

9.1 Introduction

There are various affections of bone where foot and ankle arthrodesis, spinal fusion, nonunion, and tumor resection where revision surgery, bone void filling, stimulation of fracture healing, and bone grafting (Clarke et al. 2011) are essential. Though autograft and allografts are considered as gold standard in tissue engineering, they have some drawbacks too. In autografting, there is chance of pain, availability of less amount of graft material, and donor site morbidity, especially in elderly patients (Nandi et al. 2013). Whereas allograft is limited in stock (Galea et al. 1998), there are 20–30% chances of graft failure and immunogenic reaction (Louisia et al. 1999) and chances of disease transmission as well. In recent years, the bone grafts that are used clinically and experimentally are mostly synthetic and are composed of (CaP) ceramics. Bone comprises organic part, mainly collagen and other proteins and inorganic part composed of hydroxyapatite (HA) and other components similar to CaP, like beta-tricalcium phosphate. Hence, these materials are chosen for scaffold preparation or as bone substitute (Rezwan et al. 2006). Surprisingly, this mineral composition also prevails in marine environment where they provide mechanical and functional support to the marine organisms (Clarke and Walsh 2014).

On the other hand, biomaterials can be defined as the material, which has unique characters, which make them compatible to be used in living tissue and can mimic biological processes (Park and Lakes 2007). Selection of biomaterials is based upon certain criteria such as they should be biocompatible, bioresorbable, or biodurable, easily sterilizable, and good functional properties for which they are applied for (Ehrlich 2015).

Marine organisms own most of these characters and prove their potentiality to be used as ideal biomaterial. Ocean contains a variety of structurally exclusive natural products that are mainly assembled in the living objects. The fascinating beauty of

ocean, its biodiversity, and its inhabitants attract the human race through the ages. The marine ecosystem contains over 80% of world's plant and animal species having a wide thermal range (below freezing temperature in Antarctic water to about 350A°C in deep hydrothermal vents), pressure range (1–1000 atm), and nutrient range (oligotrophic to eutrophic) along with extensive photic and nonphotic zones. The enormous biodiversity in the marine setting far exceed that of terrestrial environment, and many potent biomedical compounds have been published recently from marine animals and other organisms (Donia and Hamann 2003).

The purpose of bone repair in various orthopedic problems can also be accomplished with the use of marine organisms as (i) they are capable to produce various forms of mineral ranging from submicron silica frustules to the aragonite skeletons, respectively, by diatoms to lobster and cuttlefish (Clarke and Walsh 2014). These minerals are found mostly in silica and calcium carbonate-based, in calcite and aragonite form. They provide scaffold that facilitates osteoconduction either ex vivo or in situ as they are capable to produce mineral in alkaline aqueous media even if all are not capable to utilize CaP of mammalian bone. (ii) Porous nature of marine organism is also an unique character, which makes them suitable candidate for orthopedic applications. Their pore size ranges from submicron to millimeter that facilitates their application in various tailor-made products, and help in bone in-growth, neovascularization, and resorption whenever they are necessary for specific purpose. Pores in marine organisms are interconnected and tortuous in nature, which provides them unique structural properties, which are hard to manufacture synthetically (Sharma and Elisseeff 2004). Due to these pore characters, they are potentially good bone substitute and serve as template for implant production. (iii) There are some ions such as carbonate (CO_3^{2-}), magnesium (Mg^{2+}), and silicate (SiO_4^{4-}), which were previously considered as impurities in CaP, and now several researches are found, which prove their importance in bone repair, osteoblastic adhesion, neovascularization, and bioresorption (Fellah et al. 2008; Coathup et al. 2011; Dorozhkin 2012; Holzapfel et al. 2013). Therefore, this ion substitution is considered to be beneficial with base ceramic considering the abundance of ions in marine organisms. Several researches have been carried out in last three decades for soft and hard tissue engineering emphasizing marine-based products to develop improved properties and design of implants, development of drugs or molecules, and drug delivery system. Most of the studies were carried out with marine proteins and biopolymers for this purpose.

9.1.1 Coral

First use of stony coral belonging to phylum Cnidaria was planned by White in the early 1970s (White et al. 1972) for bone repair and its clinical use started in 1980s (Vago 2008) (Fig. 9.1). It primarily acts as CaP substitute, but calcium carbonate, present in coral, also acts as osteoconductive and osteoinductive in nature. Several in vitro studies depicted that coral enhances osteoblastic and osteoclastic augmentation (Ehrlich et al. 2006) and, simultaneously, helps in propagation of mouse-derived

Fig. 9.1 Photograph showing sea coral

mesenchymal stem cell (MSC) line either as demineralized matrix (Ehrlich et al. 2006), in combination with chitosan or alone, with different species like *Porites lutea* (Gravel et al. 2006; Abramovitch-Gottlib et al. 2006; Tran et al. 2011) and *Millepora dichotoma* (Abramovitch-Gottlib et al. 2006). Corals used for scaffold preparation have pore size of 100 μm and 500 μm diameter mostly with excellent interconnected pores (Green et al. 2002; Abramovitch-Gottlib et al. 2006; Mygind et al. 2007; Geiger et al. 2007). Clinical and experimental applications of coral scaffolds either directly or as derivatives have been reported in various orthopedic problems like spinal fusion (Im et al. 2005; Coughlin et al. 2006; Griesshaber et al. 2007), dental surgery (Martina et al. 2005; Lahaye and Robic 2007; Julia et al. 2016), maxillofacial surgery (Oliveira et al. 2007; Laza et al. 2007; Chen et al. 2008), reconstruction of bone defects in rabbit model (Duy Huynh et al. 2017), sheep model (Decambron et al. 2017), canine model (Cui et al. 2007; Yuan et al. 2009; Liu et al. 2013) and in other orthopedic complications (Coughlin et al. 2006; Bächle et al. 2006; Hou et al. 2007).

9.1.2 Collagen

Collagen protein in abundance is found in connective tissue of mammals, derived from precollagen and extensively studied biomaterial. Bovine-derived collagen is mostly used, but they sometimes cause immunogenic reaction and there are chances of zoonotic disease transmission. Marine sources of collagen are safer option as compared to bovine collagen that derived from marine sources like jellyfish like *Stomolophus nomurai meleagris* (Song et al. 2006), *Cyanea nozakii* Kishinouye (Zhang et al. 2014), *Nemopilema nomurai* (Morishige et al. 2011), and sponge *Chondrosia reniformis* (Heinemann et al. 2007a). Hydrogels that have porous structure help in cell adhesion are obtained from collagen derived from jellyfish and sponge from the said species. It is reported that porous scaffold derived from jellyfish helps in proliferation of human mesenchymal stem cells (hMSCs) and

expression of chondrogenic markers as well (Hoyer et al. 2014). Marine collagen composite with chitosan and hydroxyapatite showed better proliferation of MG-63 cells than chitosan in pure form; thus, it was confirmed that marine collagen has positive therapeutic role in bone repair in various orthopedic and biomedical applications (Lin et al. 2011; Pallela et al. 2012; Subhan et al. 2015; Bayon et al. 2015).

9.1.3 Chitin and Chitosan

First isolation of chitin was reported from mushroom in 1811 (Braconnot 1881). Chitins are abundantly found in marine crustacean shell, especially from shrimps and crabs. Deacylated form of chitin is known as chitosan. Chitin and chitosan both have unique biological characters like they are nontoxic to body, biocompatible, and biodegradable and can easily be combined with polyvinyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol, or collagen which help to enhance their structural strength and cell adhesion property (Srivastava et al. 2015). They are extensively studied either alone or in composite with sponge (Seol et al. 2004), nanohydroxyapatite (Kong et al. 2006; Thein-Han and Misra 2009), calcium–phosphate (Zhang et al. 2003; Aryaei et al. 2015), alginate (Li et al. 2005) as bone graft substitute or scaffold (Costa-Pinto et al. 2011; Levengood and Zhang 2014), in repair of articular cartilage (Mattioli-Belmonte et al. 1999; Francis Suh and Matthew 2000; Malafaya and Reis 2009; Neves et al. 2011), preparation of injectable CaP cement (Moreau and Xu 2009; Weir and Xu 2010; Shavandi et al. 2016), and carrier of drug delivery system (Mattioli-Belmonte et al. 1999; Bhattarai et al. 2010; Patel et al. 2010; Elgadir et al. 2015; Ali and Ahmed 2018; Hamedi et al. 2018). Chitin and chitosan have other well-established role including enhancement of wound healing (Nishimura 2001; Değim et al. 2002), immune modulation, hemostatic activity, (Millner et al. 2009; Lan et al. 2015) and hypolipidemic activity (Zhang et al. 2011, 2012, 2013), and antimicrobial activity (Tsai et al. 2002; Zheng and Zhu 2003; Devlieghere et al. 2004; Goy et al. 2009). In gene delivery (Lu et al. 2014), cell culture and tissue engineering along with polymer chitosan are also used (Kurita 2006). Glucosamine, derived from chitosan, is clinically well-accepted molecule in treatment of osteoarthritis (Qian et al. 2013; Srivastava et al. 2015; Nagaoka et al. 2019).

9.1.4 Chondroitin Sulfate (CS) and Hyaluronic acid (HA)

Glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) are polysaccharide in nature made up of covalently linked disaccharide units and found in most of the mammalian tissue, and chondroitin sulfate (CS) is most important GAG found in whale, shark, rabbitfish, skate, squid, salmon, king crab, and sea cucumber (Im et al. 2009; Ustyuzhanina et al. 2017; Vázquez et al. 2018, 2019). It has also been isolated from marine invertebrates like Cnidaria, Polychaeta, and Mollusca (Volpi et al. 1998; Medeiros et al. 2000; Yamada et al. 2007; Adamczyk et al. 2010). CS helps in maintaining the elasticity of

articular cartilage, controls inflammation, and helps in hemostasis in addition to cellular differentiation, proliferation, and adhesion (Schiraldi et al. 2010). It is used to treat osteoarthritis (Clegg et al. 2006; Bruyere and Reginster 2007; Lee et al. 2009) as it possesses anti-inflammatory property (Peng et al. 2006; Iovu et al. 2008; Egea et al. 2010; Mou et al. 2018). It helps to hydrate the tissue due to the presence of high surface negativity (Henrotin et al. 2010). It takes important role in tissue engineering, neuroprotection, and wound healing (Gilbert et al. 2004). Hence, CS proved to be very potential candidate for tissue engineering and various clinical applications (Abdallah et al. 2020).

Hyaluronic acid (HA) or hyaluronan, a naturally occurring nonsulfated glycosaminoglycan in nature, is found in mammalian and marine organisms. It also helps in tissue hydration like chondroitin sulfate and controls the permeability of macromolecules between cells and bacteria (Constantinides et al. 2004; Anisha et al. 2013; Abdallah et al. 2020), hence acts as antimicrobial agent. Large numbers of water molecules are present in its molecular structure; hence, it can swell and help in lubrication of joint, and due to its unique chemical nature like viscoelasticity, biocompatibility, angiogenicity, and immune-stimulatory role, it is a good subject for tissue engineering and clinical applications. Due to lubrication property, it act as shock absorber in joints and help in movement and pain alleviation in osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis (Roth et al. 2005; Sadozai et al. 2007; Anitua et al. 2007; Teeple et al. 2011; Shin et al. 2014). Several studies depict that nanocomposite of hyaluronic acid and chitosan have potential role in wound dressing, as it has antibacterial property (Abdel-Mohsen et al. 2013; Abdel-Rahman et al. 2016; Abdelrahman et al. 2020). It has important role in orthopedic applications as antimicrobial coating of implants (Disegi et al. 2005), together with platelet-rich plasma for enhancement of fracture healing (Martins Shimojo et al. 2019).

9.1.5 Alginate

Alginates are most common biopolymer derived from marine source mainly from brown seaweeds species of *Laminaria*, *Macrocystis*, *Lessonia*, *Ascophyllum, Ecklonia, Durvillea,* and *Sargassum* and industrially manufactured (Gomez et al. 2009; Venkatesan et al. 2014b). The properties like biodegradability, controlled porosity, non-toxicity, and anti-inflammatory action have enabled this product to be used in various therapeutic and research purpose. It is used to produce scaffold for orthopedic application as alginate is readily cross-linked with calcium ions (Srivastava et al. 2015). But, to overcome its inherent drawbacks like low mechanical strength and less cellular adhesion commonly, it is combined with other materials. Studies depicted that incorporation of into calcium carbonates into alginate enhances mineralization of extracellular matrix and helps to differentiate mesenchymal stem cells into osteoblast (Diaz-Rodriguez et al. 2018). In vitro study showed polymer scaffold prepared with chitosan–alginate–fucoidan (Chi-Alg-fucoidan) and chitosan–alginate–single-walled carbon nanotubes (Chi-Alg-SWNT) scaffolds proved to be extremely cytocompatible and enhance cellular proliferation

and alkaline phosphatase secretion in MG-63 cell line, which proves its promising role to be used as biomaterial in bone tissue engineering (Venkatesan et al. 2014a, 2014c). Alginate–polymer composite (PLGA, PEG, and chitosan) (Choi et al. 2010; Reyes et al. 2014; Jeon et al. 2014; Li et al. 2016; Do et al. 2017), alginate–protein (collagen and gelatin) (Sotome et al. 2004; Eslaminejad et al. 2007; Xia et al. 2012; Lee et al. 2012a; Bendtsen and Wei 2015; Leena et al. 2017; Luo et al. 2018), alginate–bioglass (Chen et al. 2013, 2014; Rafienia et al. 2017), alginate–biosilica (Gabbai-Armelin et al. 2014; Müller et al. 2015; Zhang et al. 2017), alginate–bone morphogenetic protein-2, alginate-transforming growth factor-β1 (Reyes et al. 2014), IGF-1 and BMP-6 releasing chitosan/alginate/PLGA hybrid (Duruel et al. 2017) and RGD peptides (Mata et al. 2011; Bidarra et al. 2011) were extensively studied by several researchers. Hence, alginate-based composite materials show its potentiality for bone tissue engineering applications for the inherent qualities like controlled porosities, good mechanical strength, enhanced cell adhesion, cellular proliferation, increased biocompatibility, cellular mineralization, and differentiation of mesenchymal stem cells into osteogenic cells (Venkatesan et al. 2015).

9.1.6 Biosilica

Biosilica or biogenic silica is the form of glassy amorphous silica-SiO_2, containing water and small amounts of Al, Ca, Cl, Cu, Fe, K, Na, S, and Zn (Ehrlich et al. 2017), derived mainly from marine sponges, diatoms, radiolarians, and choanoflagellates (Schröder et al. 2008). Biosilica is proved to be magnificently important for bone formation as it has positive effect on osteoblast formation and abrogate osteoclast formation as well (Müller et al. 2009; Wiens et al. 2010; Wang et al. 2014b). In vitro studies showed that biosilica upregulates the gene expression of bone-forming cells and enhances mineralization and cell proliferation (Wiens et al. 2010; Granito et al. 2017). Several clinical and experimental studies with biosilica depicted its osteogenic potential and confirmed the ability of a promising biomaterial for drug delivery (Wang et al. 2012, 2013; Müller et al. 2015; Cicco et al. 2015; Özarslan and Yücel 2016; Tamburaci and Tihminlioglu 2018; Cruz et al. 2020).

9.1.7 Cuttlefish

The fishbone derived from cuttlefish (phylum Mollusca, class Cephalopoda) has similar chemical and structural properties like hydroxyapatite ($Ca_{10}(PO_4)_6(OH)_2$) (Manoli and Dalas 2000), which is considered to be most popular for preparation of scaffold for clinical use and bone tissue engineering till date (Dorozhkin and Epple 2002; Kim et al. 2014). Studies depicted that porous polycaprolactone (PCL) scaffold prepared using cuttlefish bone-derived HAp (CB-HAp) powder produces better osteogenesis than PCL alone (Kim et al. 2014). Hydroxyapatite derived from cuttlefish bone has unique properties such as better biocompatibility, increased cellular proliferation, and increased biomineralization from mesenchymal stem

cells and osteoblastic cells, and these properties can be further enhanced by incorporation of bioglass, polycaprolactone, and polyvinyl alcohol (Venkatesan et al. 2018). Further, compressive strength of cuttlefish bone-derived hydroxyapatite scaffold can be enhanced by polycaprolactone coating (Kim et al. 2014; Milovac et al. 2014). Ion (Sr^{2+}, Mg^{2+}, and/or Zn^{2+})-doped biphasic calcium phosphate (BCP) scaffolds prepared from cuttlefish bone (CB) with polymeric coating yields scaffold with better osteogenic properties and compressive strength (Neto et al. 2019). Hence, cuttlefish bone-derived hydroxyapatite is most appropriate scaffold biomaterial in bone tissue engineering (Rocha et al. 2005; Battistella et al. 2010, 2012).

9.1.8 Sponge

Marine sponges are the main organism sorted under the phylum Porifera, which enhances bone formation in a very promising way. Calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) constitutes main skeletal structure of sponge; moreover, a protein named spongin (contains collagen) and sometimes siliceous spicules are also present in its structure (Castro and Huber 2019). In vitro study with *Chondrosia reniformis* shows that collagen derived from sponge along with silica, when prepared as a form of hydrogel, helps in cellular growth and attachment in osteoblast-like cell line (Heinemann et al. 2007b). Several other components like pseudokeratin, neurokeratin, horny protein, and collagen like protein derived from sponges have various biological roles along with treatment of osteoarthritis. Another in vitro study with *Hymeniacidon sinapium* depicted that sponging enhances bone mineralization, increases collagen production, and enhances secretion of osteocalcin and alkaline phosphatase activity in MG-63 cell line. Study also concluded that spongin decreases the production of inflammatory mediators like TNF-α, IL-1β, and PGE_2, as a result acts as potent anti-inflammatory agent in orthopedic complications (Kim et al. 2009). Besides, molecules derived from sponges have many other activities like antiviral, antibacterial, antitumor, and osteogenic properties (Granito et al. 2017). Spongin (SPG) when incorporated into hydroxyapatite improves the graft properties and bone regeneration (Parisi et al. 2019; Fernandes et al. 2019) and serves as better graft substitute for orthopedic application. Study with cranial bone defect in rats showed SPG and biosilicate (BS) composite scaffold significantly enhance osteogenesis (Parisi et al. 2020). Hence, marine sponges are potential material for scaffold preparation due to its chemical properties (Jesionowski et al. 2018).

9.1.9 Echinodermata

Under phylum Echinodermata, sea stars (class Asteroidea) and sea urchins (class Echinoidea) are important organisms for bone regeneration as their ossicles are made from magnesium-rich calcite enhance osteoblast and bone marrow stromal cell adhesion to porous scaffold (Martina et al. 2005). This magnesium-rich calcite proved to be effective alternative for complicated ion substitution technique,

which enhances the osteogenic and structural properties of orthopedic implants (Kannan et al. 2007). Several studies showed that many organisms under this phylum also possess antibacterial property (Villasin and Pomory 2000; Haug et al. 2002) that may be beneficial for various orthopedic applications.

9.2 Desirable Properties of an Ideal Scaffolds as Drug Delivery Systems

The main objective of bone tissue engineering is to enhance the osteosynthesis and replacement of damaged or diseased bone with suitable biomaterials, cells, and/or bioactive molecules (Saltzman and Olbricht 2002). Though allografts are considered as ideal material for this purpose, limited availability and associated donor site infection, possibilities of disease transmission have limited its use for bone tissue engineering (Langer 2000). Hence, biodegradable scaffolds made with polymers have gained much importance as an alternative as they are able to deliver cells, genes, and/or drugs and thus enhance in-growth of osteogenic cells and overall modulate bone tissue regeneration (Freed et al. 1994; Hutmacher 2000). There are various types of polymeric scaffolds that possess three main properties that either alone or in combination evolves ideal scaffold material for bone tissue engineering: scaffolds a) which accommodates the cells in original physiological environment, b) cells capable of producing tissue, and c) growth factors and other biomolecules that guides the accommodated cells to differentiate into desired type (Garg et al. 2012).

To be an ideal material for drug delivery, the scaffolds should possess the characteristics such as:

(a) Drug should disperse throughout the scaffold in a uniform manner.
(b) Drug should elute from the scaffold in a desired rate.
(c) Drug should bind with the scaffold with a low affinity so that, during incorporation, it should be stable at physiological temperature.
(d) The physical, chemical, and biological structure of scaffold should be stable for long duration in vivo.
(e) Scaffold should have desired level of biocompatibility and toxicity level.
(f) Scaffold should be biodegradable and degraded metabolite should be nontoxic to tissues.
(g) Scaffold should have similar mechanical properties with the tissue of implantation.
(h) Scaffold should facilitate cell proliferation, adhesion, and migration.
(i) Scaffold should have recognizable macroscopic and microscopic structure, which facilitates cell or drug adhesion.
(j) Scaffold should be porous with adequate pore size and number.
(k) Scaffold should mimic the endogenous native extracellular matrix (ECM).
(l) It should be easily processable and moldable to desired shape and size.
(m) Scaffold should have higher loading capacity kinetics, so that drug elute in a continuous manner for longer period.

Targeted delivery of pharmaceutical agents has been foremost issue of interest of researchers and clinicians over conventional therapeutic approach as they have many advantages like specificity to local area, controlled dosage, and duration with less side effects. Numerous organisms of marine origin like shells, corals, chitosan, and sponges also provide ideal material in tissue engineering and drug delivery system owing to their unique chemical compositions and porous structure with interconnected pores.

9.3 Commonly Available Marine Materials Related to Bone Disorder Management

Though management of different bone disorder needs different types of treatment protocol, from the perspective of regenerative medicine, bone healing is established up on a triad: cellular part, scaffold that facilitates bone tissue growth, and incorporation of biomolecules or growth factors (Ringe et al. 2002). In this context, marine organisms have potential role in preparation of scaffold and promotion of osteogenesis as well through acting as a source of osteogenic bioactive (Table 9.1).

9.4 Marine Materials as Delivery Vehicle of Growth Factors/Peptides for Nonunion Fractures

Healing of fracture is considered as a unique physiological cascade, in which primary union is considered as ideal type, where soft callus gets structural and geometrical resemblance with normal bone after getting mineralized with time by the process of remodeling (Mosekilde and Bak 1993). But, study shows 5–10% of fracture complications occur in the form of delayed or nonunion (Tzioupis and Giannoudis 2007; Einhorn and Gerstenfeld 2015). There are certain controlling factors, which contribute to the development of fracture complications, e.g., senility, infection, deficiency of nutrients, excessive use of anti-inflammatory drugs, diabetes, smoking, and nicotine. Autologous bone grafts have been used since decade to treat nonunion, but it has certain limitations too. Present concept of treating this type of fracture is to provide components like mesenchymal stem cells and/or growth factors into osteoconductive scaffolds along with providing optimum mechanical and physiological environment. This concept is known as "diamond concept" (Fig. 9.2), and it provides optimum requisites for fracture healing (Giannoudis et al. 2007).

For this purpose, marine biomaterials have undergone through several in vitro and in vivo researches, which proved its uniqueness due to the nontoxic, biodegradable, and biocompatible characters. Marine polysaccharide is obtained from algae, prokaryotes, skeletons of crustaceans, and cartilaginous fish, though mainly used in food and cosmetic purpose, but also has enormous potential to be used as such bioactive material, which can deliver bioactive agents to the tissue (Laurienzo 2010). Marine polysaccharides have various chemical and biological properties like biocompatibility, biodegradability, and adhesive properties, and they can easily form

Table 9.1 Marine materials as osteogenic material

Compound	Bioactive/extract	Role	Reference
Fucoidan extract	Fucoidan	Osteoconduction	Changotade et al. (2008)
Fucoidan scaffold	Fucoidan	Osteoconduction Osteogenesis	Lu et al. (2019)
Hydroxyapatite–fucoidan (HApF) nanocomposite	Fucoidan	Enhanced bone mineralization twice than HAp alone	Jeong et al. (2013)
Chitosan–natural nano-hydroxyapatite–fucoidan nanocomposite scaffold	Fucoidan	Enhances bone mineralization	Lowe et al. (2016)
N,O-carboxymethyl chitosan/fucoidan conjugate nanocomposite scaffolds	Fucoidan	Enhanced cell proliferation, ALP activity, and mineralization of osteoblast	Lu et al. (2018)
Coral and adipose tissue-derived stem cells (ASCs) scaffold	Coral cells	Bone regeneration in cranial critical size defect in canine model	Liu et al. (2013)
Coral/hydroxyapatite implant with growth factor	Coral cells	Osteogenesis	Nandi et al. (2015)
Coral scaffold with autologous Mesenchymal stem Cells	Coral cells	Bone regeneration	Manassero et al. (2013)
Coral scaffold with BMSC, BMP2, and VEGF	Coral cells	Bone regeneration	Xiao et al. (2011)
Porous nanohydroxyapatite/coralline blocks coated with $rhVEGF_{165}$	Coral cells	Angiogenesis and bone regeneration	Du et al. (2015)
Tubular coral scaffolds with cell sheets	Coral cells	Osteogenesis	Gao et al. (2009)
Chinese soft coral *Lobophytum pauciflorum*	Lobophytone A-G	Anti-inflammatory	Yan et al. (2010)
Soft coral *Sinularia gyrosa*	Gyrosanols A-C	Anti-inflammatory	Cheng et al. (2010)

(continued)

Table 9.1 (continued)

Compound	Bioactive/extract	Role	Reference
Brown seaweed	Fucoxanthin	Hinders oxidative stress-related RANKL-mediated osteoclastogenesis	Kose et al. (2016)
Brown algae (*Sargassum siliquastrum*)	Sargachromanol G	Inhibits osteoclastogenesis and osteoporosis, anti-inflammatory	Yoon et al. (2012a, b, 2013)
Brown algae (*Sargassum thunbergii*)	Quinone derivatives	Anti-adipogenic and pro-osteoblastogenic	Kim et al. (2016)
Red algae (*Laurencia undulate*)	Floridoside	Osteogenic differentiation	Ryu et al. (2015)
Calcareous red algae (*Lithothamnion corallioides*)	Aquamin	Helps in mineralization of osteoblast and osteogenesis, and improves mechanical strength of collagen graft	Frestedt et al. (2009); O'Gorman et al. (2012); Widaa et al. (2014); Brennan et al. (2015)
Cyanobacteria (*Lyngbya* sp)	Biselyngbyaside	Inhibits osteoclastogenesis and induces apoptosis in mature osteoclasts	Yonezawa et al. (2012)
Dinoflagellate (*Symbiodinium* sp)	Symbioimine	Antiresorptive agent, prevent osteoporosis	Kita et al. (2004); Woo et al. (2008)
Microalgae	Peptide	Osteoblastic differentiation of MG-63 cells, anti-inflammatory	Qian et al. (2018); Carson and Clarke (2018); Suttisuwan et al. (2019)
Prokaryote	Polysaccharide	Bone and cartilage repair	Rederstorff et al. (2011)
Cyanobacterium	Largazole (depsipeptide)	In vivo and in vitro osteogenesis, rheumatoid arthritis inhibitor	Lee et al. 2011; Ahmed et al. (2013)
Sponge	Phorbaketal A	Osteoblastic differentiation of mesenchymal cells, anti-osteoporotic	Byun et al. (2012); Senthilkumar et al. (2014)

hydrogels (Costa et al. 2010; Ngo and Kim 2013). Several studies depicted that these biomaterials are able to load even very low drug dosage; as a result, side effects due to drug can also be minimized and they can also act as a marker, which delivers the signal to the vehicle to dispense drug at specific location (Allen and Cullis 2004; Brannon-Peppas and Blanchette 2004). It has proved its efficacy over viral vector in delivering gene also, through which health risk can be minimized (Thomas et al. 2003). Being biocompatible and biodegradable as a unique biomaterial, it has

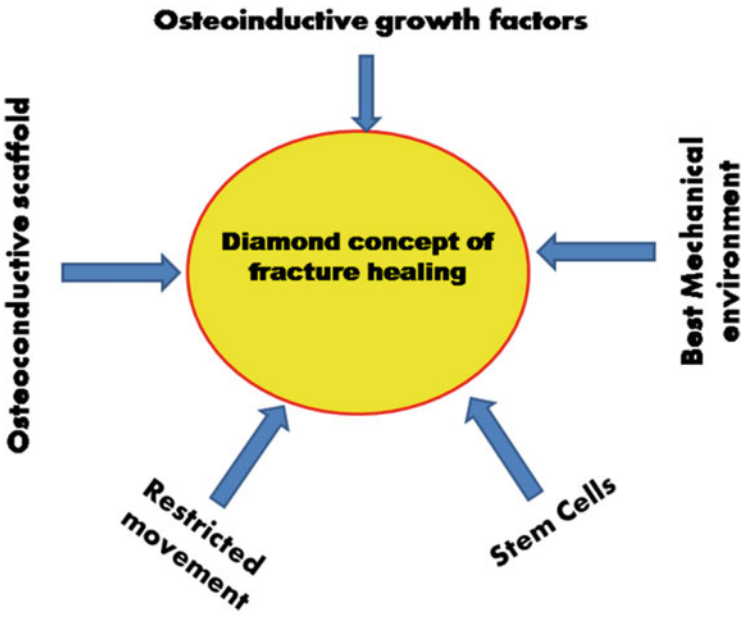


Fig. 9.2 Diamond concept of fracture healing

capability to stabilize gene and other therapeutic molecule by encapsulating, as well as promote sustained release of the agent to the host cells (Silva et al. 2012; Nitta and Numata 2013). Chondroitin sulfate, alginate, chitosan, hyaluronan, etc., fall under this group. Study with alginate/nanofiber-based hybrid growth factor delivery system with recombinant bone morphogenetic protein-2 (rhBMP-2) in critical size bone defect in rat depicted promising result in the treatment of bone injury and successful delivery of growth factor (Kolambkar et al. 2011). Similarly, marine sponge skeleton made scaffold is suitable for osteogenic factor delivery as well act as conductive and inductive framework for attachment of human stem cell (Green et al. 2003). Researches show glycosaminoglycan (GAG) is well capable of delivering different growth factors and cytokines in the target tissue as well as itself possess potentiality for repair of fibrocartilage (Hachim et al. 2019). Researches show that porous chondroitin-4-sulfate (CS)–chitosan sponge that release platelet-derived growth factor-BB (PDGF-BB) has potential role in bone regeneration (Park et al. 2000). Chitosan–gelatin scaffolds are capable of delivering basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF) and bovine serum albumin (BSA) successfully (Azizian et al. 2018). On the other hand, chitosan-based vehicle is capable of delivering BMP-2 in vitro and in vivo (Venkatesan et al. 2017). Composite hydrogel with incorporation of poly (lactide-co-glycolide) (PLGA) and *2-N,6-O*-sulfated chitosan (26SCS) loaded with rhBMP-2 and angiogenic rhVEGF$_{165}$ serves as ideal material for growth factor delivery and improves angiogenesis (Cao et al. 2018). Another study depicted chitosan sponge with platelet-derived growth factor-BB (PDGF-BB) enhances

osteogenesis (Jeong Park et al. 2000) and chitosan/tricalcium phosphate (TCP) sponge carrier acts as potential carrier for growth factor delivery (Lee et al. 2000). Calcium phosphate cement scaffold made with tetracalcium phosphate [TTCP: $Ca_4(PO_4)_2O$], dicalcium phosphate (DCPA: $CaHPO_4$), chitosan, and mannitol pyrogen proves to be excellent in mechanical strength and capable of delivering osteogenic cells and osteoinductive growth factors (Xu et al. 2008). Chitosan-based scaffolds are capable to sequentially deliver BMP-2 and BMP-7 to the target tissue, hence are good candidate for growth factor delivery and osteosynthesis (Yilgor et al. 2009). Studies also depicted that chitosan–alginate (Ch-Al) composite can deliver growth factor in a controlled and sustained manner and help in cartilage regeneration (Reed and Wu 2017). Collagen/chitosan microgranules loaded with TGF-β1 show enhanced osteogenic capacity in the rabbit calvarial defects (Lee et al. 2006). From the abovementioned citations, it is evident that marine bioactives can effectively deliver osteogenic agents like growth factors, cells, and other biomolecules to the target tissue and can serve effectively for the purpose of treatment of different bone-related pathological conditions including nonunion fractures as a result escalate the quality of life of many patients.

9.5 Marine Materials as Delivery System of Drugs for Treatment of Osteoporosis

In the coming years, osteoporosis (OP) is going to be the major important diseases of concerns for the elderly patients (Johnell and Kanis 2006; Blume and Curtis 2011; Wright et al. 2014). In OS, the architecture of bone is lost along with loss of bone strength and altered macro geometry of bone. The conventional treatment for osteoporosis includes administration of antiresorptive agents like estrogen, calcitonin, bisphosphonates, denosumab, and strontium ranelate, anabolic agents like recombinant human parathyroid hormone, and different bioactive agents like odanacatib and cathepsin-K (Mauck and Clarke 2006; Brennan et al. 2009; Ruckle et al. 2009; Gesty-Palmer et al. 2009; Hannon et al. 2010; Glantschnig et al. 2011; Y Maximov et al. 2013; Canalis 2013; Iyer et al. 2014; Wang et al. 2014a; Ponnapakkam et al. 2014; Roskoski 2015; Appelman-Dijkstra and Papapoulos 2016), either involves oral administration of tablets or in the form of injections, which most of the times are associated with variable absorption, low bioavailability of the drugs at lower clinically effective dose, and difference in patient compliance, and therefore, many of occasions cannot change the prevailing pathological conditions of OP (Luhmann et al. 2012). Therefore, on-target supply of drugs with more efficient methods of therapeutic delivery is required.

Hydrothermally converted foraminifera exoskeletons with multistimulatory ion-doped marine scaffold have been evaluated as a local drug delivery system in OP (Chou et al. 2013). In this study, the scaffold was implanted intramuscularly in close proximity to the femur bone of mice, which were ovariectomized to create OP model, and the bones were evaluated and found that Zn-doped scaffold was proved to be better for OP bones. Zn is an essential component of cell metabolism and

possesses the ability to stimulate osteoblastic activity (Otsuka et al. 2008; Kannan et al. 2011; Luo et al. 2014). In rats, different types of Zn-injectable powder have been evaluated in OP (Kawamura et al. 2000; Sogo et al. 2002; Otsuka et al. 2004; Tokudome et al. 2011). Guo et al. (2015) reported better calcium absorption and enhanced femur bone mineral density in vivo in rats by core-shell MCP chelated calcium/calcium alginate nanoparticles produced from Synodontidae fish scales. The result is encouraging in terms of calcium supplementation in OP bones.

9.6 Marine Biomaterials as Delivery of Antibiotics in Treatment of Osteomyelitis

Osteomyelitis is the foremost challenge in orthopedic surgery because of multifactorial reasons of ineffectiveness with conventional antibiotic therapy (Prasanna and Venkatasubbu 2018). In general, osteomyelitis is managed by debridement, foreign body removal, and subsequent parenteral antibiotic administration (Schlossberg 1988). The overall cost of the treatment episodes is increased due to more hospital stay, cost of medicines, and additional surgical interventions besides adverse side effects of drugs. Alternatively, application of local drug delivery is being investigated by many workers (Gomes et al. 2013; Uskoković and Desai 2014a) and proved to be promising in terms of achievable effective dose of antibiotic at the infection site and without systemic toxicity. PMMA cement beads (Josefsson et al. 1990; Stabile and Jacobs 1990; Grime et al. 1990), collagen sponge (Trafny et al. 1995, 1996), biodegradable polymers from glycolide and lactide (Nie et al. 1995; Benoit et al. 1998), and calcium phosphate-based ceramics (Arita et al. 1995; Zafirau et al. 1996; Lemons 1996; Tampieri et al. 1997; Fanovich and Porto Lopez 1998; Ghosh et al. 2008; Nandi et al. 2008a, b, 2009) are the most commonly studied drug delivery systems in osteomyelitis. Ceramics and other materials incorporated to the thin films and bulk composites have been studied previously as biodegradable drug delivery systems with the limitations of unfitting to any bone defect size. Thus, marine resources such as marine shells, foraminifera, and corals have been the recent trend of research as an alternative drug delivery system.

Marine resources are also well explored as a new virgin area of research for drug delivery in osteomyelitis. Chitosan, a naturally derived polymer, may be easily extractable from crustacean shells. It has got antimicrobial, antitumor, anti-inflammatory, and immunity improving properties (Smelcerovic et al. 2008; Yin et al. 2009; Ing et al. 2012; Arancibia et al. 2013) may increase the permeability of many drugs due to its mucoadhesive characteristics (Kowapradit et al. 2010; Yeh et al. 2011). Nanoparticulate composites of hydroxyapatite (HAp) and a marine polymer, chitosan, were evaluated in osteomyelitis to overcome the burst release of small molecules from well-dispersed HAp nanoparticles (Uskoković and Desai 2014b). Different drug delivery systems of chitosan have previously also been studied (Wilson and Hull 2008; Palazzo et al. 2011; Tanase et al. 2012; Tripathi et al. 2012; Chen et al. 2012; Lee et al. 2012b). Wang et al. studied poly(vinyl alcohol) (PVA) and carboxymethyl chitosan (CMCS) drug delivery system loaded

with ornidazole (OD) both in vitro and in vivo and found to have effective antimicrobial efficacy for 5 days post-transplantation in rat subcutaneous tissue in a dose-dependent manner with CMCS (Wang et al. 2007).

9.7 Marine Biomaterials as Delivery Carriers of Drugs/Stem Cells for Management of Osteoarthritis

Chondroitin sulfate (CS), a natural glycosaminoglycan, is found in the cartilage and extracellular matrix. It has got beneficial effects in osteoarthritis. Cow trachea, pig ear and nasal septa, chicken keel, shark cartilage, and fish are the commonest source of CS for clinical and commercial trial (Nakano et al. 2000; Luo et al. 2002; Lignot et al. 2003; Nandini et al. 2005; Vázquez et al. 2013).

Oral administration of chondroitin sulfate with glucosamine helps to repair or slow-down the progress in OA by reducing cytokines and transcription factor concentration. Glucosamine increases cartilage-specific matrix components and thus reduces collagen degeneration. Chondroitin-S plus glucosamine is slow-acting drugs to reduce pain and provide functional stability of the joint to some extent. The clinical benefits of CS administration in patients with OA have been observed in various studies (Uebelhart et al. 2004; Prabhakar and Sasisekharan 2006; Clegg et al. 2006). Liposome-entrapped chondroitin in clinical studies has also been demonstrated (Trif et al. 2008).

9.8 Marine Materials as Local Delivery of Drugs for Treatment of Bone Cancers

Recent research on cancer therapy explored the vast potentiality of marine bioactive compounds (Reese et al. 1996; Pettit et al. 1998), especially mollusk as a vital source for developing chemotherapeutic agents against tumor cells. Mollusk provided some key anticancer compounds like dolastatin (Pettit et al. 1998), acharan sulfate, an innovative type of glycosaminoglycan from the giant African snail *Achatina fulica* (Lee et al. 2003), Kahalalide F (García-Rocha et al. 1996), and kulolide (Reese et al. 1996). There is a paramount necessity to explore an ideal marine-based compound for delivery system of anticancerous drug.

Bone, a complex tissue, may face defects by trauma, neoplastic growth, hereditary defects, accidents, osteoporosis, arthritis, etc. Different kinds of grafting like auto, allo, and xeno have been carried out to mitigate these problems, but all of these procedures have both advantages and limitations. Different marine biomaterials have been investigated out of which alginate is one of the most studied one. Alginate, a biopolymer found in seaweed, comprising of guluronic acid and mannuronic acid, is nontoxic, nonimmunogenic, and biocompatible. The most advantage of alginate is that it can be noninvasively introduced in any bone defect; it can easily fill irregularly shaped defects and can in a controlled manner deliver effectively the BMP and TGF-β (Krebs et al. 2010; Lópiz-Morales et al. 2010; Kolambkar et al.

2011). Alginate hydrogels have been explored as drug delivery system (DDS) for delivery of stem cells in bone tissue engineering (Barralet et al. 2005). Preferential adhesion of alginate to osteosarcoma cells has been investigated in combination of porous scaffold and found to be very effective (Lin and Yeh 2004; Turco et al. 2009). Zhao et al. (2012) demonstrated that alginate/$CaCO_3$/DNA/DOX nanoparticles show its potentiality in cancer treatments as alginate/$CaCO_3$/DNA/DOX nanoparticles could successfully mediate gene transfection and carry the drug to the target cells (Zhao et al. 2012). Alginate-incorporated calcium phosphate nanoparticles showed antitumor activity on human osteosarcoma in a dose- and time-dependent manner, and the drugs were found to release at a faster rate in relation to pH because of pH-dependent dissolution of CaP. These findings encouraged the researchers to think the drug-loaded CaP nanocomposites as newer controlled drug release vehicles for chemotherapy in cancers, especially in osteosarcoma (Son and Kim 2017).

Chitosan, a linear polysaccharide of glucosamine, can be obtained from chitin. Chitins are usually found in fungi, diatoms, nematodes, arthropods, shrimps, crabs, lobsters, krill, and squid (Teng et al. 2001; Cauchie 2002; Cira et al. 2002; Synowiecki and Al-Khateeb 2003; Rao and Stevens 2006; Hayes et al. 2008; Khanafari et al. 2008; Fai et al. 2011). Significant inhibitions of tumor growth have been demonstrated by chitosan (Carreño-Gómez and Duncan 1997). The antiproliferative efficacy of chitosan in breast cancer has been evaluated by intratumoral administration by Chen et al. (1997). Extensive research has been carried out to develop effective and safe chitosan-based drug delivery system (van der Lubben et al. 2001; Alonso and Sánchez 2003; Tiyaboonchai 2003; Hejazi and Amiji 2003; Kumari et al. 2010; Amidi et al. 2010; Bhattarai et al. 2010). Drug delivery in a sustained manner by chitosan-based particulate in different routes has also been investigated (Alonso and Sánchez 2003; Tiyaboonchai 2003; Hejazi and Amiji 2003; Kumari et al. 2010; Amidi et al. 2010; Bhattarai et al. 2010).

Novel pH-sensitive drug delivery system-based cockle shell-derived aragonite nanoparticles against osteosarcoma have been studied by Fu et al. (2017). Cockle shell (*Anadara granosa*), a sea species, may be considered as rich source of biogenic aragonite (Hoque et al. 2013). Aragonite is one of the polymorph forms of CaCO3. Biogenic calcium carbonate (CaCO3) being bioresorbable, osteoconductive, biocompatible, and slowly biodegradable may be served as an effective DDS in osteosarcoma model (Yu et al. 2010; Svenskaya et al. 2013; Zhao et al. 2015; Vergaro et al. 2015; Yang et al. 2016; He et al. 2016). Doxorubicin was loaded in Aragonite nanoparticles and was investigated in osteosarcoma with promising result.

9.9 Concluding Remarks and Future Direction

The sources of marine biomaterials are vast, and they can be converted to appropriate biocompatible scaffold for delivery of drugs/biomolecules both in hard and soft tissue engineering. Majority of materials of marine sources are biocompatible and structurally similar to human counterpart, and as such, they can successfully used in

biomedical application including drug delivery system. Some of the materials have inherent porous structure, which is highly suitable for drug delivery applications. A considerable stride has been made to search active ingredients in marine organisms before for biomedical applications. Yet, more effort should be put in harnessing active ingredients from marine species and biosynthesize them in laboratory in a large scale to fulfill the challenging demands in present days. This needs combined efforts by the researchers, scientists, teachers, and government organization how best we can utilize the abundant source of marine biomaterials in biomedical applications. However, we should not disturb the biodiversity of marine life.

References

Abdallah MM, Fernández N, Matias AA, Bronze M d R (2020) Hyaluronic acid and chondroitin sulfate from marine and terrestrial sources: extraction and purification methods. Carbohydr Polym 243:116441

Abdel-Mohsen AM, Hrdina R, Burgert L et al (2013) Antibacterial activity and cell viability of hyaluronan fiber with silver nanoparticles. Carbohydr Polym 92:1177–1187

Abdelrahman RM, Abdel-Mohsen AM, Zboncak M et al (2020) Hyaluronan biofilms reinforced with partially deacetylated chitin nanowhiskers: extraction, fabrication, in-vitro and antibacterial properties of advanced nanocomposites. Carbohydr Polym 235:115951

Abdel-Rahman RM, Abdel-Mohsen AM, Hrdina R et al (2016) Wound dressing based on chitosan/hyaluronan/nonwoven fabrics: Preparation, characterization and medical applications. Int J Biol Macromol 89:725–736

Abramovitch-Gottlib L, Geresh S, Vago R (2006) Biofabricated marine hydrozoan: a bioactive crystalline material promoting ossification of mesenchymal stem cells. Tissue Eng 12:729–739

Adamczyk P, Zenkert C, Balasubramanian PG et al (2010) A non-sulfated chondroitin stabilizes membrane tubulation in cnidarian organelles. J Biol Chem 285:25613–25623

Ahmed S, Riegsecker S, Beamer M et al (2013) Largazole, a class I histone deacetylase inhibitor, enhances TNF-α-induced ICAM-1 and VCAM-1 expression in rheumatoid arthritis synovial fibroblasts. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 270:87–96

Ali A, Ahmed S (2018) A review on chitosan and its nanocomposites in drug delivery. Int J Biol Macromol 109:273–286

Allen TM, Cullis PR (2004) Drug delivery systems: entering the mainstream. Science 303:1818–1822

Alonso MJ, Sánchez A (2003) The potential of chitosan in ocular drug delivery. J Pharm Pharmacol 55:1451–1463

Amidi M, Mastrobattista E, Jiskoot W, Hennink WE (2010) Chitosan-based delivery systems for protein therapeutics and antigens. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 62:59–82

Anisha BS, Biswas R, Chennazhi KP, Jayakumar R (2013) Chitosan–hyaluronic acid/nano silver composite sponges for drug resistant bacteria infected diabetic wounds. Int J Biol Macromol 62:310–320

Anitua E, Sánchez M, Nurden AT et al (2007) Platelet-released growth factors enhance the secretion of hyaluronic acid and induce hepatocyte growth factor production by synovial fibroblasts from arthritic patients. Rheumatology 46:1769–1772

Appelman-Dijkstra NM, Papapoulos SE (2016) Sclerostin inhibition in the management of osteoporosis. Calcif Tissue Int 98:370–380

Arancibia R, Maturana C, Silva D et al (2013) Effects of chitosan particles in periodontal pathogens and gingival fibroblasts. J Dent Res 92:740–745

Arita IH, Wilkinson DS, Mondragón MA, Castaño VM (1995) Chemistry and sintering behaviour of thin hydroxyapatite ceramics with controlled porosity. Biomaterials 16:403–408

Aryaei A, Liu J, Jayatissa AH, Champa Jayasuriya A (2015) Cross-linked chitosan improves the mechanical properties of calcium phosphate–chitosan cement. Mater Sci Eng C 54:14–19
Azizian S, Hadjizadeh A, Niknejad H (2018) Chitosan-gelatin porous scaffold incorporated with Chitosan nanoparticles for growth factor delivery in tissue engineering. Carbohydr Polym 202:315–322
Bächle M, Hübner U, Kohal RJ et al (2006) Structure and in vitro cytocompatibility of the gastropod shell of Helix pomatia. Tissue Cell 38:337–344
Barralet JE, Wang L, Lawson M et al (2005) Comparison of bone marrow cell growth on 2D and 3D alginate hydrogels. J Mater Sci Mater Med 16:515–519
Battistella E, Mele S, Pietronave S et al (2010) Transformed cuttlefish bone scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Adv Mater Res 89–91:47–52
Battistella E, Mele S, Foltran I et al (2012) Cuttlefish bone scaffold for tissue engineering: a novel hydrothermal transformation, chemical-physical, and biological characterization. J Appl Biomater Funct Mater 10:99–106
Bayon Y, Ladet S, Lefranc O, Gravagna P (2015) Medical implant including a 3D mesh of oxidized cellulose and a collagen sponge. Patent WO2010052587
Bendtsen ST, Wei M (2015) Synthesis and characterization of a novel injectable alginate–collagen–hydroxyapatite hydrogel for bone tissue regeneration. J Mater Chem B 3:3081–3090
Benoit M-A, Mousset B, Delloye C et al (1998) Antibiotic-loaded plaster of Paris implants coated with poly lactide-co-glycolide as a controlled release delivery system for the treatment of bone infections. Int Orthop 21:403–408
Bhattarai N, Gunn J, Zhang M (2010) Chitosan-based hydrogels for controlled, localized drug delivery. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 62:83–99
Bidarra SJ, Barrias CC, Fonseca KB et al (2011) Injectable in situ crosslinkable RGD-modified alginate matrix for endothelial cells delivery. Biomaterials 32:7897–7904
Blume SW, Curtis JR (2011) Medical costs of osteoporosis in the elderly Medicare population. Osteoporos Int 22:1835–1844
Braconnot H (1881) Sur la nature des champignons. Ann Chi 79:265–304
Brannon-Peppas L, Blanchette JO (2004) Nanoparticle and targeted systems for cancer therapy. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 56:1649–1659
Brennan TC, Rybchyn MS, Green W et al (2009) Osteoblasts play key roles in the mechanisms of action of strontium ranelate. Br J Pharmacol 157:1291–1300
Brennan O, Stenson B, Widaa A et al (2015) Incorporation of the natural marine multi-mineral dietary supplement Aquamin enhances osteogenesis and improves the mechanical properties of a collagen-based bone graft substitute. J Mech Behav Biomed Mater 47:114–123
Bruyere O, Reginster J-Y (2007) Glucosamine and chondroitin sulfate as therapeutic agents for knee and hip osteoarthritis. Drugs Aging 24:573–580
Byun MR, Kim AR, Hwang J-H et al (2012) Phorbaketal A stimulates osteoblast differentiation through TAZ mediated Runx2 activation. FEBS Lett 586:1086–1092
Canalis E (2013) Wnt signalling in osteoporosis: mechanisms and novel therapeutic approaches. Nat Rev Endocrinol 9:575–583
Cao L, Kong X, Lin S et al (2018) Synergistic effects of dual growth factor delivery from composite hydrogels incorporating 2-N,6-O-sulphated chitosan on bone regeneration. Artif Cells Nanomed Biotechnol 46:S1–S17
Carreño-Gómez B, Duncan R (1997) Evaluation of the biological properties of soluble chitosan and chitosan microspheres. Int J Pharm 148:231–240
Carson MA, Clarke SA (2018) Bioactive compounds from marine organisms: potential for bone growth and healing. Mar Drugs 16:340
Castro P, Huber M (2019) Marine biology, 11th edn. McGraw-Hill Higher Education, Boston, MA
Cauchie H-M (2002) Chitin production by arthropods in the hydrosphere. Hydrobiologia 470:63–95

Changotade SIT, Korb G, Bassil J et al (2008) Potential effects of a low-molecular-weight fucoidan extracted from brown algae on bone biomaterial osteoconductive properties. J Biomed Mater Res A 87A:666–675

Chen WR, Adams RL, Carubelli R, Nordquist RE (1997) Laser-photosensitizer assisted immunotherapy: a novel modality for cancer treatment. Cancer Lett 115:25–30

Chen P-Y, Lin AY-M, McKittrick J, Meyers MA (2008) Structure and mechanical properties of crab exoskeletons. Acta Biomater 4:587–596

Chen J, Yu Q, Zhang G et al (2012) Preparation and biocompatibility of nanohybrid scaffolds by in situ homogeneous formation of nano hydroxyapatite from biopolymer polyelectrolyte complex for bone repair applications. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 93:100–107

Chen Q, Cordero-Arias L, Roether JA et al (2013) Alginate/Bioglass® composite coatings on stainless steel deposited by direct current and alternating current electrophoretic deposition. Surf Coat Technol 233:49–56

Chen Q, Cabanas-Polo S, Goudouri O-M, Boccaccini AR (2014) Electrophoretic co-deposition of polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) reinforced alginate–Bioglass® composite coating on stainless steel: mechanical properties and in-vitro bioactivity assessment. Mater Sci Eng C 40:55–64

Cheng S-Y, Chuang C-T, Wang S-K et al (2010) Antiviral and anti-inflammatory diterpenoids from the soft coral sinularia gyrosa. J Nat Prod 73:1184–1187

Choi DH, Park CH, Kim IH et al (2010) Fabrication of core–shell microcapsules using PLGA and alginate for dual growth factor delivery system. J Control Release 147:193–201

Chou J, Hao J, Hatoyama H et al (2013) The therapeutic effect on bone mineral formation from biomimetic zinc containing tricalcium phosphate (ZnTCP) in zinc-deficient osteoporotic mice. PLoS One 8:e71821

Cicco SR, Vona D, De Giglio E et al (2015) Chemically modified diatoms biosilica for bone cell growth with combined drug-delivery and antioxidant properties. ChemPlusChem 80:1104–1112

Cira LA, Huerta S, Hall GM, Shirai K (2002) Pilot scale lactic acid fermentation of shrimp wastes for chitin recovery. Process Biochem 37:1359–1366

Clarke SA, Walsh P (2014) 12—Marine organisms for bone repair and regeneration. In: Mallick K (ed) Bone substitute biomaterials. Woodhead Publishing, Cambridge, UK, pp 294–318

Clarke SA, Walsh P, Maggs CA, Buchanan F (2011) Designs from the deep: Marine organisms for bone tissue engineering. Biotechnol Adv 29:610–617

Clegg DO, Reda DJ, Harris CL et al (2006) Glucosamine, chondroitin sulfate, and the two in combination for painful knee osteoarthritis. N Engl J Med 354:795–808

Coathup MJ, Samizadeh S, Fang YS et al (2011) The osteoinductivity of silicate-substituted calcium phosphate. J Bone Joint Surg Am 93:2219–2226

Constantinides C, Manousakas T, Nikolopoulos P et al (2004) Prevention of recurrent bacterial cystitis by intravesical administration of hyaluronic acid: a pilot study. BJU Int 93:1262–1266

Costa LS, Fidelis GP, Cordeiro SL et al (2010) Biological activities of sulfated polysaccharides from tropical seaweeds. Biomed Pharmacother Biomedecine Pharmacother 64:21–28

Costa-Pinto AR, Reis RL, Neves NM (2011) Scaffolds based bone tissue engineering: the role of chitosan. Tissue Eng Part B Rev 17:331–347

Coughlin MJ, Grimes JS, Kennedy MP (2006) Coralline hydroxyapatite bone graft substitute in hindfoot surgery. Foot Ankle Int 27:19–22

Cruz M d A, Gabbai-Armelin PR, Santana A d F et al (2020) In vivo biological effects of marine biosilica on a tibial bone defect in rats. Braz Arch Biol Technol 63

Cui L, Liu B, Liu G et al (2007) Repair of cranial bone defects with adipose derived stem cells and coral scaffold in a canine model. Biomaterials 28:5477–5486

Decambron A, Fournet A, Bensidhoum M et al (2017) Low-dose BMP-2 and MSC dual delivery onto coral scaffold for critical-size bone defect regeneration in sheep. J Orthop Res 35:2637–2645

Değim Z, Celebi N, Sayan H et al (2002) An investigation on skin wound healing in mice with a taurine-chitosan gel formulation. Amino Acids 22:187–198

Devlieghere F, Vermeulen A, Debevere J (2004) Chitosan: antimicrobial activity, interactions with food components and applicability as a coating on fruit and vegetables. Food Microbiol 21:703–714

Diaz-Rodriguez P, Garcia-Triñanes P, Echezarreta López MM et al (2018) Mineralized alginate hydrogels using marine carbonates for bone tissue engineering applications. Carbohydr Polym 195:235–242

Disegi J, Richards R, Harris L (2005) Antimicrobial hyaluronic acid coatings for orthopedic implants. US Patent 20050220837

Do A-V, Akkouch A, Green B et al (2017) Controlled and sequential delivery of fluorophores from 3D printed alginate-PLGA tubes. Ann Biomed Eng 45:297–305

Donia M, Hamann MT (2003) Marine natural products and their potential applications as anti-infective agents. Lancet Infect Dis 3:338–348

Dorozhkin SV (2012) Biphasic, triphasic and multiphasic calcium orthophosphates. Acta Biomater 8:963–977

Dorozhkin SV, Epple M (2002) Biological and medical significance of calcium phosphates. Angew Chem Int Ed 41:3130–3146

Du B, Liu W, Deng Y et al (2015) Angiogenesis and bone regeneration of porous nano-hydroxyapatite/coralline blocks coated with rhVEGF165 in critical-size alveolar bone defects in vivo. Int J Nanomedicine 10:2555–2565

Duruel T, Çakmak AS, Akman A et al (2017) Sequential IGF-1 and BMP-6 releasing chitosan/alginate/PLGA hybrid scaffolds for periodontal regeneration. Int J Biol Macromol 104:232–241

Duy Huynh T, Gargiulo C, Vo V et al (2017) Reconstruction of bone defect with the coral scaffold and osteoblasts: an experimental study in rabbits. Eur J Biomed Pharm Sci 4:700–705

Egea J, García AG, Verges J et al (2010) Antioxidant, antiinflammatory and neuroprotective actions of chondroitin sulfate and proteoglycans. Osteoarthr Cartil 18:S24–S27

Ehrlich H (2015) Biological materials of marine origin: vertebrates. Springer, Netherlands

Ehrlich H, Etnoyer P, Litvinov SD et al (2006) Biomaterial structure in deep-sea bamboo coral (Anthozoa: Gorgonacea: Isididae): perspectives for the development of bone implants and templates for tissue engineering. Mater Werkst 37:552–557

Ehrlich H, Bazhenov VV, Debitus C et al (2017) Isolation and identification of chitin from heavy mineralized skeleton of Suberea clavata (Verongida: Demospongiae: Porifera) marine demosponge. Int J Biol Macromol 104:1706–1712

Einhorn TA, Gerstenfeld LC (2015) Fracture healing: mechanisms and interventions. Nat Rev Rheumatol 11:45–54

Elgadir MA, Uddin MS, Ferdosh S et al (2015) Impact of chitosan composites and chitosan nanoparticle composites on various drug delivery systems: a review. J Food Drug Anal 23:619–629

Eslaminejad MB, Mirzadeh H, Mohamadi Y, Nickmahzar A (2007) Bone differentiation of marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells using β-tricalcium phosphate–alginate–gelatin hybrid scaffolds. J Tissue Eng Regen Med 1:417–424

Fai AEC, Stamford TCM, Stamford-Arnaud TM et al (2011) Physico-chemical characteristics and functional properties of chitin and chitosan produced by Mucor circinelloides using yam bean as substrate. Mol Basel Switz 16:7143–7154

Fanovich MA, Porto Lopez JM (1998) Influence of temperature and additives on the microstructure and sintering behaviour of hydroxyapatites with different Ca/P ratios. J Mater Sci Mater Med 9:53–60

Fellah BH, Gauthier O, Weiss P et al (2008) Osteogenicity of biphasic calcium phosphate ceramics and bone autograft in a goat model. Biomaterials 29:1177–1188

Fernandes KR, Parisi JR, Magri AMP et al (2019) Influence of the incorporation of marine spongin into a Biosilicate®: an in vitro study. J Mater Sci Mater Med 30:64

Francis Suh J-K, Matthew HWT (2000) Application of chitosan-based polysaccharide biomaterials in cartilage tissue engineering: a review. Biomaterials 21:2589–2598

Freed LE, Vunjak-Novakovic G, Biron RJ et al (1994) Biodegradable polymer scaffolds for tissue engineering. Biotechnol Nat Publ Co 12:689–693

Frestedt JL, Kuskowski MA, Zenk JL (2009) A natural seaweed derived mineral supplement (Aquamin F) for knee osteoarthritis: a randomised, placebo controlled pilot study. Nutr J 8:7

Fu W, Noor MHM, Yusof LM et al (2017) In vitro evaluation of a novel pH sensitive drug delivery system based cockle shell-derived aragonite nanoparticles against osteosarcoma. J Exp Nanosci 12:166–187

Gabbai-Armelin PR, Cardoso DA, Zanotto ED et al (2014) Injectable composites based on biosilicate® and alginate: handling and in vitro characterization. RSC Adv 4:45778–45785

Galea G, Kopman D, Graham BJM (1998) Supply and demand of bone allograft for revision hip surgery in Scotland. J Bone Joint Surg Br 80-B:595–599

Gao Z, Chen F, Zhang J et al (2009) Vitalisation of tubular coral scaffolds with cell sheets for regeneration of long bones: a preliminary study in nude mice. Br J Oral Maxillofac Surg 47:116–122

García-Rocha M, Bonay P, Avila J (1996) The antitumoral compound Kahalalide F acts on cell lysosomes. Cancer Lett 99:43–50

Garg T, Singh O, Arora S, Murthy RSR (2012) Scaffold: a novel carrier for cell and drug delivery. Crit Rev Ther Drug Carr Syst 29

Geiger F, Lorenz H, Xu W et al (2007) VEGF producing bone marrow stromal cells (BMSC) enhance vascularization and resorption of a natural coral bone substitute. Bone 41:516–522

Gesty-Palmer D, Flannery P, Yuan L et al (2009) A β-arrestin–biased agonist of the parathyroid hormone receptor (PTH1R) promotes bone formation independent of G protein activation. Sci Transl Med 1:1ra1–1ra1

Ghosh SK, Nandi SK, Kundu B et al (2008) In vivo response of porous hydroxyapatite and β-tricalcium phosphate prepared by aqueous solution combustion method and comparison with bioglass scaffolds. J Biomed Mater Res B Appl Biomater 86B:217–227

Giannoudis PV, Einhorn TA, Marsh D (2007) Fracture healing: the diamond concept. Injury 38:S3–S6

Gilbert ME, Kirker KR, Gray SD et al (2004) Chondroitin sulfate hydrogel and wound healing in rabbit maxillary sinus mucosa. Laryngoscope 114:1406–1409

Glantschnig H, Scott K, Hampton R et al (2011) A rate-limiting role for dickkopf-1 in bone formation and the remediation of bone loss in mouse and primate models of postmenopausal osteoporosis by an experimental therapeutic antibody. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 338:568–578

Gomes D, Pereira M, Bettencourt AF (2013) Osteomyelitis: an overview of antimicrobial therapy. Braz J Pharm Sci 49:13–27

Gomez CG, Pérez Lambrecht MV, Lozano JE et al (2009) Influence of the extraction–purification conditions on final properties of alginates obtained from brown algae (Macrocystis pyrifera). Int J Biol Macromol 44:365–371

Goy RC, de Britto D, Assis OBG (2009) A review of the antimicrobial activity of chitosan. Polímeros 19:241–247

Granito RN, Custódio MR, Rennó ACM (2017) Natural marine sponges for bone tissue engineering: The state of art and future perspectives. J Biomed Mater Res B Appl Biomater 105:1717–1727

Gravel M, Vago R, Tabrizian M (2006) Use of natural coralline biomaterials as reinforcing and gas-forming agent for developing novel hybrid biomatrices: microarchitectural and mechanical studies. Tissue Eng 12:589–600

Green D, Walsh D, Mann S, Oreffo ROC (2002) The potential of biomimesis in bone tissue engineering: lessons from the design and synthesis of invertebrate skeletons. Bone 30:810–815

Green D, Howard D, Yang X et al (2003) Natural marine sponge fiber skeleton: a biomimetic scaffold for human osteoprogenitor cell attachment, growth, and differentiation. Tissue Eng 9:1159–1166

Griesshaber E, Schmahl WW, Neuser RD et al (2007) Crystallographic texture and microstructure of terebratulide brachiopod shell calcite: an optimized materials design with hierarchical architecture. Am Mineral:722–734

Grime PD, Bowerman JE, Weller PJ (1990) Gentamicin impregnated polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA) beads in the treatment of primary chronic osteomyelitis of the mandible. Br J Oral Maxillofac Surg 28:367–374

Guo H, Hong Z, Yi R (2015) Core-shell collagen peptide chelated calcium/calcium alginate nanoparticles from fish scales for calcium supplementation. J Food Sci 80:N1595–N1601

Hachim D, Whittaker TE, Kim H, Stevens MM (2019) Glycosaminoglycan-based biomaterials for growth factor and cytokine delivery: Making the right choices. J Control Release 313:131–147

Hamedi H, Moradi S, Hudson SM, Tonelli AE (2018) Chitosan based hydrogels and their applications for drug delivery in wound dressings: a review. Carbohydr Polym 199:445–460

Hannon RA, Clack G, Rimmer M et al (2010) Effects of the Src kinase inhibitor saracatinib (AZD0530) on bone turnover in healthy men: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multiple-ascending-dose phase I trial. J Bone Miner Res 25:463–471

Haug T, Kjuul AK, Styrvold OB et al (2002) Antibacterial activity in Strongylocentrotus droebachiensis (Echinoidea), Cucumaria frondosa (Holothuroidea), and Asterias rubens (Asteroidea). J Invertebr Pathol 81:94–102

Hayes M, Carney B, Slater J, Brück W (2008) Mining marine shellfish wastes for bioactive molecules: chitin and chitosan ndash; Part A: extraction methods. Biotechnol J 3:871–877

He F, Ren W, Tian X et al (2016) Comparative study on in vivo response of porous calcium carbonate composite ceramic and biphasic calcium phosphate ceramic. Mater Sci Eng C 64:117–123

Heinemann S, Ehrlich H, Douglas T et al (2007a) Ultrastructural studies on the collagen of the marine sponge chondrosia reniformis nardo. Biomacromolecules 8:3452–3457

Heinemann S, Ehrlich H, Knieb C, Hanke T (2007b) Biomimetically inspired hybrid materials based on silicified collagen. Int J Mater Res 98:603–608

Hejazi R, Amiji M (2003) Chitosan-based gastrointestinal delivery systems. J Control Release Off J Control Release Soc 89:151–165

Henrotin Y, Mathy M, Sanchez C, Lambert C (2010) Chondroitin sulfate in the treatment of osteoarthritis: from in vitro studies to clinical recommendations. Ther Adv Musculoskelet Dis 2:335–348

Holzapfel BM, Reichert JC, Schantz J-T et al (2013) How smart do biomaterials need to be? A translational science and clinical point of view. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 65:581–603

Hoque ME, Shehryar M, Islam KM (2013) Processing and characterization of cockle shell calcium carbonate (CaCO3) bioceramic for potential application in bone tissue engineering. J Mater Sci Eng 2. https://doi.org/10.4172/2169-0022.1000132

Hou R, Chen F, Yang Y et al (2007) Comparative study between coral-mesenchymal stem cells-rhBMP-2 composite and auto-bone-graft in rabbit critical-sized cranial defect model. J Biomed Mater Res A 80A:85–93

Hoyer B, Bernhardt A, Lode A et al (2014) Jellyfish collagen scaffolds for cartilage tissue engineering. Acta Biomater 10:883–892

Hutmacher DW (2000) Scaffolds in tissue engineering bone and cartilage. Biomaterials 21:2529–2543

Im KH, Park JH, Kim KN et al (2005) Organic-inorganic hybrids of hydroxyapatite with chitosan. Key Eng Mater 284–286:729–732

Im A-R, Sim J-S, Park Y-M et al (2009) Isolation and characterization of chondroitin sulfates from the byproducts of marine organisms. Food Sci Biotechnol 18:872–877

Ing LY, Zin NM, Sarwar A, Katas H (2012) Antifungal activity of chitosan nanoparticles and correlation with their physical properties. Int J Biomater. https://www.hindawi.com/journals/ijbm/2012/632698/. Accessed 15 Aug 2020

Iovu M, Dumais G, du Souich P (2008) Anti-inflammatory activity of chondroitin sulfate. Osteoarthr Cartil 16:S14–S18

Iyer SP, Beck JT, Stewart AK et al (2014) A Phase IB multicentre dose-determination study of BHQ880 in combination with anti-myeloma therapy and zoledronic acid in patients with relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma and prior skeletal-related events. Br J Haematol 167:366–375

Jeon O, Samorezov JE, Alsberg E (2014) Single and dual crosslinked oxidized methacrylated alginate/PEG hydrogels for bioadhesive applications. Acta Biomater 10:47–55

Jeong Park Y, Moo Lee Y, Nae Park S et al (2000) Platelet derived growth factor releasing chitosan sponge for periodontal bone regeneration. Biomaterials 21:153–159

Jeong H-S, Venkatesan J, Kim S-K (2013) Hydroxyapatite-fucoidan nanocomposites for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 57:138–141

Jesionowski T, Norman M, Żółtowska-Aksamitowska S et al (2018) Marine spongin: naturally prefabricated 3d scaffold-based biomaterial. Mar Drugs 16:88

Johnell O, Kanis JA (2006) An estimate of the worldwide prevalence and disability associated with osteoporotic fractures. Osteoporos Int 17:1726–1733

Josefsson G, Gudmundsson G, Kolmert L, Wijkström S (1990) Prophylaxis with systemic antibiotics versus gentamicin bone cement in total hip arthroplasty. A five-year survey of 1688 hips. Clin Orthop 1(253):173–178

Julia V, Maharani DA, Kartasasmita RE, Latief BSS (2016) The use of coral scaffold in oral and maxillofacial surgery: a review. J Int Dent Med Res 9:427–435

Kannan S, Rocha JHG, Agathopoulos S, Ferreira JMF (2007) Fluorine-substituted hydroxyapatite scaffolds hydrothermally grown from aragonitic cuttlefish bones. Acta Biomater 3:243–249

Kannan S, Goetz-Neunhoeffer F, Neubauer J, Ferreira JMF (2011) Cosubstitution of zinc and strontium in β-tricalcium phosphate: synthesis and characterization. J Am Ceram Soc 94:230–235

Kawamura H, Ito A, Miyakawa S et al (2000) Stimulatory effect of zinc-releasing calcium phosphate implant on bone formation in rabbit femora. J Biomed Mater Res 50:184–190

Khanafari A, Marandi RE, Sanati S (2008) Recovery of chitin and chitosan from shrimp waste by chemical and microbial methods. 5:19–24

Kim M-M, Mendis E, Rajapakse N et al (2009) Effect of spongin derived from hymeniacidon sinapium on bone mineralization. J Biomed Mater Res B Appl Biomater 90B:540–546

Kim B-S, Yang S-S, Lee J (2014) A polycaprolactone/cuttlefish bone-derived hydroxyapatite composite porous scaffold for bone tissue engineering. J Biomed Mater Res B Appl Biomater 102:943–951

Kim J-A, Karadeniz F, Ahn B-N et al (2016) Bioactive quinone derivatives from the marine brown alga Sargassum thunbergii induce anti-adipogenic and pro-osteoblastogenic activities. J Sci Food Agric 96:783–790

Kita M, Kondo M, Koyama T et al (2004) Symbioimine exhibiting inhibitory effect of osteoclast differentiation, from the symbiotic marine dinoflagellate Symbiodinium sp. J Am Chem Soc 126:4794–4795

Kolambkar YM, Dupont KM, Boerckel JD et al (2011) An alginate-based hybrid system for growth factor delivery in the functional repair of large bone defects. Biomaterials 32:65–74

Kong L, Gao Y, Lu G et al (2006) A study on the bioactivity of chitosan/nano-hydroxyapatite composite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Eur Polym J 42:3171–3179

Kose O, Arabaci T, Yemenoglu H et al (2016) Influences of fucoxanthin on alveolar bone resorption in induced periodontitis in rat molars. Mar Drugs 14:70

Kowapradit J, Opanasopit P, Ngawhirunpat T et al (2010) Methylated N-(4-N, N-dimethylaminocinnamyl) chitosan enhances paracellular permeability across Caco-2 cells. Drug Deliv 17:301–312

Krebs MD, Salter E, Chen E et al (2010) Calcium phosphate-DNA nanoparticle gene delivery from alginate hydrogels induces in vivo osteogenesis. J Biomed Mater Res A 92A:1131–1138

Kumari A, Yadav SK, Yadav SC (2010) Biodegradable polymeric nanoparticles based drug delivery systems. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 75:1–18

Kurita K (2006) Chitin and chitosan: functional biopolymers from marine crustaceans. Mar Biotechnol 8:203
Lahaye M, Robic A (2007) Structure and functional properties of ulvan, a polysaccharide from green seaweeds. Biomacromolecules 8:1765–1774
Lan G, Lu B, Wang T et al (2015) Chitosan/gelatin composite sponge is an absorbable surgical hemostatic agent. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 136:1026–1034
Langer R (2000) Biomaterials in drug delivery and tissue engineering: one laboratory's experience. Acc Chem Res 33:94–101
Laurienzo P (2010) Marine polysaccharides in pharmaceutical applications: an overview. Mar Drugs 8:2435–2465
Laza AL, Jaber M, Miehé-Brendlé J et al (2007) Green nanocomposites: synthesis and characterization. J Nanosci Nanotechnol 7:3207–3213
Lee Y-M, Park Y-J, Lee S-J et al (2000) The bone regenerative effect of platelet-derived growth factor-BB delivered with a chitosan/tricalcium phosphate sponge carrier. J Periodontol 71:418–424
Lee YS, Yang HO, Shin KH et al (2003) Suppression of tumor growth by a new glycosaminoglycan isolated from the African giant snail Achatina fulica. Eur J Pharmacol 465:191–198
Lee J-Y, Kim K-H, Shin S-Y et al (2006) Enhanced bone formation by transforming growth factor-β1-releasing collagen/chitosan microgranules. J Biomed Mater Res A 76A:530–539
Lee YH, Woo J-H, Choi SJ et al (2009) Effect of glucosamine or chondroitin sulfate on the osteoarthritis progression: a meta-analysis. Rheumatol Int 30:357
Lee S-U, Kwak HB, Pi S-H et al (2011) In vitro and in vivo osteogenic activity of largazole. ACS Med Chem Lett 2:248–251
Lee H, Ahn S-H, Kim GH (2012a) Three-dimensional collagen/alginate hybrid scaffolds functionalized with a drug delivery system (DDS) for bone tissue regeneration. Chem Mater 24:881–891
Lee H-S, Tsai S, Kuo C-C et al (2012b) Chitosan adsorption on hydroxyapatite and its role in preventing acid erosion. J Colloid Interface Sci 385:235–243
Leena RS, Vairamani M, Selvamurugan N (2017) Alginate/gelatin scaffolds incorporated with Silibinin-loaded chitosan nanoparticles for bone formation in vitro. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 158:308–318
Lemons JE (1996) Ceramics: past, present, and future. Bone 19:S121–S128
Levengood SKL, Zhang M (2014) Chitosan-based scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. J Mater Chem B 2:3161–3184
Li Z, Ramay HR, Hauch KD et al (2005) Chitosan–alginate hybrid scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Biomaterials 26:3919–3928
Li C, Qian Y, Zhao S et al (2016) Alginate/PEG based microcarriers with cleavable crosslinkage for expansion and non-invasive harvest of human umbilical cord blood mesenchymal stem cells. Mater Sci Eng C 64:43–53
Lignot B, Lahogue V, Bourseau P (2003) Enzymatic extraction of chondroitin sulfate from skate cartilage and concentration-desalting by ultrafiltration. J Biotechnol 103:281–284
Lin H-R, Yeh Y-J (2004) Porous alginate/hydroxyapatite composite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering: Preparation, characterization, and in vitro studies. J Biomed Mater Res B Appl Biomater 71B:52–65
Lin Z, Solomon KL, Zhang X et al (2011) In vitro evaluation of natural marine sponge collagen as a scaffold for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Sci 7:968–977
Liu G, Zhang Y, Liu B et al (2013) Bone regeneration in a canine cranial model using allogeneic adipose derived stem cells and coral scaffold. Biomaterials 34:2655–2664
López-Morales Y, Abarrategi A, Ramos V et al (2010) In vivo comparison of the effects of rhBMP-2 and rhBMP-4 in osteochondral tissue regeneration. Eur Cell Mater 20:367–378
Louisia S, Stromboni M, Meunier A et al (1999) Coral grafting supplemented with bone marrow. J Bone Joint Surg Br 81-B:719–724

Lowe B, Venkatesan J, Anil S et al (2016) Preparation and characterization of chitosan-natural nano hydroxyapatite-fucoidan nanocomposites for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 93:1479–1487

Lu H, Dai Y, Lv L, Zhao H (2014) Chitosan-graft-polyethylenimine/DNA nanoparticles as novel non-viral gene delivery vectors targeting osteoarthritis. PLoS One 9:e84703

Lu H-T, Lu T-W, Chen C-H et al (2018) Development of nanocomposite scaffolds based on biomineralization of N,O-carboxymethyl chitosan/fucoidan conjugates for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 120:2335–2345

Lu H-T, Lu T-W, Chen C-H, Mi F-L (2019) Development of genipin-crosslinked and fucoidan-adsorbed nano-hydroxyapatite/hydroxypropyl chitosan composite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 128:973–984

Luhmann T, Germershaus O, Groll J, Meinel L (2012) Bone targeting for the treatment of osteoporosis. J Control Release 161:198–213

Luo X, Fosmire G, Leach R (2002) Chicken keel cartilage as a source of chondroitin sulfate. Poult Sci 81:1086–1089

Luo X, Barbieri D, Davison N et al (2014) Zinc in calcium phosphate mediates bone induction: In vitro and in vivo model. Acta Biomater 10:477–485

Luo Y, Li Y, Qin X, Wa Q (2018) 3D printing of concentrated alginate/gelatin scaffolds with homogeneous nano apatite coating for bone tissue engineering. Mater Des 146:12–19

Malafaya PB, Reis RL (2009) Bilayered chitosan-based scaffolds for osteochondral tissue engineering: Influence of hydroxyapatite on in vitro cytotoxicity and dynamic bioactivity studies in a specific double-chamber bioreactor. Acta Biomater 5:644–660

Manassero M, Viateau V, Deschepper M et al (2013) Bone regeneration in sheep using acropora coral, a natural resorbable scaffold, and autologous mesenchymal stem cells. Tissue Eng Part A 19:1554–1563

Manoli F, Dalas E (2000) Calcium carbonate crystallization on xiphoid of the cuttlefish. J Cryst Growth 217:422–428

Martina M, Subramanyam G, Weaver JC et al (2005) Developing macroporous bicontinuous materials as scaffolds for tissue engineering. Biomaterials 26:5609–5616

Martins Shimojo AA, Santos Duarte A d S, Santos Duarte Lana JF et al (2019) Association of platelet-rich plasma and auto-crosslinked hyaluronic acid microparticles: approach for orthopedic application. Polymers 11:1568

Mata E, Igartua M, Patarroyo ME et al (2011) Enhancing immunogenicity to PLGA microparticulate systems by incorporation of alginate and RGD-modified alginate. Eur J Pharm Sci 44:32–40

Mattioli-Belmonte M, Gigante A, Muzzarelli RAA et al (1999) N,N-dicarboxymethyl chitosan as delivery agent for bone morphogenetic protein in the repair of articular cartilage. Med Biol Eng Comput 37:130–134

Mauck KF, Clarke BL (2006) Diagnosis, screening, prevention, and treatment of osteoporosis. Mayo Clin Proc 81:662–672

Medeiros GF, Mendes A, Castro RAB et al (2000) Distribution of sulfated glycosaminoglycans in the animal kingdom: widespread occurrence of heparin-like compounds in invertebrates. Biochim Biophys Acta BBA Gen Subj 1475:287–294

Millner RWJ, Lockhart AS, Bird H, Alexiou C (2009) A new hemostatic agent: initial life-saving experience with celox (chitosan) in cardiothoracic surgery. Ann Thorac Surg 87:e13–e14

Milovac D, Gallego Ferrer G, Ivankovic M, Ivankovic H (2014) PCL-coated hydroxyapatite scaffold derived from cuttlefish bone: morphology, mechanical properties and bioactivity. Mater Sci Eng C 34:437–445

Moreau JL, Xu HHK (2009) Mesenchymal stem cell proliferation and differentiation on an injectable calcium phosphate – Chitosan composite scaffold. Biomaterials 30:2675–2682

Morishige H, Sugahara T, Nishimoto S et al (2011) Immunostimulatory effects of collagen from jellyfish in vivo. Cytotechnology 63:481

Mosekilde L, Bak B (1993) The effects of growth hormone on fracture healing in rats: a histological description. Bone 14:19–27
Mou J, Li Q, Qi X, Yang J (2018) Structural comparison, antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties of fucosylated chondroitin sulfate of three edible sea cucumbers. Carbohydr Polym 185:41–47
Müller WEG, Wang X, Cui F-Z et al (2009) Sponge spicules as blueprints for the biofabrication of inorganic–organic composites and biomaterials. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 83:397–413
Müller WEG, Schröder HC, Feng Q et al (2015) Development of a morphogenetically active scaffold for three-dimensional growth of bone cells: biosilica–alginate hydrogel for SaOS-2 cell cultivation. J Tissue Eng Regen Med 9:E39–E50
Mygind T, Stiehler M, Baatrup A et al (2007) Mesenchymal stem cell ingrowth and differentiation on coralline hydroxyapatite scaffolds. Biomaterials 28:1036–1047
Nagaoka I, Tsuruta A, Yoshimura M (2019) Chondroprotective action of glucosamine, a chitosan monomer, on the joint health of athletes. Int J Biol Macromol 132:795–800
Nakano T, Ikawa N, Ozimek L (2000) An economical method to extract chondroitin sulphate-peptide from bovine nasal cartilage. Can Agric Eng 42:205–208
Nandi SK, Ghosh SK, Kundu B et al (2008a) Evaluation of new porous β-tri-calcium phosphate ceramic as bone substitute in goat model. Small Rumin Res 75:144–153
Nandi SK, Kundu B, Ghosh SK et al (2008b) Efficacy of nano-hydroxyapatite prepared by an aqueous solution combustion technique in healing bone defects of goat. J Vet Sci 9:183–191
Nandi SK, Mukherjee P, Roy S et al (2009) Local antibiotic delivery systems for the treatment of osteomyelitis – a review. Mater Sci Eng C 29:2478–2485
Nandi SK, Datta U, Biswas S (2013) Application of marine biomaterials in orthopedic and soft tissue surgical challenges. In: Marine biomaterials. CRC Press, Cambridge, UK, pp 582–595
Nandi SK, Kundu B, Mukherjee J et al (2015) Converted marine coral hydroxyapatite implants with growth factors: in vivo bone regeneration. Mater Sci Eng C 49:816–823
Nandini CD, Itoh N, Sugahara K (2005) Novel 70-kDa chondroitin sulfate/dermatan sulfate hybrid chains with a unique heterogenous sulfation pattern from shark skin, which exhibit neuritogenic activity and binding activities for growth factors and neurotrophic factors. J Biol Chem 280:4058–4069
Neto AS, Fonseca AC, Abrantes JCC et al (2019) Surface functionalization of cuttlefish bone-derived biphasic calcium phosphate scaffolds with polymeric coatings. Mater Sci Eng C 105:110014
Neves SC, Moreira Teixeira LS, Moroni L et al (2011) Chitosan/poly(ε-caprolactone) blend scaffolds for cartilage repair. Biomaterials 32:1068–1079
Ngo D-H, Kim S-K (2013) Sulfated polysaccharides as bioactive agents from marine algae. Int J Biol Macromol 62:70–75
Nie L, Nicolau DP, Nightingale CH et al (1995) In vitro elution of ofloxacin from a bioabsorbable polymer. Acta Orthop Scand 66:365–368
Nishimura S (2001) Chemical biology and biomedicine: general aspects. Glycosci Chem Chem Biol Vol-III. Springer
Nitta SK, Numata K (2013) Biopolymer-based nanoparticles for drug/gene delivery and tissue engineering. Int J Mol Sci 14:1629–1654
O'Gorman DM, Tierney CM, Brennan O, O'Brien FJ (2012) The marine-derived, multi-mineral formula, aquamin, enhances mineralisation of osteoblast cells in vitro. Phytother Res 26:375–380
Oliveira JM, Grech JMR, Leonor IB et al (2007) Calcium-phosphate derived from mineralized algae for bone tissue engineering applications. Mater Lett 61:3495–3499
Otsuka M, Ohshita Y, Marunaka S et al (2004) Effect of controlled zinc release on bone mineral density from injectable Zn-containing β-tricalcium phosphate suspension in zinc-deficient diseased rats. J Biomed Mater Res A 69A:552–560

Otsuka M, Oshinbe A, LeGeros RZ et al (2008) Efficacy of the injectable calcium phosphate ceramics suspensions containing magnesium, zinc and fluoride on the bone mineral deficiency in ovariectomized rats. J Pharm Sci 97:421–432

Özarslan AC, Yücel S (2016) Fabrication and characterization of strontium incorporated 3-D bioactive glass scaffolds for bone tissue from biosilica. Mater Sci Eng C 68:350–357

Palazzo B, Gallo A, Casillo A et al (2011) Fabrication, characterization and cell cultures on a novel composite chitosan-nano-hydroxyapatite scaffold. Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol 24:73–78

Pallela R, Venkatesan J, Janapala VR, Kim S-K (2012) Biophysicochemical evaluation of chitosan-hydroxyapatite-marine sponge collagen composite for bone tissue engineering. J Biomed Mater Res A 100A:486–495

Parisi JR, Fernandes KR, Avanzi IR et al (2019) Incorporation of collagen from marine sponges (spongin) into hydroxyapatite samples: characterization and in vitro biological evaluation. Mar Biotechnol 21:30–37

Parisi JR, Fernandes KR, Aparecida do Vale GC et al (2020) Marine spongin incorporation into Biosilicate® for tissue engineering applications: an in vivo study. J Biomater Appl 35:205–214

Park J, Lakes RS (2007) Biomaterials: an introduction, 3rd edn. Springer-Verlag, New York

Park YJ, Lee YM, Lee JY et al (2000) Controlled release of platelet-derived growth factor-BB from chondroitin sulfate–chitosan sponge for guided bone regeneration. J Control Release 67:385–394

Patel MP, Patel RR, Patel JK (2010) Chitosan mediated targeted drug delivery system: a review. J Pharm Pharm Sci 13:536–557

Peng Y-S, Lin S-C, Huang S-J et al (2006) Chondroitin sulfate-based anti-inflammatory macromolecular prodrugs. Eur J Pharm Sci 29:60–69

Pettit GR, Flahive EJ, Boyd MR et al (1998) Antineoplastic agents 360. Synthesis and cancer cell growth inhibitory studies of dolastatin 15 structural modifications. Anticancer Drug Des 13:47–66

Ponnapakkam T, Katikaneni R, Sakon J et al (2014) Treating osteoporosis by targeting parathyroid hormone to bone. Drug Discov Today 19:204–208

Prabhakar V, Sasisekharan R (2006) The biosynthesis and catabolism of galactosaminoglycans. In: Advances in pharmacology. Academic Press, Cambridge, UK, pp 69–115

Prasanna APS, Venkatasubbu GD (2018) Sustained release of amoxicillin from hydroxyapatite nanocomposite for bone infections. Prog Biomater 7:289–296

Qian S, Zhang Q, Wang Y et al (2013) Bioavailability enhancement of glucosamine hydrochloride by chitosan. Int J Pharm 455:365–373

Qian Z-J, Ryu B, Kang K-H et al (2018) Cellular properties of the fermented microalgae Pavlova lutheri and its isolated active peptide in osteoblastic differentiation of MG-63 cells. Mol Med Rep 17:2044–2050

Rafienia M, Saberi A, Poorazizi E (2017) A novel fabrication of PVA/Alginate-Bioglass electrospun for biomedical engineering application. Nanomedicine J 4:152–163

Rao MS, Stevens WF (2006) Fermentation of shrimp biowaste under different salt concentrations with amylolytic and non-amylolytic lactobacillus strains for chitin production. Food Technol Biotechnol 44:83–87

Rederstorff E, Weiss P, Sourice S et al (2011) An in vitro study of two GAG-like marine polysaccharides incorporated into injectable hydrogels for bone and cartilage tissue engineering. Acta Biomater 7:2119–2130

Reed S, Wu BM (2017) Biological and mechanical characterization of chitosan-alginate scaffolds for growth factor delivery and chondrogenesis. J Biomed Mater Res B Appl Biomater 105:272–282

Reese MT, Gulavita NK, Nakao Y et al (1996) Kulolide: a cytotoxic depsipeptide from a cephalaspidean mollusk, Philinopsis speciosa1. J Am Chem Soc 118:11081–11084

Reyes R, Delgado A, Sánchez E et al (2014) Repair of an osteochondral defect by sustained delivery of BMP-2 or TGFβ1 from a bilayered alginate–PLGA scaffold. J Tissue Eng Regen Med 8:521–533

Rezwan K, Chen QZ, Blaker JJ, Boccaccini AR (2006) Biodegradable and bioactive porous polymer/inorganic composite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Biomaterials 27:3413–3431
Ringe J, Kaps C, Burmester G-R, Sittinger M (2002) Stem cells for regenerative medicine: advances in the engineering of tissues and organs. Naturwissenschaften 89:338–351
Rocha JHG, Lemos AF, Agathopoulos S et al (2005) Scaffolds for bone restoration from cuttlefish. Bone 37:850–857
Roskoski R (2015) Src protein-tyrosine kinase structure, mechanism, and small molecule inhibitors. Pharmacol Res 94:9–25
Roth A, Mollenhauer J, Wagner A et al (2005) Intra-articular injections of high-molecular-weight hyaluronic acid have biphasic effects on joint inflammation and destruction in rat antigen-induced arthritis. Arthritis Res Ther 7:R677
Ruckle J, Jacobs M, Kramer W et al (2009) Single-dose, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of ACE-011 (ActRIIA-IgG1) in postmenopausal women. J Bone Miner Res 24:744–752
Ryu B, Li Y-X, Kang K-H et al (2015) Floridoside from Laurencia undulata promotes osteogenic differentiation in murine bone marrow mesenchymal cells. J Funct Foods 19:505–511
Sadozai K, Sherwood C, Bui K, et al (2007) Treatment of arthritis and other musculoskeletal disorders with crosslinked hyaluronic acid. US Patent US20190183920
Saltzman WM, Olbricht WL (2002) Building drug delivery into tissue engineering design. Nat Rev Drug Discov 1:177–186
Schiraldi C, Cimini D, De Rosa M (2010) Production of chondroitin sulfate and chondroitin. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 87:1209–1220
Schlossberg D (ed) (1988) Orthopedic Infection. Springer-Verlag, New York
Schröder HC, Wang X, Tremel W et al (2008) Biofabrication of biosilica-glass by living organisms. Nat Prod Rep 25:455–474
Senthilkumar K, Venkatesan J, Kim S-K (2014) Marine derived natural products for osteoporosis. Biomed Prev Nutr 4:1–7
Seol Y-J, Lee J-Y, Park Y-J et al (2004) Chitosan sponges as tissue engineering scaffolds for bone formation. Biotechnol Lett 26:1037–1041
Sharma B, Elisseeff JH (2004) Engineering structurally organized cartilage and bone tissues. Ann Biomed Eng 32:148–159
Shavandi A, Bekhit AE-DA, Sun Z, Ali MA (2016) Injectable gel from squid pen chitosan for bone tissue engineering applications. J Sol-Gel Sci Technol 77:675–687
Shin JM, Kim S-H, Thambi T et al (2014) A hyaluronic acid–methotrexate conjugate for targeted therapy of rheumatoid arthritis. Chem Commun 50:7632–7635
Silva TH, Alves A, Popa EG et al (2012) Marine algae sulfated polysaccharides for tissue engineering and drug delivery approaches. Biomatter 2:278–289
Smelcerovic A, Knezevic-Jugovic Z, Petronijevic Z (2008) Microbial polysaccharides and their derivatives as current and prospective pharmaceuticals. Curr Pharm Des 14:3168–3195
Sogo Y, Sakurai T, Onuma K, Ito A (2002) The most appropriate (Ca+Zn)/P molar ratio to minimize the zinc content of ZnTCP/HAP ceramic used in the promotion of bone formation. J Biomed Mater Res 62:457–463
Son KD, Kim Y-J (2017) Anticancer activity of drug-loaded calcium phosphate nanocomposites against human osteosarcoma. Biomater Res 21:13
Song E, Yeon Kim S, Chun T et al (2006) Collagen scaffolds derived from a marine source and their biocompatibility. Biomaterials 27:2951–2961
Sotome S, Uemura T, Kikuchi M et al (2004) Synthesis and in vivo evaluation of a novel hydroxyapatite/collagen–alginate as a bone filler and a drug delivery carrier of bone morphogenetic protein. Mater Sci Eng C 24:341–347
Srivastava A, Srivastava A, Srivastava A, Chandra P (2015) Marine biomaterials in therapeutics and diagnostic. In: Kim S-K (ed) Springer handbook of marine biotechnology. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, pp 1247–1263

Stabile DE, Jacobs AM (1990) Development and application of antibiotic-loaded bone cement beads. J Am Podiatr Med Assoc 80:354–359. https://doi.org/10.7547/87507315-80-7-354
Subhan F, Ikram M, Shehzad A, Ghafoor A (2015) Marine collagen: an emerging player in biomedical applications. J Food Sci Technol 52:4703–4707
Suttisuwan R, Phunpruch S, Saisavoey T et al (2019) Isolation and characterization of anti-inflammatory peptides derived from trypsin hydrolysis of microalgae protein (Synechococcus sp. VDW). Food Biotechnol 33:303–324
Svenskaya Y, Parakhonskiy B, Haase A et al (2013) Anticancer drug delivery system based on calcium carbonate particles loaded with a photosensitizer. Biophys Chem 182:11–15
Synowiecki J, Al-Khateeb NA (2003) Production, properties, and some new applications of chitin and its derivatives. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 43:145–171
Tamburaci S, Tihminlioglu F (2018) Biosilica incorporated 3D porous scaffolds for bone tissue engineering applications. Mater Sci Eng C Mater Biol Appl 91:274–291
Tampieri A, Celotti G, Szontagh F, Landi E (1997) Sintering and characterization of HA and TCP bioceramics with control of their strength and phase purity. J Mater Sci Mater Med 8:29–37
Tanase CE, Popa MI, Verestiuc L (2012) Biomimetic chitosan–calcium phosphate composites with potential applications as bone substitutes: preparation and characterization. J Biomed Mater Res B Appl Biomater 100B:700–708
Teeple E, Elsaid KA, Jay GD et al (2011) Effects of supplemental intra-articular lubricin and hyaluronic acid on the progression of posttraumatic arthritis in the anterior cruciate ligament–deficient rat knee. Am J Sports Med 39:164–172
Teng WL, Khor E, Tan TK et al (2001) Concurrent production of chitin from shrimp shells and fungi. Carbohydr Res 332:305–316
Thein-Han WW, Misra RDK (2009) Biomimetic chitosan–nanohydroxyapatite composite scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Acta Biomater 5:1182–1197
Thomas CE, Ehrhardt A, Kay MA (2003) Progress and problems with the use of viral vectors for gene therapy. Nat Rev Genet 4:346–358
Tiyaboonchai W (2003) Chitosan nanoparticles: a promising system for drug delivery. Naresuan Univ J:51–66
Tokudome Y, Ito A, Otsuka M (2011) Effect of zinc-containing β-tricalcium phosphate nano particles injection on jawbone mineral density and mechanical strength of osteoporosis model rats. Biol Pharm Bull 34:1215–1218
Trafny EA, Stepińska M, Antos M, Grzybowski J (1995) Effects of free and liposome-encapsulated antibiotics on adherence of Pseudomonas aeruginosa to collagen type I. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 39:2645–2649
Trafny EA, Grzybowski J, Olszowska-golec M et al (1996) Anti-pseudomonal activity of collagen sponge with liposomal polymyxin B. Pharmacol Res 33:63–65
Tran CT, Gargiulo C, Thao HD et al (2011) Culture and differentiation of osteoblasts on coral scaffold from human bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells. Cell Tissue Bank 12:247–261
Trif M, Moldovan L, Moisei M et al (2008) Liposomes-entrapped chondroitin sulphate: ultrastructural characterization and in vitro biocompatibility. Micron 39:1042–1045
Tripathi A, Saravanan S, Pattnaik S et al (2012) Bio-composite scaffolds containing chitosan/nano-hydroxyapatite/nano-copper–zinc for bone tissue engineering. Int J Biol Macromol 50:294–299
Tsai G, Su W-H, Chen H-C, Pan C-L (2002) Antimicrobial activity of shrimp chitin and chitosan from different treatments. Fish Sci 68:170–177
Turco G, Marsich E, Bellomo F et al (2009) Alginate/hydroxyapatite biocomposite for bone ingrowth: a trabecular structure with high and isotropic connectivity. Biomacromolecules 10:1575–1583
Tzioupis C, Giannoudis PV (2007) Prevalence of long-bone non-unions. Injury 38(Suppl 2):S3–S9
Uebelhart D, Malaise M, Marcolongo R et al (2004) Intermittent treatment of knee osteoarthritis with oral chondroitin sulfate: a one-year, randomized, double-blind, multicenter study versus placebo. Osteoarthr Cartil 12:269–276

Uskoković V, Desai TA (2014a) Nanoparticulate drug delivery platforms for advancing bone infection therapies. Expert Opin Drug Deliv 11:1899–1912
Uskoković V, Desai TA (2014b) In vitro analysis of nanoparticulate hydroxyapatite/chitosan composites as potential drug delivery platforms for the sustained release of antibiotics in the treatment of osteomyelitis. J Pharm Sci 103:567–579
Ustyuzhanina NE, Bilan MI, Dmitrenok AS et al (2017) The structure of a fucosylated chondroitin sulfate from the sea cucumber Cucumaria frondosa. Carbohydr Polym 165:7–12
Vago R (2008) Beyond the skeleton. Organogenesis 4:18–22
van der Lubben IM, Verhoef JC, Borchard G, Junginger HE (2001) Chitosan and its derivatives in mucosal drug and vaccine delivery. Eur J Pharm Sci 14:201–207
Vázquez JA, Rodríguez-Amado I, Montemayor MI et al (2013) Chondroitin sulfate, hyaluronic acid and chitin/chitosan production using marine waste sources: characteristics, applications and eco-friendly processes: a review. Mar Drugs 11:747–774
Vázquez JA, Fraguas J, Novoa-Carvallal R et al (2018) Isolation and chemical characterization of chondroitin sulfate from cartilage by-products of blackmouth catshark (Galeus melastomus). Mar Drugs 16:344
Vázquez JA, Fraguas J, Novoa-Carballal R et al (2019) Optimal isolation and characterisation of chondroitin sulfate from rabbit fish (Chimaera monstrosa). Carbohydr Polym 210:302–313
Venkatesan J, Bhatnagar I, Kim S-K (2014a) Chitosan-alginate biocomposite containing fucoidan for bone tissue engineering. Mar Drugs 12:300–316
Venkatesan J, Nithya R, Sudha PN, Kim S-K (2014b) Chapter 4—Role of alginate in bone tissue engineering. In: Kim S-K (ed) Advances in food and nutrition research. Academic Press, Cambridge, UK, pp 45–57
Venkatesan J, Pallela R, Kim S-K (2014c) Dispersion of Single walled carbon nanotubes in marine polysaccharides for bone tissue engineering. J Biomater Tissue Eng 4:501–505. https://doi.org/10.1166/jbt.2014.1187
Venkatesan J, Bhatnagar I, Manivasagan P et al (2015) Alginate composites for bone tissue engineering: a review. Int J Biol Macromol 72:269–281
Venkatesan J, Anil S, Kim S-K, Shim MS (2017) Chitosan as a vehicle for growth factor delivery: Various preparations and their applications in bone tissue regeneration. Int J Biol Macromol 104:1383–1397
Venkatesan J, Rekha PD, Anil S et al (2018) Hydroxyapatite from cuttlefish bone: isolation, characterizations, and applications. Biotechnol Bioprocess Eng 23:383–393
Vergaro V, Papadia P, Leporatti S et al (2015) Synthesis of biocompatible polymeric nano-capsules based on calcium carbonate: a potential cisplatin delivery system. J Inorg Biochem 153:284–292
Villasin J, Pomory CM (2000) Antibacterial activity of extracts from the body wall of Parastichopus parvimensis (Echinodermata: Holothuroidea). Fish Shellfish Immunol 10:465–467
Volpi N, Dondi M, Bolognani AMF (1998) Characterization of a small chondroitin sulfate proteoglycan isolated from the mucus surrounding the embryos of Viviparus ater (Mollusca Gastropoda). Biochim Biophys Acta BBA Gen Subj 1380:239–248
Wang L-C, Chen X-G, Zhong D-Y, Xu Q-C (2007) Study on poly(vinyl alcohol)/carboxymethyl-chitosan blend film as local drug delivery system. J Mater Sci Mater Med 18:1125–1133
Wang X, Schröder HC, Wiens M et al (2012) Bio-silica and bio-polyphosphate: applications in biomedicine (bone formation). Curr Opin Biotechnol 23:570–578
Wang X, Schröder HC, Feng Q et al (2013) The deep-sea natural products, biogenic polyphosphate (Bio-PolyP) and biogenic silica (Bio-Silica), as biomimetic scaffolds for bone tissue engineering: fabrication of a morphogenetically-active polymer. Mar Drugs 11:718–746
Wang H, Liu J, Yin Y et al (2014a) Recombinant human parathyroid hormone related protein 1-34 and 1-84 and their roles in osteoporosis treatment. PLoS One 9:e88237
Wang S, Wang X, Draenert FG et al (2014b) Bioactive and biodegradable silica biomaterial for bone regeneration. Bone 67:292–304

Weir MD, Xu HHK (2010) Osteoblastic induction on calcium phosphate cement–chitosan constructs for bone tissue engineering. J Biomed Mater Res A 94A:223–233

White RA, Weber JN, White EW (1972) Replamineform: a new process for preparing porous ceramic, metal, and polymer prosthetic materials. Science 176:922–924

Widaa A, Brennan O, O'Gorman DM, O'Brien FJ (2014) The osteogenic potential of the marine-derived multi-mineral formula aquamin is enhanced by the presence of vitamin D. Phytother Res 28:678–684

Wiens M, Wang X, Schloßmacher U et al (2010) Osteogenic potential of biosilica on human osteoblast-like (SaOS-2) cells. Calcif Tissue Int 87:513–524

Wilson OC, Hull JR (2008) Surface modification of nanophase hydroxyapatite with chitosan. Mater Sci Eng C 28:434–437

Woo J-T, Yonezawa T, Cha B-Y et al (2008) Pharmacological topics of bone metabolism: antiresorptive microbial compounds that inhibit osteoclast differentiation, function, and survival. J Pharmacol Sci 106:547–554

Wright NC, Looker AC, Saag KG et al (2014) The recent prevalence of osteoporosis and low bone mass in the United States based on bone mineral density at the femoral neck or lumbar spine. J Bone Miner Res 29:2520–2526

Xia Y, Mei F, Duan Y et al (2012) Bone tissue engineering using bone marrow stromal cells and an injectable sodium alginate/gelatin scaffold. J Biomed Mater Res A 100A:1044–1050

Xiao C, Zhou H, Liu G et al (2011) Bone marrow stromal cells with a combined expression of BMP-2 and VEGF-165 enhanced bone regeneration. Biomed Mater 6:015013

Xu HHK, Weir MD, Simon CG (2008) Injectable and strong nano-apatite scaffolds for cell/growth factor delivery and bone regeneration. Dent Mater 24:1212–1222

Y Maximov P, M Lee T, Craig Jordan V (2013) The discovery and development of selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERMs) for clinical practice. Curr Clin Pharmacol 8:135–155

Yamada S, Morimoto H, Fujisawa T, Sugahara K (2007) Glycosaminoglycans in Hydra magnipapillata (Hydrozoa, Cnidaria): demonstration of chondroitin in the developing nematocyst, the sting organelle, and structural characterization of glycosaminoglycans. Glycobiology 17:886–894

Yan P, Lv Y, van Ofwegen L et al (2010) Lobophytones A−G, new isobiscembranoids from the soft coral lobophytum pauciflorum. Org Lett 12:2484–2487

Yang T, Wan Z, Liu Z et al (2016) In situ mineralization of anticancer drug into calcium carbonate monodisperse nanospheres and their pH-responsive release property. Mater Sci Eng C 63:384–392

Yeh T-H, Hsu L-W, Tseng MT et al (2011) Mechanism and consequence of chitosan-mediated reversible epithelial tight junction opening. Biomaterials 32:6164–6173

Yilgor P, Tuzlakoglu K, Reis RL et al (2009) Incorporation of a sequential BMP-2/BMP-7 delivery system into chitosan-based scaffolds for bone tissue engineering. Biomaterials 30:3551–3559

Yin H, Du Y, Zhang J (2009) Low Molecular Weight and Oligomeric Chitosans and Their Bioactivities. Curr Top Med Chem 9:1546–1559

Yonezawa T, Mase N, Sasaki H et al (2012) Biselyngbyaside, isolated from marine cyanobacteria, inhibits osteoclastogenesis and induces apoptosis in mature osteoclasts. J Cell Biochem 113:440–448

Yoon W-J, Heo S-J, Han S-C et al (2012a) Anti-inflammatory effect of sargachromanol G isolated from Sargassum siliquastrum in RAW 264.7 cells. Arch Pharm Res 35:1421–1430

Yoon W-J, Heo S-J, Han S-C et al (2012b) Sargachromanol G regulates the expression of osteoclastogenic factors in human osteoblast-like MG-63 cells. Food Chem Toxicol 50:3273–3279

Yoon W-J, Kim K-N, Heo S-J et al (2013) Sargachromanol G inhibits osteoclastogenesis by suppressing the activation NF-κB and MAPKs in RANKL-induced RAW 264.7 cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 434:892–897

Yu H-D, Zhang Z-Y, Win KY et al (2010) Bioinspired fabrication of 3D hierarchical porous nanomicrostructures of calcium carbonate for bone regeneration. Chem Commun 46:6578–6580
Yuan J, Zhang WJ, Liu G et al (2009) Repair of canine mandibular bone defects with bone marrow stromal cells and coral. Tissue Eng Part A 16:1385–1394
Zafirau W, Parker D, Billotte W, Bajpai PK (1996) Development of a ceramic device for the continuous local delivery of steroids. Biomed Sci Instrum 32:63–70
Zhang Y, Ni M, Zhang M, Ratner B (2003) Calcium Phosphate—Chitosan Composite Scaffolds for Bone Tissue Engineering. Tissue Eng 9:337–345
Zhang H, Tao Y, Guo J et al (2011) Hypolipidemic effects of chitosan nanoparticles in hyperlipidemia rats induced by high fat diet. Int Immunopharmacol 11:457–461
Zhang J, Zhang W, Mamadouba B, Xia W (2012) A comparative study on hypolipidemic activities of high and low molecular weight chitosan in rats. Int J Biol Macromol 51:504–508
Zhang W, Zhang J, Jiang Q, Xia W (2013) The hypolipidemic activity of chitosan nanopowder prepared by ultrafine milling. Carbohydr Polym 95:487–491
Zhang J, Duan R, Huang L et al (2014) Characterisation of acid-soluble and pepsin-solubilised collagen from jellyfish (Cyanea nozakii Kishinouye). Food Chem 150:22–26
Zhang Y, Wang J, Ma Y et al (2017) Preparation and biocompatibility of demineralized bone matrix/sodium alginate putty. Cell Tissue Bank 18:205–216
Zhao D, Liu C-J, Zhuo R-X, Cheng S-X (2012) Alginate/CaCO3 Hybrid nanoparticles for efficient codelivery of antitumor gene and drug. Mol Pharm 9:2887–2893
Zhao Y, Luo Z, Li M et al (2015) A preloaded amorphous calcium carbonate/doxorubicin@silica nanoreactor for pH-responsive delivery of an anticancer drug. Angew Chem Int Ed 54:919–922
Zheng L-Y, Zhu J-F (2003) Study on antimicrobial activity of chitosan with different molecular weights. Carbohydr Polym 54:527–530

Prasenjit Mukherjee is an assistant professor (Veterinary Surgery & Radiology) of West Bengal University of Animal & Fishery Sciences, where he has been a faculty since 2013. He obtained his B.V.Sc. & A.H. degree in 2002 from the same university. He achieved his M.V.Sc. and Ph.D. in Veterinary Surgery & Radiology consecutively in 2004 and 2008. He has worked as Senior Research Fellow in DST-funded project in collaboration with Central Glass and Ceramic Research Institute, Jadavpur, Kolkata, for 2 years. He has also worked as a Veterinary Officer in Govt. of West Bengal since 2009–2013. He has achieved CSIR-CGCRI Diamond Jubilee Award for Best paper Award on Material Science in 2011. His area of expertise is orthopedic surgery. He has contributed book chapters, international and national review, and research articles on tissue engineering, biomaterials, and drug delivery related to orthopedic applications in several books and journals. He has participated in many national and international conferences, workshops, training, and seminars as organizer and participants. Presently, he is attached with DBT-funded research project on peptide-based nanomedicine for blood clotting and wound healing in collaboration with IISER, Kolkata, as co-principal investigator.

Subhasis Roy is working as assistant professor (Veterinary Surgery & Radiology) of West Bengal University of Animal & Fishery Sciences, where he has been a faculty since 2019. He obtained his B.V.Sc. & A.H. degree in 2002 from the same university. He achieved his M.V.Sc. and Ph.D. in Veterinary Surgery & Radiology consecutively in 2004 and 2008. He has obtained PGDAEM in the year 2012. His area of expertise is oncology and orthopedic surgery. He has worked as Senior Research Fellow in ICAR-funded project for 3 years. He has also worked as assistant manager in Veterinary Service in Royal Calcutta Turf Club, Calcutta Race Course for nearly 1 year. He also served Nimpith Krishi Vigyan Kendra as subject matter specialist for 9 years. He has got one patent on marine biomaterials for its use in cancer treatment. Ha has been serving as a member of Institutional Animal Ethical Committee of Chittaranjan National Cancer Institute and Calcutta Medical College for last two years. He has achieved CSIR-CGCRI Diamond Jubilee Award for Best paper Award on Material Science in 2011. He has got Appreciation Award in Orthopaedic Surgery Session for paper presentation in XXXV Annual Congress of Indian Society for Veterinary Surgery in the year 2012. He has contributed book chapters, international and national review, and research articles on oncology, tissue engineering, biomaterials, and drug delivery related to orthopedic applications in several books and journals. He has participated in many national and international conferences, workshops, training, and seminars as organizer and participants.

Biswanath Kundu is a principal scientist from CSIR-Central Glass and Ceramic Research Institute, Kolkata, India, where his main field of activities include bioceramics, more specifically to synthesis, characterization of different nano-calcium phosphate-based materials, bioactive glass materials, etc., which are used to develop new and tailor-made materials with specific end use, for example, bone graft, bone tissue engineering, soft tissue engineering, orbital implants, drug delivery system for local, sustained releasing, and active or passive targeting. He has extensive research experience in the areas of design and fabrication of different implants both in dense and porous forms by different techniques, which are utilized to develop tailor-made implants for huge numbers of ailing patients of India. Dr. Kundu has developed and transferred as many as 6 numbers of technologies to Indian industries on manufacturing different biomedical products, which are available in Indian market since 2005. He has received many prestigious awards and recognitions from Government of India, which include MRSI Young Scientist Awards, CSIR Best Technology Award, and Best Technology Transfer Awards including many poster and oral research papers. Dr. Kundu has published more than 80 numbers SCI journal papers with 7 book chapters in his credit. An h-index of 26 with i-10 index of 43 marks his research significance. He is also holding 5 numbers of Indian patents on many biomedical products.

Samit Kumar Nandi Dr. Nandi is a full professor and Head of the Department of Veterinary Surgery and Radiology at West Bengal University of Animal & Fishery Sciences (WBUAFS), Kolkata, India. He worked as Adjunct Faculty at the School of Mechanical and Materials Engineering, Washington State University, Pullman, USA. He received several National Awards from his country. He has supervised/supervising over 45 Master's and 11 Ph.D. students in Veterinary Surgery & Radiology and allied subjects. He has contributed more than 130 scientific research papers in National and International journals of repute, 3 books, and 16 International book chapters and granted patents. He is a reviewer of number of journals all over the globe. He has given several invited and lead presentations in various National and International symposia, National Institutes, and laboratories. Dr. Nandi is Fellow of National Academy of Agricultural Sciences, Indian Association for the Advancement of Veterinary Research, Indian Society for Veterinary Surgery, Society of Applied Biotechnology, and Member of National Academy of Sciences, India and National Academy of Veterinary Sciences, India.

Expanding Role of Marine Natural Compounds in Immunomodulation: Challenges and Future Perspectives

10

Pavani Sanapala, Sudhakar Pola, N. Nageswara Rao Reddy, and Veera Bramchari Pallaval

Abstract

Marine flora is a source of novel compounds with biological activities. Over the years, thousands of marine organisms evolved in the habitat where each of them competes for a space of living, attachment, and survival. Many new compounds have been extracted from diverging marine organisms and were tested for therapeutic and pharmacological effects, where many are now available commercially. The screening of marine metabolites for antiviral, cancer, anti-inflammation, antimicrobial, and immunomodulation yielded a significant number of active crude and organic extract. The discovered compounds are taken into the marketplace with low cost-effective treatments. Gene modification at the laboratory level also helps in getting a potent compound capable of modulating the disease's biological pathway. New advanced techniques in culturing and extracting promising results should be of great concern and new trend for modern medicine. The secondary metabolites or the natural products derived from marine sources till now target bioactivities such as direct inhibition of enzymes in DNA synthesis and transcription. Few hinder metastasis by allocating as inhibitors, for example, matrix metalloprotease inhibitor. Few others have cytotoxic activity, while others obstruct the cell cycle phases or Rho-GTPase opposing tumor development. Here, the chapter gives detailed literature on the marine natural products

P. Sanapala · S. Pola (✉)
Department of Biotechnology, Andhra University, Visakhapatnam, AP, India
e-mail: sudhakar@andhrauniversity.edu.in

N. Nageswara Rao Reddy
Department of Biochemistry and Bioinformatics, GITAM Institute of Science, Gandhi Institute of Technology and Management, Visakhapatnam, AP, India

V. B. Pallaval
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, AP, India

S. Jana, S. Jana (eds.), *Marine Biomaterials*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-5374-2_10

discovered and illustrating their immunomodulation activities against various infectious, chronic, and nonchronic diseases and provides information about challenges and future perspectives.

Keywords

Immunomodulators · Marine flora · Antiviral agents · Marine drugs · Bioactive compounds · Anti-inflammatory activity · Cytotoxicity

10.1 Introduction

A result of modern biological variation is due to evolution happening from billions of years. Acclimatizing the habitat and optimizing the defense mechanism are obligatory to plants and animals because of the biological variations and processes. So far, 1.75 million species have been known as per the World Conservation Monitoring Centre reports (Groombridge and Jenkins 2000), yet researchers guesstimate the number to be fifty times more. Water bodies worldwide wharf a range of organisms with a majority of marine species dwelling in the vent communities and ocean fringe. These organisms have deficient substantial defense mechanisms due to controlled mobility, such as sessile organisms such as algae, sponges, corals competing for nutrients, anchoring, and survival. However, the organisms have a very complicated chemical defense mechanism based on the production of toxic derivatives such as sugar metabolites, alkaloids, peptides, steroids, and terpenoids. Over several thousand years, humankind has known the therapeutic potential of marine organisms and the active compounds able of effective biological activities. However, the interest in investigating and exploring marine-derived compounds and natural products has started from half a century ago. From the time, marine species, namely bacteria, sponges, algae, fungi, ascidians, corals, and many more, have been the understudy for the natural product content (Bhadury et al. 2006; Prudhomme et al. 2008).

Natural products are generally low molecular weight compounds referred to as secondary metabolites. Secondary metabolites are uncommon in comparison with primary metabolites. They are resultant of primary metabolisms such as amino acids, acetic acid, sugars, and biological alterations. Secondary metabolites from marine organisms have novel structures that include phenols, terpenoids, polyketides, steroids, alkaloids, proteins, few carbohydrates, and lipids with prominent pharmacological and biological activity. Based on biological function, secondary metabolites are further categorized as hormones, pheromones, antibiotics, oxylipins, toxins, phytoalexins, and so forth. The exploration of natural products is of ecological significance. However, few isolated marine compounds are known but differ from terrestrial due to the alerting variation in their secondary metabolism. Hence, isolating and synthesizing the marine-derived compounds are of great challenge to the researchers as the study joins up various biological techniques of almost all sciences. An imperative role played by natural products in recent years is the

establishment of new drugs. Drugs are medically suggested curative purposed for enhancing disease conditions, and reinstating good health and vitality to humans. Ocean derivatives and marine medicine are interrelated to restore health. It covers a diversity of practices with marine species to uphold health by curing and preventing medicine. Therefore, marine medicine is defined as the science of curing, reinstating, and maintaining health by treatment and prevention relative to the ocean derivatives. In recent days, comprehensive investigations of marine natural products lead to the discovery of novel compounds that influence the cellular metabolism and cell cycle (Molinski et al. 2009).

10.2 Immunomodulators

The term immunomodulator is a natural or synthetic substance that can amend or suppress, and stimulate the immune system. Immunomodulators are classified into immunoadjuvants (known to boost vaccine efficiency), immunostimulants (innately nonspecific, they foresee to fight against infections within the body), and immunosuppressants (heterogeneous drugs given in combination procedures to treat organ transplant rejection and autoimmune disease). Phytoelements such as didemnin, aplidine and trabectedin, polysaccharides, glycans, cyclic di- and tripeptides, carrageenan, sodium alginate, and many more constituents, the marine immunomodulators, act as natural products and have potential pharmacological activity (Costantino et al. 2009; Rathod et al. 2010; Chandraraj et al. 2010; Akerkar et al. 2009; Yim et al. 2005).

10.3 Significance of Marine Organisms

Over 50 years and so, the potential activity of marine compounds in cosmetic industries, nutritional supplements, agro- and fine chemicals, and treating various diseases is well-known (Tziveleka et al. 2003). However, since the past 30 years, the use of marine compounds in immunomodulation is quite promising. The novel compounds isolated from the marine species have unique characteristics such as antiviral, antibacterial, antimicrobial, antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, antitumor, analgesic, allergy, and immunomodulation. Besides these features, they also play a significant role in drug discovery and design for various human diseases, especially cancer therapy. Many compounds are under clinical and advanced preclinical trials (Newman and Cragg 2004). Marine species, both micro- and macroorganisms, are known to act as immunomodulators. Natural compounds from bacteria, particularly actinobacteria, cyanobacteria, and myxobacteria, algae, fungi, sponges, Chordata, Porifera, Plantae and Planktons, Arthropoda, Mollusks, Diatoms, and Bryozoans, act as modulators in stimulating the immune system. This is all because of the rich source of novel and bioactive marine organisms wherein the rate of compounds has been increasing year after year. Table 10.1 briefs the mode of action of a few natural compounds derived from marine species.

Table 10.1 Marine natural compounds and their mode of action as immunomodulators

Source	Chemical compound	Immunomodulatory activity	Reference
Bacteria			
Actinoalloteichus	Neomaclafungins A–I	Membered macrolides of the oligomycin significant modulation activity against *T. mentagrophytes*	Sato et al. (2012)
Aplidium albicans	Cyclic depsipeptide	Acts as anti-multiple myeloma in xenograft plasmacytoma murine model	Mitsiades et al. (2008)
Bacillus licheniformis	Glycolipopeptides ieodoglucomide A 10 and B 11; ieodoglucomide B; exopolysaccharide 1-T14 (EPS1-T14)	Have mild antimicrobial activity; ieodoglucomide B shows cytotoxic effect toward lung and stomach cancer; EPS1-T14 acts as a stimulator for TH1 cell-mediated immunity	Tareq et al. (2012)
Bacillus mojavensis	Iturinic lipopeptide Mojavensin A 12	Antifungal activity	Ma et al. (2012)
Bacillus subtilis	Amicoumacin and bacilosarcin analogs	Show cytotoxicity to HeLa cell and have antibacterial nature	Itoh et al. (1982)
Bryozoa neritina	Bryostatin polyketide	Antitumor activity	Kalechman et al. (1992), Philip et al. (1993)
Erythrobacter	Erythronic acids	Self-effacing activity for non-small-cell lung cancer cell	Hu et al. (2012)
Micrococcus luteus	Micrococcus antibodies	Immunosuppressive activity	Grooten et al. (1983)
Nonomuraea longicatena	Lestaurtinib (alkaloid)	Inhibits protein kinase and calmodulin	Ning et al. (2018)
Sorangium cellulosum	Exopolysaccharide	Hypoglycemia activity	Ding et al. (2004)
Salinispora tropica	Omuralide	A proteasome inhibitor, a potent inhibitor of human multiple myeloma	Prudhomme et al. (2008)
Salinosporamide	*Salinosporamide* A	Proteasome inhibitor works on various tumors, enhances apoptosis, and suppresses osteoclastogenesis through the NF-κB pathway	Ahn et al. (2007)

(continued)

Table 10.1 (continued)

Source	Chemical compound	Immunomodulatory activity	Reference
Tridemnum solidum	Didemnin B (depsipeptides)	Immunosuppressive and anti-inflammatory activity	Kijjoa and Sawangwong (2004), Ankisetty et al. (2013)
Sponges			
Clathria lissosclera	Clathriols (polyoxygenated steroids)	Hinders superoxide production	Keyzers et al. (2003)
Dendrilla nigra	Lipopolysaccharides	Secondary metabolites such as *D. nigra* have a potent activity for an antibacterial effect	Selvin and Lipton (2004)
Discodermia	Lactone compounds	Discodermia species showed immunosuppressive and cytotoxic activity	Longley et al. (1998)
Gelliodes fibrosa	Terpenoids, lipids, and steroids	Are the main compounds of *G. fibrosa* that acts as an immunostimulatory in combination with ethyl acetate	Chandraraj et al. (2010)
Haliclona sp.	Halipeptins	In vitro and in vivo anti-inflammatory activity	Randazzo et al. (2001)
Hyrrios	Puupehedione, dipuupehedione, bispuupehenone	The three major compounds isolated from *Hyrrios* have antiangiogenic, antitumoral, antioxidant, antimicrobial, immunomodulatory, and antiatherosclerotic effects	Martínez-Poveda et al. (2017)
Ircinia variabilis	Fasciculatin	Cytotoxicity activity	Rifai et al. (2005)
Lobophytum crassum	Lobocrassin B	Hampers lipopolysaccharide	Lin et al. (2013)
Petrosia sp	Petrocortyne A, contignasterol	Inhibits macrophages, histamines	Kim et al. (1999) Takei et al. (1994), Hong et al. (2003)
Reniera species	Sulfated polysaccharides (carbohydrates, uronic acids, sulfates)	Immunomodulation activity	Ahmad et al. (2019)

(continued)

Table 10.1 (continued)

Source	Chemical compound	Immunomodulatory activity	Reference
Tedania anhelans	Terpenoids, lipids, and steroids	Unlike *G. fibrosa*, *Tedania anhelans* has immunostimulatory property besides the chemotactic, phagocytic, and intracellular carnage in human neutrophils	Chandraraj et al. (2010)
Tedania ignis	Tedanol (diterpenoid)	Anti-inflammatory activity	Costantino et al. (2009), Castrillo et al. (2001)
Theonella swinhoei	(Cyclic peptides) perthamides C and D, barangamides B, C, and D, and theonellapeptolide	Anti-inflammatory activity exhibits a slight immunosuppressive activity	Festa et al. (2009), Festa et al. (2012)
Algae			
Chondrus ocellatus	Lambda-carrageenan	Antitumor activity, the proliferation of lymphocyte, NK cell activity	Zhou et al. (2004)
Crypthecodinium cohnii	Exopolysaccharide	Regulates the expression of modulators in the signaling pathway	Ma et al. (2017)
Eisenia arborea	Phlorotannin	Hinders immunoglobulin E; exhibits antidegranulation effects	Sugiura et al. (2008)
Eisenia bicyclis	Phlorotannins Dieckol, Eckol	Inhibits NO and lipopolysaccharide and induces ROS reaction	Shibata et al. (2003), Jung et al. (2013)
Endarachne binghamiae	Polysaccharides	Stimulates proliferation and enhances the production of TNF-alpha in macrophages	Huang and Lee (2005)
Fucus distichus	Phlorotannin subderivative	Reduces the expression of cyclooxygenase-2, interleukin-10, TNF-α, and monocyte chemoattractive protein-1	Kellogg et al. (2015)
Gracilaria verrucosa	Enone fatty acids	Hampers the production of TNF-alpha, nitric oxide, interleukin-6 biomarkers	Lee et al. (2009)
Gyrodinium impudicum	Sulfated polysaccharides	*G. impudicum* showed immunostimulatory effects and enhanced the tumoricidal activities of	Yim et al. (2004), Lee et al. (2008)

(continued)

Table 10.1 (continued)

Source	Chemical compound	Immunomodulatory activity	Reference
		macrophages and natural killer cells in vivo, sulfated polysaccharides of G. *impudicum* have antiviral property	
Hijikia fusiforme	Polysaccharides	Potential macrophage-stimulating effects enhanced pro-inflammatory activity	Jeong et al. (2015)
Laminaria japonica	Oligo- and polysaccharides	Apoptotic activity	Kim et al. (2006)
Meristotheca papulosa	Polysaccharides	The proliferation of human lymphocyte	Shan et al. (1999)
Monostroma nitidum	Sulfated polysaccharides	Stimulate macrophage cell line, inducing substantial nitric oxide production, suggesting as a strong immunomodulators	Karnjanapratum and You (2011)
Sargassum thunbergii	Fucoidan	Phagocytosis and chemiluminescence activity	Yende et al. (2014)
Spirulina fusiformis	β-Carotene, polysaccharide	Immunosuppression effect	Rasool and Sabina (2009)
Ulva fasciata	Lipopolysaccharide	The green algae *Ulva fasciata* in the diet significantly has anti-inflammatory and apoptotic activity against colon cancer	Anis et al. (2018), Ryu et al. (2013)
Fungi			
Neocosmospora vasinfecta	Cyclosporine	Inhibition of calcineurin (a calcium-dependent serine–threonine phosphatase)	Nakajima et al. (1988)
Penicillium sp.	Brevicompanine E	Lowers the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines	Yang et al. (2009)
Aspergillus insulicola	Azonazine (dipeptide)	Hinders the production of NF-κβ luciferase and nitrite	Wu et al. (2010)
Aspergillus sp. strain SF-5921	Aurantiamide acetate	Shows NF-κβ, c-Jun NH2-terminal kinase, p38 inhibition in BV2 microglia cells	Yoon et al. (2014)

(continued)

Table 10.1 (continued)

Source	Chemical compound	Immunomodulatory activity	Reference
Ascomycota sp. strain CYSK-4	Isocoumarins	Hinders the production of nitric oxide	Chen et al. (2018)
Xylaria sp. strain 2508	Xyloketal	Shows in vivo and in vitro neuroprotective activity on neonatal hypoxic–ischemic brain injury	Xiao et al. (2013)
Eurotium amstelodami	Questinol (anthraquinone)	Inhibits nitric oxide and prostaglandin E2 production	Yang et al. (2014)
Chaetomium globosum	Chaetoglobosin Fex	Immunosuppressive activity	Dou et al. (2011)
Ecklonia stolonifera	Phlorofucofuroeckol (phlorotannin)	Inhibits nitric oxide and prostaglandin E2 production by the restraining inducible nitric oxide synthase and cyclooxygenase-2 protein expression	Kim et al. (2009)
Macroorganisms			
Acorus calamus	Rhizome extract	Hinders cell proliferation	Mehrotra et al. (2003)
Bryozoans	Convolutamydine A	Hinders the production of interleukin-6, nitric oxide, inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS), cyclooxygenase 2, prostaglandin-2, and tumor necrosis factor-α	Fernandes et al. (2014)
Bugula neritina	Bryostatin 1	Combination with protein kinase C observed to have anticancer and immunostimulating activities	Iwu and Wootton (2002)
Carijoa sp.	Steroid glycoside carijoside	Inhibits elastase and superoxide	Liu et al. (2010)
Crenomytilus grayanus	Mytilan (bioglycan)	Isolated from *C. grayanus* mussel has high immunomodulating activity	Ovodova et al. (1992)

(continued)

Table 10.1 (continued)

Source	Chemical compound	Immunomodulatory activity	Reference
Ecteinascidia turbinata	Trabectedin	The antitumor drug decreases monocyte counts and differentiation of macrophages (ex vivo) in soft tissue sarcoma, chronic lymphocytic leukemia	Banerjee et al. (2019), Nakamura et al. (2016)
Euchelus asper	Methanol extract	Anti-inflammatory, antiproliferative, and *in ovo* antiangiogenic activity of methanol extract of *E. asper*	Agarwal et al. (2017)
Hemifusus pugilinus	—	Immunosuppressant activity	Ponkshe and Indap (2002)
Hyriopsis cumingiilea	Polysaccharides	Enhances immune response, especially adaptive immunity	Bai et al. (2009)
Litopenaeus vannamei	Polysaccharides	Superoxide dismutase performs as an immunomodulator and is used as a marker for immune response	Chiu et al. (2007)
Marthasterias glacialis	Ergosta-7,22-dien-3-ol	Anti-inflammatory	Pereira et al. (2014)
Mastigias papua	Polyketide sulfate	Inhibits inducible vascular cell adhesion molecule-1	Hanif et al. (2010)
Mytilus coruscus	Glucan	Immunosuppression	
Nematopalaemon tenuipes	Petroleum ether and ethyl acetate constituents	Stimulation and suppression activity	Akerkar et al. (2009)
Oily fishes	n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids	Reduces the spread of human T cell, decreases the progression and onset of arthritis and other disorders such as swelling, knee pains	Miles and Calder (2012)
Rastrelliger kanagurta	Protein hydrolysate extract	Antioxidant function from the backbone of *R. Kanagurta*	Sheriff et al. (2014)
Sarcophyton sp.	Glycolipid and sarcoehrenosides	Hinders iNOS expression in macrophages	229,231
Seleronephthya gracillimum	Sclerosteroid	Hampers the expression of iNOS and cyclooxygenase 2 in macrophages	Fang et al. (2013)

(continued)

Table 10.1 (continued)

Source	Chemical compound	Immunomodulatory activity	Reference
Stichodactyla helianthus	Peptide	Regulates the function of effector memory T cells and class-switched memory B cells	Chi et al. (2012)
Tridemnum solidum	Didemnins A, B, and C, cyclic depsipeptides	Have antineoplastic activity, as well as the antiviral and immunosuppressive activities	Rinehart et al. (1988)

10.4 Marine Antiviral and Anticancer Compounds

Compounds and their metabolites isolated from marine sediments with varied biological activities ranging from antiviral to anticancer have been identified. Marine bacteria, algae, sponges, fungi, and macroorganisms are the primary source of antiviral compounds. The novel and unique marine antiviral agents (MAVAs) from the marine natural resources have multipotential uses with vast applications. The applications include (a) managing contamination and disease transmission of the enteropathogenic virus through sewage-contaminated waters; (b) chemotherapy for human viral diseases by increasing the yield and producing cost-effective drugs from MAVAs; and (c) finally, ruling out the diseases in marine animals by seeding MAVAs in the marine environment.

10.4.1 Marine Bacteria as a Source for Antiviral Agents

Bacterial-derived MAVAs are few with exopolysaccharide (EPS) marine antiviral agents as the main chemical constituents. Exopolysaccharides are the main component produced by marine bacteria, with unique features such as survival at unfavorable environment conditions categorized by extreme temperature and pressure, elevated levels of sulfides and metal concentration, attachment to the solid surface, and growth plan (Vincent et al. 1994). The mechanism of action of EPS on viruses is the hindering adsorption and entry of viruses into the host cell. The sulfated EPC does inhibit reverse transcription by restraining the reverse transcriptase enzyme. *Bacillus licheniformis* and *Geobacillus thermodenitrificans* isolated from shallow marine hot springs produce EPS1 and EPS 2, respectively. Both the exopolysaccharides inhibit HSV-2 replication in peripheral blood mononuclear cells by upregulating the pro-inflammatory cytokines and T-helper 1 cells (Arena et al. 2006, 2009). Bacteria inhabitant of deep-sea vents, namely *Vibrio diabolicus*, *Alteromonas macleodii*, *Alteromonas infernus*, and *Pseudoalteromonas* reference strain HYD 721, generates EPS alongside with macrolactin A compound, and the

Table 10.2 Antiviral compounds derived from marine sponges

Source	Mode of action	Reference
Petrosia sp.	Polyacetylenetriol inhibits RNA and DNA-dependent DNA polymerase activities of the retroviral reverse transcriptase of HIV; however, due to insufficient specificity, the compound is considered for the anti-AIDS drug rather than an anti-HIV agent	Loya et al. (2002)
Monanchora sp.	Crambescidin 826, a polycyclic guanidine alkaloid, acts as an in vitro fusion inhibitor on *the* HIV-1 envelope	Chang et al. (2003)
Petrosia similes	In vitro inhibition of HIV-1 replication, development of giant cell, and recombinant reverse transcriptase enzyme by a two bisquinolizidine alkaloids and petrosian	Goud et al. (2003)
Neamphius huxleyi	Neamphamide A, a novel depsiundecapeptide, hinders the cytopathic effect of HIV-1 infection	Oku et al. (2004)
Madagascan Lendenfeldia	C22 furanoterpene named as dehydrofurodendin is active against HIV-1 reverse transcriptase enzyme allied with RNA and DNA directed DNA polymerase	Chill et al. (2004)

latter show activity against HIV replication by protecting the human T lymphoblast cells. Macrolactin A reported having antiviral properties against HSV (Gustafson et al. 1989a; Gustafson et al. 1989b).

10.4.2 Antiviral Compounds Derived from Marine Sponges

Synthetic derivatives of arabinose nucleoside such as acyclovir, Ara-A (vidarabine), Ara-C (cytarabine), and azidothymidine (zidovudine) were isolated from *Tethya cripta,* a marine sponge. These metabolites show antiviral property against *herpes simplex virus* (HSV) (Elion et al. 1977; Privatdegarilhe and De Rudder 1964; Horwitz et al. 1964). New compound hamigeran B isolated from *Hamigera tarangaensis* showed activity against herpes and poliovirus (Wellington et al. 2000). Two metabolites weinbersterols A and B from *Petrosia weinberg* showed in vitro inhibition against leukemia and coronavirus in mice and feline leukemia (Sun et al. 1991). Researchers isolated three novel compounds in the search for inhibiting the infection of influenza virus in humans: calyceramides A, B, and C from *Discodermia calyx*, a marine sponge (Nakao et al. 2001).

The majority of antiviral agents derived from marine sponges show activity against HIV. One such species is *Dysidea avara,* a Mediterranean soft sponge that blocks the synthesis of UAG suppressor glutamine tRNA during HIV infection with sponge metabolites, avarol, and its derivatives (Müller et al. 1987; Boyd et al. 1996). Clathsterol is another novel metabolite isolated from *Clathria sp* (called red sea sponge) that revealed its active nature inhibiting HIV-1 reverse transcriptase (Rudi et al. 2001). Another novel HIV inhibitor, Microspinosamide, a cyclic depsipeptide, is synthesized from *Sidonops microspinosa* (Rashid et al. 2001). Table 10.2 details a few more MAVAs isolated, synthesized, and characterized by marine sponges; they play a critical role in inhibiting HIV.

10.4.3 Antiviral Compounds Derived from Marine Algae

Marine algae as a source for antiviral agents showed promising results. Metabolites extracted from algae have both in vivo inhibition activity and in vitro inhibition activity for many viruses. Major of the algal MAVAs are polysaccharide-derived. Sulfated polysaccharides A1 and A2 produced extracellular from marine algae *Cochlodinium polykrikoides* inhibiting influenza A and B viruses, and respiratory syncytial virus. Also, A1 and A2 are active against HSV-1 and parainfluenza type 2 virus (Hasui et al. 1995). Another sulfated polysaccharide compound named calcium spirulan isolated from the marine blue-green alga, *Arthrospira platensis,* has significant activity against HIV by reducing viral replication (Hayashi et al. 1996). A new polysaccharide compound, galactan sulfate, from *Agardhiella tenera*, a red seaweed, inhibits both type 1 HIV and type 2 HIV (Witvrouw 1994). The compound is also active against herpesviruses, arenaviruses, and togaviruses. Fucoidan isolated from brown algae *Fucus vesiculosus* (Béress et al. 1993) is shown to have activity against type 1 and type 2 of HSV, and reverse transcriptase of HIV 1 and vesicular stomatitis virus. Anti-HIV viral compounds cyanovirin-N (Boyd et al. 1996), diterpenes, and griffithsin (Mori et al. 2005) that inhibit viral replication of HIV have shown promising outcomes. However, diterpenes show activity on RNA-dependent DNA polymerase of the viral reverse transcriptase (Pereira et al. 2004). A novel compound naviculan, isolated from a diatom *Navicula directa,* shows activity against HSV type 1 and type 2 by hindering the main biological mechanism such as replication, adherence, and replication (Lee et al. 2006).

10.4.4 Fungi-Derived MAVAs

Marine fungal compounds such as equisetin and phomastein extracted from *Fusarium* and *Phoma* species, respectively, reported significant HIV (Singh et al. 1998). Another new compound isolated from *Fusarium* sp. is sansalvamide A that has inhibition activity toward *Molluscum contagiosum*, a poxvirus. Sansalvamide inhibits the virus by reducing topoisomerase activity that catalyzes DNA binding and relaxation and complex covalent interaction (Hwang et al. 1999). A derivative of halovir A to E compounds extracted from *Scytalidium* species showed significant antiviral activity against HSV type 1 and type 2 (Rowley et al. 2003). A novel terpenoid stachyflin isolated from *Stachybotrys* reported antiviral property against influenza A virus by inhibiting fusion among the viral envelope and host cell membrane (Minagawa et al. 2002).

10.4.5 Antiviral Compounds from Marine Macroorganisms

Besides microorganisms, compounds isolated from marine macroorganisms do have antiviral properties, many of which have anti-HIV activity, namely

cyclodidemniserinol trisulfate, didemnaketals A and B isolated from species of *Didemnum,* an Ascidian, the duo act against HIV by inhibiting HIV 1 integrase and protease, respectively (Mitchell et al. 2000; Potts et al. 1991). Compounds lamellarin isolated from *Lamellaria* and didemnid ascidians, polycitone A from *Polyctor* sp., polyphemusins I and II and tachyplesins I-III isolated from horseshoe crabs *Limulus polyphemus* and *Tachypleus testudinum,* respectively, and thalassiolins A-C isolated from seagrass, *Thalassia testudinum,*inhibit HIV hindering various activities (Reddy et al. 1999; Morimoto et al. 1991; Miyata et al. 1989; Rowley et al. 2002). Marine antiviral compounds inhibiting HSV are didemnins and eudistomin isolated from tunicates *Tridemnum solidum* and *Eudistoma olivaceum,* respectively (Hudson et al. 1988). Didemnins is potent against yellow fever, rift valley fever, and encephalomyelitis (Rinehart et al. 1988).

10.5 Marine Natural Compounds in Cancer Therapy

Chemotherapy is a treatment that kills cells with the aid of drugs especially that increase rapidly. Chemotherapy is often used to treat cancer by inhibiting cell division, growth, and expansion. Various drugs have been in use for cancer chemotherapy originated from nature. The significance of natural compounds as drugs is structural modification, and production of semi-synthetic and synthetic derivatives that yield effective drugs. The novel lead compound is in great demand as they lessen the side effects and enhances the bioactivity. Techniques such as high-throughput screening, computational chemistry, and genetic alteration have led to a new possibility for the invention and design of new anticancer drugs (Gordaliza 2007).

Over 10 years, the use of marine-derived natural compounds in trials against cancer has increased. For a natural product to aspirant as a drug, the compound should have the following criteria: (a) maintain sufficient industrial supply, (b) the compound shows moderate toxicity, (c) should have a risk to extend formulation under clinical trials, (d) analytical techniques to detect pharmacokinetic parameters, and (e) compound must be capable of metabolizing with maximum efficacy and restricting undesirable effects (Jimeno et al. 2004). Studies conducted in early years reported that marine microalgae, heterotrophic bacteria, and cyanobacteria existing within symbiotic associations with marine macroorganisms such as invertebrates are the top resources of biologically active compounds in cancer therapy (König et al. 2006). The mechanism of marine natural anticancer drugs is active targeting cellular and molecular activities. Usually, the compounds effectively hinder DNA polymerase or histone deacetylases for DNA synthesis and transcription, respectively (Bruserud et al. 2007). Other systems include inhibition of tumor metastasis and progression by matrix metalloprotease inhibitors and Rho-GTPase activity correspondingly, induction of apoptosis, and hindering NF-κβ activity (Welsh 2004). Anticancer compounds as drugs are mainly isolated from mollusk, sponges, and cyanobacterium. Few anticancer compounds derived from the marine source are listed below and the structures are detailed in (Fig. 10.1).

10.5.1 Acetylenic Lipids as an Anticancer Agent

Acetylenic lipids and their derivatives are products extracted from plants, fungi, or marine invertebrates. The compounds have varied functions in antimicrobial and antitumor therapies (75,76). Of all the marine species, sponges are more effective antitumor agents with cytotoxicity effects. Acetylenic alcohols produced from *Cribrochalina vasculum,* a brown bowl marine sponge, showed cytotoxic activity and reported antitumor activity against non-small-cell lung line. Derivatives of acetylenic lipids do have immunosuppressive activity (Dembitsky 2006).

Lembehyne A, a by-product of *Haliclona* species habitat of Indonesia marine, is a new long-chained polyacetylene compound that prevents the G1 phase of the cell cycle of neuroblastoma cells (Aoki et al. 2001). Few carotenoid metabolites are isolated from marine tunicates and mollusks, namely astaxanthin, carotene, cynthiaxanthin, and halocynthiaxanthin antimutagenic and anticancer effect against human cancer cell lines (Krinsky 1993).

A C24 acetylenic lipid, callysponginol sulfate A, produced from *Callyspongia truncate* affective toward membrane type 1 matrix metalloprotease inhibitor, results in the deterrence of metastasis (Fujita et al. 2002).

10.5.2 Aplyronine A

Aplyronine A (ApA) is an effective in vivo antitumor activity against murine leukemia, Ehrlich cancer, lung carcinoma, colon, and melanoma. The compound is isolated from *Aplysia kurodai,* a sea hare. The compound ApA has actin-depolymerizing activity when bound to tubulin in combination with actin putting off mitosis and spindle formation (Kita et al. 2017).

10.5.3 Bryostatin

Bryostatin isolated from a brown bryozoan, *Bugula neritina,* is a complex polyketide. Bryostatin series are effective activators of protein kinase C (PKC) with the anticancer property. The compound has passed the phase I clinical trial and is subjected to phase II human trials. The component is shown to be effective against renal carcinoma, melanomas, and lymphomas (Newman and Cragg 2007). Studies also reported the chemotherapeutic activity of bryostatin, but they can enhance cognitive function (Sun and Alkon 2006). It has a prominent role as an agonist to strengthen PKC and reduce Aβ levels and hindering tau protein as a therapeutic for Alzheimer's disease (Lucke-Wold et al. 2015).

10.5.4 Cytosine Arabinoside

Cytosine arabinoside (Ara-C), a pyrimidine analog, contains cytotoxic, antiviral, and immunosuppressive activity. Usually, nucleoside analogs in anticancer therapy comprise analogs of purine and pyrimidine nucleosides and nucleotides. These antimetabolites hinder the processes in the synthesis of nucleic acids, for instance, DNA replication. The cytotoxic effect exerted includes the intrusion of enzymes in nucleic acid synthesis. As the nucleoside analogs are hydrophobic, they require transporters to cross the cell membrane and pierce them. Ara-C is isolated from the Caribbean sponge *Cryptothethya crypta*is, a deoxycytidine compound. The compound is more effective against acute myeloid leukemia when injected intravenously (Newman and Cragg 2004).

10.5.5 Discodermolide

Discodermolide, a polyhydroxy lactone, is produced from the Caribbean sponge *Discodermia dissoluta*. Harbor Branch group first invented the compound in the year 1990. The compound has promising results of novel immunosuppressant activity along with cytotoxicity (Vaishampayan et al. 2000). The compound also hinders microtubules more effective compared to taxol. Discodermolide shows antitumor activity against breast, ovarian, colon, and multidrug-resistant cancers (Cuevas et al. 2000).

10.5.6 Dolastatin 10

Dolastatin 10 (DOLA-10) isolated from the mollusk *Dolabella auricularia,* a pentapeptide, was screened for anticancer property in 1972. The compound consists of distinctive amino acids such as dolaphenine, N,N-dimethylvaline, dolaisoleucine, and dolaproine. Derivatives of DOLA-10 were analyzed, but DOLA-10 showed high potent as an inhibitor for cell proliferation (Aherne et al. 1996; Madden et al. 2000). The compound is effective against tumor cell lines, namely melanoma, ovarian, and sarcoma cancer cells. DOLA-10 upregulates tumor suppressor protein (p53), the most common altered protein in human cancers (Madden et al. 2000). It aims to transactivation mechanisms by inducing cell cycle arrest, DNA repair, and apoptosis (Maki et al. 1995).

10.5.7 Ecteinascidin (ET)-743

ET-743 known as the first derived anticancer drug is a marine compound extracted from tunicate *Ecteinascidia turbinate*. An analog of ET-743 named ET-729 showed identical function and effectiveness with variation at the N terminal having a dimethyl residue. However, ET-743 is preferred more for research rather than

ET-729 as the second showed less availability. A synergistic effect is reported in studies with combinations of other resources, namely doxorubicin, irinotecan, and paclitaxel. The mode of mechanism showing antitumor activity is its binding to the DNA minor groove. Additionally, ET-743 inhibits transcription-coupled excision repair and provokes cell death (Takebayashi et al. 2001; Rinehart et al. 1990).

10.5.8 Hemocyanin

Keyhole limpet hemocyanin (KLH), a copper protein, is produced from the hemolymph of a marine mollusk *Megathura crenulata*. Hemocyanin was reported to have an immunostimulatory property in humans. The compound stimulated both humoral and cell-mediated immune responses. Oligomeric isoforms of KLH, i.e., KLH1 and KLH2, are revealed in the 1990s. Clinical studies with LKH showed promising results in cancer immunotherapy, namely bladder cancer. The disaccharide epitope Gal(bl-3)GalNAc transversally reacts with an epitope counterpart on the tumor cell. The underlying mechanism is that the compound roots an antibody response in equivalent with an amplification in the activity of NK cells where the humoral and cell-mediated immune response to KLH causes cytolytic reduction in tumor growth. Besides, as a modulator for bladder cancer, KLH and their mucin-like epitopes are extracted to treat colorectal, ovarian, and breast cancer. Likewise, epitopes composed of ganglioside are effective on malignant melanomas (Harris et al. 1997).

10.5.9 Kahalalide F

The depsipeptide compound kahalalide F (KF) was initially extracted from mollusk *Elysia rufescens* but later found it was from the alga *Bryopsis* sp. Studies and experiments showed positive results, both in vivo and in vitro by KF in treatment. KF is a carbon 75 cyclic tripeptide consisting of atypical amino acid Z-dehydroaminobutyric acid (Molinski et al. 2009). The compound is shown useful toward cancer such as breast, colon, non-small-cell lung, prostate, and ovarian (Janmaat et al. 2005). In a few cancer cell lines, KF is reported to cause necrosis like processes.

10.5.10 Naamidine A

Naamidine A produced from *Leucett* sp. a marine sponge is a dibenzylated 2 amino imidazole alkaloid compound that is effective as an inhibitor of epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), and the signaling pathway of EFGR has a critical role in the onset of the tumor. Overproduction of EGFR is coupled with the expansion of cells and tumorigenicity in most cancers. Consequently, interference at any stage of the pathway by the compound probably acts as an antiproliferative agent against cancers. Studies showed that ethanol extract is more effective and is capable of

inhibiting EGF-dependent DNA synthesis, mitogenesis, and proliferation. Studies in vivo confirmed the compound hinders the development of squamous carcinoma cell lines (Copp et al. 1998).

10.5.11 Salinosporamide A

Salinosporamide A, a derivative of lactam lactone-γ lactam, is extracted from *Salinispora tropica* in 2003. The compound hinders p26 proteasomes (López-Macià et al. 2001). The compound has passed the first phase of the clinical trial against multiple myeloma (Molinski et al. 2009; Schöffski et al. 2004).

10.5.12 Spisulosine (ES-285)

Spisulosine with a novel structural organization (2S, 3R-2 amino 3 octadecanoic) contributes in parallel to sphingosine-related lipids. The compound ES-285 is produced from *Spisula polynyma,* a mollusk. The cytotoxic effect of ES-285 on cancer cells reveals two different assumptions. The foremost hypothesis is that ES-285 performs as a competitor at the phospholipid growth factor (PLGF). Significant activities such as increased cellular response affecting adherence, chemotactic movement, morphology, survival, proliferation, and ionic conductance are reported by PLGF (98-107). Secondly, the effect of PLGF through endothelial differentiation gene receptors by ES-285 represents a subgroup G protein-coupled receptors, yet the receptors show no role in ES-285 intervene cell termination (Salcedo et al. 2007).

10.5.13 Squalamine

Squalamine extracted from *Squalus acanthias* known as dogfish shark was discovered from New England's shoreline in 1993. The metabolite is an aminosterol with antibiotic activity (Sessa et al. 2002). The Genaera Company was licensed for developing the compound as an antitumor agent against ovarian cancer and solid tumors, which succeeded phase I trials. Studies in clinical and preclinical gave supported squalamine results showing an important role as antiangiogenesis in cancer cells (Pettit et al. 1987).

10.6 Analgesic Property by Natural Marine Compounds

Ziconotide, the first natural analgesic marine drug, was discovered 20 years ago from *Conus* sp., mollusk gastropods. On peptide synthesis, an active compound so named as "ω-conotoxin" is isolated. Nearly 300 species of cone snails synthesize hundreds of peptide toxins affecting the neuromuscular transmission in its organism. However, of all the toxins, the most potent pharmacological toxin used as a drug is

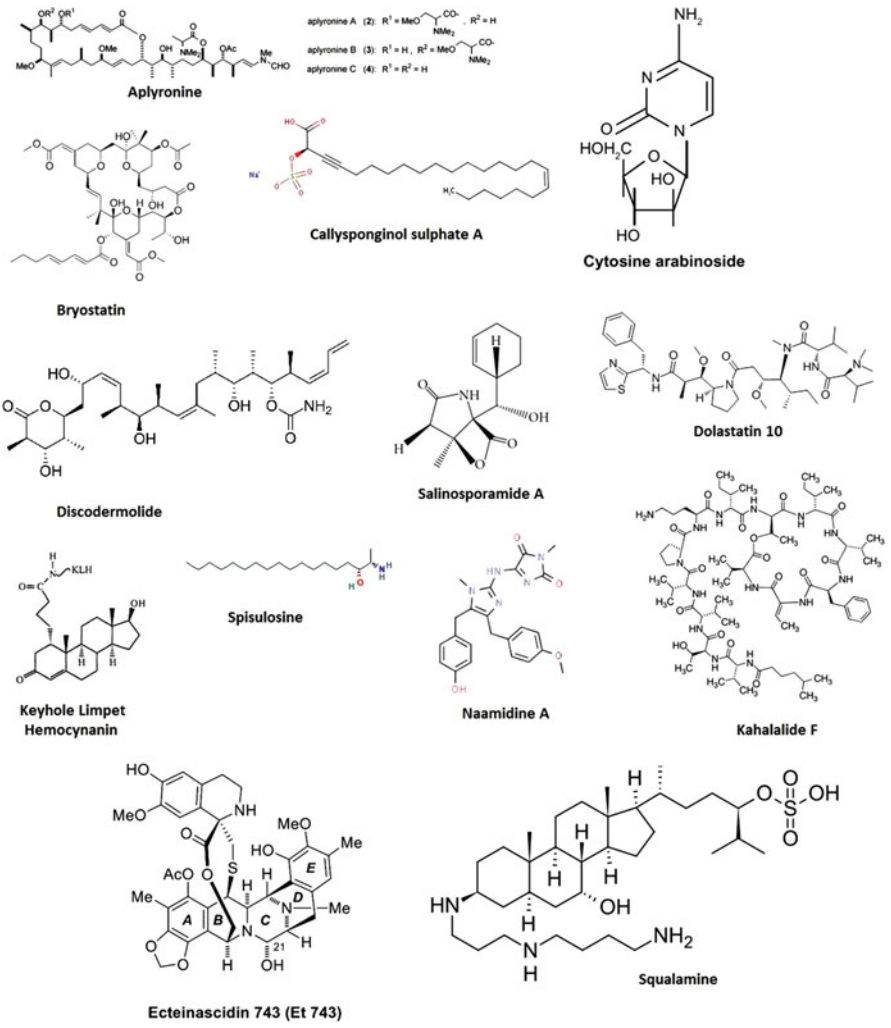


Fig. 10.1 Anticancer compounds derived from marine species

ω-conotoxin MVIIA. The compound is a linear molecular with 25 amino acid residues isolated from *Conus magus*. The drug showed a thousand times higher analgesic response compared to morphine. Clinical studies showed its string effectiveness in hindering pain. Keeping in view the positivity of conotoxins, still investigation is on the path to identifying more other derivatives (46, 47) (Fig. 10.1).

10.7 Immunomodulatory and Anti-Inflammatory Effect by Marine Flora

Marine flora is customized to life in water with large salt absorption but has halogens as their chemical components as oceans are rich in chlorides, iodide, and bromide (Akerkar et al. 2009). The utilization of halogens by marine species results in the modification of their general composition. A surfeit of chemical components has been revealed from these sources. The chemical distinctiveness of marine flora-derived compounds has stepped up the discovery of drugs with a chance of knowing the new molecules and their biological activities (Abad and Bermejo 2001). The most abundant source of bioactive essentials includes alkaloids, antioxidants, oligosaccharides, polyphenols, polysaccharides, steroids, and terpenoids.

10.7.1 Alkaloids

Alkaloids structurally constitute nitrogen molecules with a wide variety of biological activities. They are originated in higher plants and marine species (Dembitsky 2002; Güven et al. 2010). Marine sponges namely *Acanthella aurantiaca* and *Axinella verrucosa* constitute alkaloids that act as inhibitors, especially like NF-κβ (Cimino et al. 1982). Convolutamydine, an oxindole alkaloid isolated from marine bryozoans, is effective in inhibiting the expression of cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2), prostaglandin-2 (PGN-2), inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS), tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), interleukin-6 (IL-6) in cell lines RAW 264.7, leukocyte migration, and formalin-induced thrashing activities in mice (Fernandes et al. 2014).

Other compounds neoechinulins A and B composed of diketopiperazine indole alkaloid isolated from *Eurotium* sp., marine fungi, exhibit in vitro anti-inflammatory activity lipopolysaccharide-stimulated (LPS) RAW 264.7 cell line. Of both the derivatives, the compound neoechinulin A is safe clinically, but neoechinulin B showed toxicity. Other important mechanisms of neoechinulin A are it downregulates the arrangement or expression of IL-1 and 6, TNF-α, COX-2, PGE2, reactive oxygen species (ROS), and nitric oxide in BV-2 microglial cell oligomeric amyloid, and interrupts nuclear translocation by inhibiting apoptosis. The compound plays an active role in Alzheimer's disease by hindering neuroinflammation (Dewapriya et al. 2013).

Chaetoglobosin Fex (Cha Fex), a cytochalasin alkaloid from *Chaetomium globosum,* represses TNF-α, IL-6, and monocyte chemotactic protein-1 (MCP-1) in RAW cell line and lipopolysaccharide-stimulated peritoneal macrophages. Besides, it reduces the expression of cytokine mRNA, ingress of p65 subunit of NF-κβ into the nucleus, and elevates the levels of p38 and c-Jun. As well, it suppresses the upregulation of CD-14 expression (Dou et al. 2011). In the modern era, the role of alkaloid and alkaloid derivates will play a major role in drug discovery.

10.7.2 Antioxidants

Antioxidants are secondary metabolites that modulate the levels of ROS that roots damage by attaching itself to biomolecules, for instance, DNA. The fundamental principle of antioxidants deactivating ROS-modulating prophylactic and remedial activities for the diseases atherosclerosis, Alzheimer's, cancer, diabetes, inflammatory bowel disorder, Parkinson's disease, rheumatoid arthritis, and stroke is investigated (Behl and Moosmann 2002; Snow et al. 2010; Amaro and Chamorro 2011; Fuchs-Tarlovsky 2013; Ishibashi 2013; Liu et al. 2013a, b). Antioxidants are as an important function as immunomodulators and are utilized in concurrence with conventional therapy in few diseases. They also act as a free radical scavengers; for example, tocopherols reduce the synthesis of PGE-2 and develop cell-mediated immunity (Meydani et al. 1986; Pekmezci 2011). Selenium enhances the phagocytic capacity of macrophages and avoids CD 8+ T-cell damage (Salimian et al. 2014). Marine carotenoids, namely astaxanthin and fucoxanthin, reported having more effectual than terrestrial carotenoids (Guerin et al. 2003; Hussein et al. 2006; Olaizola 2007; Miyashita and Hosokawa 2007). Astaxanthin inhibits the production of induced nitrate oxygen synthase, nitric oxide, and TNF-α in RAW 264.7 cell line (Ohgami et al. 2003). Fucoxanthin hinders inflammatory cytokines IL-1 and TNF-α and reduces the production of antioxidants (Tan and Hou 2014). Iron, selenium, and copper are the most frequent trace elements found in the majority of microalgae (Tenorio-Rodríguez et al. 2013). Both microalgae and seaweeds have high levels of ROS, but due to changes in environmental conditions, the levels of ROS in seaweeds are altered as the seaweeds neutralize by the high intracellular quantity of antioxidant compounds, namely carotenoids, phycobilins, polyphenols, and vitamins (Cornish and Garbary 2010).

10.7.3 Polyphenols

Marine flora is a good source of polyphenolic compounds such as anthocyanins, catechin, epicatechin, epigallocatechin, flavonoids, tannins, lignin, and phlorotannins (Harborne and Williams 2000; Bravo 1998; Cheynier 2005). Polyphenol compounds do have great bioactivities, for instance, cardiovascular defender, antitumor (Andriantsitohaina et al. 2012; Middleton et al. 2000; C Recio et al. 2012), anti-inflammatory, immunomodulatory (Puupponen-Pimiä et al. 2001; Giovannini et al. 2007), and antioxidant activities (Heim et al. 2002). The significant mechanism of polyphenols in cancer and inflammation activities is the cell signaling and regulation of genes by modulating the NF-κβ pathway. Besides, it downregulates activities such as transcription, phosphorylation, and expression (Sun et al. 2006; Holmes-McNary and Baldwin 2000; Adhami et al. 2003; Manna et al. 2000). A phlorotannin compound, diphlorethohydroxycarmalol (DPHC), isolated from *Ishige okamurae,* exhibits anti-inflammatory activity by hindering IL-6 production effectively in lipopolysaccharide RAW 264.7 cells. Besides, DPHC amplifies the production of suppressor of cytokine signaling by inhibiting the transducer expression

activity and transcription 5-activator signaling (Kang et al. 2015). Another phlorotannin extracted from *Fucus distichus* decreases the expression of IL-10, MCP-1, TNF-α, and COX-2. Nevertheless, phlorotannin acts as modulators in inflammatory signaling, namely Toll-like receptors and downstream molecular pathways of NF-κβ, p38, and JNK (Kellogg et al. 2015).

10.7.4 Polysaccharides

The most abundant and chemical complex organic molecules in the oceans are polysaccharides with variable therapeutic activities with no or less toxicity (Laurienzo 2010). Marine flora, mainly algae and bacteria, is a common source of polysaccharides. Sulfated polysaccharides increase the innate immune response by upholding the macrophages and NK cell tumoricidal activity (Yim et al. 2005; Gorelik et al. 1984; Gorelik 1987; Zhou et al. 2005). Polysaccharides derived from both micro- and macroalgae have anti-inflammatory activity (Cumashi et al. 2007; Lüscher-Mattii 2000), the most common be fucoidans extracted from brown seaweeds with immunomodulation property (Li et al. 2008; Jiao et al. 2011). Another sulfated polysaccharide p-KG03 isolated from *microalgae Gyrodinium impudicum* strain KG03 enhances the production of nitric oxide in the c-Jun-N-terminal kinase pathway activates the production of cytokines IL-1 and IL-6 and TNF-α in macrophages and averts the development of cancer cells both in vivo and in vitro (Bae et al. 2006). A novel colloidal polysaccharide, alginic acid isolated from brown seaweed, hinders the secretion of cytokines IL-1 and TNF-α (Jeong et al. 2006).

Exopolysaccharide (EPCP1-2) isolated from *Crypthecodinium cohnii* show anti-inflammation property by downregulating Toll-like receptor 4 pathway (Kinnel et al. 2017). Marine bacteria especially the habitat of Antarctic, hydrothermal vents, and hypersaline lakes are a source of exopolysaccharides (Nicolaus et al. 2010; Guezennec 2003; Maugeri et al. 2002; Poli et al. 2010; Gugliandolo et al. 2012). EPS1 extracted from haloalkaliphilic thermophilic *Bacillus licheniformis* strain T14 inhibits herpes simplex virus-2 replication in adult human peripheral blood mononuclear cells. The mechanism shows a host defense activity against viruses by enhancing the immune response (Gugliandolo et al. 2014).

10.7.5 Steroids

Steroids are cholesterol-derived lipophilic metabolites found from earthly, marine, and human-made sources. Steroids and their components play a significant role in biological activities such as contraceptives (Lopez et al. 2014), anticancer agents (Thao et al. 2015), antiasthmatic anesthetics, a contender for hormones (Jovanović-Šanta et al. 2015), cardiovascular therapeutic agents (Rattanasopa et al. 2015), anti-inflammatory (Aav et al. 2005), osteoporosis treatments (Cortet et al. 2011), and antibiotics.

Modulation of pregnane X receptors (PXR) in lowering the intestinal inflammation by solomonsterol A extracted from marine sponge *Theonella swinhoei* is one example of a steroid compound having a significant role in living organisms (Fiorucci et al. 2012; Sepe et al. 2011). Solomonsterol A also hinders the growth of arthritis caused due to anticollagen antibodies in genetically engineered mice wharfing PXR2. Solomonsterol A prevents the expression of inflammatory markers, cytokines, and chemokines, which decrease the inflammatory response (Mencarelli et al. 2014). Pregnane steroids isolated from soft coral *Seleronephthya gracillimum* decrease the accumulation of the pro-inflammatory proteins COX-2 and iNOS.

Another example of steroid compounds is the ergosta-7, 22-dien-3-ol isolated from *Marthasterias glacialis* commonly known as spiny sea star that exhibits anti-inflammatory property in RAW cell lines by downregulation inflammatory markers. *Astropecten polyacanthus*-derived steroid compound showed downregulation for the production of cytokines in the LPS bone marrow of dendrites (Thao et al. 2013). Michosterols A to C structurally depicting polyoxygenated steroids isolated from *Lobophytum michelle,* the soft coral, showed the effective anti-inflammation property in restorative neutrophil production of superoxide anion and liberation of elastase in N-formyl-methionyl-leucyl-phenylalanine/cytochalasin B (Wang and Miao 2013).

10.8 Bioactive Compounds as Modulators for Bone Growth and Wound Healing

Osteoporosis and related fractures are one of the leading problems in European countries where fractures take place once every three seconds (Johnell and Kanis 2006). Fractures are most common in postmenopausal women and are a lot hurting, and have the low healing capacity (Hernlund et al. 2013). Modern treatment is imperfect as they are not efficient and are recommended for a longer period. Though drugs have been in use, they are reported to be effective only in lowering the fracture risk but do not increase the bone density besides many side effects (Ensrud et al. 2004). Apart from the cellular factor, marine species are a potent source of scaffold material and propping up new osteoblast bone development (osteogenic). Few marine-derived compounds with osteogenic effects cultured in vivo are compound sargachromanol G extracted from *Sargassum siliquastrum* (Yoon et al. 2013), quinone derivatives isolated from *Sargassum thunbergii* (Kim et al. 2016), water molecule as by-product from *Hizikia fusiforme* (Jeong et al. 2016), crude extract of *Cladophora rupestris* and *Codium fragile* (Surget et al. 2017), compounds floridoside (Ryu et al. 2015) and aquamin (Ryan et al. 2011) isolated from *Laurencia undulata* and *Lithothamnion corallioides*, macrolide derived from *Lyngbya* sp. (Yonezawa et al. 2012), symbioimine produced from *Symbiodinium* sp. (Kita et al. 2004), a polyketide from *Amphidinium* sp. (Minamida et al. 2014), peptide and polysaccharide from *Nannochloropsis oculata* and *Alteromonas infernus,* respectively (Nguyen et al. 2013; Merceron et al. 2012), largazole depsipeptide extracted from cyanobacteria *Symploca* sp. (Lee et al. 2011), phorbaketal A from marine

sponge *Phorbas* sp.(Byun et al. 2012), norzoanthamine from zoanthid (Kinugawa et al. 2009), coral cell extracts from hard and soft corals namely *Xenia elongate* and *Montipora digitata* (Helman et al. 2008), fucan sulfate extracted from *Apostichopus japonicus* (Kariya et al. 2004), proteins from Abalone especially perlucin (Weiss et al. 2001), and adhesive (Hong et al. 2012) extracted from *Haliotis* sp. Nacre, a water-soluble protein, was produced in oysters *Crassostrea gigas* (Oliveira et al. 2012) and *Pteria martensii* (Kim et al. 2012) and *Pinctada margaritifera* (Bédouet et al. 2007).

Marine natural products act as modulators in wound healing. Trepangs (sea cucumbers) of *Holothurians* are reported to have healing properties along with stimulation. But, the compounds liable for the bioactivities of trepangs are yet to be known. Collagenase KK, a complex drug extracted from *Paralithodes chamtschaticus,* is suggested for wound healing by the Russian institute. The drug showed effective for chronic osteomyelitis, bone cavities, chilblains, necrosis, ulcer in the varicose region, and gangrene (Kozlovskaya et al. 1997; Stonik et al. 2007; Elyakov and Stonik 2003). Collagenase KK has potent applications in other therapeutic fields such as in postsurgery complications, for example, in plastic surgery and endoscopy, and in other diseases unlike treating the children with fetid peritonitis. The compound also is meant for the devastation of collagen in the brain commissures. Clinical studies of methopterosin, a synthetic derived of pseudopterosin, revealed anti-inflammatory activity against contact dermatitis. However, the trial was disrupted. But later, the compound was assessed to the second phase of clinical testing reported potential activity for healing wounds (Gross and König 2006).

10.9 Antimicrobial Effect of Marine Flora as Immunomodulators

From the past 10 years, studies have focused and challenged for natural marine compounds stimulating antimicrobial activity. Investigations reported marine species extracted from algae, bacteria, fungi, and sponges; tunicates produce novel compounds with an antibacterial property that helps in treating drug-resistant bacterial infections. Researching on antifungal compounds, few studies reported novel products from marine fungi, sponges, algae, and sea cucumbers delineated. Table 10.3 illustrates novel marine compounds with antibacterial and antifungal activities.

10.10 Other Immunomodulation Activities of Marine Flora

Extensive studies of marine flora having anthelmintic activity are in practice. A recent study reported a triterpene glycoside compound echinosides A and isolated from *Actinopyga echinites* and *Holothuria poli* belonging to marine flora commonly

Table 10.3 Antimicrobial activity and mechanism of marine-derived compounds

Compound	Source	Chemistry	Pharmacological activity	Drug effect	References
Anthracimycin	Actinomycetes	Polyketide	The compound is effective against *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Bacillus anthracis* by inhibiting DNA or RNA	Antibacterial	Jang et al. (2013)
Aflatoxin	*Aspergillus flavus*	Polyketide	Hinders *B. subtilis* and *E. aerogenes* but activity is undetermined	Antibacterial	Wang et al. (2012a, b, c)
Ageloxime	*Agelas mauritiana*	Alkaloid or Terpenoid	Inhibits the growth of *S.* aureus. The mode of action is yet to determined	Antibacterial	Yang et al. (2012)
Chrysophaentins	*Chrysophaeum taylori*	Shikimate	Competitive inhibition of gram-negative and positive bacteria by binding to FtsZ GTP site	Antibacterial	Keffer et al. (2013)
Merochlorin a	Actinomycetes	Terpenoid	Effective against *C. difficile* and *S. aureus* by obstructing synthesis of DNA, RNA, protein, and cell wall arrangement	Antibacterial	Sakoulas et al. (2012)
Altersolanol c, macrosporin, alterporriol	*Alternaria* sp.	Polyketide	Shows inhibition activity for species *E. coli* and *V. parahemolyticus*	Antibacterial	Zheng et al. (2012)
Axistatins 1-3	*Agelas axifera*	Alkaloid/ terpenoid	Hinders *S. aureus* and *C. neoformans*	Antibacterial	Pettit et al. (2013)
Bromophycoic acid A and E	*Callophycus* sp.	Diterpene-benzoate (terpenoid)	Inhibits *S. aureus* and *E. faecalis growth*	Antibacterial	Teasdale et al. (2012)
Cadiolides C–F	*Pseudodistoma antinboja*	Shikimate	*S. aureus* inhibition	Antibacterial	Wang, Kim et al. (2012)
Ageloxime B	*Agelas mauritiana*	Alkaloid/ terpenoid	The compound is effective in inhibiting *C. neoformans*	Antifungal	Yang et al. (2012)
Aurantoside K	*Melophlus* sp.	Polyketide/ alkaloid	Hinders the *C. albicans* mechanisms	Antifungal	Kumar et al. (2012)
Caulerprenylol B	*Caulerpa racemosa*	Glycoside	*C. glabrata* and *C. neoformans* inhibition	Antifungal	Liu et al. (2013a, b)

Crambescidin-816	*Crambe crambe*	Alkaloid	Hinders *S. cerevisiae* growth by inducing cell cycle arrest at G2 or M phase before apoptosis and mitochondrial disfunction	Antifungal	Rubiolo et al. (2013)
Didymellamide A	*S. cucurbitacearum*	Alkaloid	Hampers the growth of *C. albicans*	Antifungal	Haga et al. (2013)
Hippolachnin A	*Hippospongia lachne*	Polyketide	The compound is effective against *T. rubrum, M. gypseum,* and *C. neoformans*	Antifungal	Piao et al. (2013)
Holotoxins F and G	*Apostichopus japonicus*	Terpenoid	Obstructs the growth of *C. albicans, Microsporum,* and *Cryptococcus* and avoids fungal infection mode of action that is yet to be determined	Antifungal	Wang and Miao (2013)
Hyrtimomine D and E	*Hyrtios* sp.	Alkaloid	*C. albicans* and *C. neoformans* growth inhibition	Antifungal	Tanaka et al. (2013b)
Nagelamide Z	*Agelas* sp.	Alkaloid	inhibition *C. albicans* growth	Antifungal	Tanaka et al. (2013a)
Neothyonidioside	*Australostichopus mollis*	Terpenoid glycoside	*S. cerevisiae* inhibition by disturbing membrane curvature and fusion necessary for membrane reprocessing and lysosomal degradation	Antifungal	Yibmantasiri et al. (2012)
Woodylide A	*Plakortis simplex*	Polyketide	*C. neoformans* growth inhibition	Antifungal	Yu et al. (2012)

known as sea cucumbers. The compounds showed promising results against *Schistosoma mansoni* worms (Melek et al. 2012).

A novel phenolic compound, octaphlorethol A extracted from *Ishige foliacea* a marine alga, has antidiabetic activity. The mode of action is the enhancement of glucose uptake by escalating glucose transporter 4 translocations to the plasma membrane, AMP-activated kinase, and protein kinase B activities (Lee et al. 2012).

A new-fangled compound lobocrassin B extracted from *Lobophytum crassum* showed immunomodulatory effects on dendritic cells of bone marrow. Chemically, the marine product belongs to membrane type diterpenoid. Lobocrassin B is shown to soothe dendritic cell maturation and activation with simultaneous inhibition of TLR-stimulated translocation of inflammatory cytokine production and the protein complex NF-κβ. Lobocrassin B has a therapeutical role in immune dysfunctions (Lin et al. 2013). Another novel marine-derived compound penicacid B produced from *Penicillium* sp. obstructs splenocyte lymphocyte proliferation by hindering inosine 5-monophosphate dehydrogenase enzyme in purine synthesis. The significant role of penicacid B is its immunosuppressive activity. The compound is structurally mycophenolic acid derivative (Chen et al. 2012; Jensen et al. 2012).

Preclinical studies on marine nervous system pharmacology reported potential modulatory activities especially focusing the membrane channels sodium and potassium, and receptors such as nicotinic acetylcholine, and neuroprotection, analgesia, and antinociception. Few peptide derivatives isolated from varied marine flora show potential results on the nervous system by inhibiting different mechanisms happening within the system. Few important compounds are APETx2 and BcsTx isolated from the sea anemone, asteropsin A from the sponge, and convolutamydine A from bryozoa. APETx2 inhibits acid-sensing ion channel 3 (ASIC3) by reducing the potency in opposition to non-voltage-gated and truncation at either C or N terminal, affecting the binding activity of ASIC3 (Jensen et al. 2012). BcsTx derivatives 1 and 2 isolated from *Bunodosoma caissarum* confirmed inhibition of potassium influx activity (Favreau et al. 2012, Vetter et al. 2012). A steopsin A obstructs binding with voltage-gated sodium channel site 2 and includes drug development of cysteine knot peptide-based as a mold gibbet (Li et al. 2013). Few other alkaloid compounds from marine sponges namely ianthellamide A (Feng et al. 2012), leucettamine B (Burgy et al. 2013), and pulchranin A (Guzii et al. 2013) have shown probable activity by inhibiting kynurenine 3-hydroxylase for enhancing kynurenic acid in vivo, tyrosine phosphorylation kinase inhibition (reduces neurodegeneration), and inhibition of transient receptor potential cation channel subfamily V member 1, respectively. Inhibition of acetylcholinesterase by terpenoid compounds arigsugacin I and asperterpenol A isolated from marine fungus showed probable activity toward the nervous system (Huang et al. 2013; Xiao et al. 2013). Few other terpenoids halomadurones C and D, ircinianin lactams, and polar steroids showed effective to the nervous system, but the mechanism is yet to be known (Wyche et al. 2013; Balansa et al. 2013; Palyanova et al. 2013). Cymatherelactone, a polyketide isolated from marine alga, reported to hinder voltage-gated sodium channel but the mechanism of action is yet to be determined (Choi et al. 2012).

10.11 Challenges and Future Perspectives

The aquatic environment is habitat to an enormous number of micro- and macroorganisms with unexploited biological activities that are used to a greater level to make sure their existence in this diverse and regular hostile home. This unique environment makes possible the biosynthesis of a range of secondary metabolites to act as a chemical defense and show a wide array of bioactivities. However, the marine environment is susceptible to variation in sea levels and acidification due to the rise in carbon dioxide levels as the climatic varies, where a majority of species cannot adapt to these changes. This causes a serious issue to the world as marine natural products are the neediest compounds in preventing and treating diseases. So, to continue oceans maintaining or sustaining us, we ought to discover a means to maintain them. To overcome these effects, few interventions should be exploited through effective functioning by the government organizations, individuals, and communities to restore and protect the habitats. Additionally, it is the responsibility of the man to downregulate pollution and overdevelopment of industries at the oceanfront, which reports negative impact leading to changes in the complex ecosystem.

Though the ocean contains a large source of functional organisms, the majority of these areas are still unreachable to the scientists. To get the ease of inaccessible regions, both researchers and oceanographers are to have a good understanding. Certain developments are required to get promising results. One such way is the support systems to the underwater life, which should be exploited in an improved way. Marine flora is a chemically structured, having novel potent compounds that act as an effective drug against diseases.

To succeed biological assays such as finding out the target site, mode of action, compound selectivity, and its cytotoxicity, bulk amount of a compound is necessary. Likewise, for preclinical and clinical trials, several hundred grams to kilograms of the compound is essential to know the exact functioning and application of the specific compound. This is one of the major tailbacks for the researchers to develop marine natural products for clinical applications. To overcome these problems, synthetic chemists are developing artificial strategies to get better results in bringing these compounds to the preclinical phase and finally to get it into the commercial and medicinal field. Marine natural compounds are capable to be chemically customized with different steric structural elements to enlarge "drug-like" compounds. As well, mariculture and aquaculture have been challenged to resolve the hitch of sustainable delivery of macroorganisms. Yet, the distinctive and at times selective conditions of the sea formulate development or maintenance of extracted samples is still very challenging and habitually impractical. For the preclinical phase trails to develop customized marine natural product, it strains complex, mechanistic, and pharmacokinetic studies, and those itself is a massive challenge yet nonetheless stimulating task. From a large-scale perception, the marine pharmaceutical channel remains active and currently appears to have enough thrust to bring the additional compound to the souk in the coming days. The functionality of various compounds against

pathogens is extremely encouraging, yet the development and application will continue with extreme hope.

Several techniques are in practice to get the best from the marine environment. Genome mining has accompanied in a resurgence in the field of natural product inventions, giving new expectations in the unending search for novel marine products. This stratagem lets researchers strap up the factual biosynthetic perspective, which dwells within varied groups of marine flora and suggests an important imminent not only for the biosynthetic activities but also for the evolutionary and self-protective strategies the organism makes use of in the marine environment. To make sure and possible for the marine products to reach the marketplace, collaborative events, including various disciplines such as general chemistry, organic and medicinal chemistry, biology, pharmacology, and bioinformatics, should get associated. For the betterment of drug improvement, a biological technique transferring genetic material in the host cells from the preferred compound is under development. This is a significant field for controlling the isolated and expressed genes of the marine species, which would assist us to have an added targeted loom in developing compounds from the marine source. Compounds extracted from marine macroorganisms are sometimes difficult to develop separately from cultures because few organisms are in symbiotic association with the host cell, where the desired genes through cultivated in vitro do not seem expressive. For such samples, metagenome analysis is an apt technique, which is still under development. Another major challenge is the compound's availability in an adequate amount to be utilized for clinical trials. Other few drawbacks are the ecological viability and cost feasibility essential for stirring up a structural modification to increase the drug properties.

Regarding the search for novel antiviral agents, the research is still ongoing so that the discoveries may lead to getting more potent and new-generation drugs to fight against viral diseases in humans and other animal species. For the production of these compounds, assimilation linking molecular modeling designs and combinatorial biochemistry alongside postgenomic tools perhaps be used for continuous production. By now, many marine compounds are being analyzed clinically and are produced either by chemical synthesis, aquaculture, or fermentation practices (Munro et al. 1999). Though chemical synthesis is apt for some metabolites, it might be cost-effectively not feasible for others (Bhadury et al. 2006). A new challenge with antiviral drugs is the resistance attenuation by diverse viruses. With numerous unrevealed organisms with inimitable metabolites in the marine habitats, a rising number of novel drugs may be revealed that viruses have not still developed resistance. However, it is imperative to note that several organisms of varied species generate the same classes of compounds, each one suitable for their distinctive composition and existing habitat. Though producing varied derived common categories of the compound by multiple organisms is a solution, a virus that resists to a specific drug might not defiant to other naturally occurring derivatives, which have the prospective to own alike, if not the same, antiviral activities. The application of biochemical tools will let the exploitation of occurring marine natural compounds generate an imitative chemical extremely advanced to that of the original. This leads to the establishment of metabolites with lower cytotoxicity and

improved specificity. So, the discovery of novel drugs and alteration of modern drugs will play a significant role in the fight in opposition to viral resistance. Advance technologies such as structure elucidation by nanoscale nuclear magnetic resonance, sampling techniques, total chemical synthesis, and biosynthesis by whole-genome sequencing and genetic engineering are fundamental tools to achieve marine natural products as drugs. Moreover, as stated above, modification of the culture conditions may pave the way for changes in the metabolic field. The drug industries should ponder on how aptly they should maintain the physicochemical factors such as optimum pH and temperature, the quantity of oxygen accessible, and evade variation of secondary metabolites. Besides in vitro studies, in vivo studies should be carried to pass the preclinical trials with impending results for therapeutic purposes.

A better understanding of the microbial physiology, systematics, metabolism, and sequencing multiple genomes of actinomycetes is essential as it is the most common distribution in the marine environment with varied functional activities and one of the productive sources in generating commercial compounds. Rather than general culture techniques, advanced tools such as high-throughput cultivation are an inventive method that ape nature and smooth the progress of growth of actinomycetes by reducing unwanted, fast-growing bacteria, because actinomycetes are a slow cultivator.

The future endeavors for marine natural products as a potential modulator should involve sound indulgent, especially to the microbial flora. Ten specific tips are taken into account include:

1. Augmented information of microbial ecosystem and physiology with an ecophysiological point of view, i.e., the distinctiveness of environmental substrates that control the growth of microorganisms.
2. Expansion of more intended, less conservative isolation methods, concerning mainly about the functional diversity, and physiological characters of native organisms.
3. Better understanding and attention in the learning of unknown or farthest environments.
4. Advanced technologies like matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization–time-of-flight (MALDI-TOF) mass spectrometry to identify preconditions.
5. Exploitation of latest techniques, for example, heterologous expression, gene interruption, and bioinformatics.
6. Utilization of taxa-related subjects such as chemical taxon and taxon features as a result that the compounds to facilitate openly implicated in the synthesis of secondary metabolites and could be used to get data about the biodiversity of antibiotics generated from varied organisms.
7. Developing advanced technologies in the area to increase the exploration range of natural products isolated and effectual deduplication.
8. Proposing high-throughput effectual screening strategies.
9. An innovative insight of polyphasic loom and effective computational investigation with genomic data will provide considerable information to disclose the site

and chemical taxon characteristics of earlier undetected bioactive actinomycetes. This would certainly direct in the direction of new invention and utilization of novel metabolites with extensive and significant contributions. According to our review, the greater extent of innovation to discover novel drugs and their development gives justification for our hopefulness that natural marine compounds will shape a new gesture of medicines that release into the marketplace and pharmacies in upcoming days.

10.12 Concluding Remarks

Regardless of the prospective for unearthing new drugs within this field, the present research is said to be extremely narrowed. In contrast to the vast diversity of marine species, and only a small part of them have been analyzed for their biological activities, and yet smaller numbers expressly for antimicrobial, bone disorders, and antiviral and cancer therapies. Most secondary metabolites isolated originate from metabolic processes at exertion in microorganisms, especially actinomycetes, cyanobacteria, microalgae, and fungi, and logically, it is providential for the biosynthetic pathway that code for natural compounds in prokaryotes is well-known and more acquiescent for research study than the eukaryotes. Additional research is essential so that the studies cover all the taxonomic clusters. Though both in vitro and in vivo studies have detailed general activities of the marine novel metabolites, the mode of action or the mechanism of activity and the biochemistry of the few compounds are unclear. Though we are into the twentieth century where trials on humans are still rare, studies should get advanced and much focused in the future so that we achieve promising results within the field. In conclusion, marine metabolites are very promising with varied biological activities and potent toward therapeutics and pharmacological effects. The shortage of research in this field increases discovery probability, making it an exhilarating area to carry out investigations. Better study attempts might direct to new inventions for effectual therapeutic alternatives, whereby will directly reduce the burden on the healthcare system and enhance the standard of health in patients.

References

Aav R, Kanger T, Pehk T et al (2005) Unexpected reactivity of ethyl 2-(Diethylphosphono) propionate toward 2, 2-disubstituted-1, 3-cyclopentanediones. Phosphorus Sulfur Silicon Related Elem 180(7):1739–1748

Abad MJ, Bermejo P (2001) Bioactive natural products from marine sources. Stud Nat Prod Chem 1 (25):683–755

Adhami VM, Afaq F, Ahmad N (2003) Suppression of ultraviolet B exposure-mediated activation of NF-κB in normal human keratinocytes by resveratrol. Neoplasia 5(1):74–82

Agarwal S, Chaugule S, More S et al (2017) Methanolic extract of Euchelus asper exhibits in-ovo anti-angiogenic and in vitro anti-proliferative activities. Biol Res 50

Aherne GW, Hardcastle A, Valenti M et al (1996) Antitumour evaluation of dolastatins 10 and 15 and their measurement in plasma by radioimmunoassay. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 38:225–232

Ahmad B, Shah M, Choi S (2019) Oceans as a source of immunotherapy. Mar Drugs 17(5):282

Ahn KS, Sethi G, Chao TH, Neuteboom ST, Chaturvedi MM, Palladino MA, Younes A, Aggarwal BB (2007) Salinosporamide A (NPI-0052) potentiates apoptosis, suppresses osteoclastogenesis, and inhibits invasion through down-modulation of NF-κB–regulated gene products. Blood Am J Hematol 110(7):2286–2295

Akerkar AS, Ponkshe CA, Indap MM (2009) Evaluation of immunomodulatory activity of extracts from marine animals. Indian J Mar Sci 38:22–27

Amaro S, Chamorro Á (2011) Translational stroke research of the combination of thrombolysis and antioxidant therapy. Stroke 42(5):1495–1499

Andriantsitohaina R, Auger C, Chataigneau T et al (2012) Molecular mechanisms of the cardiovascular protective effects of polyphenols. Br J Nutr 108(9):1532–1549

Anis M, Yasmeen A, Baig SG et al (2018) Phycochemical and pharmacological studies on Ulva fasciata Delile. Pak J Pharm Sci 31(3):875–883

Ankisetty S, Khan SI, Avula B et al (2013) Chlorinated didemnins from the tunicate Tridemnum solidum. Mar Drugs 11(11):4478–4486

Aoki S, Matsui K, Takata T et al (2001) Lembehyne A, a spongean polyacetylene, induces neuronal differentiation in neuroblastoma cell. Biochem Biophys Res Commun289: 558–563

Arena A, Maugeri TL, Pavone B et al (2006) Antiviral and immunoregulatory effect of a novel exopolysaccharide from a marine thermotolerant Bacillus licheniformis. Int Immunopharmacol 6:8–13

Arena A, Gugliandolo C, Stassi G et al (2009) An exopolysaccharide produced by Geobacillus thermodenitrificans strain B3-72: antiviral activity on immunocompetent cells. Immunol Lett 123:132–137

Bae SY, Yim JH, Lee HK et al (2006) Activation of murine peritoneal macrophages by sulfated exopolysaccharide from marine microalga Gyrodinium impudicum (strain KG03): Involvement of the NF-κB and JNK pathway. Int Immunopharmacol 6:473–484

Bai Z, Yin Y, Hu S, Wang G et al (2009) Identification of genes involved in immune response, microsatellite, and SNP markers from expressed sequence tags generated from hemocytes of freshwater pearl mussel (Hyriopsis cumingii). Mar Biotechnol 11(4):520

Balansa W, Islam R, Fontaine F et al (2013) Sesterterpene glycinyl-lactams: a new class of glycine receptor modulator from Australian marine sponges of the genus Psammocinia. Org Biomol Chem 11(28):4695–4701

Banerjee P, Zhang R, Ivan C et al (2019) Trabectedin reveals a strategy of immunomodulation in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Cancer Immunol Res 7(12):2036–2051

Bédouet L, Marie A, Dubost L et al (2007) Proteomics analysis of the nacre soluble and insoluble proteins from the oyster Pinctada margaritifera. Mar Biotechnol 9(5):638–649

Behl C, Moosmann B (2002) Antioxidant neuroprotection in Alzheimer's disease as preventive and therapeutic approach. Free Radical Biol Med 33(2):182–191

Béress A, Wassermann O, Bruhn T et al (1993) A new procedure for the isolation of anti-HIV compounds (polysaccharides and polyphenols) from the marine alga Fucus vesiculosus. J Nat Prod 56(4):478–488

Bhadury P, Mohammad BT, Wright PC (2006) The current status of natural products from marine fungi and their potential as anti-infective agents. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 33:325–337

Boyd MR, Gustafson K, McMahon J et al (1996) Discovery of cyanovirin-N, a novel HIV-inactivating protein from Nostoc ellipsosporum that targets viral gp120. Int Conf AIDS 11(71):71

Braden LM, Monaghan SJ, Fast MD (2020) Salmon immunological defense and interplay with the modulatory capabilities of its ectoparasite Lepeophtheirus salmonis. Parasite Immunol 42(8): e12731

Bravo L (1998) Polyphenols: chemistry, dietary sources, metabolism, and nutritional significance. Nutr Rev 56(11):317–333

Bruserud O, Stapnes C, Ersvaer E et al (2007) Histone deacetylase inhibitors in cancer treatment: a review of the clinical toxicity and the modulation of gene expression in cancer cells. Curr Pharm Biotechnol 8(6):388–400

Burgy G, Tahtouh T, Durieu E et al (2013) Chemical synthesis and biological validation of immobilized protein kinase inhibitory Leucettines. Eur J Med Chem 62:728–737

Byun MR, Kim AR, Hwang JH et al (2012) Phorbaketal A stimulates osteoblast differentiation through TAZ mediated Runx2 activation. FEBS Lett 586(8):1086–1092

C Recio M, Andujar I, L Rios J (2012) Anti-inflammatory agents from plants: progress and potential. Curr Med Chem 19(14):2088–2103

Castrillo A, De las Heras B, Hortelano S et al (2001) Inhibition of the nuclear factor κB (NF-κB) pathway by tetracyclic kaurene diterpenes in macrophages: specific effects on NF-κB-inducing kinase activity and on the coordinate activation of ERK and p38 MAPK. J Biol Chem 276 (19):15854–15860

Chabner BA, Longo DL (2011) Cancer chemotherapy and biotherapy: principles and practice, 4th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, p 367

Chandraraj S, Prakash B, Navanath K (2010) Immunomodulatory activities of ethyl acetate extracts of two marine sponges Gelliodes fibrosa and Tedania anhelans and brown algae Sargassum ilicifolium with reference to phagocytosis. Res J Pharm Biol Chem Sci 1:302–307

Chang L, Whittaker NF, Bewley CA (2003) Crambescidin 826 and dehydrocrambine A: new polycyclic guanidine alkaloids from the marine sponge Monanchora sp. that inhibit HIV-1 fusion. J Nat Prod 66(11):1490–1494

Chen Z, Zheng Z, Huang H et al (2012) Penicacids A–C, three new mycophenolic acid derivatives and immunosuppressive activities from the marine-derived fungus Penicillium sp. SOF07. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 22(9):3332–3335

Chen Y, Liu Z, Liu H et al (2018) Dichloroisocoumarins with potential anti-inflammatory activity from the mangrove endophytic fungus Ascomycota sp. CYSK-4. Mar Drugs 16(2):54

Cheynier V (2005) Polyphenols in foods are more complex than often thought. Am J Clin Nutr 81 (1):223S–229S

Chi V, Pennington MW, Norton RS et al (2012) Development of a sea anemone toxin as an immunomodulator for therapy of autoimmune diseases. Toxicon 59(4):529–546

Chill L, Rudi A, Aknin M (2004) New sesterterpenes from Madagascan Lendenfeldia sponges. Tetrahedron 60(47):10619–10626

Chiu CH, Guu YK, Liu CH et al (2007) Immune responses and gene expression in white shrimp, Litopenaeus vannamei, induced by Lactobacillus plantarum. Fish Shellfish Immunol 23 (2):364–377

Choi H, Proteau PJ, Byrum T et al (2012) Cymatherelactone and cymatherols A− C, polycyclic oxylipins from the marine brown alga Cymathere triplicata. Phytochemistry 73:134–141

Cimino G, De Rosa S, De Stefano S et al (1982) Isolation and X-ray crystal structure of a novel bromo-compound from two marine sponges. Tetrahedron Lett 23(7):767–768

Copp BR, Fairchild CR, Cornell L et al (1998) Naamidine A is an antagonist of the epidermal growth factor receptor and an in vivo active antitumor agent. J Med Chem 41(20):3909–3911

Cornish ML, Garbary DJ (2010) Antioxidants from macroalgae: potential applications in human health and nutrition. Algae 25(4):155–171

Cortet B, Biver E, Borg S et al (2011) Management of male osteoporosis: Lessons for clinical practice. Joint Bone Spine 78:S208–S210

Costantino V, Fattorusso E, Mangoni A (2009) Tedanol: A potent anti-inflammatory ent-pimarane diterpene from the Caribbean Sponge Tedania ignis. Bioorg Med Chem 17(21):7542–7547

Cuevas C, Pérez M, Martín MJ et al (2000) Synthesis of ecteinascidin ET-743 and phthalascidin Pt-650 from cyanosafracin B. Org Lett 12(16):2545–2548

Cumashi A, Ushakova NA, Preobrazhenskaya ME et al (2007) A comparative study of the anti-inflammatory, anticoagulant, antiangiogenic, and antiadhesive activities of nine different fucoidans from brown seaweeds. Glycobiology 17(5):541–552

Dembitsky VM (2002) Bromo-and iodo-containing alkaloids from marine microorganisms and sponges. Bioorg Chem 28(3):170–182

Dembitsky VM (2006) Anticancer activity of natural and synthetic acetylenic lipids. Lipids 41 (10):883–924

Dewapriya P, Li YX, Himaya SW et al (2013) Neoechinulin A suppresses amyloid-β oligomer-induced microglia activation and thereby protects PC-12 cells from inflammation-mediated toxicity. Neurotoxicology 35:30–40

Ding X, Zhang J, Jiang P et al (2004) Structural features and hypoglycaemic activity of an exopolysaccharide produced by Sorangium cellulosum. Lett App Microbiol 38(3):223–228

Dou H, Song Y, Liu X (2011) Chaetoglobosin Fex from the marine-derived endophytic fungus inhibits induction of inflammatory mediators via toll-like receptor 4 signaling in macrophages. Biol Pharm Bull 34(12):1864–1873

Elion GB, Furman PA, Fyfe JA et al (1977) Selectivity of action of an antiherpetic agent, 9-(2-hydroxyethoxymethyl) guanine. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 74(12):5716–5720

Elyakov GB, Stonik VA (2003) Marine bioorganic chemistry as the base of Mar Biotechnol. Russ Chem Bull 52(1):1–9

Ensrud KE, Barrett-Connor EL, Schwartz A et al (2004) Randomized trial of effect of alendronate continuation versus discontinuation in women with low BMD: results from the Fracture Intervention Trial long-term extension. J Bone Miner Res 19(8):1259–1269

Fang HY, Hsu CH, Chao CH et al (2013) Cytotoxic and anti-inflammatory metabolites from the soft coral Scleronephthya gracillimum. Mar Drugs 11(6):1853–1865

Favreau P, Benoit E, Hocking HG et al (2012) A novel μ-conopeptide, CnIIIC, exerts potent and preferential inhibition of NaV1. 2/1.4 channels and blocks neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. British Journal of Pharmacology 166(5):1654–1668

Feng Y, Bowden BF, Kapoor V (2012) Ianthellamide A, a selective kynurenine-3-hydroxylase inhibitor from the Australian marine sponge Ianthella quadrangulata. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 22 (10):3398–3401

Fernandes PD, Zardo RS, Figueiredo GS et al (2014) Anti-inflammatory properties of convolutamydine A and two structural analogues. Life Sci 116(1):16–24

Festa C, De Marino S, Sepe V et al (2009) Perthamides C and D, two new potent anti-inflammatory cyclopeptides from a Solomon Lithistid sponge Theonella swinhoei. Tetrahedron 65 (50):10424–10429

Festa C, De Marino S, D'Auria MV (2012) Anti-inflammatory cyclopeptides from the marine sponge Theonella swinhoei. Tetrahedron 68(13):2851–2857

Fiorucci S, Distrutti E, Bifulco G et al (2012) Marine sponge steroids as nuclear receptor ligands. Trends Pharmacol Sci 33(11):591–601

Fuchs-Tarlovsky V (2013) Role of antioxidants in cancer therapy. Nutrition 29(1):15–21

Fujita M, Nakao Y, Matsunaga S et al (2002) Sodium 1-(12-hydroxy) octadecanyl sulfate, an MMP2 inhibitor, isolated from a tunicate of the family Polyclinidae. J Nat Prod 65 (12):1936–1938

Giovannini C, Scazzocchio B, Varì R et al (2007) Apoptosis in cancer and atherosclerosis: polyphenol activities. Ann Ist Super Sanita 43(4):406

Gordaliza M (2007) Natural products as leads to anticancer drugs. Clin Transl Oncol 9(12):767–776

Gorelik E (1987) Augmentation of the antimetastatic effect of anticoagulant drugs by immunostimulation in mice. Cancer Res 47(3):809–815

Gorelik E, Bere WW, Herberman RB (1984) Role of NK cells in the antimetastatic effect of anticoagulant drugs. Int J Cancer 33(1):87–94

Goud TV, Reddy NS, Swamy NR (2003) Anti-HIV active petrosins from the marine sponge Petrosia similis. Biol Pharm Bull 26(10):1498–1501

Groombridge B, Jenkins MD (2000) Global biodiversity: earth's living resources in the 21st century. World Conservation Press, Cambridge
Gross H, König GM (2006) Terpenoids from marine organisms: unique structures and their pharmacological potential. Phytochem Rev 5(1):115–141
Guerin M, Huntley ME, Olaizola M (2003) Haematococcus astaxanthin: applications for human health and nutrition. Trends Biotechnol 21(5):210–216
Guezennec J (2003) From extreme environments to biologically active exopolysaccharides. Commun Agric Appl Biol Sci 68(2A):227–234
Gugliandolo C, Lentini V, Spanò A et al (2012) New bacilli from shallow hydrothermal vents of Panarea Island (Italy) and their biotechnological potential. J Appl Microbiol 112(6):1102–1112
Gugliandolo C, Spanò A, Lentini V et al (2014) Antiviral and immunomodulatory effects of a novel bacterial exopolysaccharide of shallow marine vent origin. J Appl Microbiol 116(4):1028–1034
Gustafson K, Roman M, Fenical W (1989a) The macrolactins, a novel class of antiviral and cytotoxic macrolides from a deep-sea marine bacterium. J Am Chem Soc 111(19):7519–7524
Gustafson KR, Cardellina JH, Fuller RW et al (1989b) AIDS-antiviral sulfolipids from cyanobacteria (blue-green algae). J Nat Cancer Inst 81(16):1254–1258
Güven KC, Percot A, Sezik E (2010) Alkaloids in marine algae. Mar Drugs 8(2):269–284
Guzii AG, Makarieva TN, Korolkova YV et al (2013) Pulchranin A, isolated from the Far-Eastern marine sponge, Monanchora pulchra: The first marine non-peptide inhibitor of TRPV-1 channels. Tetrahedron Lett 54(10):1247–1250
Haga A, Tamoto H, Ishino M et al (2013) Pyridone alkaloids from a marine-derived fungus, Stagonosporopsis cucurbitacearum, and their activities against azole-resistant Candida albicans. J Nat Prod 76(4):750–754
Hanif N, Ohno O, Kitamura M et al (2010) Symbiopolyol, a VCAM-1 inhibitor from a symbiotic dinoflagellate of the jellyfish Mastigias papua. J Nat Prod 73(7):1318–1322
Harborne JB, Williams CA (2000) Advances in flavonoid research since 1992. Phytochemistry 55 (6):481–504
Harris JR, Gebauer W, Söhngen SM et al (1997) Keyhole limpet hemocyanin (KLH), II: Characteristic reassociation properties of purified KLH1 and KLH2. Micron 28(1):43–56
Hasui M, Matsuda M, Okutani K et al (1995) In vitro antiviral activities of sulfated polysaccharides from a marine microalga (Cochlodinium polykrikoides) against human immunodeficiency virus and other enveloped viruses. Int J Biol Macromol 17(5):293–297
Hayashi T, Hayashi K, Maeda M et al (1996) Calcium Spirulan, an inhibitor of enveloped virus replication, from a blue-green alga Spirulina platensis. J Nat Prod 59(1):83–87
Heim KE, Tagliaferro AR, Bobilya DJ (2002) Flavonoid antioxidants: chemistry, metabolism and structure-activity relationships. J Nutr Biochem 13(10):572–584
Helman Y, Natale F, Sherrell RM et al (2008) Extracellular matrix production and calcium carbonate precipitation by coral cells in vitro. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105(1):54–58
Hernlund E, Svedbom A, Ivergård M et al (2013) Osteoporosis in the European Union: medical management, epidemiology and economic burden. Arch Osteoporos 8(1-2):136
Holmes-McNary M, Baldwin AS (2000) Chemopreventive properties of trans-resveratrol are associated with inhibition of activation of the IκB kinase. Cancer Res 60(13):3477–3483
Hong S, Kim SH, Rhee MH et al (2003) In vitro anti-inflammatory and pro-aggregative effects of a lipid compound, petrocortyne A, from marine sponges. Naunyn Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 368(6):448–456
Hong JM, Kim BJ, Shim JH et al (2012) Enhancement of bone regeneration through facile surface functionalization of solid freeform fabrication-based three-dimensional scaffolds using mussel adhesive proteins. Acta Biomater 8(7):2578–2586
Horwitz JP, Chua J, Noel M (1964) The monomesylates of 1-(2'-deoxy-β-D-lyxofuranosyl) thymine1, 2. J Org Chem 29(7):2076–2078
Hu Y, Legako AG, Espindola AP et al (2012) Erythrolic acids A–E, meroterpenoids from a marine-derived Erythrobacter sp. J Org Chem 77(7):3401–3407

Huang R, Lee HT (2005) Immunological properties of the marine brown alga endarachne binghamiae (Phaeophyceae). Int J Appl Sci Eng 3(3):167–173
Huang X, Sun X, Ding B et al (2013) A new anti-acetylcholinesterase α-pyrone meroterpene, arigsugacin I, from mangrove endophytic fungus Penicillium sp. sk5GW1L of Kandeliacandel. Planta Med 79(16):1572–1575
Hudson JB, Saboune H, Abramowski Z et al (1988) The photoactive antimicrobial properties of eudistomins from the Caribbean tunicate Eudistoma olivaceum. Photochem Photobiol 47 (3):377–381
Hussein G, Sankawa U, Goto H et al (2006) Astaxanthin, a carotenoid with potential in human health and nutrition. J Nat Prod 69(3):443–449
Hwang Y, Rowley D, Rhodes D et al (1999) Mechanism of inhibition of a poxvirus topoisomerase by the marine natural product sansalvamide A. Mol Pharmacol 55(6):1049–1053
Ishibashi T (2013) Molecular hydrogen: new antioxidant and anti-inflammatory therapy for rheumatoid arthritis and related diseases. Curr Pharm Des 19(35):6375–6381
Itoh J, Shomura T, Omoto S et al (1982) Isolation, physicochemical properties and biological activities of amicoumacins produced by Bacillus pumilus. Agric Biol Chem 46(5):1255–1259
Iwu MM, Wootton J (eds) (2002) Ethnomedicine and drug discovery. Elsevier
Jang KH, Nam SJ, Locke JB et al (2013) Anthracimycin, a potent anthrax antibiotic from a marine-derived actinomycete. Angew Chem 125(30):7976–7978
Janmaat ML, Rodriguez JA, Jimeno J et al (2005) Kahalalide F induces necrosis-like cell death that involves depletion of ErbB3 and inhibition of Akt signaling. Mol Pharmacol 68(2):502–510
Jensen JE, Mobli M, Brust A et al (2012) Cyclisation increases the stability of the sea anemone peptide APETx2 but decreases its activity at acid-sensing ion channel 3. Mar Drugs 10 (7):1511–1527
Jeong HJ, Lee SA, Moon PD et al (2006) Alginic acid has anti-anaphylactic effects and inhibits inflammatory cytokine expression via suppression of nuclear factor-κB activation. Clin Exp Allergy 36(6):785–794
Jeong SC, Jeong YT, Lee SM et al (2015) Immune-modulating activities of polysaccharides extracted from brown algae Hizikia fusiforme. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 79(8):1362–1365
Jeong YT, Baek SH, Jeong SC et al (2016) Osteoprotective effects of polysaccharide-enriched Hizikia fusiforme processing byproduct in vitro and in vivo models. J Med Food 19(8):805–814
Jiao G, Yu G, Zhang J et al (2011) Chemical structures and bioactivities of sulfated polysaccharides from marine algae. Mar Drugs 9(2):196–223
Jimeno J, Lopez-Martin JA, Ruiz-Casado A et al (2004) Progress in the clinical development of new marine-derived anticancer compounds. Anti-Cancer Drugs 15(4):321–329
Johnell O, Kanis JA (2006) An estimate of the worldwide prevalence and disability associated with osteoporotic fractures. Osteoporos Int 17(12):1726–1733
Jovanović-Šanta SS, Petri ET, Klisurić OR et al (2015) Antihormonal potential of selected D-homo and D-seco estratriene derivatives. Steroids 97:45–53
Jung HA, Jin SE, Ahn BR et al (2013) Anti-inflammatory activity of edible brown alga Eisenia bicyclis and its constituents fucosterol and phlorotannins in LPS-stimulated RAW264. 7 macrophages. Food Chem Toxicol 59:199–206
Kalechman Y, Albeck M, Sredni B (1992) In vivo synergistic effect of the immunomodulator AS101 and the PKC inducer bryostatin. Cell Immunol 143(1):143–153
Kang NJ, Han SC, Kang GJ et al (2015) Diphlorethohydroxycarmalol inhibits interleukin-6 production by regulating NF-κB, STAT5 and SOCS1 in lipopolysaccharide-stimulated RAW264. 7 cells. Mar Drugs 13(4):2141–2157
Kariya Y, Mulloy B, Imai K et al (2004) Isolation and partial characterization of fucan sulfates from the body wall of sea cucumber Stichopus japonicus and their ability to inhibit osteoclastogenesis. Carbohydr Res 339(7):1339–1346
Karnjanapratum S, You S (2011) Molecular characteristics of sulfated polysaccharides from Monostromanitidum and their in vitro anticancer and immunomodulatory activities. Int J Biol Macromol 48(2):311–318

Keffer JL, Huecas S, Hammill JT et al (2013) Chrysophaentins are competitive inhibitors of FtsZ and inhibit Z-ring formation in live bacteria. Bioorg Med Chem 21(18):5673–5678
Kellogg J, Esposito D, Grace MH et al (2015) Alaskan seaweeds lower inflammation in RAW 264.7 macrophages and decrease lipid accumulation in 3T3-L1 adipocytes. J Funct Foods 15:396–407
Keyzers RA, Northcote PT, Berridge MV et al (2003) Clathriol B, a new 14β marine sterol from the New Zealand sponge Clathria lissosclera. Aust J Chem 56(4):279–282
Kijjoa A, Sawangwong P (2004) Drugs and cosmetics from the sea. Mar Drugs 2(2):73–82
Kim HS, Hayashi M, Shibata Y et al (1999) Cycloprodigiosin hydrochloride obtained from Pseudoalteromonas denitrificans is a potent antimalarial agent. Biol Pharm Bull 22(5):532–534
Kim KH, Kim YW, Kim HB et al (2006) Anti-apoptotic activity of laminarin polysaccharides and their enzymatically hydrolyzed oligosaccharides from Laminaria japonica. Biotechnol Lett 28 (6):439–446
Kim AR, Shin TS, Lee MS et al (2009) Isolation and identification of phlorotannins from Ecklonia stolonifera with antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties. J Agr Food Chem 57 (9):3483–3489
Kim H, Lee K, Ko CY et al (2012) The role of nacreous factors in preventing osteoporotic bone loss through both osteoblast activation and osteoclast inactivation. Biomaterials 33(30):7489–7496
Kim JA, Karadeniz F, Ahn BN et al (2016) Bioactive quinone derivatives from the marine brown alga Sargassum thunbergii induce anti-adipogenic and pro-osteoblastogenic activities. J Sci Food Agri 96(3):783–790
Kinnel RB, Esquenazi E, Leao T et al (2017) A Maldi isotopic approach to discover natural products: Cryptomaldamide, a hybrid tripeptide from the marine cyanobacterium Moorea producens. J Nat Prod 80(5):1514–1521
Kinugawa M, Fukuzawa S, Tachibana K (2009) Skeletal protein protection: the mode of action of an anti-osteoporotic marine alkaloid, norzoanthamine. J Bone Miner Metabol 27(3):303–314
Kita M, Kondo M, Koyama T et al (2004) Symbioimine exhibiting inhibitory effect of osteoclast differentiation, from the symbiotic marine dinoflagellate Symbiodinium sp. J Am Chem Soc 126 (15):4794–4795
Kita M, Yamagishi K, Tsuchiya K et al (2017) Development of photoaffinity derivatives of the antitumor macrolide aplyronine A, a PPI-inducer between actin and tubulin. Bioorg Med Chem 25(24):6322–6331
König GM, Kehraus S, Seibert SF et al (2006) Natural products from marine organisms and their associated microbes. Chem Bio Chem 7(2):229–238
Kozlovskaya EP, Artyukov AA, Kozlovskii AS et al (1997) Ranozazhivlyayushchee sredstvo «Kollagenaza KK» shirokogo spektra deistviya. Russ Fed Pat (RF) 2093166:29. Russian
Krinsky NI (1993) Effects of carotenoids on cells. Mol Asp Med 14(3):241–246
Kumar R, Subramani R, Feussner KD et al (2012) A new antifungal tetramic acid glycoside from a Fijian marine sponge of the genus Melophlus. Mar Drugs 10(1):200–208
Laurienzo P (2010) Marine polysaccharides in pharmaceutical applications: an overview. Mar Drugs 8(9):2435–2465
Lee JB, Hayashi K, Hirata M et al (2006) Antiviral sulfated polysaccharide from Navicula directa, a diatom collected from deep-sea water in Toyama Bay. Biol Pharm Bull 29(10):2135–2139
Lee CK, Kim HS, Nam JR et al (2008) Antiviral effects of sulfated exopolysaccharide from the marine microalga Gyrodinium impudicum strain KG03. Antivir Res 78(2):A59
Lee HJ, Kang GJ, Yang EJ et al (2009) Two enone fatty acids isolated from Gracilaria verrucosa suppress the production of inflammatory mediators by down-regulating NF-κB and STAT1 activity in lipopolysaccharide-stimulated Raw 264.7 cells. Arch Pharm Res 32(3):453–462
Lee SU, Kwak HB, Pi SH et al (2011) In vitro and in vivo osteogenic activity of largazole. ACS Med Chem Lett 2(3):248–251
Lee SH, Kang SM, Ko SC et al (2012) Octaphlorethol A, a novel phenolic compound isolated from a brown alga, Ishige foliacea, increases glucose transporter 4-mediated glucose uptake in skeletal muscle cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 420(3):576–581
Li B, Lu F, Wei X et al (2008) Fucoidan: structure and bioactivity. Molecules 13(8):1671–1695

Li H, Aneja R, Chaiken I (2013) Click chemistry in peptide-based drug design. Molecules 18 (8):9797–9817
Lin WY, Su JH, Lu Y et al (2010) Cytotoxic and anti-inflammatory cembranoids from the Dongsha Atoll soft coral Sarcophyton crassocaule. Bioorg Med Chem 18(5):1936–1941
Lin MH, Yang YL, Chen YP et al (2011) A novel exopolysaccharide from the biofilm of Thermus aquaticus YT-1 induces the immune response through Toll-like receptor 2. J Biol Chem 286 (20):17736–17745
Lin CY, Lu MC, Su JH et al (2013) Immunomodulatory effect of marine cembrane-type diterpenoids on dendritic cells. Mar Drugs 11(4):1336–1350
Liu CY, Hwang TL, Lin MR et al (2010) A bioactive sterol glycoside from an octocoral Carijoa sp. (Clavulariidae). Mar Drugs 8(7):2014–2020
Liu AH, Liu DQ, Liang TJ et al (2013a) Caulerprenylols A and B, two rare antifungal prenylated para-xylenes from the green alga Caulerpa racemosa. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 23(9):2491–2494
Liu Y, Davidson BP, Yue Q et al (2013b) Molecular imaging of inflammation and platelet adhesion in advanced atherosclerosis effects of antioxidant therapy with NADPH oxidase inhibition. Circ Cardiovas Imaging 6(1):74–82
Longley RE, Gunasekera SP, Pomponi SA (1998) Discodermolide compounds. US patent 5,840,750
Lopez LM, Grimes DA, Schulz KF et al (2014) Steroidal contraceptives: effect on bone fractures in women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6
López-Macià À, Jiménez JC, Royo M et al (2001) Synthesis and structure determination of Kahalalide F1, 2. J Am Chem Soc 123(46):11398–11401
Loya S, Rudi A, Kashman Y, Hizi A et al (2002) Mode of inhibition of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase by polyacetylenetriol, a novel inhibitor of RNA-and DNA-directed DNA polymerases. Biochem J 362(3):685–692
Lucke-Wold BP, Turner RC, Logsdon AF et al (2015) Common mechanisms of Alzheimer's disease and ischemic stroke: the role of protein kinase C in the progression of age-related neurodegeneration. J Alzheimers Dis 43(3):711–724
Lüscher-Mattii M (2000) Polyanions—a lost chance in the fight against HIV and other virus diseases? Antivi Chem Chemother 11(4):249–259
Ma Z, Wang N, Hu J et al (2012) Isolation and characterization of a new iturinic lipopeptide, mojavensin A produced by a marine-derived bacterium Bacillus mojavensis B0621A. J Antibiot 65(6):317–322
Ma X, Xie B, Du J et al (2017) The anti-inflammatory effect and structure of epcp1-2 from crypthecodinium cohnii via modulation of tlr4-nf-κb pathways in lps-induced raw 264.7 cells. Mar drugs 15(12):376
Madden T, Tran HT, Beck D et al (2000) Novel marine-derived anticancer agents: a phase I clinical, pharmacological, and pharmacodynamic study of dolastatin 10 (NSC 376128) in patients with advanced solid tumors. Clin Cancer Res 6(4):1293–1301
Maeda H, Tsukui T, Sashima T et al (2008) Seaweed carotenoid, fucoxanthin, as a multi-functional nutrient. Asia Pac J Clin Nutr 17
Maki A, Diwakaran H, Redman B et al (1995) The bcl-2 and p53 oncoproteins can be modulated by bryostatin 1 and dolastatins in human diffuse large cell lymphoma. Anti-Cancer Drugs 6 (3):392–397
Manna SK, Mukhopadhyay A, Aggarwal BB (2000) Resveratrol suppresses TNF-induced activation of nuclear transcription factors NF-κB, activator protein-1, and apoptosis: potential role of reactive oxygen intermediates and lipid peroxidation. J Immunol 64(12):6509–6519
Martínez-Poveda B, Quesada AR, Medina MÁ (2017) Pleiotropic role of puupehenones in biomedical research. Mar Drugs 15(10):325
Maugeri TL, Gugliandolo C, Caccamo D et al (2002) Three novel halotolerant and thermophilic Geobacillus strains from shallow marine vents. Syst Appl Microbiol 25(3):450–455
Mehrotra S, Mishra KP, Maurya R et al (2003) Anticellular and immunosuppressive properties of ethanolic extract of Acorus calamus rhizome. Int Immunopharmacol 3(1):53–61

Melek FR, Tadros MM, Yousif F et al (2012) Screening of marine extracts for schistosomicidal activity in vitro. Isolation of the triterpene glycosides echinosides A and B with potential activity from the sea cucumbers Actinopyga echinites and Holothuria polii. Pharm Biol 50(4):490–496

Mencarelli A, D'Amore C, Renga B et al (2014) Solomonsterol A, a marine pregnane-X-receptor agonist, attenuates inflammation and immune dysfunction in a mouse model of arthritis. Mar Drugs 12(1):36–53

Merceron C, Portron S, Vignes-Colombeix C et al (2012) Pharmacological modulation of human mesenchymal stem cell chondrogenesis by a chemically oversulfated polysaccharide of marine origin: potential application to cartilage regenerative medicine. Stem Cell 30(3):471–480

Meydani SN, Meydani M, Verdon CP et al (1986) Vitamin E supplementation suppresses prostaglandin E21 synthesis and enhances the immune response of aged mice. Mech Ageing Dev 34 (2):191–201

Meydani SN, Barklund MP, Liu S et al (1990) Vitamin E supplementation enhances cell-mediated immunity in healthy elderly subjects. Am J Clin Nutr 52(3):557–563

Middleton E, Kandaswami C, Theoharides TC (2000) The effects of plant flavonoids on mammalian cells: implications for inflammation, heart disease, and cancer. Pharmacol Rev 52 (4):673–751

Miles EA, Calder PC (2012) Influence of marine n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids on immune function and a systematic review of their effects on clinical outcomes in rheumatoid arthritis. Br J Nutr 107(S2):S171–S184

Minagawa K, Kouzuki S, Yoshimoto JU et al (2002) Stachyflin and acetylstachyflin, novel anti-influenza A virus substances, produced by Stachybotrys sp. RF-7260. J Antibiot 55(2):155–164

Minamida M, Kumagai K, Ulanova D et al (2014) Amphirionin-4 with potent proliferation-promoting activity on bone marrow stromal cells from a marine dinoflagellate Amphidinium species. Org Lett 16(18):4858–4861

Mitchell SS, Rhodes D, Bushman FD et al (2000) Cyclodidemniserinol Trisulfate, a Sulfated Serinolipid from the Palauan Ascidian Didemnum guttatum That Inhibits HIV-1 Integrase. Organic Lett 2(11):1605–1607

Mitsiades CS, Ocio EM, Pandiella A et al (2008) Aplidin, a marine organism–derived compound with potent antimyeloma activity in vitro and in vivo. Cancer Res 68(13):5216–5225

Miyashita K, Hosokawa M (2007) Beneficial health effects of seaweed carotenoid, fucoxanthin. marine nutraceuticals and functional foods. In: Barrow C, Shahidi F (eds) . CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, p 297

Miyata T, Tokunaga F, Yoneya T et al (1989) Antimicrobial peptides, isolated from horseshoe crab hemocytes, tachyplesin II, and polyphemusins I and II: chemical structures and biological activity. J Biochem 106(4):663–668

Molinski TF, Dalisay DS, Lievens SL et al (2009) Drug development from marine natural products. Nat Rev Drug Discov 8(1):69–85

Mori T, O'Keefe BR, Sowder RC et al (2005) Isolation and characterization of griffithsin, a novel HIV-inactivating protein, from the red alga Griffithsia sp. J Biol Chem 280(10):9345–9353

Morimoto M, Mori H, Otake T et al (1991) Inhibitory effect of tachyplesin I on the proliferation of human immunodeficiency virus in vitro. Chemotherapy 37(3):206–211

Müller WE, Sobel C, Diehl-Seifert B et al (1987) Influence of the antileukemic and anti-human immunodeficiency virus agent avarol on selected immune responses in vitro and in vivo. Biochem Pharmacol 36(9):1489–1494

Munro MH, Blunt JW, Dumdei EJ (1999) The discovery and development of marine compounds with pharmaceutical potential. Ind Microbiol 35:15–25

Nakajima H, Hamasaki T, Nishimura K et al (1988) Isolation of 2-acetylamino-3-hydroxy-4-methyloct-6-enoic acid, a derivative of the "C9-amino acid" residue of cyclosporins, produced by the fungus Neocosmospora vasinfecta EF Smith. Agric Biol Chem 52(6):1621–1623

Nakamura T, Matsumine A, Sudo A (2016) The value of trabectedin in the treatment of soft tissue sarcoma. Ther Clin Risk Manag 12:73

Nakao Y, Takada K, Matsunaga S et al (2001) Calyceramides A–C: neuraminidase inhibitory sulfated ceramides from the marine sponge Discodermia calyx. Tetrahedron 57(15):3013–3017
Newman DJ, Cragg GM (2004) Marine natural products and related compounds in clinical and advanced preclinical trials. J Nat Prod 67(8):1216–1238
Newman DJ, Cragg GM (2007) Natural products as sources of new drugs over the last 25 years. J Nat Prod 70(3):461–477
Nguyen MH, Qian ZJ, Nguyen VT et al (2013) Tetrameric peptide purified from hydrolysates of biodiesel byproducts of Nannochloropsiso culata induces osteoblastic differentiation through MAPK and Smad pathway on MG-63 and D1 cells. Process Biochem 48(9):1387–1394
Nicolaus B, Kambourova M, Oner ET (2010) Exopolysaccharides from extremophiles: from fundamentals to biotechnology. Environ Technol 31(10):1145–1158
Ning C, Wang HM, Gao R et al (2018) Marine-derived protein kinase inhibitors for neuroinflammatory diseases. Biomed Eng Online 17(1):46
O'Gorman DM, O'Carroll C, Carmody RJ (2012) Evidence that marine-derived, multi-mineral, aquamin inhibits the NF-κB signaling pathway in vitro. Phytother Res 26(4):630–632
Ohgami K, Shiratori K, Kotake S et al (2003) Effects of astaxanthin on lipopolysaccharide-induced inflammation in vitro and in vivo. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 44(6):2694–2701
Oku N, Gustafson KR, Cartner LK et al (2004) A new HIV-inhibitory depsipeptide from the Papua New Guinea marine sponge Neamphius huxleyi. J Nat Prod 67(8):1407–1411
Olaizola M (2007) The production and health benefits of astaxanthin. Mar Nutraceut Funct Foods 321
Oliveira DV, Silva TS, Cordeiro OD et al (2012) Identification of proteins with potential osteogenic activity present in the water-soluble matrix proteins from Crassostrea gigas nacre using a proteomic approach. Sci World J:1–9
Ovodova RG, Glazkova VE, Mikheyskaya LV et al (1992) The structure of mytilan, a bioglycan-immunomodulator isolated from the mussel Crenomytilus grayanus. Carbohydr Res 223:221–226
Palyanova NV, Pankova TM, Starostina MV, Kicha AA, Ivanchina NV, Stonik VA et al (2013) Neuritogenic and neuroprotective effects of polar steroids from the far east starfishes Patiria pectinifera and Distolasterias nipon. Mar Drugs 11(5):1440–1455
Pekmezci D (2011) Vitamin E and immunity. Vitam Horm 86:179–215
Pereira H, Leão-Ferreira LR, Moussatché N et al (2004) Antiviral activity of diterpenes isolated from the Brazilian marine alga Dictyota menstrualis against human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1). Antivir Res 64(1):69–76
Pereira DM, Correia-da-Silva G, Valentão P et al (2014) Anti-inflammatory effect of unsaturated fatty acids and ergosta-7, 22-dien-3-ol from Marthasterias glacialis: prevention of CHOP-mediated ER-stress and NF-κB activation. PLoS One 9(2):e88341
Pettit GR, Kamano Y, Herald CL (1987) The isolation and structure of a remarkable marine animal antineoplastic constituent: dolastatin 10. J Am Chem Soc 109(22):6883–6885
Pettit GR, Tang Y, Zhang Q et al (2013) Isolation and structures of axistatins 1–3 from the republic of palau marine sponge Agelas axifera hentschel. J Nat Prod 76(3):420–424
Philip PA, Rea D, Thavasu P et al (1993) Phase I study of bryostatin 1: assessment of interleukin 6 and tumor necrosis factor α induction in vivo. J Natl Cancer Inst 85(22):1812–1818
Piao SJ, Song YL, Jiao WH et al (2013) Hippolachnin A, a new antifungal polyketide from the South China Sea sponge Hippospongia lachne. Org Lett 15(14):3526–3529
Poli A, Anzelmo G, Nicolaus B (2010) Bacterial exopolysaccharides from extreme marine habitats: production, characterization and biological activities. Mar Drugs 8(6):1779–1802
Ponkshe CA, Indap MM (2002) In vivo and in vitro evaluation for immunomodulatory activity of three marine animal extracts with reference to phagocytosis. Indian J Exp Biol 40 (12):1399–1402
Potts BC, Faulkner DJ, Chan JA et al (1991) Didemnaketals A and B, HIV-1 protease inhibitors from the ascidian Didemnum sp. J Am Chem Soc 113(16):6321–6322

Privatdegarilhe M, De Rudder J (1964) Effect of 2 arabinose nucleosides on the multiplication of herpes virus and vaccine in cell culture. C R Math Acad Sci Paris 259:2725

Prudhomme J, McDaniel E, Ponts N et al (2008) Marine actinomycetes: a new source of compounds against the human malaria parasite. PLoS One 3(6):e2335

Puupponen-Pimiä R, Nohynek L, Meier C, Kähkönen M, Heinonen M, Hopia A, Oksman-Caldentey KM et al (2001) Antimicrobial properties of phenolic compounds from berries. J Appl Microbiol 90(4):494–507

Randazzo A, Bifulco G, Giannini C et al (2001) Halipeptins A and B: two novel potent anti-inflammatory cyclic depsipeptides from the Vanuatu marine sponge Haliclona species. J Am Chem Soc 123(44):10870–10876

Rashid MA, Gustafson KR, Cartner LK et al (2001) Microspinosamide, a new HIV-inhibitory cyclic depsipeptide from the marine sponge Sidonops microspinosa. J Nat Prod 64(1):117–121

Rasool M, Sabina EP (2009) Appraisal of immunomodulatory potential of Spirulina fusiformis: an in vivo and in vitro study. J Nat Med 63(2):169–175

Rathod DB, Suman L, Yadav GK et al (2010) Immunomodulatory and antioxidant activity of Curculigo orchioides Gaertn. Int J Pharmtechol Res 2(2):1197–1203

Rattanasopa C, Phungphong S, Wattanapermpool J et al (2015) Significant role of estrogen in maintaining cardiac mitochondrial functions. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 147:1–9

Reddy MV, Rao MR, Rhodes D et al (1999) Lamellarin α 20-sulfate, an inhibitor of HIV-1 integrase active against HIV-1 virus in cell culture. J Med Chem 42(11):1901–1907

Rifai S, Fassouane A, Pinho PM et al (2005) Cytotoxicity and inhibition of lymphocyte proliferation of fasciculatin, a linear furanosesterterpene isolated from Ircinia variabilis collected from the Atlantic Coast of Morocco. Mar Drugs 3(1):15–21

Rinehart KL, Kishore V, Bible KC et al (1988) Didemnins and tunichlorin: novel natural products from the marine tunicate Tridemnum solidum. J Nat Prod 51(1):1–21

Rinehart KL, Holt TG, Fregeau NL et al (1990) Bioactive compounds from aquatic and terrestrial sources. J Nat Prod 53(4):771–792

Rowley DC, Hansen MS, Rhodes D (2002) Thalassiolins A–C: new marine-derived inhibitors of HIV cDNA integrase. Bioorg Med Chem 10(11):3619–3625

Rowley DC, Kelly S, Kauffman CA et al (2003) Halovirs A–E, new antiviral agents from a marine-derived fungus of the genus Scytalidium. Bioorg Med Chem 11(19):4263–4274

Rubiolo JA, Ternon E, López-Alonso H et al (2013) Crambescidin-816 acts as a fungicidal with more potency than crambescidin-800 and-830, inducing cell cycle arrest, increased cell size and apoptosis in Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Mar Drugs 11(11):4419–4434

Rudi A, Yosief T, Loya S et al (2001) Clathsterol, a novel anti-HIV-1 RT sulfated sterol from the sponge Clathria species. J Nat Prod 64(11):1451–1453

Ryan S, O'Gorman DM, Nolan YM (2011) Evidence that the marine-derived multi-mineral Aquamin has antiinflammatory effects on cortical glial-enriched cultures. Phytother Res 25 (5):765–767

Ryu MJ, Kim AD, Kang KA et al (2013) The green algae Ulva fasciata Delile extract induces apoptotic cell death in human colon cancer cells. Vitro Cell Dev Biol Anim 49(1):74–81

Ryu B, Li YX, Kang KH et al (2015) Floridoside from Laurencia undulata promotes osteogenic differentiation in murine bone marrow mesenchymal cells. J Funct Food 19:505–511

Sakoulas G, Nam SJ, Loesgen S et al (2012) Novel bacterial metabolite merochlorin A demonstrates in vitro activity against multi-drug resistant methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. PLoS One 7(1):e29439

Salcedo M, Cuevas C, Alonso JL et al (2007) The marine sphingolipid-derived compound ES 285 triggers an atypical cell death pathway. Apoptosis 12(2):395–409

Salimian J, Arefpour MA, Riazipour M et al (2014) Immunomodulatory effects of selenium and vitamin E on alterations in T lymphocyte subsets induced by T-2 toxin. Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol 36(4):275–281

Sato S, Iwata F, Yamada S et al (2012) Neomaclafungins A–I: oligomycin-class macrolides from a marine-derived actinomycete. J Nat Prod 75(11):1974–1982

Schöffski P, Thate B, Beutel G et al (2004) Phase I and pharmacokinetic study of TZT-1027, a novel synthetic dolastatin 10 derivative, administered as a 1-hour intravenous infusion every 3 weeks in patients with advanced refractory cancer. Ann Oncol 15(4):671–679

Selvin J, Lipton AP (2004) Dendrilla nigra, a marine sponge, as potential source of antibacterial substances for managing shrimp diseases. Aquaculture 236(1-4):277–283

Sepe V, Ummarino R, D'Auria MV et al (2011) Total synthesis and pharmacological characterization of solomonsterol A, a potent marine pregnane-X-receptor agonist endowed with anti-inflammatory activity. J Med Chem 54(13):4590–4599

Sessa C, Weigang-Köhler K, Pagani O et al (2002) Phase I and pharmacological studies of the cryptophycin analogue LY355703 administered on a single intermittent or weekly schedule. Eur J Cancer 38(18):2388–2396

Shan BE, Yoshida Y, Kuroda E (1999) Brief communication immunomodulating activity of seaweed extract on human lymphocytes in vitro. Int J Immunopharmacol 21(1):59–70

Sheriff SA, Sundaram B, Ramamoorthy B et al (2014) Synthesis and in vitro antioxidant functions of protein hydrolysate from backbones of Rastrelliger kanagurta by proteolytic enzymes. Saudi J Biol Sci 21(1):19–26

Shibata T, Nagayama K, Tanaka R et al (2003) Inhibitory effects of brown algal phlorotannins on secretory phospholipase A 2 s, lipoxygenases and cyclooxygenases. J Appl Phycol 15(1):61–66

Singh SB, Zink DL, Goetz MA et al (1998) Equisetin and a novel opposite stereochemical homolog phomasetin, two fungal metabolites as inhibitors of HIV-1 integrase. Tetrahedron Lett 39 (16):2243–2246

Snow BJ, Rolfe FL, Lockhart MM et al (2010) Protect Study Group. A double-blind, placebo-controlled study to assess the mitochondria-targeted antioxidant MitoQ as a disease-modifying therapy in Parkinson's disease. Mov Disord 25(11):1670–1674

Stonik VA, Mikhailov VV, Bulgakov VP et al (2007) Biotechnological studies in the Far-Eastern Region of Russia. Biotechnol J 2(7):818–825

Sugiura Y, Matsuda K, Okamoto T et al (2008) Anti-allergic effects of the brown alga Eisenia arborea on Brown Norway rats. Fish Sci 74(1):180–186

Sun MK, Alkon DL (2006) Bryostatin-1: pharmacology and therapeutic potential as a CNS drug. CNS Drug Rev 12(1):1–8

Sun HH, Gross SS, Gunasekera M et al (1991) Weinbersterol disulfates A and B, antiviral steroid sulfates from the sponge Petrosia weinbergi. Tetrahedron 47(7):1185–1190

Sun C, Hu Y, Liu X, Wu T et al (2006) Resveratrol downregulates the constitutional activation of nuclear factor-κB in multiple myeloma cells, leading to suppression of proliferation and invasion, arrest of cell cycle, and induction of apoptosis. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 165(1):9–19

Sun P, Li D, Dong B, Qiao S et al (2009) Vitamin C: an immunomodulator that attenuates anaphylactic reactions to soybean glycinin hypersensitivity in a swine model. Food Chem 113 (4):914–918

Surget G, Roberto VP, Le Lann K et al (2017) Marine green macroalgae: a source of natural compounds with mineralogenic and antioxidant activities. J Appl Phycol 29(1):575–584

Takebayashi Y, Pourquier P, Zimonjic DB et al (2001) Antiproliferative activity of ecteinascidin 743 is dependent upon transcription-coupled nucleotide-excision repair. Nat Med 7(8):961–966

Takei M, Burgoyne DL, Andersen RJ (1994) Effect of contignasterol on histamine release induced by anti-immunoglobulin from rat peritoneal mast cells. J Pharm Sci 83(9):1234–1235

Tan CP, Hou YH (2014) First evidence for the anti-inflammatory activity of fucoxanthin in high-fat-diet-induced obesity in mice and the antioxidant functions in PC12 cells. Inflammation 37 (2):443–450

Tanaka N, Kusama T, Takahashi-Nakaguchi A et al (2013a) Nagelamides X–Z, dimeric bromopyrrole alkaloids from a marine sponge Agelas sp. Org Lett 15(13):3262–3265

Tanaka N, Momose R, Takahashi Y et al (2013b) Hyrtimomines D and E, bisindole alkaloids from a marine sponge Hyrtios sp. Tetrahedron Lett 54(31):4038–4040

Tareq FS, Kim JH, Lee MA, Lee HS, Lee YJ, Lee JS, Shin HJ (2012) Ieodoglucomides A and B from a marine-derived bacterium Bacillus licheniformis. Org Lett 14(6):1464–1467

Teasdale ME, Shearer TL, Engel S et al (2012) Bromophycoic acids: bioactive natural products from a Fijian red alga Callophycus sp. J Org Chem 77(18):8000–8006
Tenorio-Rodríguez P, Méndez-Rodrìguez L, Serviere-Zaragoza E et al (2013) Antioxidant substances and trace element content in macroalgae from a subtropical lagoon in the West Coast of the Baja California Peninsula. Vitam Trace Elem 2(1):1–5
Thao NP, Cuong NX, Luyen BT et al (2013) Anti-inflammatory components of the starfish Astropecten polyacanthus. Mar Drugs 11(8):2917–2926
Thao NP, Luyen BT, Kim EJ et al (2015) Steroidal constituents from the edible sea urchin Diademasa vignyi Michelin induce apoptosis in human cancer cells. J Med Food 18(1):45–53
Tziveleka LA, Vagias C, Roussis V (2003) Natural products with anti-HIV activity from marine organisms. Curr Top Med Chem 3(13):1512–1535
Vaeck M, Grooten J, Hamers R et al (1983) The immunomodulatory effect of anti-Micrococcus luteus antibodies I. Effect on in vitro rabbit T cell functions. Eur J Immunol 13(9):772–778
Vaishampayan U, Glode M, Du W et al (2000) Phase II study of dolastatin-10 in patients with hormone-refractory metastatic prostate adenocarcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 6(11):4205–4208
Vetter I, Dekan Z, Knapp O et al (2012) Isolation, characterization and total regioselective synthesis of the novel μO-conotoxin MfVIA from Conus magnificus that targets voltage-gated sodium channels. Biochem Pharmacol 84(4):540–548
Vincent P, Pignet P, Talmont F et al (1994) Production and characterization of an exopolysaccharide excreted by a deep-sea hydrothermal vent bacterium isolated from the polychaete annelid Alvinella pompejana. Appl Environ Microbiol 60(11):4134–4141
Wang SK, Duh CY (2012) New cytotoxic cembranolides from the soft coral Lobophytum michaelae. Mar Drugs 10(2):306–318
Wang H, Lu Z, Qu HJ (2012a) Antimicrobial aflatoxins from the marine-derived fungus Aspergillus flavus 092008. Arch Pharm Res 35(8):1387–1392
Wang W, Kim H, Nam SJ et al (2012b) Antibacterial butenolides from the Korean tunicate Pseudodistoma antinboja. J Nat Prod 75(12):2049–2054
Wang Z, Zhang H, Yuan W et al (2012c) Antifungal nortriterpene and triterpene glycosides from the sea cucumber Apostichopus japonicus Selenka. Food Chem 132(1):295–300
Wang YQ, Miao ZH (2013) Marine-derived angiogenesis inhibitors for cancer therapy. Mar Drugs 11(3):903–933
Weiss IM, Göhring W, Fritz M et al (2001) Perlustrin, a Haliotis laevigata (abalone) nacre protein, is homologous to the insulin-like growth factor binding protein N-terminal module of vertebrates. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 285(2):244–249
Wellington KD, Cambie RC, Rutledge PS (2000) Chemistry of Sponges. 19. Novel bioactive metabolites from Hamigera tarangaensis. J Nat Prod 63(1):79–85
Welsh CF (2004) Rho GTPases as key transducers of proliferative signals in G 1 cell cycle regulation. Breast Cancer Res Treat 84(1):33–42
Witvrouw M (1994) Antiviral activity of a sulfated polysaccharide extracted from the red seaweed Aghardheilla tenera against human immunodeficiency virus and other enveloped viruses. Antivir Chem Chemother 5:2997–2303
Wu QX, Crews MS, Draskovic M et al (2010) Azonazine, a novel dipeptide from a Hawaiian marine sediment-derived fungus, Aspergillus insulicola. Org Lett 12(20):4458–4461
Wyche TP, Standiford M, Hou Y et al (2013) Activation of the nuclear factor E2-related factor 2 pathway by novel natural products halomadurones A–D and a synthetic analogue. Mar Drugs 11(12):5089–5099
Xiao ZE, Huang H, Shao C et al (2013) Asperterpenols A and B, new sesterterpenoids isolated from a mangrove endophytic fungus Aspergillus sp. 085242. Org Lett 15(10):2522–2525
Xiao AJ, Chen W, Xu B et al (2015) Marine compound xyloketal B reduces neonatal hypoxic-ischemic brain injury. Mar Drugs 13(1):29–47
Yang X, Du L, Tang X et al (2009) Brevicompanine E reduces lipopolysaccharide-induced production of proinflammatory cytokines and enzymes in microglia by inhibiting activation of activator protein-1 and nuclear factor-κB. J Neuroimmunol 216(1-2):32–38

Yang F, Hamann MT, Zou Y et al (2012) Antimicrobial metabolites from the Paracel Islands sponge Agelas mauritiana. J Nat Prod 75(4):774–778

Yang X, Kang MC, Li Y et al (2014) Anti-inflammatory activity of questinol isolated from marine-derived fungus Eurotium amstelodami in lipopolysaccharide-stimulated RAW 264.7 macrophages. J Microbiol Biotechnol 24(10):1346–1353

Yende SR, Harle UN, Chaugule BB (2014) Therapeutic potential and health benefits of Sargassum species. Pharmacogn Rev 8(15):1

Yibmantasiri P, Leahy DC, Busby BP et al (2012) Molecular basis for fungicidal action of neothyonidioside, a triterpene glycoside from the sea cucumber, Australostichopus mollis. Mol BioSyst 8(3):902–912

Yim JH, Kim SJ, Ahn SH et al (2004) Antiviral effects of sulfated exopolysaccharide from the marine microalga Gyrodinium impudicum strain KG03. Mar Biotechnol 6(1):17–25

Yim JH, Son E, Pyo S, Lee HK (2005) Novel sulfated polysaccharide derived from red-tide microalga Gyrodinium impudicum strain KG03 with immunostimulating activity in vivo. Mar Biotechnol 7:331–338

Yonezawa T, Mase N, Sasaki H et al (2012) Biselyngbyaside, isolated from marine cyanobacteria, inhibits osteoclastogenesis and induces apoptosis in mature osteoclasts. J Cell Biochem 113 (2):440–448

Yoon WJ, Kim KN, Heo SJ et al (2013) Sargachromanol G inhibits osteoclastogenesis by suppressing the activation NF-κB and MAPKs in RANKL-induced RAW 264.7 cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 434(4):892–897

Yoon CS, Kim DC, Lee DS et al (2014) Anti-neuroinflammatory effect of aurantiamide acetate from the marine fungus Aspergillus sp. SF-5921: Inhibition of NF-κB and MAPK pathways in lipopolysaccharide-induced mouse BV2 microglial cells. Int Immunopharmacol 23(2):568–574

Yu HB, Liu XF, Xu Y et al (2012) Woodylides A–C, new cytotoxic linear polyketides from the South China Sea sponge Plakortis simplex. Mar Drugs 10(5):1027–1036

Zheng CJ, Shao CL, Guo ZY et al (2012) Bioactive hydroanthraquinones and anthraquinone dimers from a soft coral-derived Alternaria sp. fungus. J Nat Prod 75(2):189–197

Zhou G, Sun Y, Xin H et al (2004) In vivo antitumor and immunomodulation activities of different molecular weight lambda-carrageenans from Chondrus ocellatus. Pharmacol Res 50(1):47–53

Zhou G, Xin H, Sheng W et al (2005) In vivo growth-inhibition of S180 tumor by mixture of 5-Fu and low molecular λ-carrageenan from Chondrus ocellatus. Pharmacol Res 51(2):153–157

Marine Origin Bioactive Peptides: Novel Advances in the Therapeutic Potential

11

Mohsen Dehghani, Mohammad Reza Taherizadeh, and Ahmad Homaei

Abstract

Marine organisms contain valuable chemical compounds as secondary metabolites such as bioactive peptides that survive in harsh marine environments produced by organisms. They have been considered by scientists for use in medicine and pharmaceutical researches due to their unique and unknown biological properties. Studies on a variety of marine-derived peptides have shown that these compounds as antimicrobial, antiviral, antioxidant, antihypertensive, and anticancer agents can be useful in the treatment of various diseases. While many marine peptides are in various phases of clinical trials, two marine peptide-derived drugs have been approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), too. This chapter highlights the recent two decades of researches on the biological properties of peptides derived from a variety of living organisms, including microbes, plants, and marine animals, in vivo, vitro, and clinical trials and their potential for disease treatment.

Keywords

Marine bioactive peptides · Biological activities · Enzymatic hydrolyze cytotoxicity · ACE inhibitor · Clinical trials

M. Dehghani · M. R. Taherizadeh · A. Homaei (✉)
Department of Marine Biology, Faculty of Marine Science and Technology, University of Hormozgan, Bandar Abbas, Iran
e-mail: a.homaei@hormozgan.ac.ir

S. Jana, S. Jana (eds.), *Marine Biomaterials*,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-5374-2_11

11.1 Introduction

The marine environment covers about 70% of the earth's surface (Jo et al. 2017) and containing about 50% of living organisms (Barbosa et al. 2020). Marine organisms produce many bioactive natural products because they are subject to a variety of environmental stresses including changes in water chemical composition, temperature fluctuations, currents, and storms, and due to food and space constraints, they must use different strategies to survive (Aneiros and Garateix 2004; Buijs et al. 2019). One of these strategies is to produce and use unique chemical compounds, named as secondary metabolites, to deal with stresses (Buijs et al. 2019).

In contrast to primary metabolites (e.g., lipids, nucleic acids, amino acids, carbohydrates), secondary metabolites (have low molecules weight, diverse chemical structures, and biological activities) are not necessary for growth and reproduction but are crucial for survival (Mosunova et al. 2020). Peptides are important bioactive secondary metabolites, which are produced by marine organisms for biological goals (Cheung et al. 2015). Bioactive peptides are composed of 2–20 amino acid residues and based on composition and sequences of their amino acids show different bioactive behaviors, and have been extensively studied because of their significant bioactivities (Fan et al. 2014; Lee et al. 2017). Using improving sampling techniques and different separation ways can gain marine bioactive peptides (Jiménez 2018), so that currently, over 2,140,000 secondary metabolites are known (Thirumurugan et al. 2018), of which 20,000 are marine compounds, of which about 2000 are peptides (Giordano et al. 2018). Release of bioactive peptides is carried out by three techniques including solvent extraction, enzymatic hydrolysis, and microbial fermentation (Fan et al. 2014), but marine bioactive peptides are mostly isolated by enzymatic hydrolysis of proteins (Kim and Wijesekara 2010; Lee et al. 2012). Marine bioactive peptides due to key roles in different physiological mechanisms such as depression, stimulation, and inhibition appear to be useful in biomedical and pharmacological researches (Aneiros and Garateix 2004; Bashir et al. 2020; Cheung et al. 2015; Ghanbari 2019; Harnedy and FitzGerald 2012; Sánchez and Vázquez 2017).

Researchers over the two recent decades have paid special attention to marine bioactive peptides as novel natural product in context of human health and their effects of therapy or reduce various human diseases (Kang et al. 2018; Kobayashi 2016; Ovchinnikova 2019). They may have positive effects as anticancer (Anand et al. 2019; Kang et al. 2018; Karpiński and Adamczak 2018), antimicrobial (Boto et al. 2018; Oh et al. 2020), antibacterial and antifungal (Ennaas et al. 2015; Hwang et al. 2019), antiviral (Ma et al. 2017a, b), antibiotic (Kormilets et al. 2019), antihypertensive (Je et al. 2020; Sun et al. 2019a, b), antioxidant (Sila and Bougatef 2016); (De Domenico et al. 2019), anticoagulant (Jo et al. 2008), antitubercular (Hou et al. 2019), immunomodulatory (Kang et al. 2019), and other therapeutic agents. However, due to difficult access to marine environments and collecting marine organisms (Martins et al. 2014), probably many natural chemicals, especially bioactive peptides, are unknown and must improve the diving instruments and collecting tools of marine organism, especially in depth waters. This chapter provides an

overview of recent studies on marine bioactive peptides derived from various marine organisms including marine bacteria/fungal/cyanobacteria, algae, sponges, mollusks, fishes, and other marine micro/macro-organisms, and their bioactivities on the disease agents in vivo and in vitro models and clinical trials and action mechanisms and finally introduces the marine bioactive peptide-based pharmaceuticals that have been approved for marketing.

11.2 Methods for the Isolation of Bioactive Peptide

There are generally three groups of bioactive peptides: (1) active peptides that are extracted directly from marine organisms; (2) peptides that are produced by various enzymes using hydrolysis of proteins from marine sources; and (3) peptides obtained from the fermentation product of microorganisms (Falkenberg 2014) (Fig. 11.1). Isolation of peptides from fermentation is not common, so only the isolation

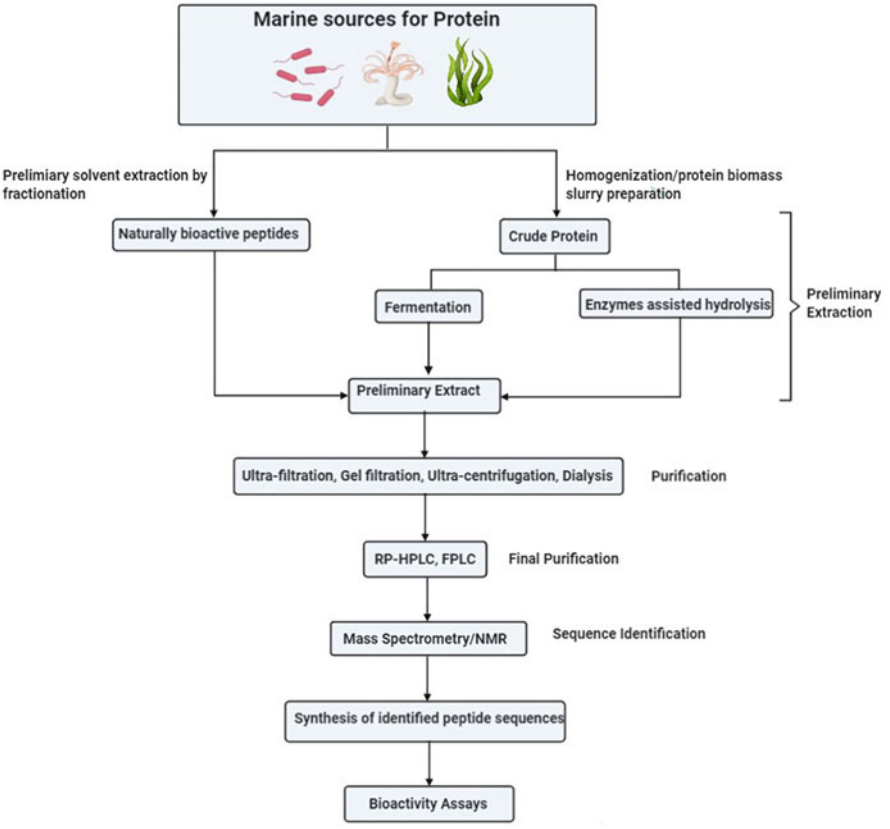


Fig. 11.1 A schematic view of the general isolation and purification procedure for marine bioactive peptides

methods of the first and second groups are explained. Various methods such as ultrafiltration, microfiltration, reverse osmosis, nanofiltration, gel filtration, and ultracentrifugation are used to separate the large proteins from residual particles (Fig. 11.1) (Lemes et al. 2016). The isolated peptides are prepared for the next steps to obtain pure peptides using various purification techniques such as ion-exchange chromatography, gel permeation, reversed-phase high-performance chromatography, and reversed-phase high-pressure liquid chromatography (RP-HPLC) (Cheung et al. 2015; Sable et al. 2017) (Fig. 11.1). As well as, using advanced mass spectrometric techniques such as matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization–time-of-flight mass spectrometry (MALDI–TOF–MS/MS) or NMR spectroscopy, the amino acids and sequences of peptides are identified (Sable et al. 2017) (Fig. 11.1). The first group of the above bioactive peptides can be isolated directly from the biomass using common solvents such as methanol and acetone (R. C. Cheung et al. 2015) (Fig. 11.1). Then, in the fractionation stage, the crude extract is exposed to various gradient systems including low and high polarity solvents, and medium polarity gradient solvents such as dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, and ethyl acetate to the peptides remain in solution (Ebada et al. 2008). HighAQ5-performance or reverse-phase chromatography (RP-HPLC) methods are used for more purification of these solutions, so that this technique is named bioassay-guided (Aneiros and Garateix 2004) (Fig. 11.1). In the enzymatic hydrolysis, bacterial or fungal plant enzymes such as alcalase, pepsin, trypsin, flavourzyme, and protease are used to hydrolyze the parent proteins, and after hydrolysis, the extracts are exposed to gel filtration and reversed-phase HPLC, and amino acid sequences are analyzed by MALDI-TOF/TOF MS/MS (Sable et al. 2017).

11.3 Marine Organism Peptides

11.3.1 Marine Bacteria

Marine microorganisms including protest, fungi, bacteria, and viruses comprise 90% of weights of all organisms present in the ocean, so that there are 102 fungi, 103 bacteria, and 107 viruses in one millimeter of seawater (Agrawal et al. 2017). Marine bacteria, as chemical gold, are important source of new medicine and drug sciences, and natural products of marine bacteria are the wealth of the sea. Meanwhile, several groups of marine bacteria are coexisting with many species of marine organisms, especially invertebrate (Joseph 2017) whose natural products are potential in pharmacology (Piel 2006). Fifty percent of clinical drugs are belonged to nonribosomal peptides that 70% of which are marine microbe peptides (Agrawal et al. 2017). Most of the articles reviewed below are about the antimicrobial and anticancer properties of bacteria.

Bioassay of new thiopeptide, TP-1161 purified from marine Gram-positive bacterium *Nocardiopsis sp.* (collected from marine sediments and sponges of Trondheim Fjord, Norway), was valued in vitro, and the results showed a potent inhibitory activity versus the growth of vancomycin-resistant *E. faecalis* 560 and

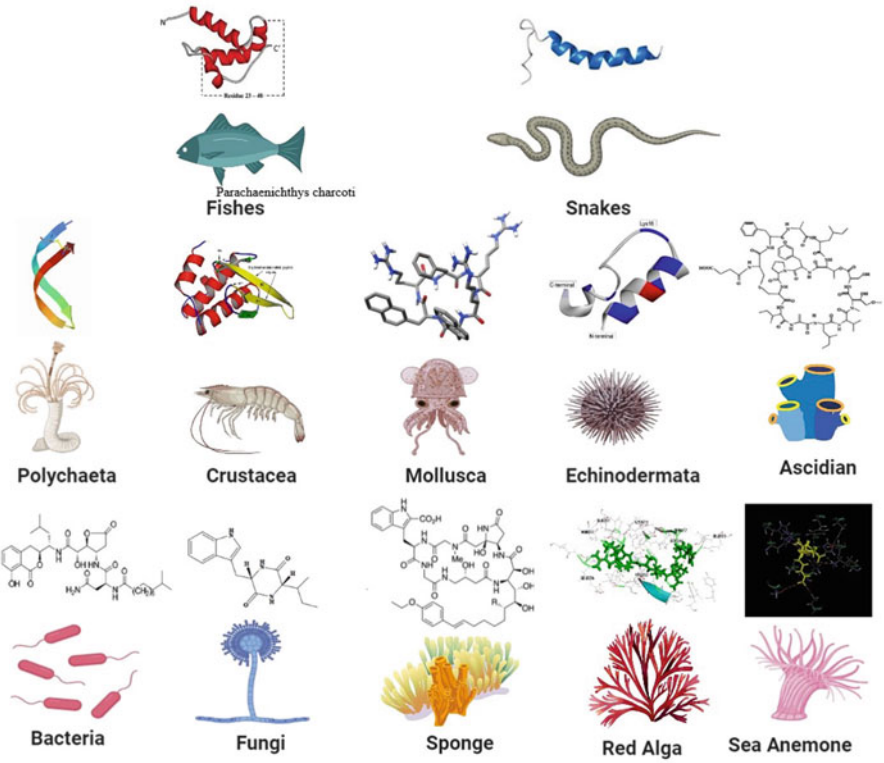


Fig. 11.2 Types of marine bioactive peptides extracted from the different marine organisms and their structures

vancomycin-resistant *E. faecium* 569, so could be used as antibiotic drug in clinical researches (Engelhardt et al. 2010). From marine sediments of Fiji, a Streptomyces sp. was sampled and the bioactivity assessment of its desipeptides named fijimycins A-C and etamycin was tested. These peptide exception Fijimycins B displayed high anti-MRSA activity versus three MRSA strains (ATCC33591, Sanger 252, and UAMS1182) (Sun et al. 2011). Peptidolipins B-F are five new lipopeptides that were isolated from marine Gram-positive bacteria. Two of these peptides (e.g., type B and type E) showed antibacterial effects versus methicillin-sensitive *S. aureus* (MSSA) and MRSA, while peptidolipins C, D, and F observed weak activity against MSSA and MRSA (Wyche et al. 2012). Some marine bacterium-derived peptides, namely lipoamicoumacins A–D, six known amicoumacins, and a new bacilosarcin C, were extracted from the Red Sea bacteria *Bacillus subtilis*, but only Amicoumacin A showed antibacterial activity versus MRSA (Li et al. 2012) (Fig. 11.2). Also, other Bacillus-derived gageostatins A, B, and C as new linear lipopeptides (containing heptapeptides and new 3-β-hydroxy fatty acids) were isolated from marine bacterium *B. subtilis*. These peptides had potent antifungal activity against pathogenic fungi *R. solani, B. cinerea,* and *C. acutatum* (MICs

values ranged from 4 to 32 μg/mL) and antibacterial activity versus bacteria B. *subtilis, S. aureus, S. typhi,* and *P. aeruginosa* (MIC values ranged from 8 to 64 μg/mL), as well as effective cytotoxicity toward six human cancer cell lines with GI_{50} values of 4.6 to 19.6 μg/mL (Tareq et al. 2014). Kocurin is a new thiazolyl and marine bacterium-derived peptide that separated from bacteria *Kocuria palustris,* and its bioactivity was assessed and the results demonstrated that this peptide is significant inhibitor versus the growth of MRSA MB5393 cell line (Martín et al. 2013). Marine bacteria *Streptomyces scopuliridis* produce four hexapeptides including desotamide and desotamides B-D that are isolated for testing the antibacterial activity, and their inhibitory impact versus methicillin-resistant *S. epidermidis* (MRSE) were positive (Song et al. 2014a, b). Bioactivity of nocardiotide A (a new cyclic hexapeptide) purified from *Nocardiopsis sp.* UR67 strain along with marine sponge *Callyspongia sp.* from the Red Sea against the murine CT26 colon carcinoma, human HeLa cervix carcinoma, and human MM.1S multiple myeloma cell lines was effective, and the results indicated that nocardiotide A as potential marine drug could be applicable compound for treatment the human cancer cells (A. H. Ibrahim et al. 2018). Anticancer evaluating a new lipopeptide as kurahyne B purified from *Okeania* sp. (a marine cyanobacterium sampled from the coast of Jahana, Okinawa, Japan) indicated that this peptide, containing acetylene, inhibits the growth of HeLa and HL60 cells with IC_{50} values of 8.1 and 9.0 μM, respectively (Okamoto et al. 2015). Mathermycin is a new lantibiotic (peptides of family of ribosomally synthesized and posttranslationally modified peptides (RiPPs)) that as an antimicrobial peptide was extracted from *Marinactinospora thermotolerans* SCSIO 00652. Activity assay showed that mathermycin has antimicrobial effect on a *Bacillus* strain (E. Chen et al. 2017). Six tetrapeptides namely actinoramide A, B, D, E, F, and 25-epi-actinoramide A identified from two Streptomyces species, *S. ballenaensis* and *S. bangulaensis,* collected from Costa Rica and Papua New Guinea, respectively, showed potent antimalarial activity (Cheng et al. 2015). Six ilamycin as antimicrobial peptides were purified from deep-sea *Streptomyces atratus* SCSIO ZH16. Activity of these peptides versus Mycobacterium tuberculosis (agent of one of deadliest diseases) was assessed, and peptide E1/E2 exhibited very strong inhibitory activity against the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* H37Rv growth. Therefore, they can be antituberculosis drug in biomedical treatment (Ma et al. 2017a, b). Two linear polyketide nonribosomal peptides, ariakemicins A and B, were purified from marine bacterium *Rapidithrix sp*. The ariakemicins were comprised of threonine, two ω-amino-(ω-3)-methyl carboxylic acids with diene or triene units, and δ-isovanilloylbutyric acid. Their inhibitory activity on the Gram-positive bacteria growth demonstrated that they can be an antibiotic agent (Oku et al. 2008).

Biological action of grassypeptolide to the process of cancer cell proliferation was examined by Thornburg et al. (2011). For this purpose, extraction of peptides from marine cyanobacterium *Leptolyngbya sp.* was sampled from the *S. Thistlegorm* shipwreck in the Red Sea. Totally, two grassypeptolides D and E were characterized that possess 2-methyl-3-aminobutyric acid and 2-aminobutyric acid and the results of acidity assay demonstrated that every two peptides have strong cytotoxicity against HeLa ($IC_{50} = 335$ and 192 nM, respectively) and mouse neuro-2a blastoma

cells (IC_{50} = 599 and 407 nM, respectively). Lagunamide C separated from marine cyanobacterium *Lyngbya majuscula* shows high-level cytotoxic effect (IC_{50} value ranged from 2.1 to 24.4 nM) on P388, A549, PC3, HCT8, and SK-OV3 cell lines (Tripathi et al. 2010). Two cyclodepsipeptides, veraguamides A and A-G, were purified from cyanobacterium *Oscillatoria margaritifera* and *Symploca cf. hydnoides*, respectively. Every two peptides had high cytotoxic activity, so that veraguamide A of *O. margaritifera* showed potent toxic (LD_{50} value of 141 nM) to H-460 human lung cancer cell line and veraguamides D and E in *S. hydnoides* exhibited notable cytotoxic (IC_{50} value of 0.5 to 1.5 μM) versus HT 29 and HeLa cell line (Mevers et al. 2011; Salvador et al. 2011). Solonamides A and B are another marine peptide that is produced by marine *Photobacterium*. Solonamides A and B had no antibacterial activity against *Vibrio anguillarum* and *S. aureus,* but solonamide B caused reduction in the expression of MRSA hla and rnaIII, which are controlled by agr-dependent quorum sensing system, which can be due to the fatty acid chain of solonamide (Hansen et al. 2018; Machado et al. 2014; Mansson et al. 2011).

11.3.2 Marine Fungi

Marine fungi are one of the most important marine organisms used to produce bioactive natural products including alkaloids, polyketides, terpenoids, peptides steroids, and lactones for drug discovery, which have various activities against bacteria, virus, and cancer cells, and among them, proteins and peptides have low toxicity and side effects for human (Deshmukh et al. 2018; Youssef et al. 2019). Many papers have been published about fungal peptides that we will discuss the biological and pathological properties of a number of peptides extracted from fungi.

Three novel cycloheptapeptide skeleton, cordyheptapeptides C-E (1–3) derived from *Acremonium persicinum,* and peptides 1 and 2 showed cytotoxicity effects on MCF-7, SF-268, and NCI-H460 cancer cells (Chen et al. 2012). Activity of efrapeptins E (4), H (5), F (6), and G (7), linear pentadecapeptides, and N-methylated linear octapeptides (RHM1 (8), RHM2 (9), RHM3 (10), and RHM4) isolated from *Acremonium* sp. versus cancer cells was tested, and the results indicated that efrapeptins E and F have potent cytotoxic activity versus H125 cells, and efrapeptin G has power cytotoxic activity against H125, murine L1210, and HCT-116 cells. Antibacterial activity of RHM1 and efrapeptin G versus Staphylococcus epidermis with MIC was demonstrated (Boot et al. 2006, 2007). From marine fungi, *Aspergillus niger*, cultured in different growth media, three cyclopeptides including cyclo-(l-Trp-l-Ile), cyclo-(l-Trp-l-Phe), and cyclo-(l-Trp-l-Tyr) were isolated (Fig. 11.2), but only cyclo-(l-Trp-l-Tyr) had promoted differentiation of HT-29 cancer cells. However, every three cyclopeptides had antibacterial activity versus *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Escherichia coli,* and antifungal against *A. niger* and *Candida albicans* (Zhang et al. 2010). Hexapeptides namely sclerotide A and sclerotide B were isolated from marine fungus *A. sclerotionum,* and their activity versus fungus *C. albicans* was tested and antifungal effects are reported. Moreover,

sclerotide B showed antibacterial and weak cytotoxic activity against bacteria, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, and HL-60 cell cancer, respectively (Zheng et al. 2009). Similanamide is marine cyclic hexapeptides, which were released from fungus *A. similanensis* coexistence with marine sponge, and its cytotoxic activity was weak in contrast to MCF-7, A373, and NCI-H460 cancer cells (Prompanya et al. 2015). Terrelumamides A and B (lumazine peptides), aspergillamides C and D (isometric-modified tripeptides), and asperterrestide A (cyclic tetrapeptide) were extracted from marine fungus *A. terreus*. By adipogenesis model, terrelumamides A and B exhibited anti-hyperglycemic activity with ascending amelioration of insulin sensitivity in mesenchymal cells of a bone marrow of human (hBM-MSCs). Additionally, asperterrestide A represented effective cytotoxic activity against U937 and MOLT4 human cancer cell lines and inhibitory effects versus an influenza virus of H1N1 and H3N2 strains (Luo et al. 2019; You et al. 2015).

Activity of four cyclic peptides namely psychrophilins E, F, G, and H is isolated from *A. versicolor* evaluated by Oil Red O staining assay, and only type G showed potent effect in reducing lipid (Peng et al. 2014). In other study on A. versicolor, one more new centrosymmetric cyclohexapeptide, aspersymmetide A, and a peptide namely asperphenamate were isolated, which aspersymmetide A exhibited weak cytotoxicity effects versus NCI-H292 and A431 cell lines (Hou et al. 2017). Another peptide derived from *A. versicolor* is cotteslosins A (new cyclopeptide), which showed weak cytotoxicity effects on human melanoma (MM418c5), prostate (DU145), and breast (T47D) cells (Fremlin et al. 2009). Three new peptides namely sclerotiotide L, diketopiperazine dimer A (aspochracin-type cyclic tripeptide), and a cyclic tripeptide were isolated from *A. violaceofuscus*, marine fungus coexistence with sponge, which sclerotiotide L, diketopiperazine dimer A, exhibited anti-inflammatory activity versus IL-10 expression of the (lipopolysaccharide) LPS-induced THP-1 cells (monocytic leukemia cell) (Liu et al. 2018).

Psychrophilin E (cyclic tripeptide) extracted from various marine fungus species of *Aspergillus* sp. especially coexistence with algae showed inhibitory activity against the proliferation of HCT116 (colon) cell line ($IC_{50} = 28.5$ _M) comparable to the standard drug cisplatin ($IC_{50} = 33.4$ _M) (Ebada et al. 2014). Antiviral activity versus herpes simplex virus type 1 (HSV-1) observed in aspergillipeptides D and E was isolated from many *Aspergillus sp.* (Ma et al. 2017a, b). The new cyclic dipeptides (14-hydroxy-cyclopeptine) were derived from *Aspergillus sp.* displaying potent inhibitory versus nitric oxide production in recombinant mouse interferon-activated macrophage-like cell line (Zhou et al. 2016).

Based on the reports of Gulder et al. (2012), lajollamide A (a novel pentapeptide) derived from marine *Asteromyces cruciatus* displayed a weak antimicrobial activity against growth of two bacteria, *Bacillus subtilis* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis*. Two new peptides namely dictyonamides A and B were isolated from marine fungus *Ceratodictyon spongiosum* coexistence with red algae, which type A showed inhibitory activity versus cyclin-dependent kinase 4 (Komatsu et al. 2001). A cyclic heptapeptides, unguisin A and emericellamides B, were isolated from *Emericella Unguis* and *Emericella sp.,* respectively. These peptides exhibited antimicrobial activity against MRSA (methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus strains)

(Oh et al. 2007). *Exserohilum rostratum* is a marine fungus, and four peptides including restrains A, B, C, and D were extracted and that displayed potent cytotoxic activity against (HCT-116) the human colon carcinoma (Tan et al. 2004).

Two new peptides microsporins A and B extracted from a marine fungus, *Microsporum gypseum,* showed histone deacetylase-inhibitory activity versus HDACs and HDAC8 (histone deacetylases), and strong cytotoxic effect against human colon adenocarcinoma (HCT-116). Moreover, microsporin A had effective activity versus the 60 cancer cell panel of the National Cancer Institute (Gu et al. 2007). A new dipeptide, penicimutide, was isolated from *P. purpurogenum* that has potent inhibitory versus HeLa cells (Wang et al. 2016a, b). Bioactivity of some peptides of various marine fungus of *Penicillium* sp. namely gliocladine C, cyclo-(Trp-Ala), cyclo-(Phe-Pro), and cyclo-(Gly-Pro) was tested, and result showed only gliocladine C that inhibits the HepG2 cell growth (Hong and Yang 2011). One marine natural peptide that termed cis-cyclo (leucyl-tyrosyl) was isolated from marine fungus *Penicillium sp* coexistence with sponge that possesses antibacterial effects so that these peptides inhibit the biofilm formation and bacterial growth (Scopel et al. 2013).

Halovirs A, B, C, D, and E (linear peptides) isolated from the marine fungus genus *Scytalidium* effectively inhibit the growth of herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2, so showed antiviral activity. Moreover, halovirs A, B, C, D, and E exhibited activity versus HSV-1 with ED_{50} values of 1.1, 3.5, 2.2, 2.0, and 3.1 μM, respectively (Rowley et al. 2003). A marine fungus namely *Simplicillium obclavatum* contains some peptides such as simplicilliumtides A-M and verlamelins A-B. Simplicilliumtides D showed antifouling activity against the larvae of *Bugula neritina* and bioactivity assay of simplicilliumtides A, E, G, and H demonstrated that these peptides are weakly effective versus human leukemia HL-60 and K562 cell lines, but simplicilliumtide J promotes antifungal effect against *Curvularia australiensis* and Aspergillus versicolor and displayed notable anti-HSV-1 activity (Liang et al. 2016, 2017).

The marine fungus genus *Stachylidium* coexistence with marine sponge has many peptides such as N-methylated peptides (El Maddah et al. 2016). Among these peptides (endolides A, B, C, and D), endolide A showed significant binding effect versus the vasopressin receptor 1A with a Ki value of 7.04 μM, and endolide B had a potent binding effect on serotonin receptor 5HT2b with a Ki value of 0.77 μM (Almeida et al. 2016). Many marine bioactive peptides as peptaibols have been separated from marine fungus genus *Trichoderma* that these peptaibols are cationic and amphiphilic peptides and act as defensive assistant in the innate immune system of many organisms and inhibit versus bacteria and fungi infections (Herbel et al. 2015; Van Bohemen et al. 2016).

Marine peptides isolated from *Zygosporium masonii*, namely zygosporamide as a cyclic depsipeptide, revealed highly cytotoxic activity versus the NCI's 60 cell line panel, CNS cancer cell SF-268, and renal cancer cell line RXF 393 by GI_{50} of 9.1 μM, 6.5, and 5.0 nM, respectively (Torres-García et al. 2014). Talaropeptides A-D were extracted from marine tunicate-derived fungus, *Talaromyces* sp. Activity of all talaropeptides against human lung (NCI-H460) and colon (SW620) carcinoma

cells, the Gram-negative bacteria *Escherichia coli* ATCC 11775 and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* ATCC 10145, the Gram-positive bacteria *S. aureus* ATCC 25923 and *S. aureus* ATCC 9144, or the fungus *C. albicans* ATCC 10231 was negative, but talaropeptides A and B showed inhibitory effects (IC_{50} 1.5 and 3.7 μM) on Gram-positive bacteria *B. subtilis* ATCC 6633 that are good candidates for pharmaceutical developments (Dewapriya et al. 2018).

11.3.3 Marine Algae

Algae as photosynthetic organism contain chemical compounds such as fibers, minerals vitamins, polyphenols, fatty acids, and proteins and peptides (Álvarez-Viñas et al. 2019; Cardoso et al. 2014), and are important source of secondary metabolites that are interesting for scientists for use in food and human health (Fan et al. 2014; Pimentel et al. 2019). Marine algae have high amount of proteins and peptides that can be useful especially pharmaceutical applications such as antihypertensive, antioxidant, and antidiabetic (Admassu et al. 2018). Most published articles on algal peptides are related to their antihypertensive and antioxidant properties that are isolated via enzymatic hydrolysis of proteins (Chen et al. 2020; Deng et al. 2018; Fitzgerald et al. 2012; Furuta et al. 2016; Lee et al. 2015; Sheih et al. 2010).

Therapeutic activity of a marine peptide derived from red algae *Pyropia yezoensis* named PYP15 versus tested DEX-induced myotube atrophy, and the results suggest that marine algae peptide PYP15 is effective agent in preventing or decreasing the skeletal muscle atrophy (Lee et al. 2019). Two new angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE)-inhibitory peptides, FQIN [M (O)] CILR and TGAPCR, were isolated and identified from protein hydrolysates of the red algae *Gracilariopsis lemaneiformis* (Rhodophyta) by LC-MS/MS (Fig. 11.2). The activity of these peptides as angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE)-inhibitory molecules was tested, and the IC_{50} value of those demonstrated that FQIN [M(O)] CILR has better activity against the systolic blood pressure by 34 mmHg (SBP) ($p < 0.05$); so, it was potent ACE-inhibitory peptide (Deng et al. 2018). Also, peptides isolated and hydrolyzed from the protein hydrolysate of the marine macroalga *Ulva intestinalis* via trypsin, pepsin, papain, α-chymotrypsin, and alcalase, named FGMPLDR (Phe-Gly-Met-Pro-Leu-Asp-Arg) and MELVLR (Met-Glu-Leu-Val-Leu-Arg), had angiotensin I-converting enzyme (ACE)-inhibitory activities (Sun et al. 2019a, b). Moreover, ACE-inhibitory activity was observed in peptides including IP (IC_{50} values = 0.020 mg/mL) and AFL (IC_{50} values = 0.023 mg/mL) isolated from *U. rigida* that can be useful for biomedical application as antihypertensive (Paiva et al. 2016).

PPY1 (molecular weight = 532 Da), as a peptide derived by enzymatic hydrolysis from marine red algae *Pyropia yezoensis*, inserted to lipopolysaccharide (LPS) stimulated macrophages of mouse. The result of biological activity analysis showed that peptide PPY1 (K-A-Q-A-D amino acid sequence) inhibited LPS-stimulated nitric oxide (NO) and release of pro-inflammatory cytokines (inducible NO synthase, cyclooxygenase 2, interleukin-1β, and tumor necrosis factor α) and

reduced reactive oxygen species (ROS) that act as anti-inflammatory due to downregulation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase, protein 38, and c jun NH2 terminal kinase phosphorylation in the mitogen-activated protein kinase pathways. Therefore, PPY1 can be an anti-inflammatory drug in the treatment of human diseases (Lee et al. 2015). Two novel peptides with sequences of Gly-Gly-Ser-Lys and Glu-Leu-Ser were identified from proteolytic enzyme hydrolysates of red seaweed laver (*Porphyra* species) for assessing their inhibitory activities against α-amylase enzymes. Property of α-amylase enzyme inhibitory (as agent of control the glucose level of blood) in these two peptides was demonstrated (IC_{50} value of Gly-Gly-Ser-Lys $IC_{50} = 2.58 \pm 0.08$ mM; IC_{50} value of Glu-Leu-Ser $= 2.62 \pm 0.05$ mM). Therefore, these peptides can be used as ingredient or drug to reduce and control diabetes mellitus (Admassu et al. 2018). Through hydrolysis of marine red alga *Gracilariopsis lemaneiformis* proteins (one of ecological and economical source in china) by trypsin, flavourzyme, papain, and alkaline protease, peptide QVEY with amino acid sequence Gln-Val-Glu-Tyr (Mass, 537.57 Da) was identified. Peptide QVEY possessing ACE-inhibitory activity with IC_{50} value of 474.36 μM (0.255 mg/mL) was suggested as agent of reducing hypertension in medicine researches. Identification of prohibiting peptides of hypertension was the goal of Fitzgerald and coworkers, too (Fitzgerald et al. 2012). As for importance of rennin in angiotensinogen system, the first isolation of rennin-inhibitory peptides from macroalgae was done. The red seaweed *Palmaria palmata* protein was separated and hydrolyzed using papain enzyme in order to produce the rennin-inhibitory peptides. Activity of the rennin peptide Ile-Arg-Leu-Ile-Ile-Val-Leu-Met-Pro-Ile-Leu-Met-Ala (IRLIIVLMPILMA) via rennin-inhibitory assay was demonstrated (Fitzgerald et al. 2012). Bioactivity assay of peptides of green microalgae *Chlorella vulgaris* (as a dietary supplement or protein-rich food additive in Japan) was studied by Sheih et al. (2010). They identified a fractioned peptide from algae protein waste via hydrolyzing pepsin, and assessment of its anticancer property demonstrated that hendecapeptide (with amino acid sequence VECYGPN RPQF) has potent inhibitory activity against post-G1 cell cycle arrest in AGS cells, so offered as anticancer compound for more pharmaceutical surveys in future (Sheih et al. 2010). An ACE-inhibitory peptide found in microalgae *Isochrysis zhejiangensis* was identified as FEIHCC (PIZ) and its activity was assessed in human umbilical vein endothelial cells (HUVECs), which showed IC_{50} value of 61.38 μM. This peptide via prevention of enzyme infiltration caused suppression, apoptosis, and reduction in hypertension (J. Chen et al. 2020). Bioactivities of chromopeptides hydrolyzed from C-phycocyanin of blue-green algae *Spirulina sp.* were valued. Five chromopeptides displayed antioxidant and metal-chelating effects and had potent cytotoxic activity against human cervical adenocarcinoma and epithelial colonic cancer cell lines, and they were protected from human erythrocytes toward free radical-induced hemolysis (Minic et al. 2016).

11.3.4 Marine Sponge

Sponges from Porifera phylum are colonial benthic organisms that live in many environments with various ecological conditions from deep sea to shallow waters (Van Soest et al. 2012). Marine sponges along with symbiotic bacteria produce many unique secondary metabolites for survival in such various and harsh conditions that are interested by scientists for human health (Petersen et al. 2020). Up to now, many peptides have been isolated from marine sponges for the usage in the medical researches and drug delivery as anticancer, anti-inflammatory, antimicrobial, and other infection and disorders (Agrawal et al. 2016) that in this chapter a summary of some of the peptides extracted from the marine sponges is described.

Two cyclic peptides, microsclerodermins N and O with a p-ethoxyphenyl moiety, were identified from deep-sea marine sponge *Pachastrella* sp., and these peptides showed cytotoxic effects on HeLa cells. Therefore, they may be helpful in anticancer drug discovery (Fig. 11.2) (Tian et al. 2020). Euryjanicin A discovered from marine sponge *Prosuberites laughlini* is an anticancer cyclic heptapeptide that exhibited high-level activity versus HeLa (human colon) cancer cell line (Anand et al. 2019).

Pharmacological assay of stylissamide G (a bioactive heptacyclopeptide) isolated from marine sponge *Stylissa caribica* from the Caribbean Sea, Bahamas, and purified by the tetrapeptide l-phenylalanyl-l-prolyl-l-phenylalanyl-l-proline methyl ester and the tripeptide Boc-l-leucyl-l-isoleucyl-l-proline, and cyclization of the linear heptapeptide fragment, was done, and the results showed strong anthelmintic effects (antiparasitic) versus worms *Megascolex konkanensis*, *Pontoscolex corethrurus,* and *Eudrilus eugeniae*, as well as high-level antifungal activity toward fungus *Candida albicans* and *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* and *Microsporum audouinii* (Dahiya et al. 2016). MCHs as four marine collagen-derived peptides were hydrolyzed from sponge *Chondrosia reniformis,* and their toxicity, antioxidant, wound healing, and photoprotective activities were evaluated, and the results showed no toxicity against the cell line but incredible antioxidant impact (reactive oxygen species (ROS) scavenging ranging from 23% to 60% for the four MCHs) and protective activity from cell against UV that demonstrate these peptides may be useful in pharmacology as drug and skin protective agent (Pozzolini et al. 2018). 11 peptides including five new callyaerins (I, J, K, L, and M) and six known callyaerins (A, B, C, D, E, F, and G) are identified from the Indonesian sponge *Callyspongia aerizusa*. Based on assay of activity of these peptides against Mycobacterium tuberculosis, THP-1 (human acute monocytic leukemia), and MRC-5 (human fetal lung fibroblast) cell lines, callyaerin A displayed strongest anti-TB activity with MIC90 value = 2 μM (Daletos et al. 2015). Marine sponge *Stelletta clavosa*, sampled from the Torres Strait, contains four new mirabamides E, F, G, and H and one known mirabamide C (five depsipeptides). Inhibitory activities of mirabamide E-F against HIV-1 were notable with IC_{50} values of 121, 62, 68, and 41 nM, respectively (Lu et al. 2011). Also, two anti-HIV peptides were isolated from the marine sponge *Stelletta* sp. (sampled from northwestern Australia) by Shin et al. (2015). In fact, stellettapeptins A and B (as depsipeptides) are the first cyclic nonribosomal peptides that possess a 3-hydroxy-6,8-dimethylnon-4-(Z)-enoic acid

moiety. Peptides A and B were inserted to human T-lymphoblastoid cells infected by HIV-1RF for assessing their actions on HIV. Values of IC_{50} (23 and 27 nM, respectively) demonstrated HIV-1 inhibitory activities of these marine sponge-derived peptides. Seven cyclic peptides callyaerins A-F and H (with 5–9 amino acids and side chains of 2–5 amino acids in length) were cloned from marine sponge *Callyspongia aerizusa*. All peptides showed potent antibacterial activity and exhibited anticancer effects against HeLa and PC12 cancer cells. Callyaerins E and H had effective suppression activities toward the L5178Y cell line (ED_{50} = 0.39 and 0.48 μM, respectively), while callyaerins A displayed potent antifungal impact on *C. albicans* (Ibrahim et al. 2010). A peptide lactone with N-terminus separated from deep-sea sponge *Discodermia sp.* showed cytotoxic activity against HeLa cancer cells (Nakamukai et al. 2018). Activity of marine sponge-derived peptides phakellistatin 17 and 18 against human lung carcinoma cell (A549) and human hepatoma (BEL-7042) was weak, but analogs P18–1 and P18–2 identified by HR-QTOF-MS, 1H NMR, and 13C NMR, especially P18–1, had strong cytotoxic activity against BEL-7042 cancer cells, suggesting anticancer agent production via improving the bioactivity of peptides by reference methods (Wu et al. 2018). ACE-inhibitory peptides present in hydrolysate of marine sponge *Stylotella aurantium* are isolated using hydrolysis enzymes. From many hydrolyzed peptides, the fractions of peptic hydrolysate (<5 KDa) had strongest ACE-inhibitory activity. Two fractioned peptides with amino acid sequences of Tyr-Arg (337.2 Da) and Ile-Arg (287.2 Da) showed ACE-inhibitory activity due to the hydrogen bond interactions and Pi interaction between the dipeptides and ACE. The results demonstrated that peptides of *S. aurantium* can be applicable as antihypertensive drug (Ko et al. 2017). Papuamides E and F (cyclic depsipeptide) were isolated from marine sponge *Melophlus* sp. that had cytotoxic activity (Prasad et al. 2011). A potential activity against fungal infections is observed in theonellamide G that is a marine sponge peptide (a family of bicyclic glycopeptides) derived from the red sea marine sponge *Theonella swinhoei*. Its effective antifungal activity against wild and amphotericin B-resistant strains *C. albicans* with respect to IC_{50} values of 4.49 and 2.0 μM was demonstrated. Additionally, it had cytotoxic effects (IC_{50} = 6.0 μM) on the human colon adenocarcinoma cell line (HCT-16) (Youssef et al. 2014).

11.3.5 Cnidaria

The specific feature of Cnidaria, as oldest multi-organ animals, especially sea anemones (sessile organisms from Anthozoa) and jellyfishes (pelagic animals from Scyphozoan), is nematocysts that are venomous organs for prying and defending themselves against predators (Kayal et al. 2018). These venoms comprise mainly proteins and peptides that are cytolytic or neurotoxic (Schmidt et al. 2019). Peptides of cnidarian venoms and gonads attracted the attention of scientists for use in the medical and pharmaceutical fields (Li et al. 2014a, b) (Andreev et al. 2018) (Zhang et al. 2018). In this section, biological and pharmacological properties of some Cnidaria-derived peptides are mentioned.

Three novel peptides with amino acid sequences of Ile-Gly-Glu-Thr-Gly-Pro, Gly-Ala-Thr-Gly-Pro-Ala-Gly-Tyr-Val, and Gly-Ala-Phe-Gly-Pro-Gly-Gly-Leu-Val-Gly-Arg-Pro were purified from protein of the jellyfish *Rhopilema hispidum* via hydrolysis of protein with response surface methodology (RSM). ACE-inhibitory activities of these peptides (with IC_{50} values 19.07, 27.42, and 31.26 μmol L^{-1}, respectively) demonstrated that those of *R. hispidum* can be considered as antihypertensive compound in clinical trials (Sun et al. 2019a, b). VKP (342 Da) and VKCFR (651 Da) derived from Jellyfish *Rhopilema esculentum* (collected from marine aquaculture farms of Nanjing, Jiangsu Province, China) are two hydrolyzed peptides, which as angiotensin I-converting enzyme (ACE)-inhibitory and antioxidant peptides caused induced activity of the superoxide dismutase (SOD), catalase (CAT), and glutathione peroxidase (GSH-px) in RCMEC cells (Li et al. 2014a, b). One marine peptide with amino acid sequence Ser-Tyr (dipeptide SY) was hydrolyzed by neutral protease from the protein hydrolysates of jellyfish gonad (*R. esculentum Kishinouye*), and valuing the DPPH, _OH, super oxygen anion scavenging activities, and ACE-inhibitory activity indicated that this dipeptide is a potent antioxidant and ACE inhibitor (Zhang et al. 2018). Also, from this species, two collagen peptides CP1 and CP2 were hydrolyzed from proteins of jellyfish by proteinase and papain. CP1 and CP2 with mass <25 kDa had strong effects on the scratch closure in mice due to increasing expression of β-fibroblast growth factor (β-FGF) and the transforming growth factor-β1 (TGF-β1) on collagen peptides. The results indicated that collagen peptides of jellyfish cause increase in the wound-healing process therefore can be a potential drug (Felician et al. 2019). In another study, antioxidant property of peptides of the jellyfish *Rhizostoma pulmo*, Macrì 1778 (Rhizostomae), collected from Mediterranean coastal waters was tested. De Domenico et al. (2019) reported that peptides were hydrolyzed from proteins by pepsin and collagenases. Fractioned peptides showed potent antioxidant activity against stress in human keratinocytes (HEKa) with no cytotoxic effect (De Domenico et al. 2019).

Venom of the sea anemone, *Urticina grebelnyi,* because of acid-sensing ion channel 3 (ASIC3) causes inflammatory and acid-induced pain (Andreev et al. 2018). Two peptides APETx2 and Ugr9–1 were isolated from *Urticina grebelnyi,* and their anti-inflammatory and analgesic activities were tested in comparison with nonpeptide molecules sevanol and diclofenac and for all compounds observed distinct effects on pH-induced ASIC3 current; therefore, these ASIC3 inhibitors are potential drugs for decrease in acidosis-related pain (Fig. 11.2) (Andreev et al. 2018). ASIC-inhibitory activity for peptide APETx2 isolated from sea anemone *Heteractis crispa* was reported, too (Kalina et al. 2018).

Marine sea anemone-derived oligopeptides namely AAP-H and YVPGP were separated from *Anthopleura anjunae,* and their activity against prostate cancer DU-145 cells was assessed. The results showed that these peptides by regulation of the PI3K/AKT/mTOR signaling pathway cause apoptosis via mitochondrial and death receptor pathways and act as antitumor effect versus prostate cancer by induction of cancer DU-145 cell death (Li et al. 2018a, b).

11.3.6 Polychaeta

Polychaeta (bristle worms) is one of the largest classes of annelids; most of them are aquatic and distributed in worldwide (Rouse 2001). Previously, studies on polychaete peptides showed that their natural products can be useful in human health development as therapeutic agents, especially peptides including arenicin-1 that was further studied (Choi and Lee 2012; Orlov et al. 2019; Umnyakova et al. 2018). However, researches on polychaete peptides are only limited to a few study that described below.

Marine antimicrobial peptide, arenicin-1, extracted from coelomocytes of the marine polychaete *Arenicola* was investigated for its activity assay, and the results of tests showed potent biological active versus bacteria, therefore can act as a new anti-infective drug (Fig. 11.2) (Orlov et al. 2019), also, based on testing activity of this peptide on human blood serum, can serve as new therapy agent for the treatment of diseases connected with complement dysregulation (Umnyakova et al. 2018). A novel marine worm-derived peptide namely nicomicin-1 was isolated from skin of marine polychaete *Nicomache minor* (a peptide that combining an amphipathic N-terminal α-helix and C-terminal extended part with a six-residue loop stabilized by a disulfide bridge) and showed high effective antimicrobial activity against Gram-positive bacteria and potent cytotoxicity versus cancer, normal adherent cells, and human erythrocytes (Panteleev et al. 2018). Anticancer activity of marine polychaeta *Perinereis aibuhitensis* peptide (PAP) was valued (Jiang et al. 2019). This peptide as a decapeptide (Ile-Glu-Pro-Gly-Thr-Val-Gly-Met-Met-Phe, IEPGTVGMMF), which was isolated from a marine worm enzymatic hydrolysate, causes stimulation of apoptosis and prevention of proliferation of the H1299 cells, so suggested the PAP as a potential drug for the treatment of human lung cancer H1299 cells, used in clinical researches (Jiang et al. 2019). From marine polychaeta, *echiuroid* worm (*Urechis unicinctus*), one peptide, GELTPESGPDLFVHFLDGNPSYSLYADAVP R with molecular weight of 333 kDa as an anticoagulant compound, was isolated. According to inhibitory assay, this peptide could bind to blood coagulation factor IXa (FIXa) in plasma and inhibited the interaction between FIXa and FX, so suggested that *U. unicinctus* anticoagulant peptide (UAP) has potential in anticoagulant drug production (Jo et al. 2008). A bioactive peptide was found from a marine worm *Eunicidae* sp. (the Asp-Leu-Hse-His-Ala-Gln; mass = 683 Da) that showed antiviral effect against HIV-1 with IC_{50} 3 × 10–5 M (Elyakova et al. 2011).

11.3.7 Mollusca

Mollusca as second largest animal phylum including 70% of animals (identified 52,000 species) produces compounds with medicine applications, especially dolastatin and kahalalide F as anticancer peptides that vastly were used in clinical trials for characterization of their biological effects on human diseases (Benkendorff 2010). Some of the peptides derived from Mollusca with focus on edible gastropods and their biological and pathogenic activities have been explained.

The mantle of marine bivalve, *Mytilus coruscus*, contains high amounts of myticusin-beta (a bioactive 23 amino acid residue peptide) that was isolated from hemocytes and hemolymph and purified by C18 reversed-phase high-performance liquid chromatography. Its antimicrobial activity was tested and showed notable antibacterial effect versus *Bacillus cereus*, *Bacillus subtilis*, *Clostridium perfringens*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus iniae*, *Streptococcus mutans* (Gram-positive bacteria), *Escherichia coli*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Vibrio alginolyticus*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae* (Gram-negative bacteria), and antiparasitic at various concentration, so that could be a antimicrobial and antibiotic in pharmacology and drug industry (Oh et al. 2020). The novel peptide KVEPQDPSEW (AATP) was purified from a marine snail, *Haliotis discus* (abalone, a marine gastropod), and its activity on HT1080 cancer cells was studied. Gong et al. (2019) were reported which AATP has inhibitory effects on MMPs (matrix metalloproteinases that have key role tumor metastasis) and VM (vasculogenic mimicry that causes the promotion of tumor cells) by blocking MAPKs and NF-κB pathways and suppression of AKT/mTOR signaling and suppression of AKT/mTOR signaling, respectively. So, the results displayed effective antitumor activity of AATP peptide that can be suggested for future drug industry (Gong et al. 2019). In another study, Cm-p5 (SRSE-LIVHQRLF) as a antimicrobial peptide cloned from the marine mollusk *Cenchritis muricatus* exhibited antifungal activity versus pathogenic fungus *Candida albicans* (with inhibitory concentration of 10 μg/ml; EC_{50}, 1.146 μg/ml), but had low toxic effects on a mammalian cell line (López-Abarrategui et al. 2015). Marine mollusk-derived bioactive peptides in many studies showed antioxidant activity that described in the following text. Oligopeptide RP1–3-3 with Gly-Asp-Gln-Gln-Lys amino acid sequence and molecular mass of 575.45 kDa was purified from the muscle of short-necked clam (*Ruditapes philippinarum*), and activity assay indicated that this oligopeptide, as an antioxidant agent (that may be because of its Gly residues and lower molecule weight), has DPPH-free radical scavenging activity (IC_{50} = 0.739 mg/mL), reducing power and effective protective activity versus a oxidative DNA damage (Li et al. 2015). Blood clam (*Tegillarca granosa*) contains two peptides BCP-A and BCP-B with amino acid sequences Trp-Pro-Pro and Gln-Pro, respectively, which were purified from its muscle protein hydrolysate (Chi et al. 2015). The results exhibited that BCP-A has potent scavenging activity, as well as high cytotoxicity versus PC-3, DU-145, H-1299, and HeLa cell lines (via scavenging-free radicals and the promotion of death of cancer cells), so as antioxidant and anticancer agent may be useful in drug production (Chi et al. 2015). Other antioxidant peptides such as PIIVYWK (1004.57 Da, P1), TTANIEDRR (1074.54 Da, P2), and FSVVPSPK (860.09 Da, P3) separated from hydrolysates of blue mussel *Mytilus edulis* showed high DPPH radical scavenging and ORAC (oxygen radical absorbance capacity) activity. Additionally, P1 and P3 (having ZnPP, HO-1 inhibitor) had strong potential protective activity toward H2O2-induced hepatic damage (Park et al. 2016). Also, antioxidant activity assay of hydrolysate peptides from edible oysters (*Crassostrea talienwhanensis*) was done (Wang et al. 2014). Two peptides with amino acid sequences proline–valine–methionine–glycine–aspartic acid (PVMGA) and glutamine–histidine–glycine–valine (QHGV)

due to DPPH radical scavenging activities had strong antioxidant effects (Wang et al. 2014). On more peptides namely OPHpap (with 13 amino acids) purified from protein hydrolysate of genus mentioned above, *C. madrasensis* via papain digestion exhibited high antioxidant activity that may be potential drug in pharmacology industry (Asha et al. 2016). From another species of genus *Crassostrea* (e.g., pacific oyster *C. giga*), one new peptide cg Molluscidin (contains lysine–lysine or lysine–arginine amino acid sequence and 5500 Da molecular weight) was derived via ion exchange and C18 reversed-phase high-performance liquid chromatography and its activity against Gram-positive bacteria including *B. subtilis*, *Micrococcus luteus*, and *Staphylococcus aureus* (range of MEC value = 1.3 to 31.3 mg/mL), and Gram-negative bacteria including *E. coli*, *Salmonella enterica*, and *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* (range of MEC value = 0.4 to 2.3 mg/mL) (Seo et al. 2013). Moreover, two antioxidant peptides were observed in the gonad of Scallop *Patinopecten yessoensis*. His-Met-Ser-Tyr (536 Da), a tetrapeptide, and Pro-Glu-Ala-Ser-Tyr (565 Da), a pentapeptide, were identified, and every two peptides exhibited high-level antioxidant activity with IC_{50} values of 3.6 and 16.8 mM hydroxyl radical scavenging activities, respectively (Wu et al. 2016). YSQLENEF DR (Tyr-Ser-Gln-Leu-Glu-Asn-Glu-Phe-Asp-Arg) and YIAEDAER (Tyr-Ile-Ala-Glu-Asp-Ala-Glu-Arg) are two marine peptides, which were derived by a multi-bioassay-guided technique from meat and visceral of sea snail *Neptunea arthritica cumingii* and were identified via liquid chromatography–tandem mass spectrometry. These two peptides, YSQLENEFDR and YIAEDAER, had strong antioxidant, ACE-inhibitory, and antidiabetic effects in zebrafish model via scavenging the reactive oxygen species and protecting from skin cells versus oxidative damage, and because of their low molecular weight, high proportion of hydrophobic and negatively charged amino acids, and specific C-terminal and N-terminal amino acids, may be useful inhibitor of chronic noncommunicable diseases (Zhang et al. 2018). Kim et al. (2012) studied anticancer properties of a peptide isolated from *Mytilus coruscus*. Testing of cytotoxic activity of this peptide (with the sequence Ala-Phe-Asn-Ile-His-Asn-Arg-Asn-Leu-Leu) purified by eight protease for hydrolysis of *M. coruscus* protein demonstrated that it causes death of cells in prostate, breast, and lung cancer cells, and consequently, it can be a marine-derived inhibitor for the prevention of cancer cells. Green-lipped mussel from New Zealand produces the peptide GPH hydrolyzed by pepsin and alcalase enzymes from proteins of mussel. First, this peptide by gel filtration chromatography fractioned to GPH-IV (mass < 5 kDa) showed high-level antioxidant and ACE-inhibitory activities, and second, by reverse-phase HPLC (RP-HPLC) purified to GPH-IV-p2 had strong antioxidant and ACE activities (Jayaprakash and Perera 2020).

Peptides of marine cephalopod had been studied; for example, an antioxidant hexapeptide with /Leu-Asn-Ile/Leu-Cys-Cys-Asn sequence and mass of 679.5 Da isolated from mantle of marine cephalopod *Sepia brevimana* (via hydrolysis of trypsin, α-chymotrypsin, and pepsin) showed notable antioxidant activity (by DPPH (38.81 ± 1.07%) and reducing power assays (0.478 ± 0.03)) and protective effect against DNA damage (because of promotion of the hydroxyl

radical), therefore could be effective as marine natural product in medicine researches (Fig. 11.2) (Sudhakar and Nazeer 2015).

11.3.8 Crustaceans

Crustaceans are one of the most large animal groups that are exposed by various microbes and parasites, and the hemolymph is responsible for its immune system with chemical products for dealing with infections. Proteins and peptides are the main components of these immune systems (Rosa and Barracco 2010).

Peptide, polyphemusin III (with amino acid sequence RRGCFRVCYRGFCFQ RCR) isolated from the horseshoe crab *Limulus polyphemus,* was tested for its antimicrobial and anticancer effects and the findings indicated that this peptide despite antimicrobial activity has cytotoxic effects on human leukemia cell HL-60 via destroying the plasma membrane integrity and increasing cell death, therefore suggested as antimicrobial and anticancer case for further pharmacological studies (Marggraf et al. 2018). A novel antimicrobial peptide namely SpHyastatin isolated from hemocytes of the mud crab *Scylla paramamosain*, with two different proline-rich domain (PRD) and cysteine-rich domain (CRD), indicated different activity against various microbes, so that SpHyastatin had a effect on the surface of *S. aureus* and *Aeromonas hydrophila* whereas it directly killed *Pseudomonas fluorescens* through simultaneous targeting the membrane and the cytoplasm. Moreover, it indicated notable activity on Gram-negative bacteria *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* (Shan et al. 2016). One more peptide as a cationic, amphiphilic α-helical and with the 30 amino acid sequence (MAGGKAGKDSGKAKAKAVSRSARAGLQFPVG RIHRHLK) was identified from the later mentioned crab (*S. paramamosain*) that is named sphistin (Chen et al. 2015). This peptide as a antimicrobial agent exhibited potent activity versus Gram-positive bacteria (*S. aureus*, *C. glutamicum, Bacillus subtilis, Micrococcus lysodeikticus,* and *Micrococcus luteus*) and Gram-negative bacteria (*Shigella flexneri, Pseudomonas stutzeri,* and *Pseudomonas fluorescens*) (Chen et al. 2015). The leg muscle of marine crab, *Charybdis natator*, possess a peptide L-G-L-G-A-A-V-L with molecular weight of 713.456 Da that by trypsin, alcalase, and papain was hydrolyzed, and anti-inflammatory activity was observed due to suppression of LPS-mediated induction of COX-2 in RAW264.7 by leg muscle-derived peptide (Narayanasamy et al. 2020). ACE-inhibitory activity for peptides acquired of shrimp, *Pandalopsis dispar*, via enzymatic hydrolysis of proteins by alcalase and protamex, was tested, and the results showed potent ACE-inhibitory activity (Cheung and Li-Chan 2010). Crustin peptide (Pp-Cru) with molecular weight of 17 kDa was reported from blue swimmer crab, *Portunus pelagicus*. This peptide possesses immunological activities triggering encapsulation, phagocytosis to sepharose beads, and yeast (*Saccharomyces cerevisiae*), respectively. Moreover, antibacterial and antibiofilm activities on *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Enterococcus faecalis* (Gram-positive bacteria) and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and *Escherichia coli* (Gram-negative bacteria) were observed. This antimicrobial property could be applicable in drug discovery (Rekha et al. 2018).

Antilipopolysaccharide factor (AFL) as antimicrobial peptides was found in the shrimp *Rimicaris* sp. habited in the hydrothermal vent of Demos, Manus Basin. Peptides RspALF1 and AFL1P1 were identified from this shrimp that killed many of Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria (MIC value ranged from 0.25 μM to 4 μM) and had very high antifungal activity (MIC value = 4 μM to 8 μM). This assay demonstrated antibacterial and antifungal activities of immune system containing AFLs (Fig. 11.2) (Gu et al. 2018).

11.3.9 Echinoderms

Phylum of echinoderms include five classes starfish (Asteroidea), brittle stars (Ophiuroidea), sea urchins and sand dollars (Echinoidea), sea cucumbers (Holothuroidea), and sea lilies (Crinoidea), which are benthic animals (Schillaci et al. 2014). Due to lack of immune system like vertebrate, they adapted to produce many compounds as defensive system against predators, fungal/bacterial/viral/parasitic infections to survive in very harsh and variable (Arizza and Schillaci 2016) that most of these compounds including peptides produce in coelomocytes lysates and celomic fluid and had effective activity against bacterial, fungal, and cancer diseases (Li et al. 2014a, b).

Several peptides isolated from the sea cucumber *Stichopus japonicus* protein by enzymatic hydrolysis are named pepsin peptide (PP), trypsin peptide (TP), papain peptide (PAP), acid protease peptide (AP), and neutral protease peptide (NP). Their antioxidant activities were assessed by hydroxyl radical– (·OH) and superoxide anion (O 2· −)– scavenging activity. TP showed highest activity, and after purification of TP, a subfraction namely TP2b-1 identified with GPEPTGPTGAPQWLR that its radical scavenging activity was IC_{50} = 138.9 and 353.9 μM on OH and on O 2· −, respectively (Zhu et al. 2012).

The results of the ACE-inhibitory activity assay of PNVA and PNLG peptides derived from sea cucumber, *Acaudina molpadioidea* (collected from a local market in Qingdao, China), indicated that these peptides are high potential bioactive compounds in control of hypertension (Li et al. 2018a, b). Mediterranean sea cucumber *Holothuria tubulosa* as a producer of marine natural products contains peptides with antimicrobial properties such as holothuroidin 2 (H2). Activity of new H2 derivative as H2d was evaluated versus strains of the dangerous foodborne pathogen Listeria monocytogenes. H2d showed more effective than H2 against L. monocytogenes. According to the results, this new peptide from sea cucumber may be applicable as antimicrobial agent for suppression of foodborne growth (Cusimano et al. 2019). Activities of two new peptides, strongylocins 1 and 2 (cationic, defensin peptides contain cysteine with mass of 5.6 and 5.8 kDa, respectively) isolated from coelomocyte of green sea urchin, *Strongylocentrotus droebachiensis* (collected from the coast of Tromsø, Norway), against the Gram-negative bacteria *Listonella (Vibrio) anguillarum*, serotype O2 (FT 1801 or AL 104/LFI 6004), E. coli (ATCC 25922), and the Gram-positive bacteria S. aureus (ATCC 9144) and

Corynebacterium glutamicum (ATCC 13032) showed that strongylocins 1 and 2 have strong activities on Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria (Li et al. 2008).

The results of antimicrobial activities of three peptides EeCentrocin 1, EeCentrocin 2, and EeStrongylocin 2 purified from the edible sea urchin *Echinus esculentus* (Fig. 11.2) demonstrated that EeCentrocin 1 and EeStrongylocin 2 exhibited effective antimicrobial activity toward the Gram-positive bacteria; *C. glutamicum* and *S. aureus* and against the Gram-negative bacteria, *E. coli,* and *P. aeruginosa* (the ranges of MIC were from 0.1 to 0.78 μM, and 0.7 to 3.13 μM, respectively) (Solstad et al. 2016). The first antimicrobial peptide from sea star was reported by Kim et al. (2018). They discovered peptide PpCrAMP (a cationic peptide rich in cysteine with 38 amino acid residues) from the coelomic epithelium extract sea star *Patiria pectinifera* that showed strong antimicrobial activity.

11.3.10 Ascidians

Ascidians (as sea squirt) are sessile organisms and filter feeders (about 3000 species) that attach to various beds such as rocks, ships and algae, corals, and sponges, and possess a outer covering (tunic) as a exoskeleton with proteins and carbohydrates (Shenkar and Swalla 2011). Ascidians (in particularly, families of Didemnidae, Polyclinidae, and Polycitoridae) associated with symbiotic microorganisms such as fungus and bacteria produce vast secondary metabolites with various therapeutic applications (Chen et al. 2018; Watters 2018). Many discovered peptides from ascidians used in medicine and pharmacology for treating the various diseases, as anticancer (Edler et al. 2002; Won et al. 2015), antimicrobial (Arumugam et al. 2019; Hansen et al. 2020), and antioxidant (Ko et al. 2016), explained below with more details.

A marine bicyclic peptide was separated from two ascidians *Didemnum cuculiferum* and *Polysyncranton lithostrotum*. This 13 amino acid peptide is vitilevuamide that based on its high inhibitory property toward polymerization of purified tubulin had a potent activity versus P388 lymphocytic leukemia of mice, and so could be said that because of cytotoxic activity, vitilevuamide is a possible antitumors in clinical trials (Fig. 11.2) (Edler et al. 2002). Marine ascidian, *Styela plicata,* had an antioxidant peptide with the amino acid sequence ((be Leu-Pro-His-Pro-Ser-Phe (mass of 696.3 Da)) that hydrolyzed nine proteases (Protamex, Alcalase, Neutrase, Kojizyme, Flavourzyme, papain, trypsin, pepsin, and a-chymotrypsin) and identified Q-TOF ESI mass spectroscopy. Based on scavenging, the peroxyl (IC_{50} values of 0.05 mM), hydroxyl (IC_{50} values of 1.98 mM), and DPPH radicals (IC_{50} values of 0.17 mM) and reduction in intracellular reactive oxygen species (ROS) in zebrafish model could be said this peptide has strong antioxidative effects (Ko et al. 2016). Antimicrobial activity assay of a peptide cloned from the Arctic sea squirt *Synoicum turgens* was investigated (I. K. Ø. Hansen et al. 2020). Based on analysis of activity, this peptide (named turgencin A, containing 36 amino acid residues and three disulfide bridges) showed

weak antimicrobial activity, but the optimized peptide StAMP-9 exhibited antibacterial activity toward *S. aureus* and *E. coli*, without cytotoxic impacts on mammalian cells (Hansen et al. 2020). In another study, peptides of ascidians *didemnum* genus (collected from coastal waters of Mandapam, Tamil Nadu, India) for antibacterial activity assay were isolated by buffer assay pathway purified via an RP-HPLC technique. Activity of A peptide P1 (possess seven fractions) recorded (with mass of 40 kDa) against the Gram-negative bacteria, *Enterococcus faecalis* (11.60 mm), at an MIC value of 2.30 μg/ml followed by *Serratia marcescens* (11.26 mm; MIC: 2.17 μg/ml), *Salmonella typhimurium* (10.53 mm: MIC: 2.05 ± 0.01 μg/ml), *S. aureus* (10.43 mm; MIC:1.95 μg/ml), and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (10.33 mm MIC: 1.83) was indicated most potent inhibition versus *E. faecalis* and lowest inhibition against *P. aeruginosa*. With regard to the results, peptides of ascidians *Didemnum* sp. can be used as marine drug for therapy of bacterial infection in human (Arumugam et al. 2019). Five peptides separated from ascidians *Ciona intestinalis* as linear cationic α-helical peptides were examined against bacterial infections. All five peptides KH.C1.640, KH.C7.94, KH.S1531.4, KH.S908.1, and KH.S921.1 showed a potent antimicrobial activity toward bacteria *E. coli* and *S. aureus*. Moreover, KH.S908.1 and KH.S921.1 peptides exhibited strong antimicrobial to aerobic bacteria *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Also, peptides KH.C1.640, KH.C7.94, KH.S1531.4, and KH.S908.1 had antifungal effects on *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, demonstrating they may be potential inhibitor for the treatment of microbial infections (Ohtsuka and Inagaki 2020). From ascidian *Aplidium* sp. (sampled from the coast of ChujaDo, Korea), five novel peptides including four dipeptides possess iodobenzene (apliamides A-D) and a dipeptide contains bromotryptophan (apliamide E) were acquired. All peptides showed moderate cytotoxic activity to K562 leukemia cancer cell line ((IC_{50} values of 7.8–21.1 μM), also types B, C, and E had cytotoxicity against A549 lung cancer cell line (IC_{50} 8.3–22.8 μM)), but all showed low activity toward MRC5 human lung fibroblast cancer cell line (IC_{50} > 37.0 μM). Also, apliamide D exhibited notable inhibitory activity versus the enzyme Na^+/K^+ -ATPase, suggesting they are helpful compounds in the development of drug industry (Won et al. 2015). Tunichromes (with one or more dehydrodopa-derived units) isolated from blood of Ascidia nigra showed high activity against the Gram-positive Enterococcus sp. (Sugumaran and Robinson 2012).

11.3.11 Fish

Proteins present in soft fish such as meat, skin, fins, and mucus contain many valuable peptides that hydrolyzed by enzymes (Halim et al. 2016). Bioactive peptides of fishes are potential compounds in drug development for human health that mostly reported as a antihypertensive, antidepressant, antimicrobial, antioxidant, and anticancer (Abuine et al. 2019). The following mentioned some of the fish-derived bioactive peptides along with their activity on some infected human and animal cells.

A series marine bioactive peptides that act as the antioxidant agent were isolated from mackerel muscle protein hydrolysates (MPHs) of *Scomber japonicus* (Pacific chub mackerel) that collected from fish markets of Busan, Republic of South Korea. From these MPHs, 10 peptides were synthesized and antioxidant activity of these peptides was demonstrated, so that peptides ALSTWTLQLGSTSFSASPM and L GTLLFIAIPI exhibited the highest DPPH scavenging (2, 2-diphenyl-1-picrylhydrazyl radical) and SOD-like (superoxide dismutase) activities, respectively (Bashir et al. 2020). In another study, eight peptides with amino acid sequences including Gln-Asn-Asp-Glu-Arg (TJP1), Lys-Ser (TJP2), Lys-Ala (TJP3), Ala-Lys-Gly (TJP4), Thr-Lys-Ala (TJP5), Val-Lys (TJP6), Met-Lys (TJP7), and Ile-Tyr-Gly (TJP8) were purified from the protein hydrolysate of hairtail muscle (HTP). Activity of these eight peptides from hairtail fish (*Trichiurus japonicas*) was analyzed, and the test showed that TJP3, TJP4, and TJP8 have notable scavenging effects on DPPH•, HO•, superoxide anion radical, and 2, 2′-azino-bis-3-ethylbenzothiazoline-6-sulfonic acid (ABTS) radical. TJP3, TJP4, and TJP8 exhibited high-level inhibitory effects on lipid peroxidation in a linoleic acid model system. With regard to the acquired results can be said that these peptides especially TJP3, TJP4, and TJP8 have potential for pharmacology applications as antioxidants (Yang et al. 2019). Additionally, they acquired peptides with inhibitory properties against monoamine oxidase A (MAO-A). Peptides hydrolyzed by pepsin and simulated gastrointestinal enzymes (<3 KDa) displayed highest inhibitory activity versus MAO-A ($IC_{50} = 0.61$ and 2.54 mg/mL, respectively). Among 11 peptides identified, peptide VVFEVFW exhibited the most effective MAO-A inhibitory activity. However, all peptides studied may be helpful as antidepressant. A marine bioactive peptide fish as epinecidin-1 (Epi-1) was separated and purified from fish *Epinephelus coioides* (orange-spotted grouper), and its activity was valued versus the protozoan parasite-infected mice and results showed that this peptide has effective antimicrobial activity against *Trichomonas vaginalis*, so could be useful as a antimicrobial peptide (AMP) to produce new drug in therapy of microbial infections (Huang et al. 2018) (Fig. 11.2). Effects of oligopeptide Leu-Ser-Gly-Tyr-Gly-Pro (LSGYGP) purified from tilapia *Oreochromis niloticus* on oxidative stress and endothelial injury in angiotensin II (Ang II)-stimulated human umbilical vein endothelial cells (HUVECs) were assessed and the results demonstrated LSGYP via reduction in oxidative stress and endothelial damage, so it is strong bioactive peptide as antihypertension (Chen et al. 2019). Another peptide from tilapia namely QAGLSPVR isolated from fish skin gelatin hydrolysates had strong antihypertensive effects on angiotensin I-converting enzyme (Sun et al. 2019a, b). The activity valuing of marine fish-derived peptides of hybrid tilapia, *Oreochromis niloticus,* studied with focus on their antibacterial activities and the results of investigation on two peptides, namely tilapia piscidin 3 (TP3) and TP4, showed that the mortality of hybrid tilapia infected with Gram-negative bacteria *Vibrio vulnificus* treated by tilapia piscidin 3 (TP3) and TP4 decreased and therefore could be said these fish peptides may be applicable as marine-derived drug for bacterial infections (Pan et al. 2017). Also, these two peptides had effects on regulation of expression of immune genes (Lin et al. 2016). Additionally, three piscidin ecPis-2, ecPis-3, and ecPis-4

were separated from orange-spotted grouper *Epinephelus coioides*. ecPis-2S, ecPis-3S, and ecPis-4S as the synthetic putative mature peptides had high-level antibacterial and antifungal effects, and ecPis-3S showed strong activity against *Cryptocaryon irritans*, a species of ciliates. Also, assay of the full-length ecPis-2 and ecPis-4 showed that these peptides act as antibacterial, antifungal, and antiparasitic agents. The results indicated that ecPis-2, ecPis-3, and ecPis-4 have key role in immune system of grouper and suggested that ecPis-2S, 2 L, ecPis-3S, and ecPis-4S, ecPis-4 L may be positive applicable in researches related to human health (Zhuang et al. 2017).

Activities of two marine fish peptides, SA-hepcidin1 and SA-hepcidin2, containing cysteine, extracted from *Scatophagus argus* (spotted scat fish) toward Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria and versus *Siniperca chuatsi rhabdovirus* (SCRV) and largemouth bass *Micropterus salmoides reovirus* (MsReV) in epithelioma papulosum cyprini (EPC) and grass carp fin (GCF) cells, were examined and the findings demonstrated that two SA-hepcidins have antibacterial activities but only SA-hepcidin2 has antiviral effect and plays important role in immune system of spotted scat (Gui et al. 2016). PaLEAP-2, as marine fish peptide, acquired from *Plecoglossus altivelis,* showed antimicrobial activity against many bacteria (Li et al. 2015). Zebrafish has a peptide that was derived from the C-terminal 55 residues phosvitin. Antibacterial assay of Pt5e versus five clinical multidrug resistance (MDR) bacteria (*E. coli* 577, *E. coli* 4457, *E. coli* 140,237, *Acinetobacter baumannii* 7225, and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* 2182) showed that this peptide killed all MDR bacteria and have strong antibiotic effect and could be a drug agent in future clinical surveys (Li et al. 2016). According to Salger et al. (2016), from the hybrid-striped bass, three class piscidin peptides including the class I piscidins (22 amino acids in length; striped bass and white bass piscidin 1 and piscidin 3), class II piscidins (44–46 amino acids in length; striped bass and white bass piscidin 4; and white bass piscidin 5), and the class III piscidins (55 amino acids in length; striped bass and white bass piscidin 6 and striped bass piscidin 7) were isolated. The results of assay displayed that class I and class II showed antibacterial and antiprotozoal activity and class III peptides had potent antiprotozoal effects (Salger et al. 2016). Two peptides similar to moronecidin were purified from two Antarctic fishes *Notothenia coriiceps* and *Parachaenichthys charcoti* (Shin et al. 2017). The peptide from *Parachaenichthys charcoti* showed antimicrobial activity similar to moronecidin, but peptide of *Notothenia coriiceps* exhibited effective activity more than moronecidin versus bacterium infections and may be more useful in the medical application (Shin et al. 2017). A polyaniline peptide that is named Pa-MAP 1.9 was separated from the polar fish *Pleuronectes americanus*. Activity assay displayed that Pa-MAP 1.9 has effective antimicrobial activity versus Gram-negative planktonic bacteria and biofilms, therefore suggested as potential drug in treatment of bacterial-infected diseases (Cardoso et al. 2016). The synthetic peptide NRC-16 extracted from witch flounder *Glyptocephalus cynoglossus* showed high effective activity against infection of bacteria and formation of biofilm, so can be suggested as antimicrobial and antibiofilm in future health studies (Gopal et al. 2013). The Antarctic icefish *Chionodraco hamatus* contains a new 22 amino acid residue

peptide, the chionodracine (Cnd-m3a), that exhibited strong antimicrobial activity against Gram-human pathogens but low hemolytic and cytotoxic effects toward human primary and tumor cell lines, so it proposed for clinical trials (Buonocore et al. 2019). Using five enzymes including pepsin, trypsin, papain, flavourzyme, and neutrase, two peptides were hydrolyzed from protein of Pacific herring *Clupea pallasii*. Amino acid sequences of these peptides were identified as Leu-His-Asp-Glu-Leu-Thr (molecular weight = 726.35 Da) and Lys-Glu-Glu-Lys-Phe-Glu (molecular weight = 808.40 Da). Activity assessing showed antioxidant effects (IC_{50} values = 1.19 ± 0.05 mg/mL and 1.04 ± 0.06 mg/mL). Based on the results, these peptides can be antioxidant agent in next drug development (Wang et al. 2019a, b).

A marine fish peptide (SCP) was extracted from collagen of skate (*Raja kenojei*) skin. Its activity on lipid metabolism in 17 men (41.2 + 10.4 years old and index of mean body mass = 25.6 ± 1.9 kg/m^2) was assessed. The results indicated that collagen-derived peptide has antiobesity activity against accumulation of lipids and suggested the positive effects of SCP have potential in reduction of overweight of human (Tak et al. 2019). Also, from skin gelatin of thornback ray (*R. clavata*), three hydrolyzed peptides (APGAP, AVGAT, and GIPGAP) were obtained by two proteases. ACE-inhibitory activity of APGAP and GIGAP was reported with IC_{50} value of 170 and 27.9 μM, respectively. However, strongest antioxidant activity was observed via the DPPH radical scavenging assay by AVGAP with a 33% of activity at 3 mg/mL (Lassoued et al. 2015). Also, in one of the newest studies on peptides of seahorse, from SHP-III as the lowest molecular weight fractioned by enzyme of Protamex (SHP) in hydrolyze from seahorse *Hippocampus abdominalis* protein, three peptides with amino acid sequences of Ala-Pro-Thr-Leu, Cys-Asn-Val-Pro-Leu-Ser-Pro, and Pro-Trp-Thr-Pro-Leu were purified. The results of ACE-inhibitory activity assay demonstrated that all peptides of seahorse *H. abdominalis* can reduce the blood pressure of spontaneously hypertensive rat (SHR). Consequently, they may be useful agents for prohibition of act of angiotensin-converting the enzymes (Je et al. 2020). From an anchovy (*Setipinna taty*)-derived peptide with amino acid sequence Tyr-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ala-His, six residues identified that YALPAH, YALRAS, YALPAR, and YALPAG displayed antiproliferative activity against PC3 cells. However, YALRAH had the highest activity (IC_{50} value = 11.1 μM) (Song et al. 2014a, b).

11.3.12 Sea Snake

In traditional cultures like China, chemical products of snake venom have been used in medicine. Natural compounds of venom include peptides, proteins, nucleosides, amino acids, lipids, and carbohydrates that peptides and proteins are the main components of venom and snake uses it as a defensive system and preying (Munawar et al. 2018). With respect to previous studies, peptides and proteins of snake venom have anticancer, anti-inflammatory, antistroke, and analgesic activities (Munawar et al. 2018). One of the favorite peptides of researchers is Cathelicidins,

which are found in many vertebrates (Guo et al. 2017), especially sea snakes (de Barros et al. 2019; Wang et al. 2019a, b; Wei et al. 2015) (Fig. 11.2). These peptides play roles in immune system for fight infections. Hc-CATH is a new cathelicidin that was isolated from sea snake *Hydrophis cyanocinctus*. This peptide with 30 amino acid sequence KFFKRLLKSVRRAVKKFRKKPRLIGLSTLL caused disrupting the bacterial membrane and lysis of bacterial cell, while showed low cytotoxicity to mammalian cell, but had potent antimicrobial activity. Additionally, Hc-CATH is due to inhibition from the LPS-induced production of nitric oxide (NO) and pro-inflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6, binding to Toll-like receptor 4 (TLR4/MD2 complex), and activation of LPS-induced inflammatory response pathways showed strong anti-inflammatory effect. The results demonstrated that Hc-CATH as antibiotic can be useful in pharmaceutical researches in future (Wei et al. 2015). From same sea snake species, *H. cyanocinctus*, a peptide, named hydrostatin-TL1 (H-TL), were gained that as anti-inflammatory agent protects from host toward dextran sodium sulfate (DSS)-induced acute colitis and lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-induced acute shock (Wang et al. 2016a, b). Also, hedrostatin-SN1 (H-SN1) extracted from venom gland T7 of *H. cyanocinctus* had potential in treating the TNF-α-associated inflammatory bowel diseases (Zheng et al. 2016).

11.4 Marine Peptides in Clinical Trials and Approved by FDA

Extensive research has been conducted on the production of marine drugs over the past two decades. The first compound used for drug production was cytarabine (marketed name, Cytosar-U®) that derived from Caribbean marine sponge, spongian nucleoside, in 1959 and approved for cancer in 1969, and then vidarabine approved in 1979 as antiviral (Martins et al. 2014). In totally, eight natural product-derived drugs have been approved by Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and/or the European Medical Agency (EMA) that the origin of two drugs is marine peptides (Jaspars et al. 2016; Jimenez et al. 2020). In recent years, increased desire to study biological and pharmaceutical properties of peptides has been observed, so that over 60 peptides are as market drug and many peptides are in clinical pipeline, too (Arumugam et al. 2019). Some of them will be mentioned below, and their mechanism of action in the treatment of pathogens will be explained.

Ziconotide is marine peptide-derived drug with marked name Prialt® approved by FDA in 2004 and EMA in 2005 that purified from venom of cone snail *Conus magus* (Fig. 11.3). In fact, ziconotide is neuroactive peptide that was used to treat chronic refractory pain. Prialt as an analgesic drug (produced by Azur Pharma and distributed worldwide except Europe) blocks N-type calcium channels and inhibited from releasing the neurotransmitter from nociceptive afferents to synaptic space, consequently inhibit the transmission of pain to brain (Deer et al. 2019; Safavi-Hemami et al. 2019) (Fig. 11.3).

Second marked marine peptide-derived drug is brentuximab vedotin (ADCETRIS®) that originated from dolastatin 10, monomethyl auristatin E

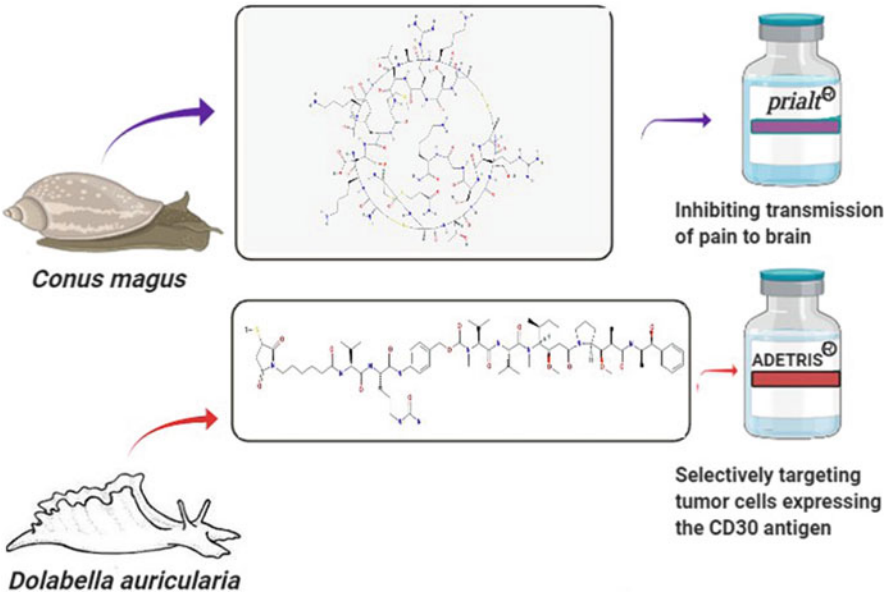


Fig. 11.3 Structures and functions of two peptides derived from marine Mollusca approved as drug by FDA

(MMAE) isolated from the mollusk *Dolabella auricularia*, which inhabit in the Indian Ocean (Fig. 11.3). This drug as antibody–drug conjugate (ADC) was approved by FDA for treating relapsed/refractory Hodgkin lymphoma, systemic anaplastic large cell lymphoma, or primary cutaneous CD30-positive lymphoproliferative disorders (Fig. 11.3). This compound attached to the CD30 antibody, fusion with lysosomes causes introduce MMAE into the intracellular space, binding of MMAE to tubulin disrupts the microtubule network within the cell, resulting induction of G2/M-phase cell cycle arrest and apoptosis (Jimenez et al. 2020).

Glembatumumab vedotin derived from dolastatin 10 is another ADC whose activity as anticancer agent has been studied undergoing phase I/II (Vaklavas and Forero 2014). This peptide by targeting the transmembrane glycoprotein NMB, releasing MMAE into cytoplasm, arresting microtubule, consequently causes cancer cell death (Ott et al. 2019). One of the dolastatin 10 derivatives isolated from marine mollusk *Dolabella auricularia* is soblidotin (phase II clinical trials) that has prohibition activity against murine P388 leukemia, Lewis lung carcinoma, M5076 sarcoma, B16 melanoma, human MX-1 breast cancer, and Colon26 colon cancer cell lines and SBC-3SCLC and LX-1 xenografts (Y. Lee et al. 2017). Cemadotin as analog of dolastatin 15 has antiproliferation and prohibition activity against human tumor and as chemotherapeutic agent of cancer attached to tubulin and stopped mitosis (Jordan et al. 1998). Tasidotin (ILX-651) is another dolastatin 15 that currently is in phase III clinical testing for its pharmaceutical effect assay on solid

tumors, microtubule assembly lung cancer. Tasidotin has antiproliferative effect on MCF7/GFP breast cancer cells ($IC_{50} = 72$ nmol/L), as well as inhibit from polymerization of tubulin (Ray et al. 2007). Another peptide of marine mollusk *D. auricularia* is elisidepsin, analog of kahalalide F (as a marine cyclic peptide) that is in phase I clinical trials because of cytotoxic activity to malignant solid tumors (Serova et al. 2013).

Subfraction HTI-286 of peptide, hemiasterlin (purified from marine sponge *Hemiasterella minor*), has anticancer effects on human cancer cell, especially metastatic prostate cancer due to arresting the mitosis and cell death via inhibition of polymerization and disruption of microtubule (Loganzo et al. 2003). E7974, another analog of hemiasterlin, is in phase II clinical trials for study of colorectal, prostate, and larynx carcinomas. E7974 similar to other anticancer peptides is linked to the tubulin molecule and induce the apoptosis in tumor cells. This compound exhibited potent activity toward colorectal cancer (CRC) xenografts. Also, this peptide has linear pharmacokinetic (PK) properties in mice and dogs and is in preclinical phases for breast cancer, pancreatic cancer, and melanoma (Rocha-Lima et al. 2012).

Two ziconotide derivatives named XEN-2174 (phase II) and leconotide (AM-336, ω-conotoxin CVID; phase I) were isolated from cone snail *C. marmoreus* (Newman and Cragg 2014). XEN-2174, as 13-residue peptide, has inhibitory activity against neuronal norepinephrine transporter. Similar to ziconotide, AM-336 with 27 residue peptide and tree internal CYS-CYS bond blocked calcium channel in cancer cell line (Newman and Cragg 2014). Plitidepsin (trade name aplidin) acquired from ascidian *Aplidium albicans* is in phase I/II clinical pipeline as potential anticancer agent. Actually, plitidepsin is a didemnin compound (a cyclic depsipeptide with ester bonds). This peptide as anticancer is linked to protein Eef1a2 and leading apoptosis in cancers such as lung cancer, melanoma, and multiple myeloma (Alonso-Álvarez et al. 2017; Leisch et al. 2019).

Kahalalide F isolated from mollusk *Elysia rufescens* (sampled from Hawaii), and its diet green algae (*Bryopsis sp.*), is a toxic peptide for defends against predators that were produced by a bacterial or fungal symbiont (Zan et al. 2019). Kahalalide F was first studied by Hamann and Scheuer (1993) as fatty acid–cyclic peptide containing 13 amino acids and 5-methylhexanoic acid at its N-terminus showed strong activity against lung cancer via disrupting the lysosomal membranes, formation of vacuoles, increasing acidification in the intracellular space, and finally induce of apoptosis in cancer cells, and in phase II clinical trials, it had high cytotoxic effect (with IC_{50} values ranging from 0.07 to 0.28 μM) on prostate and breast cancer lines (Rosa et al. 2020; Saadaoui et al. 2020).

11.5 Conclusion

The results of the reviewed papers in this chapter indicated that natural compounds derived from microorganisms including bacteria, fungi, cyanobacteria, algae, fish, and various marine invertebrates contain valuable bioactive peptides as secondary

metabolites that have high potential in the therapeutic and pharmacological areas so that antimicrobial, antifungal, antiparasitic, antiviral, analgesic, antihypertensive, antioxidant, and anticancer properties have been reported for marine peptides. In addition, many marine peptides are under pathological evaluation in different clinical phases for drug production, and two drugs derived from marine peptides, namely ziconotide (Prialtand®) and brentuximab vedotin (ADCETRIS®), were approved by the FDA and distributed worldwide as analgesics and anticancer drugs, respectively. Despite the high potential of marine peptides in the field of health, many marine peptides of marine organisms have not yet been investigated. Therefore, more research is needed to elucidate biological properties of marine bioactive peptides for the development of pharmaceutical industries.

References

Abuine R, Rathnayake AU, Byun H-G (2019) Biological activity of peptides purified from fish skin hydrolysates. Fish Aquat Sci 22(1):10. https://doi.org/10.1186/s41240-019-0125-4

Admassu H, Gasmalla MAA, Yang R, Zhao W (2018) Bioactive peptides derived from seaweed protein and their health benefits: antihypertensive, antioxidant, and antidiabetic properties. J Food Sci 83(1):6–16. https://doi.org/10.1111/1750-3841.14011

Agrawal S, Adholeya A, Deshmukh SK (2016) The pharmacological potential of non-ribosomal peptides from marine sponge and tunicates. Front Pharmacol 7:333. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2016.00333

Agrawal S, Acharya D, Adholeya A, Barrow CJ, Deshmukh SK (2017) Nonribosomal peptides from marine microbes and their antimicrobial and anticancer potential. Front Pharmacol 8:828. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2017.00828

Almeida C, El Maddah F, Kehraus S, Schnakenburg G, König GM (2016) Endolides A and B, vasopressin and serotonin-receptor interacting N-methylated peptides from the sponge-derived fungus Stachylidium sp. Org Lett 18(3):528–531. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.orglett.5b03553

Alonso-Álvarez S, Pardal E, Sánchez-Nieto D, Navarro M, Caballero MD, Mateos MV, Martín A (2017) Plitidepsin: design, development, and potential place in therapy. Drug Des Devel Ther 11:253–264. https://doi.org/10.2147/DDDT.S94165

Álvarez-Viñas M, Flórez-Fernández N, Torres MD, Domínguez H (2019) Successful approaches for a red seaweed biorefinery. Mar Drugs 17(11). https://doi.org/10.3390/md17110620

Anand M, Alagar M, Ranjitha J, Selvaraj V (2019) Total synthesis and anticancer activity of a cyclic heptapeptide from marine sponge using water soluble peptide coupling agent EDC. Arab J Chem 12(8):2782–2787. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.arabjc.2014.05.037

Andreev YA, Osmakov DI, Koshelev SG, Maleeva EE, Logashina YA, Palikov VA, Palikova YA, Dyachenko IA, Kozlov SA (2018) Analgesic activity of acid-sensing ion channel 3 (ASIC3) inhibitors: sea anemones peptides Ugr9-1 and APETx2 versus low molecular weight compounds. Mar Drugs 16(12):500. https://doi.org/10.3390/md16120500

Aneiros A, Garateix A (2004) Bioactive peptides from marine sources: pharmacological properties and isolation procedures. J Chromatogr B 803(1):41–53. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jchromb.2003.11.005

Arizza V, Schillaci D (2016) Chapter 12 - Echinoderm antimicrobial peptides: the ancient arms of the deuterostome innate immune system (L. Ballarin & M. B. T.-L. in I. Cammarata (eds.); pp. 159–176). Academic Press. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-803252-7.00012-6

Arumugam V, Venkatesan M, Murugesan S, Ayyasamy R, Ramachandran S, Sundaresan U, Pugazhendhi A (2019) Metabolite profiling, molecular docking and in vitro anticancer potential of marine ascidian Didemnum sp. Process Biochem. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.procbio.2019.09.021

Asha KK, Remya Kumari KR, Ashok Kumar K, Chatterjee NS, Anandan R, Mathew S (2016) Sequence determination of an antioxidant peptide obtained by enzymatic hydrolysis of oyster Crassostrea madrasensis (Preston). Int J Pept Res Ther 22(3):421–433. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10989-016-9521-0

Barbosa F, Pinto E, Kijjoa A, Pinto M, Sousa E (2020) Targeting antimicrobial drug resistance with marine natural products. Int J Antimicrob Agents 56(1):106005. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2020.106005

Bashir KMI, Sohn JH, Kim J-S, Choi J-S (2020) Identification and characterization of novel antioxidant peptides from mackerel (Scomber japonicus) muscle protein hydrolysates. Food Chem 323:126809. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2020.126809

Benkendorff K (2010) Molluscan biological and chemical diversity: secondary metabolites and medicinal resources produced by marine molluscs. Biol Rev Camb Philos Soc 85(4):757–775. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1469-185X.2010.00124.x

Boot CM, Tenney K, Valeriote FA, Crews P (2006) Highly N-methylated linear peptides produced by an atypical sponge-derived Acremonium sp. J Nat Prod 69(1):83–92. https://doi.org/10.1021/np0503653

Boot CM, Amagata T, Tenney K, Compton JE, Pietraszkiewicz H, Valeriote FA, Crews P (2007) Four classes of structurally unusual peptides from two marine-derived fungi: structures and bioactivities. Tetrahedron 63(39):9903–9914. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tet.2007.06.034

Boto A, Pérez de la Lastra JM, González CC (2018) The road from host-defense peptides to a new generation of antimicrobial drugs. Molecules (Basel, Switzerland) 23(2):311. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules23020311

Buijs Y, Bech PK, Vazquez-Albacete D, Bentzon-Tilia M, Sonnenschein EC, Gram L, Zhang S-D (2019) Marine Proteobacteria as a source of natural products: advances in molecular tools and strategies. Nat Prod Rep 36(9):1333–1350. https://doi.org/10.1039/C9NP00020H

Buonocore F, Picchietti S, Porcelli F, Della Pelle G, Olivieri C, Poerio E, Bugli F, Menchinelli G, Sanguinetti M, Bresciani A, Gennari N, Taddei AR, Fausto AM, Scapigliati G (2019) Fish-derived antimicrobial peptides: activity of a chionodracine mutant against bacterial models and human bacterial pathogens. Dev Comparat Immunol 96:9–17. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dci.2019.02.012

Cardoso S, Carvalho L G, Silva P, Rodrigues M, Pereira O, Pereira L (2014) Bioproducts from seaweeds: a review with special focus on the Iberian Peninsula. Curr Org Chem 18. https://doi.org/10.2174/1385272818071405151541116

Cardoso MH, Ribeiro SM, Nolasco DO, de la Fuente-Núñez C, Felício MR, Gonçalves S, Matos CO, Liao LM, Santos NC, Hancock REW, Franco OL, Migliolo L (2016) A polyalanine peptide derived from polar fish with anti-infectious activities. Sci Rep 6(1):21385. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep21385

Chen Z, Song Y, Chen Y, Huang H, Zhang W, Ju J (2012) Cyclic heptapeptides, cordyheptapeptides C–E, from the marine-derived fungus acremonium persicinum SCSIO 115 and their cytotoxic activities. J Nat Prod 75(6):1215–1219. https://doi.org/10.1021/np300152d

Chen B, Fan D-Q, Zhu K-X, Shan Z-G, Chen F-Y, Hou L, Cai L, Wang K-J (2015) Mechanism study on a new antimicrobial peptide Sphistin derived from the N-terminus of crab histone H2A identified in haemolymphs of Scylla paramamosain. Fish Shellfish Immunol 47(2):833–846. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fsi.2015.10.010

Chen E, Chen Q, Chen S, Xu B, Ju J, Wang H (2017) Mathermycin, a lantibiotic from the marine actinomycete Marinactinospora thermotolerans SCSIO 00652. Appl Environ Microbiol 83(15):e00926–e00917. https://doi.org/10.1128/AEM.00926-17

Chen L, Hu J-S, Xu J-L, Shao C-L, Wang G-Y (2018) Biological and chemical diversity of ascidian-associated microorganisms. Mar Drugs 16(10):362. https://doi.org/10.3390/md16100362

Chen J, Gong F, Chen M-F, Li C, Hong P, Sun S, Zhou C, Qian Z-J (2019) In vitro vascular-protective effects of a tilapia by-product oligopeptide on angiotensin II-Induced hypertensive

endothelial injury in HUVEC by Nrf2/NF-κB pathways. Mar Drugs 17(7):431. https://doi.org/10.3390/md17070431

Chen J, Tan L, Li C, Zhou C, Hong P, Sun S, Qian Z-J (2020) Mechanism analysis of a novel angiotensin-I-converting enzyme inhibitory peptide from isochrysis zhanjiangensis microalgae for suppressing vascular injury in human umbilical vein endothelial cells. J Agric Food Chem 68 (15):4411–4423. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.jafc.0c00925

Cheng KC-C, Cao S, Raveh A, MacArthur R, Dranchak P, Chlipala G, Okoneski MT, Guha R, Eastman RT, Yuan J, Schultz PJ, Su X, Tamayo-Castillo G, Matainaho T, Clardy J, Sherman DH, Inglese J (2015) Actinoramide A identified as a potent antimalarial from titration-based screening of marine natural product extracts. J Nat Prod 78(10):2411–2422. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.jnatprod.5b00489

Cheung IWY, Li-Chan ECY (2010) Angiotensin-I-converting enzyme inhibitory activity and bitterness of enzymatically-produced hydrolysates of shrimp (Pandalopsis dispar) processing byproducts investigated by Taguchi design. Food Chem 122(4):1003–1012. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2010.03.057

Cheung RC, Ng TB, Wong JH (2015) Marine peptides: bioactivities and applications. Mar Drugs 13(7). https://doi.org/10.3390/md13074006

Chi C-F, Hu F-Y, Wang B, Li T, Ding G-F (2015) Antioxidant and anticancer peptides from the protein hydrolysate of blood clam (Tegillarca granosa) muscle. J Funct Foods 15:301–313. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jff.2015.03.045

Choi H, Lee DG (2012) Synergistic effect of antimicrobial peptide arenicin-1 in combination with antibiotics against pathogenic bacteria. Res Microbiol 163(6–7):479–486. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.resmic.2012.06.001

Cusimano MG, Spinello A, Barone G, Schillaci D, Cascioferro S, Magistrato A, Parrino B, Arizza V, Vitale M (2019) A synthetic derivative of antimicrobial peptide holothuroidin 2 from mediterranean sea cucumber (Holothuria tubulosa) in the control of listeria monocytogenes. Mar Drugs 17(3). https://doi.org/10.3390/md17030159

Dahiya R, Singh S, Sharma A, Chennupati SV, Maharaj S (2016) First total synthesis and biological screening of a proline-rich cyclopeptide from a Caribbean marine sponge. Mar Drugs 14 (12):228. https://doi.org/10.3390/md14120228

Daletos G, Kalscheuer R, Koliwer-Brandl H, Hartmann R, de Voogd NJ, Wray V, Lin W, Proksch P (2015) Callyaerins from the marine sponge callyspongia aerizusa: cyclic peptides with antitubercular activity. J Nat Prod 78(8):1910–1925. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.jnatprod.5b00266

de Barros E, Gonçalves RM, Cardoso MH, Santos NC, Franco OL, Cândido ES (2019) Snake venom cathelicidins as natural antimicrobial peptides. Front Pharmacol 10:1415. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2019.01415

De Domenico S, De Rinaldis G, Paulmery M, Piraino S, Leone A (2019) Barrel jellyfish (rhizostoma pulmo) as source of antioxidant peptides. Mar Drugs 17(2):134. https://doi.org/10.3390/md17020134

Deer TR, Pope JE, Hanes MC, McDowell GC (2019) Intrathecal therapy for chronic pain: a review of morphine and ziconotide as firstline options. Pain Med (Malden, Mass.) 20(4):784–798. https://doi.org/10.1093/pm/pny132

Deng Z, Liu Y, Wang J, Wu S, Geng L, Sui Z, Zhang Q (2018) Antihypertensive effects of two novel angiotensin I-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitory peptides from Gracilariopsis lemaneiformis (rhodophyta) in spontaneously hypertensive rats (SHRs). Mar Drugs 16 (9):299. https://doi.org/10.3390/md16090299

Deshmukh AA, Weist JL, Leight JL (2018) Detection of proteolytic activity by covalent tethering of fluorogenic substrates in zymogram gels. BioTechniques 64(5):203–210. https://doi.org/10.2144/btn-2018-0005

Dewapriya P, Khalil ZG, Prasad P, Salim AA, Cruz-Morales P, Marcellin E, Capon RJ (2018) Talaropeptides A-D: structure and biosynthesis of extensively N-methylated linear peptides

from an australian marine tunicate-derived Talaromyces sp. Front Chem 6:394. https://doi.org/10.3389/fchem.2018.00394

Ebada SS, Edrada RA, Lin W, Proksch P (2008) Methods for isolation, purification and structural elucidation of bioactive secondary metabolites from marine invertebrates. Nat Protoc 3 (12):1820–1831. https://doi.org/10.1038/nprot.2008.182

Ebada SS, Fischer T, Hamacher A, Du F-Y, Roth YO, Kassack MU, Wang B-G, Roth EH (2014) Psychrophilin E, a new cyclotripeptide, from co-fermentation of two marine alga-derived fungi of the genus Aspergillus. Nat Prod Res 28(11):776–781. https://doi.org/10.1080/14786419.2014.880911

Edler MC, Fernandez AM, Lassota P, Ireland CM, Barrows LR (2002) Inhibition of tubulin polymerization by vitilevuamide, a bicyclic marine peptide, at a site distinct from colchicine, the vinca alkaloids, and dolastatin 10. Biochem Pharmacol 63(4):707–715. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0006-2952(01)00898-x

El Maddah F, Kehraus S, Nazir M, Almeida C, König GM (2016) Insights into the biosynthetic origin of 3-(3-Furyl)alanine in Stachylidium sp. 293 K04 tetrapeptides. J Nat Prod 79 (11):2838–2845. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.jnatprod.6b00601

Elyakova LA, Vaskovsky BV, Khoroshilova NI, Vantseva SI, Agapkina YY (2011) Isolation and structure of a novel peptide inhibitor of HIV-1 integrase from marine polychaetes. Russ J Bioorg Chem 37(2):207–216. https://doi.org/10.1134/S1068162010061019

Engelhardt K, Degnes KF, Kemmler M, Bredholt H, Fjaervik E, Klinkenberg G, Sletta H, Ellingsen TE, Zotchev SB (2010) Production of a new thiopeptide antibiotic, TP-1161, by a marine Nocardiopsis species. Appl Environ Microbiol 76(15):4969–4976. https://doi.org/10.1128/AEM.00741-10

Ennaas N, Hammami R, Beaulieu L, Fliss I (2015) Purification and characterization of four antibacterial peptides from protamex hydrolysate of Atlantic mackerel (Scomber scombrus) by-products. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 462(3):195–200. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbrc.2015.04.091

Falkenberg SS (2014) Discovery and characterization of novel bioactive peptides from marine secondary products. Electronic, Technical University of Denmark, Kongens Lyngby, Denmark

Fan X, Bai L, Zhu L, Yang L, Zhang X (2014) Marine algae-derived bioactive peptides for human nutrition and health. J Agric Food Chem 62(38):9211–9222. https://doi.org/10.1021/jf502420h

Felician FF, Yu R-H, Li M-Z, Li C-J, Chen H-Q, Jiang Y, Tang T, Qi W-Y, Xu H-M (2019) The wound healing potential of collagen peptides derived from the jellyfish Rhopilema esculentum. Chin J Traumatol 22(1):12–20. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cjtee.2018.10.004

Fitzgerald C, Mora-Soler L, Gallagher E, O'Connor P, Prieto J, Soler-Vila A, Hayes M (2012) Isolation and characterization of bioactive pro-peptides with in vitro renin inhibitory activities from the macroalga Palmaria palmata. J Agric Food Chem 60(30):7421–7427. https://doi.org/10.1021/jf301361c

Fremlin LJ, Piggott AM, Lacey E, Capon RJ (2009) Cottoquinazoline A and Cotteslosins A and B, metabolites from an Australian marine-derived strain of Aspergillus versicolor. J Nat Prod 72 (4):666–670. https://doi.org/10.1021/np800777f

Furuta T, Miyabe Y, Yasui H, Kinoshita Y, Kishimura H (2016) Angiotensin I converting enzyme inhibitory peptides derived from phycobiliproteins of Dulse Palmaria palmata. Mar Drugs 14(2). https://doi.org/10.3390/md14020032

Ghanbari R (2019) Review on the bioactive peptides from marine sources: indication for health effects. Int J Pept Res Ther 25(3):1187–1199. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10989-018-9766-x

Giordano D, Costantini M, Coppola D, Lauritano C, Núñez Pons L, Ruocco N, di Prisco G, Ianora A, Verde C (2018) Chapter five-biotechnological applications of bioactive peptides from marine sources. R. K. B. T.-A. in M. P. Poole (ed.); Vol. 73, pp. 171–220. Academic Press. https://doi.org/10.1016/bs.ampbs.2018.05.002

Gong F, Chen M-F, Zhang Y-Y, Li C-Y, Zhou C-X, Hong P-Z, Sun S-L, Qian Z-J (2019) A novel peptide from abalone (Haliotis discus hannai) to suppress metastasis and vasculogenic mimicry

of tumor cells and enhance anti-tumor effect in vitro. Mar Drugs 17(4). https://doi.org/10.3390/md17040244

Gopal R, Lee JH, Kim YG, Kim M-S, Seo CH, Park Y (2013) Anti-microbial, anti-biofilm activities and cell selectivity of the NRC-16 peptide derived from witch flounder, glyptocephalus cynoglossus. Mar Drugs 11(6). https://doi.org/10.3390/md11061836

Gu W, Cueto M, Jensen PR, Fenical W, Silverman RB (2007) Microsporins A and B: new histone deacetylase inhibitors from the marine-derived fungus Microsporum cf. gypseum and the solid-phase synthesis of microsporin A. Tetrahedron 63(28):6535–6541. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tet.2007.04.025

Gu H-J, Sun Q-L, Jiang S, Zhang J, Sun L (2018) First characterization of an anti-lipopolysaccharide factor (ALF) from hydrothermal vent shrimp: Insights into the immune function of deep-sea crustacean ALF. Dev Comp Immunol 84:382–395. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dci.2018.03.016

Gui L, Zhang P, Zhang Q, Zhang J (2016) Two hepcidins from spotted scat (Scatophagus argus) possess antibacterial and antiviral functions in vitro. Fish Shellfish Immunol 50:191–199. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fsi.2016.01.038

Gulder TAM, Hong H, Correa J, Egereva E, Wiese J, Imhoff JF, Gross H (2012) Isolation, structure elucidation and total synthesis of lajollamide A from the marine fungus Asteromyces cruciatus. Mar Drugs 10(12):2912–2935. https://doi.org/10.3390/md10122912

Guo Z, Qiao X, Cheng R, Shi N, Wang A, Feng T, Chen Y, Zhang F, Yu H, Wang Y (2017) As-CATH4 and 5, two vertebrate-derived natural host defense peptides, enhance the immuno-resistance efficiency against bacterial infections in Chinese mitten crab, Eriocheir sinensis. Fish Shellfish Immunol 71:202–209. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fsi.2017.10.015

Halim NRA, Yusof HM, Sarbon NM (2016) Functional and bioactive properties of fish protein hydrolysates and peptides: a comprehensive review. Trends Food Sci Technol 51:24–33. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tifs.2016.02.007

Hamann MT, Scheuer PJ (1993) Kahalalide F: a bioactive depsipeptide from the sacoglossan mollusk Elysia rufescens and the green alga Bryopsis sp. J Am Chem Soc 115 (13):5825–5826. https://doi.org/10.1021/ja00066a061

Hansen AM, Peng P, Baldry M, Perez-Gassol I, Christensen SB, Vinther JMO, Ingmer H, Franzyk H (2018) Lactam hybrid analogues of solonamide B and autoinducing peptides as potent S. aureus AgrC antagonists. Eur J Med Chem 152:370–376. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2018.04.053

Hansen IKØ, Isaksson J, Poth AG, Hansen KØ, Andersen AJC, Richard CSM, Blencke H-M, Stensvåg K, Craik DJ, Haug T (2020) Isolation and characterization of antimicrobial peptides with unusual disulfide connectivity from the colonial ascidian synoicum turgens. Mar Drugs 18 (1). https://doi.org/10.3390/md18010051

Harnedy PA, FitzGerald RJ (2012) Bioactive peptides from marine processing waste and shellfish: a review. J Funct Foods 4(1):6–24. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jff.2011.09.001

Herbel V, Schäfer H, Wink M (2015) Recombinant production of snakin-2 (an antimicrobial peptide from tomato) in E. coli and analysis of its bioactivity. Molecules 20(8). https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules200814889

Hong R, Yang Y (2011) Antitumor metabolites from marine sediment derived Penicillium sp.WF-06. World Notes on Antibiotics, 2

Hou X-M, Zhang Y-H, Hai Y, Zheng J-Y, Gu Y-C, Wang C-Y, Shao C-L (2017) Aspersymmetide A, a new centrosymmetric cyclohexapeptide from the marine-derived fungus Aspergillus versicolor. Mar Drugs 15(11). https://doi.org/10.3390/md15110363

Hou X-M, Wang C-Y, Gerwick WH, Shao C-L (2019) Marine natural products as potential anti-tubercular agents. Eur J Med Chem 165:273–292. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2019.01.026

Huang H-N, Pan C-Y, Chen J-Y (2018) Grouper (Epinephelus coioides) antimicrobial peptide epinecidin-1 exhibits antiviral activity against foot-and-mouth disease virus in vitro. Peptides 106:91–95. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.peptides.2018.07.003

Hwang J-Y, Lee J-H, Park SC, Lee J, Oh D-C, Oh K-B, Shin J (2019) New peptides from the marine-derived Fungi Aspergillus allahabadii and Aspergillus ochraceopetaliformis. Mar Drugs 17(9). https://doi.org/10.3390/md17090488

Ibrahim SRM, Min CC, Teuscher F, Ebel R, Kakoschke C, Lin W, Wray V, Edrada-Ebel R, Proksch P (2010) Callyaerins A-F and H, new cytotoxic cyclic peptides from the Indonesian marine sponge Callyspongia aerizusa. Bioorg Med Chem 18(14):4947–4956. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmc.2010.06.012

Ibrahim AH, Attia EZ, Hajjar D, Anany MA, Desoukey SY, Fouad MA, Kamel MS, Wajant H, Gulder TAM, Abdelmohsen UR (2018) New cytotoxic cyclic peptide from the marine sponge-associated Nocardiopsis sp. UR67. Mar Drugs 16(9). https://doi.org/10.3390/md16090290

Jaspars M, De Pascale D, Andersen JH, Reyes F, Crawford AD, Ianora A (2016) The marine biodiscovery pipeline and ocean medicines of tomorrow. J Mar Biol Assoc U K 96(1):151–158. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0025315415002106

Jayaprakash R, Perera CO (2020) Partial purification and characterization of bioactive peptides from cooked New Zealand green-lipped mussel (Perna canaliculus) protein hydrolyzates. Foods (Basel, Switzerland) 9(7):879. https://doi.org/10.3390/foods9070879

Je J-G, Kim H-S, Lee H-G, Oh J-Y, Lu YA, Wang L, Rho S, Jeon Y-J (2020) Low-molecular weight peptides isolated from seahorse (Hippocampus abdominalis) improve vasodilation via inhibition of angiotensin-converting enzyme in vivo and in vitro. Process Biochem 95:30–35. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.procbio.2020.04.016

Jiang S, Jia Y, Tang Y, Zheng D, Han X, Yu F, Chen Y, Huang F, Yang Z, Ding G (2019) Anti-proliferation activity of a decapeptide from Perinereis aibuhitensis toward human lung cancer H1299 cells. Mar Drugs 17(2). https://doi.org/10.3390/md17020122

Jiménez C (2018) Marine natural products in medicinal chemistry. ACS Med Chem Lett 9 (10):959–961. https://doi.org/10.1021/acsmedchemlett.8b00368

Jimenez PC, Wilke DV, Branco PC, Bauermeister A, Rezende-Teixeira P, Gaudêncio SP, Costa-Lotufo LV (2020) Enriching cancer pharmacology with drugs of marine origin. Br J Pharmacol 177(1):3–27. https://doi.org/10.1111/bph.14876

Jo H-Y, Jung W-K, Kim S-K (2008) Purification and characterization of a novel anticoagulant peptide from marine echiuroid worm, Urechis unicinctus. Process Biochem 43(2):179–184. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.procbio.2007.11.011

Jo C, Khan FF, Khan MI, Iqbal J (2017) Marine bioactive peptides: types, structures, and physiological functions. Food Rev Int 33:44–61

Jordan MA, Walker D, de Arruda M, Barlozzari T, Panda D (1998) Suppression of microtubule dynamics by binding of cemadotin to tubulin: possible mechanism for its antitumor action. Biochemistry 37(50):17571–17578. https://doi.org/10.1021/bi9817414

Joseph A (2017) Chapter 9 - Oceans: abode of nutraceuticals, pharmaceuticals, and biotoxins (A. B. T.-I. S. and O. Joseph (ed.); pp. 493–554). Elsevier. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-809357-3.00009-6

Kalina R, Gladkikh I, Dmitrenok P, Chernikov O, Koshelev S, Kvetkina A, Kozlov S, Kozlovskaya E, Monastyrnaya M (2018) New APETx-like peptides from sea anemone Heteractis crispa modulate ASIC1a channels. Peptides 104:41–49. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.peptides.2018.04.013

Kang HK, Choi M-C, Seo CH, Park Y (2018) Therapeutic properties and biological benefits of marine-derived anticancer peptides. Int J Mol Sci 19(3). https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms19030919

Kang HK, Lee HH, Seo CH, Park Y (2019) Antimicrobial and immunomodulatory properties and applications of marine-derived proteins and peptides. Mar Drugs 17(6). https://doi.org/10.3390/md17060350

Karpiński TM, Adamczak A (2018) Anticancer activity of bacterial proteins and peptides. Pharmaceutics 10(2). https://doi.org/10.3390/pharmaceutics10020054

Kayal E, Bentlage B, Sabrina Pankey M, Ohdera AH, Medina M, Plachetzki DC, Collins AG, Ryan JF (2018) Phylogenomics provides a robust topology of the major cnidarian lineages and

insights on the origins of key organismal traits. BMC Evol Biol 18(1):68. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12862-018-1142-0
Kim S-K, Wijesekara I (2010) Development and biological activities of marine-derived bioactive peptides: a review. J Funct Foods 2(1):1–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jff.2010.01.003
Kim E-K, Joung H-J, Kim Y-S, Hwang J-W, Ahn C-B, Jeon Y-J, Moon S-H, Park P-J (2012) Purification of a novel anticancer peptide from enzymatic hydrolysate of Mytilus coruscus. J Microbiol Biotechnol 22(10):1381–1387. https://doi.org/10.4014/jmb.1207.07015
Kim C-H, Go H-J, Oh HY, Park JB, Lee TK, Seo J-K, Elphick MR, Park NG (2018) Identification of a novel antimicrobial peptide from the sea star Patiria pectinifera. Dev Comp Immunol 86:203–213. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dci.2018.05.002
Ko S-C, Kim E-A, Jung W-K, Kim W-S, Lee S-C, Son K-T, Kim J-I, Jeon Y-J (2016) A hexameric peptide purified from Styela plicata protects against free radical-induced oxidative stress in cells and zebrafish model. RSC Adv 6(59):54169–54178. https://doi.org/10.1039/C6RA06308J
Ko S-C, Jang J, Ye B-R, Kim M-S, Choi I-W, Park W-S, Heo S-J, Jung W-K (2017) Purification and molecular docking study of angiotensin I-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitory peptides from hydrolysates of marine sponge Stylotella aurantium. Process Biochem 54:180–187. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.procbio.2016.12.023
Kobayashi J (2016) Search for new bioactive marine natural products and application to drug development. Chem Pharm Bull 64(8):1079–1083. https://doi.org/10.1248/cpb.c16-00281
Komatsu K, Shigemori H, Kobayashi J (2001) Dictyonamides A and B, new peptides from marine-derived fungus. J Org Chem 66(18):6189–6192. https://doi.org/10.1021/jo0156767
Kormilets DY, Polyanovsky AD, Dadali VA, Maryanovich AT (2019) Antibiotic peptides. J Evol Biochem Physiol 55(4):269–276. https://doi.org/10.1134/S0022093019040021
Lassoued I, Mora L, Barkia A, Aristoy M-C, Nasri M, Toldrá F (2015) Bioactive peptides identified in thornback ray skin's gelatin hydrolysates by proteases from Bacillus subtilis and Bacillus amyloliquefaciens. J Proteome 128:8–17. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jprot.2015.06.016
Lee JK, Jeon J-K, Kim S-K, Byun H-G (2012) Characterization of bioactive peptides obtained from marine invertebrates. Adv Food Nutr Res 65:47–72. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-416003-3.00004-4
Lee H-A, Kim I-H, Nam T-J (2015) Bioactive peptide from Pyropia yezoensis and its anti-inflammatory activities. Int J Mol Med 36(6):1701–1706. https://doi.org/10.3892/ijmm.2015.2386
Lee Y, Phat C, Hong S-C (2017) Structural diversity of marine cyclic peptides and their molecular mechanisms for anticancer, antibacterial, antifungal, and other clinical applications. Peptides 95:94–105. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.peptides.2017.06.002
Lee M-K, Choi J-W, Choi YH, Nam T-J (2019) Protective effect of pyropia yezoensis peptide on dexamethasone-induced myotube atrophy in C2C12 myotubes. Mar Drugs 17(5). https://doi.org/10.3390/md17050284
Leisch M, Egle A, Greil R (2019) Plitidepsin: a potential new treatment for relapsed/refractory multiple myeloma. Future Oncol (London, England) 15(2):109–120. https://doi.org/10.2217/fon-2018-0492
Lemes AC, Sala L, Ores JD, Braga ARC, Egea MB, Fernandes KF (2016) A review of the latest advances in encrypted bioactive peptides from protein-rich waste. Int J Mol Sci 17(6). https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms17060950
Li C, Haug T, Styrvold OB, Jørgensen TØ, Stensvåg K (2008) Strongylocins, novel antimicrobial peptides from the green sea urchin, Strongylocentrotus droebachiensis. Dev Comp Immunol 32(12):1430–1440. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dci.2008.06.013
Li Y, Xu Y, Liu L, Han Z, Lai PY, Guo X, Zhang X, Lin W, Qian P-Y (2012) Five new amicoumacins isolated from a marine-derived bacterium Bacillus subtilis. Mar Drugs 10(2):319–328. https://doi.org/10.3390/md10020319
Li C, Blencke H-M, Haug T, Jørgensen Ø, Stensvåg K (2014a) Expression of antimicrobial peptides in coelomocytes and embryos of the green sea urchin (Strongylocentrotus droebachiensis). Dev Comp Immunol 43(1):106–113. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dci.2013.10.013

Li J, Li Q, Li J, Zhou B (2014b) Peptides derived from Rhopilema esculentum hydrolysate exhibit angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitory and antioxidant abilities. Molecules (Basel, Switzerland) 19(9):13587–13602. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules190913587

Li H-X, Lu X-J, Li C-H, Chen J (2015) Molecular characterization of the liver-expressed antimicrobial peptide 2 (LEAP-2) in a teleost fish, Plecoglossus altivelis: antimicrobial activity and molecular mechanism. Mol Immunol 65(2):406–415. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.molimm.2015.02.022

Li Z, Wang P, Jiang C, Cui P, Zhang S (2016) Antibacterial activity and modes of action of phosvitin-derived peptide Pt5e against clinical multi-drug resistance bacteria. Fish Shellfish Immunol 58:370–379. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fsi.2016.09.044

Li J, Liu Z, Zhao Y, Zhu X, Yu R, Dong S, Wu H (2018a) Novel natural angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE)-inhibitory peptides derived from sea cucumber-modified hydrolysates by adding exogenous proline and a study of their structure–activity relationship. Mar Drugs 16(8). https://doi.org/10.3390/md16080271

Li X, Tang Y, Yu F, Sun Y, Huang F, Chen Y, Yang Z, Ding G (2018b) Inhibition of prostate cancer DU-145 cells proliferation by Anthopleura anjunae oligopeptide (YVPGP) via PI3K/AKT/mTOR signaling pathway. Mar Drugs 16(9). https://doi.org/10.3390/md16090325

Liang X, Zhang X-Y, Nong X-H, Wang J, Huang Z-H, Qi S-H (2016) Eight linear peptides from the deep-sea-derived fungus Simplicillium obclavatum EIODSF 020. Tetrahedron 72 (22):3092–3097. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tet.2016.04.032

Liang X, Nong X-H, Huang Z-H, Qi S-H (2017) Antifungal and antiviral cyclic peptides from the deep-sea-derived fungus Simplicillium obclavatum EIODSF 020. J Agric Food Chem 65 (25):5114–5121. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.jafc.7b01238

Lin W-C, Chang H-Y, Chen J-Y (2016) Electrotransfer of the tilapia piscidin 3 and tilapia piscidin 4 genes into skeletal muscle enhances the antibacterial and immunomodulatory functions of Oreochromis niloticus. Fish Shellfish Immunol 50:200–209. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fsi.2016.01.034

Liu J, Gu B, Yang L, Yang F, Lin H (2018) New anti-inflammatory cyclopeptides from a sponge-derived fungus Aspergillus violaceofuscus. Front Chem 6:226. https://doi.org/10.3389/fchem.2018.00226

Loganzo F, Discafani CM, Annable T, Beyer C, Musto S, Hari M, Tan X, Hardy C, Hernandez R, Baxter M, Singanallore T, Khafizova G, Poruchynsky MS, Fojo T, Nieman JA, Ayral-Kaloustian S, Zask A, Andersen RJ, Greenberger LM (2003) HTI-286, a synthetic analogue of the tripeptide hemiasterlin, is a potent antimicrotubule agent that circumvents P-glycoprotein-mediated resistance in vitro and in vivo. Cancer Res 63(8):1838–1845

López-Abarrategui C, McBeth C, Mandal SM, Sun ZJ, Heffron G, Alba-Menéndez A, Migliolo L, Reyes-Acosta O, García-Villarino M, Nolasco DO, Falcão R, Cherobim MD, Dias SC, Brandt W, Wessjohann L, Starnbach M, Franco OL, Otero-González AJ (2015) Cm-p5: an antifungal hydrophilic peptide derived from the coastal mollusk Cenchritis muricatus (Gastropoda: Littorinidae). FASEB J 29(8):3315–3325. https://doi.org/10.1096/fj.14-269860

Lu Z, Van Wagoner RM, Harper MK, Baker HL, Hooper JNA, Bewley CA, Ireland CM (2011) Mirabamides E-H, HIV-inhibitory depsipeptides from the sponge Stelletta clavosa. J Nat Prod 74(2):185–193. https://doi.org/10.1021/np100613p

Luo X-W, Lin Y, Lu Y-J, Zhou X-F, Liu Y-H (2019) Peptides and polyketides isolated from the marine sponge-derived fungus Aspergillus terreus SCSIO 41008. Chin J Nat Med 17 (2):149–154. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1875-5364(19)30017-2

Ma J, Huang H, Xie Y, Liu Z, Zhao J, Zhang C, Jia Y, Zhang Y, Zhang H, Zhang T, Ju J (2017a) Biosynthesis of ilamycins featuring unusual building blocks and engineered production of enhanced anti-tuberculosis agents. Nat Commun 8(1):391. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-017-00419-5

Ma X, Nong X-H, Ren Z, Wang J, Liang X, Wang L, Qi S-H (2017b) Antiviral peptides from marine gorgonian-derived fungus Aspergillus sp. SCSIO 41501. Tetrahedron Lett 58 (12):1151–1155. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tetlet.2017.02.005

Machado H, Månsson M, Gram L (2014) Draft genome sequence of photobacterium halotolerans S2753, producer of bioactive secondary metabolites. Genome Announc 2(3). https://doi.org/10.1128/genomeA.00535-14

Mansson M, Nielsen A, Kjærulff L, Gotfredsen CH, Wietz M, Ingmer H, Gram L, Larsen TO (2011) Inhibition of virulence gene expression in Staphylococcus aureus by novel depsipeptides from a marine photobacterium. Mar Drugs 9(12):2537–2552. https://doi.org/10.3390/md9122537

Marggraf MB, Panteleev PV, Emelianova AA, Sorokin MI, Bolosov IA, Buzdin AA, Kuzmin DV, Ovchinnikova TV (2018) Cytotoxic potential of the novel horseshoe crab peptide polyphemusin III. Mar Drugs 16(12). https://doi.org/10.3390/md16120466

Martín J, Sousa DS, Crespo G, Palomo S, González I, Tormo JR, de la Cruz M, Anderson M, Hill RT, Vicente F, Genilloud O, Reyes F (2013) Kocurin, the true structure of PM181104, an anti-methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) thiazolyl peptide from the marine-derived bacterium Kocuria palustris. Mar Drugs 11(2):387–398. https://doi.org/10.3390/md11020387

Martins A, Vieira H, Gaspar H, Santos S (2014) Marketed marine natural products in the pharmaceutical and cosmeceutical industries: tips for success. Mar Drugs 12(2):1066–1101. https://doi.org/10.3390/md12021066

Mevers E, Liu W-T, Engene N, Mohimani H, Byrum T, Pevzner PA, Dorrestein PC, Spadafora C, Gerwick WH (2011) Cytotoxic veraguamides, alkynyl bromide-containing cyclic depsipeptides from the marine cyanobacterium cf. Oscillatoria margaritifera. J Nat Prod 74(5):928–936. https://doi.org/10.1021/np200077f

Minic SL, Stanic-Vucinic D, Mihailovic J, Krstic M, Nikolic MR, Cirkovic Velickovic T (2016) Digestion by pepsin releases biologically active chromopeptides from C-phycocyanin, a blue-colored biliprotein of microalga Spirulina. J Proteome 147:132–139. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jprot.2016.03.043

Mosunova O, Navarro-Muñoz JC, Collemare JB (2020) The biosynthesis of fungal secondary metabolites: from fundamentals to biotechnological applications. Elsevier. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-809633-8.21072-8

Munawar A, Ali SA, Akrem A, Betzel C (2018) Snake venom peptides: tools of biodiscovery. Toxins 10(11). https://doi.org/10.3390/toxins10110474

Nakamukai S, Takada K, Furihata K, Ise Y, Okada S, Morii Y, Yamawaki N, Takatani T, Arakawa O, Gustafson KR, Matsunaga S (2018) Stellatolide H, a cytotoxic peptide lactone from a deep-sea sponge Discodermia sp. Tetrahedron Lett 59(26):2532–2536. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tetlet.2018.05.033

Narayanasamy A, Balde A, Raghavender P, Shashanth D, Abraham J, Joshi I, Nazeer RA (2020) Isolation of marine crab (Charybdis natator) leg muscle peptide and its anti-inflammatory effects on macrophage cells. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 25:101577. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bcab.2020.101577

Newman DJ, Cragg GM (2014) Marine-sourced anti-cancer and cancer pain control agents in clinical and late preclinical development. Mar Drugs 12(1):255–278. https://doi.org/10.3390/md12010255

Oh D-C, Kauffman CA, Jensen PR, Fenical W (2007) Induced production of emericellamides A and B from the marine-derived fungus Emericella sp. in competing co-culture. J Nat Prod 70(4):515–520. https://doi.org/10.1021/np060381f

Oh R, Lee MJ, Kim Y-O, Nam B-H, Kong HJ, Kim J-W, Park J, Seo J-K, Kim D-G (2020) Myticusin-beta, antimicrobial peptide from the marine bivalve, Mytilus coruscus. Fish Shellfish Immunol 99:342–352. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fsi.2020.02.020

Ohtsuka Y, Inagaki H (2020) In silico identification and functional validation of linear cationic α-helical antimicrobial peptides in the ascidian Ciona intestinalis. Sci Rep 10(1):12619. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-020-69485-y

Okamoto S, Iwasaki A, Ohno O, Suenaga K (2015) Isolation and structure of Kurahyne B and total synthesis of the Kurahynes. J Nat Prod 78(11):2719–2725. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.jnatprod.5b00662

Oku N, Adachi K, Matsuda S, Kasai H, Takatsuki A, Shizuri Y (2008) Ariakemicins A and B, novel polyketide-peptide antibiotics from a marine gliding bacterium of the genus Rapidithrix. Org Lett 10(12):2481–2484. https://doi.org/10.1021/ol8007292

Orlov DS, Shamova OV, Eliseev IE, Zharkova MS, Chakchir OB, Antcheva N, Zachariev S, Panteleev PV, Kokryakov VN, Ovchinnikova TV, Tossi A (2019) Redesigning arenicin-1, an antimicrobial peptide from the marine polychaeta arenicola marina, by strand rearrangement or branching, substitution of specific residues, and backbone linearization or cyclization. Mar Drugs 17(6). https://doi.org/10.3390/md17060376

Ott PA, Pavlick AC, Johnson DB, Hart LL, Infante JR, Luke JJ, Lutzky J, Rothschild NE, Spitler LE, Cowey CL, Alizadeh AR, Salama AK, He Y, Hawthorne TR, Bagley RG, Zhang J, Turner CD, Hamid O (2019) A phase 2 study of glembatumumab vedotin, an antibody-drug conjugate targeting glycoprotein NMB, in patients with advanced melanoma. Cancer 125(7):1113–1123. https://doi.org/10.1002/cncr.31892

Ovchinnikova TV (2019) Structure, function, and therapeutic potential of marine bioactive peptides. Mar Drugs 17(9):505. https://doi.org/10.3390/md17090505

Paiva L, Lima E, Neto AI, Baptista J (2016) Isolation and characterization of angiotensin I-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitory peptides from Ulva rigida C. Agardh protein hydrolysate. J Funct Foods 26:65–76. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jff.2016.07.006

Pan C-Y, Tsai T-Y, Su B-C, Hui C-F, Chen J-Y (2017) Study of the antimicrobial activity of tilapia Piscidin 3 (TP3) and TP4 and their effects on immune functions in hybrid tilapia (Oreochromis spp.). PLoS One 12(1):e0169678–e0169678. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0169678

Panteleev PV, Tsarev AV, Bolosov IA, Paramonov AS, Marggraf MB, Sychev SV, Shenkarev ZO, Ovchinnikova TV (2018) Novel antimicrobial peptides from the arctic polychaeta nicomache minor provide new molecular insight into biological role of the BRICHOS domain. Mar Drugs 16(11). https://doi.org/10.3390/md16110401

Park SY, Kim Y-S, Ahn C-B, Je J-Y (2016) Partial purification and identification of three antioxidant peptides with hepatoprotective effects from blue mussel (Mytilus edulis) hydrolysate by peptic hydrolysis. J Funct Foods 20:88–95. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jff.2015.10.023

Peng J, Gao H, Zhang X, Wang S, Wu C, Gu Q, Guo P, Zhu T, Li D (2014) Psychrophilins E-H and versicotide C, cyclic peptides from the marine-derived fungus Aspergillus versicolor ZLN-60. J Nat Prod 77(10):2218–2223. https://doi.org/10.1021/np500469b

Petersen L-E, Kellermann MY, Schupp PJ (2020) In: Jungblut S, Liebich V, Bode-Dalby M (eds) Secondary metabolites of marine microbes: from natural products chemistry to chemical ecology BT - YOUMARES 9 - The Oceans: Our Research, Our Future: Proceedings of the 2018 conference for YOUng MArine RESearcher in Oldenburg, Germany. Springer International Publishing, pp 159–180. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-20389-4_8

Piel J (2006) Bacterial symbionts: prospects for the sustainable production of invertebrate-derived pharmaceuticals. Curr Med Chem 13(1):39–50

Pimentel FB, Alves RC, Harnedy PA, FitzGerald RJ, Oliveira MBPP (2019) Macroalgal-derived protein hydrolysates and bioactive peptides: enzymatic release and potential health enhancing properties. Trends Food Sci Technol 93:106–124. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tifs.2019.09.006

Pozzolini M, Millo E, Oliveri C, Mirata S, Salis A, Damonte G, Arkel M, Scarfì S (2018) Elicited ROS scavenging activity, photoprotective, and wound-healing properties of collagen-derived peptides from the marine sponge Chondrosia reniformis. Mar Drugs 16(12). https://doi.org/10.3390/md16120465

Prasad P, Aalbersberg W, Feussner K-D, Van Wagoner RM (2011) Papuamides E and F, cytotoxic depsipeptides from the marine sponge Melophlus sp. Tetrahedron 67(44):8529–8531. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tet.2011.08.100

Prompanya C, Fernandes C, Cravo S, Pinto MMM, Dethoup T, Silva AMS, Kijjoa A (2015) A new cyclic hexapeptide and a new isocoumarin derivative from the marine sponge-associated fungus Aspergillus similanensis KUFA 0013. Mar Drugs 13(3):1432–1450. https://doi.org/10.3390/md13031432

Ray A, Okouneva T, Manna T, Miller HP, Schmid S, Arthaud L, Luduena R, Jordan MA, Wilson L (2007) Mechanism of action of the microtubule-targeted antimitotic depsipeptide tasidotin (formerly ILX651) and its major metabolite tasidotin C-carboxylate. Cancer Res 67 (8):3767–3776. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-06-3065

Rekha R, Vaseeharan B, Ishwarya R, Anjugam M, Alharbi NS, Kadaikunnan S, Khaled JM, Al-Anbr MN, Govindarajan M (2018) Searching for crab-borne antimicrobial peptides: Crustin from Portunus pelagicus triggers biofilm inhibition and immune responses of Artemia salina against GFP tagged Vibrio parahaemolyticus Dahv2. Mol Immunol 101:396–408. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.molimm.2018.07.024

Rocha-Lima CM, Bayraktar S, Macintyre J, Raez L, Flores AM, Ferrell A, Rubin EH, Poplin EA, Tan AR, Lucarelli A, Zojwalla N (2012) A phase 1 trial of E7974 administered on day 1 of a 21-day cycle in patients with advanced solid tumors. Cancer 118(17):4262–4270. https://doi.org/10.1002/cncr.27428

Rosa R, Barracco M (2010) Antimicrobial peptides in crustaceans. Inv Surv J 7:262–284

Rosa GP, Tavares WR, Sousa PMC, Pagès AK, Seca AML, Pinto DCGA (2020) Seaweed secondary metabolites with beneficial health effects: an overview of successes in in vivo studies and clinical trials. Mar Drugs 18(1). https://doi.org/10.3390/md18010008

Rouse GW (2001) Annelida (Segmented Worms). eLS. https://doi.org/10.1038/npg.els.0001599

Rowley DC, Kelly S, Kauffman CA, Jensen PR, Fenical W (2003) Halovirs A–E, new antiviral agents from a marine-Derived fungus of the genus Scytalidium. Bioorg Med Chem 11 (19):4263–4274. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0968-0896(03)00395-X

Saadaoui I, Rasheed R, Abdulrahman N, Bounnit T, Cherif M, Al Jabri H, Mraiche F (2020) Algae-derived bioactive compounds with anti-lung cancer potential. Mar Drugs 18(4). https://doi.org/10.3390/md18040197

Sable R, Parajuli P, Jois S (2017) Peptides, peptidomimetics, and polypeptides from marine sources: a wealth of natural sources for pharmaceutical applications. Mar Drugs 15(4). https://doi.org/10.3390/md15040124

Safavi-Hemami H, Brogan SE, Olivera BM (2019) Pain therapeutics from cone snail venoms: From Ziconotide to novel non-opioid pathways. J Proteome 190:12–20. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jprot.2018.05.009

Salger SA, Cassady KR, Reading BJ, Noga EJ (2016) A diverse family of host-defense peptides (Piscidins) exhibit specialized anti-bacterial and anti-protozoal activities in fishes. PLoS One 11 (8):e0159423. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0159423

Salvador LA, Biggs JS, Paul VJ, Luesch H (2011) Veraguamides A-G, cyclic hexadepsipeptides from a dolastatin 16-producing cyanobacterium Symploca cf. hydnoides from Guam. J Nat Prod 74(5):917–927. https://doi.org/10.1021/np200076t

Sánchez A, Vázquez A (2017) Bioactive peptides: a review. Food Qual Saf 1(1):29–46. https://doi.org/10.1093/fqsafe/fyx006

Schillaci D, Cusimano MG, Spinello A, Barone G, Russo D, Vitale M, Parrinello D, Arizza V (2014) Paracentrin 1, a synthetic antimicrobial peptide from the sea-urchin Paracentrotus lividus, interferes with staphylococcal and Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm formation. AMB Express 4:78. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13568-014-0078-z

Schmidt CA, Daly NL, Wilson DT (2019) Coral venom toxins. Front Ecol Evol 7:320. https://doi.org/10.3389/fevo.2019.00320

Scopel M, Abraham W-R, Henriques AT, Macedo AJ (2013) Dipeptide cis-cyclo(Leucyl-Tyrosyl) produced by sponge associated Penicillium sp. F37 inhibits biofilm formation of the pathogenic Staphylococcus epidermidis. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 23(3):624–626. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmcl.2012.12.020

Seo J-K, Lee MJ, Go H-J, Do Kim G, Do Jeong H, Nam B-H, Park NG (2013) Purification and antimicrobial function of ubiquitin isolated from the gill of Pacific oyster, Crassostrea gigas. Mol Immunol 53(1–2):88–98. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.molimm.2012.07.003

Serova M, de Gramont A, Bieche I, Riveiro ME, Galmarini CM, Aracil M, Jimeno J, Faivre S, Raymond E (2013) Predictive factors of sensitivity to elisidepsin, a novel Kahalalide F-derived marine compound. Mar Drugs 11(3):944–959. https://doi.org/10.3390/md11030944

Shan Z, Zhu K, Peng H, Chen B, Liu J, Chen F, Ma X, Wang S, Qiao K, Wang K (2016) The new antimicrobial peptide SpHyastatin from the Mud Crab Scylla paramamosain with multiple antimicrobial mechanisms and high effect on bacterial infection. Front Microbiol 7:1140. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2016.01140

Sheih I-C, Fang TJ, Wu T-K, Lin P-H (2010) Anticancer and antioxidant activities of the peptide fraction from algae protein waste. J Agric Food Chem 58(2):1202–1207. https://doi.org/10.1021/jf903089m

Shenkar N, Swalla BJ (2011) Global diversity of ascidiacea. PLoS One 6(6):e20657. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0020657

Shin HJ, Rashid MA, Cartner LK, Bokesch HR, Wilson JA, McMahon JB, Gustafson KR (2015) Stellettapeptins A and B, HIV-inhibitory cyclic depsipeptides from the marine sponge Stelletta sp. Tetrahedron Lett 56(28):4215–4219. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tetlet.2015.05.058

Shin SC, Ahn IH, Ahn DH, Lee YM, Lee J, Lee JH, Kim H-W, Park H (2017) Characterization of two antimicrobial peptides from antarctic fishes (Notothenia coriiceps and Parachaenichthys charcoti). PLoS One 12(1):e0170821. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0170821

Sila A, Bougatef A (2016) Antioxidant peptides from marine by-products: isolation, identification and application in food systems. A review. J Funct Foods 21:10–26. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jff.2015.11.007

Solstad RG, Li C, Isaksson J, Johansen J, Svenson J, Stensvåg K, Haug T (2016) Novel antimicrobial peptides EeCentrocins 1, 2 and EeStrongylocin 2 from the Edible Sea Urchin Echinus esculentus Have 6-Br-Trp post-translational modifications. PLoS One 11(3):e0151820. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0151820

Song R, Wei R, Luo H, Yang Z (2014a) Isolation and identification of an antiproliferative peptide derived from heated products of peptic hydrolysates of half-fin anchovy (Setipinna taty). J Funct Foods 10:104–111. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jff.2014.06.010

Song Y, Li Q, Liu X, Chen Y, Zhang Y, Sun A, Zhang W, Zhang J, Ju J (2014b) Cyclic hexapeptides from the deep south china sea-derived streptomyces scopuliridis SCSIO ZJ46 active against pathogenic gram-positive bacteria. J Nat Prod 77(8):1937–1941. https://doi.org/10.1021/np500399v

Sudhakar S, Nazeer RA (2015) Preparation of potent antioxidant peptide from edible part of shortclub cuttlefish against radical mediated lipid and DNA damage. LWT Food Sci Technol 64(2):593–601. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.lwt.2015.06.031

Sugumaran M, Robinson WE (2012) Structure, biosynthesis and possible function of tunichromes and related compounds. Comp Biochem Physiol B: Biochem Mol Biol 163(1):1–25. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cbpb.2012.05.005

Sun P, Maloney KN, Nam S-J, Haste NM, Raju R, Aalbersberg W, Jensen PR, Nizet V, Hensler ME, Fenical W (2011) Fijimycins A–C, three antibacterial etamycin-class depsipeptides from a marine-derived Streptomyces sp. Bioorg Med Chem 19(22):6557–6562. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmc.2011.06.053

Sun L, Wu B, Yan M, Hou H, Zhuang Y (2019a) Antihypertensive effect in vivo of QAGLSPVR and its transepithelial transport through the Caco-2 cell monolayer. Mar Drugs 17(5). https://doi.org/10.3390/md17050288

Sun S, Xu X, Sun X, Zhang X, Chen X, Xu N (2019b) Preparation and identification of ACE inhibitory peptides from the marine macroalga Ulva intestinalis. Mar Drugs 17(3). https://doi.org/10.3390/md17030179

Tak YJ, Kim YJ, Lee JG, Yi Y-H, Cho YH, Kang GH, Lee SY (2019) Effect of oral ingestion of low-molecular collagen peptides derived from skate (Raja Kenojei) skin on body fat in overweight adults: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Mar Drugs 17(3). https://doi.org/10.3390/md17030157

Tan RX, Jensen PR, Williams PG, Fenical W (2004) Isolation and structure assignments of rostratins A-D, cytotoxic disulfides produced by the marine-derived fungus Exserohilum rostratum. J Nat Prod 67(8):1374–1382. https://doi.org/10.1021/np049920b

Tareq FS, Lee MA, Lee H-S, Lee J-S, Lee Y-J, Shin HJ (2014) Gageostatins A-C, antimicrobial linear lipopeptides from a marine Bacillus subtilis. Mar Drugs 12(2):871–885. https://doi.org/10.3390/md12020871

Thirumurugan D, Cholarajan A, Raja S, Vijayakumar R (2018) An introductory chapter: secondary metabolites. https://doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.79766

Thornburg CC, Thimmaiah M, Shaala LA, Hau AM, Malmo JM, Ishmael JE, Youssef DTA, McPhail KL (2011) Cyclic depsipeptides, grassypeptolides D and E and Ibu-epidemethoxylyngbyastatin 3, from a Red Sea Leptolyngbya cyanobacterium. J Nat Prod 74(8):1677–1685. https://doi.org/10.1021/np200270d

Tian T, Takada K, Ise Y, Ohtsuka S, Okada S, Matsunaga S (2020) Microsclerodermins N and O, cytotoxic cyclic peptides containing a p-ethoxyphenyl moiety from a deep-sea marine sponge Pachastrella sp. Tetrahedron 76(10):130997. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tet.2020.130997

Torres-García C, Pulido D, Albericio F, Royo M, Nicolás E (2014) Triazene as a powerful tool for solid-phase derivatization of phenylalanine containing peptides: zygosporamide analogues as a proof of concept. J Org Chem 79(23):11409–11415. https://doi.org/10.1021/jo501830w

Tripathi A, Puddick J, Prinsep MR, Rottmann M, Tan LT (2010) Lagunamides A and B: cytotoxic and antimalarial cyclodepsipeptides from the marine cyanobacterium Lyngbya majuscula. J Nat Prod 73(11):1810–1814. https://doi.org/10.1021/np100442x

Umnyakova ES, Gorbunov NP, Zhakhov AV, Krenev IA, Ovchinnikova TV, Kokryakov VN, Berlov MN (2018) Modulation of Human Complement System by Antimicrobial Peptide Arenicin-1 from Arenicola marina. Mar Drugs 16(12). https://doi.org/10.3390/md16120480

Vaklavas C, Forero A (2014) Management of metastatic breast cancer with second-generation antibody-drug conjugates: focus on glembatumumab vedotin (CDX-011, CR011-vcMMAE). BioDrugs 28(3):253–263. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40259-014-0085-2

Van Bohemen A-I, Zalouk-Vergnoux A, Poirier L, Phuong NN, Inguimbert N, Ben Haj Salah K, Ruiz N, Pouchus YF (2016) Development and validation of LC-MS methods for peptaibol quantification in fungal extracts according to their lengths. J Chromatogr B 1009–1010:25–33. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jchromb.2015.11.039

Van Soest RWM, Boury-Esnault N, Vacelet J, Dohrmann M, Erpenbeck D, De Voogd NJ, Santodomingo N, Vanhoorne B, Kelly M, Hooper JNA (2012) Global diversity of sponges (Porifera). PLoS One 7(4):e35105–e35105. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0035105

Wang Q, Li W, He Y, Ren D, Kow F, Song L, Yu X (2014) Novel antioxidative peptides from the protein hydrolysate of oysters (Crassostrea talienwhanensis). Food Chem 145:991–996. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2013.08.099

Wang N, Cui C-B, Li C-W (2016a) A new cyclic dipeptide penicimutide: the activated production of cyclic dipeptides by introduction of neomycin-resistance in the marine-derived fungus Penicillium purpurogenum G59. Arch Pharm Res 39(6):762–770. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12272-016-0751-7

Wang N, Huang Y, Li A, Jiang H, Wang J, Li J, Qiu L, Li K, Lu Y (2016b) Hydrostatin-TL1, an anti-inflammatory active peptide from the venom gland of hydrophis cyanocinctus in the South China Sea. Int J Mol Sci 17(11). https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms17111940

Wang A, Zhang F, Guo Z, Chen Y, Zhang M, Yu H, Wang Y (2019a) Characterization of a cathelicidin from the colubrinae snake, *Sinonatrix annularis*. Zool Sci 36(1):68–76. https://doi.org/10.2108/zs180064

Wang X, Yu H, Xing R, Liu S, Chen X, Li P (2019b) Preparation and Identification of antioxidative peptides from Pacific Herring (Clupea pallasii) protein. Molecules 24(10). https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules24101946

Watters DJ (2018) Ascidian toxins with potential for drug development. Mar Drugs 16(5). https://doi.org/10.3390/md16050162

Wei L, Gao J, Zhang S, Wu S, Xie Z, Ling G, Kuang Y-Q, Yang Y, Yu H, Wang Y (2015) Identification and characterization of the first cathelicidin from sea snakes with potent antimicrobial and anti-inflammatory activity and special mechanism. J Biol Chem 290 (27):16633–16652. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M115.642645

Won TH, Kim C-K, Lee S-H, Rho BJ, Lee SK, Oh D-C, Oh K-B, Shin J (2015) Amino acid-derived metabolites from the ascidian Aplidium sp. Mar Drugs 13(6). https://doi.org/10.3390/md13063836

Wu HT, Jin WG, Sun SG, Li XS, Duan XH, Li Y, Yang YT, Han JR, Zhu BW (2016) Identification of antioxidant peptides from protein hydrolysates of scallop (Patinopecten yessoensis) female gonads. Eur Food Res Technol 242(5):10–722. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00217-015-2579-7

Wu M, Li Y, Chang Q, Zhao X, Chen Q (2018) Total synthesis and modification of proline-rich cyclopeptides Phakellistatins 17 and 18 isolated from marine sponge. Tetrahedron Lett 59 (45):4011–4014. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tetlet.2018.09.059

Wyche TP, Hou Y, Vazquez-Rivera E, Braun D, Bugni TS (2012) Peptidolipins B-F, antibacterial lipopeptides from an ascidian-derived Nocardia sp. J Nat Prod 75(4):735–740. https://doi.org/10.1021/np300016r

Yang X-R, Zhang L, Ding D-G, Chi C-F, Wang B, Huo J-C (2019) Preparation, identification, and activity evaluation of eight antioxidant peptides from protein hydrolysate of Hairtail (Trichiurus japonicas) muscle. Mar Drugs 17(1). https://doi.org/10.3390/md17010023

You M, Liao L, Hong SH, Park W, Kwon DI, Lee J, Noh M, Oh D-C, Oh K-B, Shin J (2015) Lumazine peptides from the marine-derived fungus Aspergillus terreus. Mar Drugs 13(3). https://doi.org/10.3390/md13031290

Youssef DTA, Shaala LA, Mohamed GA, Badr JM, Bamanie FH, Ibrahim SRM (2014) Theonellamide G, a potent antifungal and cytotoxic bicyclic glycopeptide from the Red Sea marine sponge Theonella swinhoei. Mar Drugs 12(4):1911–1923. https://doi.org/10.3390/md12041911

Youssef FS, Ashour ML, Singab ANB, Wink M (2019) A comprehensive review of bioactive peptides from marine fungi and their biological significance. Mar Drugs 17(10). https://doi.org/10.3390/md17100559

Zan J, Li Z, Tianero MD, Davis J, Hill RT, Donia MS (2019) A microbial factory for defensive kahalalides in a tripartite marine symbiosis. Science 364(6445):eaaw6732. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aaw6732

Zhang Y, Li X-M, Feng Y, Wang B-G (2010) Phenethyl-alpha-pyrone derivatives and cyclodipeptides from a marine algous endophytic fungus Aspergillus niger EN-13. Nat Prod Res 24(11):1036–1043. https://doi.org/10.1080/14786410902940875

Zhang Q, Song C, Zhao J, Shi X, Sun M, Liu J, Fu Y, Jin W, Zhu B (2018) Separation and characterization of antioxidative and angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitory peptide from Jellyfish Gonad hydrolysate. Molecules (Basel, Switzerland) 23(1). https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules23010094

Zheng J, Zhu H, Hong K, Wang Y, Liu P, Wang X, Peng X, Zhu W (2009) Novel cyclic hexapeptides from marine-derived fungus, Aspergillus sclerotiorum PT06-1. Org Lett 11 (22):5262–5265. https://doi.org/10.1021/ol902197z

Zheng Z, Jiang H, Huang Y, Wang J, Qiu L, Hu Z, Ma X, Lu Y (2016) Screening of an anti-inflammatory peptide from hydrophis cyanocinctus and analysis of its activities and mechanism in DSS-induced acute colitis. Sci Rep 6(1):25672. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep25672

Zhou X, Fang P, Tang J, Wu Z, Li X, Li S, Wang Y, Liu G, He Z, Gou D, Yao X, Wang L (2016) A novel cyclic dipeptide from deep marine-derived fungus Aspergillus sp. SCSIOW2. Nat Prod Res 30(1):52–57. https://doi.org/10.1080/14786419.2015.1033623

Zhu B, Dong X, Zhou D, Gao Y, Yang J, Li D, Zhao X, Ren T, Ye W, Tan H, Wu H, Yu C (2012) Physicochemical properties and radical scavenging capacities of pepsin-solubilized collagen from sea cucumber Stichopus japonicus. Food Hydrocoll 28(1):182–188. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodhyd.2011.12.010

Zhuang Z, Yang X, Huang X, Gu H, Wei H, He Y, Deng L (2017) Three new piscidins from orange-spotted grouper (Epinephelus coioides): phylogeny, expression and functional characterization. Fish Shellfish Immunol 66:240–253. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fsi.2017.04.011